



13456.5 (3)  
A

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)



HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)



[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

**THE WORKS**  
**OF**  
**WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE.**

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

LONDON :  
PRINTED BY ROBSON, LEVEY, AND FRANKLYN,  
Great New Street and Petter Lane.

657  
13  
13  
13

**THE WORKS**  
[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

OF

**WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE.**

**THE TEXT REVISED**

BY

**THE REV. ALEXANDER DYCE.**

IN SIX VOLUMES.

VOL. III.

LONDON:  
**EDWARD MOXON, DOVER STREET.**  
1857.

13456.5

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

✓ A

CONTENTS OF VOL. III.

---

	PAGE
TWELFTH-NIGHT . . . . .	1
THE WINTER'S TALE . . . . .	81
KING JOHN . . . . .	181
KING RICHARD THE SECOND . . . . .	271
THE FIRST PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH . . . . .	361
THE SECOND PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH . . . . .	455
KING HENRY THE FIFTH . . . . .	555

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

**TWELFTH-NIGHT;**

**OR,**

**WHAT YOU WILL.**

**VOL. III.**

**B**

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

---

ORSINO, duke of Illyria.

SEBASTIAN, a young gentleman, brother to Viola.

ANTONIO, a sea captain, friend to Sebastian.

A Sea Captain, friend to Viola.

VALENTINE, } gentlemen attending on the Duke.  
CURIO, }

SIR TOBY BELCH, uncle to Olivia.

SIR ANDREW AGUECHECK.

MALVOLIO, steward to Olivia.

FABIAN, } servants to Olivia.  
CLOWN, }

OLIVIA, a rich countess.

VIOLA, in love with the Duke.

MARIA, Olivia's woman.

Lords, Priests, Sailors, Officers, Musicians, and other Attendants.

SCENE—*A city in Illyria, and the sea-coast near it.*



# TWELFTH-NIGHT;

OR,

WHAT YOU WILL.

---

---

## ACT I.

SCENE I. *An apartment in the Duke's palace.*

*Enter Duke, CURIO, Lords ; Musicians attending.*

*Duke.* If music be the food of love, play on ;  
Give me excess of it, that, surfeiting,  
The appetite may sicken, and so die.—  
That strain again !—it had a dying fall :  
O, it came o'er my ear like the sweet south, (1) .  
That breathes upon a bank of violets,  
Stealing and giving odour !—Enough ; no more :  
'Tis not so sweet now as it was before.  
O spirit of love, how quick and fresh art thou !  
That, notwithstanding thy capacity  
Receiveth as the sea, naught enters there,  
Of what validity and pitch soe'er,  
But falls into abatement and low price,  
Even in a minute ! so full of shapes is fancy,  
That it alone is high-fantastical.

*Cur.* Will you go hunt, my lord ?

*Duke.*

What, Curio ?

*Cur.*

The hart.

*Duke.* Why, so I do, the noblest that I have :

O, when mine eyes did see Olivia first,  
 Methought she purg'd the air of pestilence!  
 That instant was I turn'd into a hart;  
 And my desires, like fell and cruel hounds,  
 E'er since pursue me.

*Enter VALENTINE.*

How now! what news from her?

*Val.* So please my lord, I might not be admitted;  
 But from her handmaid do return this answer:  
 The element itself, till seven years' heat,  
 Shall not behold her face at ample view;  
 But, like a cloistress, she will veiled walk,  
 And water once a day her chamber round  
 With eye-offending brine: all this to season  
 A brother's dead love, which she would keep fresh  
 And lasting in her sad remembrance.

*Duke.* O, she that hath a heart of that fine frame  
 To pay this debt of love but to a brother,  
 How will she love, when the rich golden shaft  
 Hath kill'd the flock of all affections else  
 That live in her,—when liver, brain, and heart,  
 These sovereign thrones, are all supplied and fill'd  
 (Her sweet perfections) with one self king!—  
 Away before me to sweet beds of flowers:  
 Love-thoughts lie rich when canopied with bowers. [*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE II. *The sea-coast.*

*Enter VIOLA, Captain, and Sailors.*

*Vio.* What country, friends, is this?

*Cap.*

This is Illyria, lady.

*Vio.* And what should I do in Illyria?

My brother he is in Elysium.

Perchance he is not drown'd:—what think you, sailors?

*Cap.* It is perchance that you yourself were sav'd.

*Vio.* O my poor brother! and so perchance may he be.

*Cap.* True, madam : and, to comfort you with chance,  
 'ssure yourself, after our ship did split,  
 When you, and those poor number sav'd with you,  
 Hung on our driving boat, I saw your brother,  
 Most provident in peril, bind himself  
 (Courage and hope both teaching him the practice)  
 To a strong mast that liv'd upon the sea ;  
 Where, like Arion on the dolphin's back,  
 I saw him hold acquaintance with the waves  
 So long as I could see.

*Vio.* For saying so, there's gold :  
 Mine own escape unfoldeth to my hope,  
 Where to thy speech serves for authority,  
 The like of him. Know'st thou this country ?

*Cap.* Ay, madam, well ; for I was bred and born  
 Not three hours' travel from this very place.

*Vio.* Who governs here ?

*Cap.* A noble duke, in nature as in name.

*Vio.* What is his name ?

*Cap.* Orsino.

*Vio.* Orsino ! I have heard my father name him :  
 He was a bachelor then.

*Cap.* And so is now, or was so very late ;  
 For but a month ago I went from hence,  
 And then 'twas fresh in murmur (as, you know,  
 What great ones do, the less will prattle of),  
 That he did seek the love of fair Olivia.

*Vio.* What's she ?

*Cap.* A virtuous maid, the daughter of a count  
 That died some twelvemonth since ; then leaving her  
 In the protection of his son, her brother,  
 Who shortly also died : for whose dear love,  
 They say, she hath abjur'd the company  
 And sight of men. (\*)

*Vio.* O that I serv'd that lady,  
 And might not be deliver'd to the world,  
 Till I had made mine own occasion mellow,  
 What my estate is !

*Cap.* That were hard to compass ;

Because she will admit no kind of suit,  
No, not the duke's.

*Vio.* There is a fair behaviour in thee, captain;  
And though that nature with a beauteous wall  
Doth oft close in pollution, yet of thee  
I will believe thou hast a mind that suits  
With this thy fair and outward character.  
I prithee (and I'll pay thee bounteously),  
Conceal me what I am; and be my aid  
For such disguise as haply shall become  
The form of my intent. I'll serve this duke:  
Thou shalt present me as an eunuch to him:  
It may be worth thy pains; for I can sing,  
And speak to him in many sorts of music,  
That will allow me very worth his service.  
What else may hap, to time I will commit;  
Only shape thou thy silence to my wit.

*Cap.* Be you his eunuch, and your mute I'll be:  
When my tongue blabs, then let mine eyes not see.

*Vio.* I thank thee: lead me on. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *A room in Olivia's house.*

*Enter Sir TOBY BELCH and MARIA.*

*Sir To.* What a plague means my niece, to take the death  
of her brother thus? I am sure care's an enemy to life.

*Mar.* By my troth, Sir Toby, you must come in earlier  
o' nights: your cousin, my lady, takes great exceptions to  
your ill hours.

*Sir To.* Why, let her except before excepted.

*Mar.* Ay, but you must confine yourself within the modest  
limits of order.

*Sir To.* Confine! I'll confine myself no finer than I am:  
these clothes are good enough to drink in; and so be these  
boots too,—an they be not, let them hang themselves in their  
own straps.

*Mar.* That quaffing and drinking will undo you: I heard my lady talk of it yesterday; and of a foolish knight that you brought in one night here to be her wooer.

*Sir To.* Who, Sir Andrew Aguecheek?

*Mar.* Ay, he.

*Sir To.* He's as tall a man as any's in Illyria.

*Mar.* What's that to the purpose?

*Sir To.* Why, he has three thousand ducats a year.

*Mar.* Ay, but he'll have but a year in all these ducats: he's a very fool and a prodigal.

*Sir To.* Fie, that you'll say so! he plays o' the viol-de-gamboys, and speaks three or four languages word for word without book, and hath all the good gifts of nature.

*Mar.* He hath, indeed,—almost natural: for, besides that he's a fool, he's a great quarreller; and, but that he hath the gift of a coward to allay the gust he hath in quarrelling, 'tis thought among the prudent he would quickly have the gift of a grave.

*Sir To.* By this hand, they are scoundrels and substractors that say so of him. Who are they?

*Mar.* They that add, moreover, he's drunk nightly in your company.

*Sir To.* With drinking healths to my niece: I'll drink to her as long as there is a passage in my throat and drink in Illyria: he's a coward and a coistrel that will not drink to my niece till his brains turn o' the toe like a parish-top. What, wench! *Castiliano vulgo*; (3) for here comes Sir Andrew Agueface.

*Enter Sir ANDREW AGUECHEEK.*

*Sir And.* Sir Toby Belch,—how now, Sir Toby Belch!

*Sir To.* Sweet Sir Andrew!

*Sir And.* Bless you, fair shrew.

*Mar.* And you too, sir.

*Sir To.* Accost, Sir Andrew, accost.

*Sir And.* What's that?

*Sir To.* My niece's chambermaid.

*Sir And.* Good Mistress Accost, I desire better acquaintance.

*Mar.* My name is Mary, sir.

*Sir And.* Good Mistress Mary Accost,—

*Sir To.* You mistake, knight: accost is front her, board her, woo her, assail her.

*Sir And.* By my troth, I would not undertake her in this company. Is that the meaning of accost?

*Mar.* Fare you well, gentlemen.

*Sir To.* An thou let part so, Sir Andrew, would thou mightst never draw sword again.

*Sir And.* An you part so, mistress, I would I might never draw sword again. Fair lady, do you think you have fools in hand?

*Mar.* Sir, I have not you by the hand.

*Sir And.* Marry, but you shall have; and here's my hand.

*Mar.* Now, sir, thought is free: I pray you, bring your hand to the buttery-bar, and let it drink.

*Sir And.* Wherefore, sweet-heart? what's your metaphor?

*Mar.* It's dry, sir.

*Sir And.* Why, I think so: I am not such an ass but I can keep my hand dry. But what's your jest?

*Mar.* A dry jest, sir.

*Sir And.* Are you full of them?

*Mar.* Ay, sir, I have them at my fingers' ends: marry, now I let go your hand, I am barren. [*Exit.*]

*Sir To.* O knight, thou lackest a cup of canary: when did I see thee so put down?

*Sir And.* Never in your life, I think; unless you see canary put me down. Methinks sometimes I have no more wit than a Christian or an ordinary man has: but I am a great eater of beef, and I believe that does harm to my wit.

*Sir To.* No question.

*Sir And.* An I thought that, I'd forswear it. I'll ride home to-morrow, Sir Toby.

*Sir To.* *Pourquoi*, my dear knight?

*Sir And.* What is *pourquoi*? do or not do? I would I had bestowed that time in the tongues that I have in fencing, dancing, and bear-baiting: O, had I but followed the arts!

*Sir To.* Then hadst thou had an excellent head of hair.

*Sir And.* Why, would that have mended my hair?

*Sir To.* Past question; for thou seest it will not curl by nature.<sup>(4)</sup>

*Sir And.* But it becomes me well enough, does 't not?

*Sir To.* Excellent; it hangs like flax on a distaff; and I hope to see a housewife take thee between her legs and spin it off.

*Sir And.* Faith, I'll home to-morrow, Sir Toby: your niece will not be seen; or if she be, it's four to one she'll none of me: the count himself here hard by woos her.

*Sir To.* She'll none o' the count: she'll not match above her degree, neither in estate, years, nor wit; I have heard her swear 't. Tut, there's life in 't, man.

*Sir And.* I'll stay a month longer. I am a fellow o' the strangest mind i' the world; I delight in masques and revels sometimes altogether.

*Sir To.* Art thou good at these kickshaws, knight?

*Sir And.* As any man in Illyria, whatsoever he be, under the degree of my betters; and yet I will not compare with an old man.

*Sir To.* What is thy excellence in a galliard, knight?

*Sir And.* Faith, I can cut a caper.

*Sir To.* And I can cut the mutton to 't.

*Sir And.* And I think I have the back-trick simply as strong as any man in Illyria.

*Sir To.* Wherefore are these things hid? wherefore have these gifts a curtain before 'em? are they like to take dust, like Mistress Mall's picture? why dost thou not go to church in a galliard, and come home in a coranto? My very walk should be a jig; I would not so much as make water but in a sink-a-pace. What dost thou mean? is it a world to hide virtues in? I did think, by the excellent constitution of thy leg, it was formed under the star of a galliard.

*Sir And.* Ay, 'tis strong, and it does indifferent well in a flame-coloured stock.<sup>(5)</sup> Shall we set about some revels?

*Sir To.* What shall we do else? were we not born under Taurus?

*Sir And.* Taurus! that's sides and heart.

*Sir To.* No, sir; it is legs and thighs. Let me see thee caper: ha! higher: ha, ha!—excellent! [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV. *An apartment in the Duke's palace.*

*Enter VALENTINE, and VIOLA in man's attire.*

*Val.* If the duke continue these favours towards you, Cesario, you are like to be much advanced : he hath known you but three days, and already you are no stranger.

*Vio.* You either fear his humour or my negligence, that you call in question the continuance of his love : is he inconstant, sir, in his favours ?

*Val.* No, believe me.

*Vio.* I thank you. Here comes the count.

*Enter Duke, CURIO, and Attendants.*

*Duke.* Who saw Cesario, ho ?

*Vio.* On your attendance, my lord ; here.

*Duke.* Stand you awhile aloof.—Cesario,  
Thou know'st no less but all ; I have unclasp'd  
To thee the book even of my secret soul :  
Therefore, good youth, address thy gait unto her ;  
Be not denied access, stand at her doors,  
And tell them, there thy fixèd foot shall grow  
Till thou have audience.

*Vio.* Sure, my noble lord,  
If she be so abandon'd to her sorrow  
As it is spoke, she never will admit me.

*Duke.* Be clamorous, and leap all civil bounds,  
Rather than make unprofited return.

*Vio.* Say I do speak with her, my lord, what then ?

*Duke.* O, then unfold the passion of my love,  
Surprise her with discourse of my dear faith !  
It shall become thee well to act my woes ;  
She will attend it better in thy youth  
Than in a nuncio of more grave aspect.

*Vio.* I think not so, my lord.

*Duke.* Dear lad, believe it ;  
For they shall yet belie thy happy years,  
That say thou art a man : Diana's lip



Is not more smooth and rubious ; thy small pipe  
 Is as the maiden's organ, shrill and sound ;  
 And all is semblative a woman's part.  
 I know thy constellation is right apt  
 For this affair :—some four or five attend him ;  
 All, if you will ; for I myself am best  
 When least in company :—prosper well in this,  
 And thou shalt live as freely as thy lord,  
 To call his fortunes thine.

*Vio.* I'll do my best  
 To woo your lady :—yet [*aside*], a barful strife !  
 Whoe'er I woo, myself would be his wife.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE V. *A room in OLIVIA's house.*

*Enter MARIA and Clown.*

*Mar.* Nay, either tell me where thou hast been, or I will  
 not open my lips so wide as a bristle may enter in way of  
 thy excuse : my lady will hang thee for thy absence.

*Clo.* Let her hang me : he that is well hanged in this  
 world needs to fear no colours.

*Mar.* Make that good.

*Clo.* He shall see none to fear.

*Mar.* A good lenten answer : I can tell thee where that  
 saying was born, of, I fear no colours.

*Clo.* Where, good Mistress Mary ?

*Mar.* In the wars ; and that may you be bold to say in  
 your foolery.

*Clo.* Well, God give them wisdom that have it ; and those  
 that are fools, let them use their talents.

*Mar.* Yet you will be hanged for being so long absent ;  
 or, to be turned away,—is not that as good as a hanging to  
 you ?

*Clo.* Many a good hanging prevents a bad marriage ; and,  
 for turning away, let summer bear it out.

*Mar.* You are resolute, then ?

*Clo.* Not so, neither ; but I am resolved on two points.

*Mar.* That if one break, the other will hold; or, if both break, your gaskins fall.

*Clo.* Apt, in good faith; very apt. Well, go thy way; if Sir Toby would leave drinking, thou wert as witty a piece of Eve's flesh as any in Illyria.

*Mar.* Peace, you rogue, no more o' that. Here comes my lady: make your excuse wisely, you were best. [*Exit.*]

*Clo.* Wit, an't be thy will, put me into good fooling! Those wits, that think they have thee, do very oft prove fools; and I, that am sure I lack thee, may pass for a wise man: for what says Quinapalus? Better a witty fool than a foolish wit.

*Enter OLIVIA and MALVOLIO.*

God bless thee, lady!

*Oli.* Take the fool away.

*Clo.* Do you not hear, fellows? Take away the lady.

*Oli.* Go to, you're a dry fool; I'll no more of you: besides, you grow dishonest.

*Clo.* Two faults, madonna, that drink and good counsel will amend: for give the dry fool drink, then is the fool not dry: bid the dishonest man mend himself; if he mend, he is no longer dishonest; if he cannot, let the botcher mend him: any thing that's mended is but patched: virtue that transgresses is but patched with sin; and sin that amends is but patched with virtue: if that this simple syllogism will serve, so; if it will not, what remedy? As there is no true cuckold but calamity, so beauty's a flower.—The lady bade take away the fool; therefore, I say again, take her away.

*Oli.* Sir, I bade them take away you.

*Clo.* Misprision in the highest degree!—Lady, *cucullus non facit monachum*; that's as much to say as, (6) I wear not motley in my brain. Good madonna, give me leave to prove you a fool.

*Oli.* Can you do it?

*Clo.* Dexteriously, good madonna.

*Oli.* Make your proof.

*Clo.* I must catechize you for it, madonna: good my mouse of virtue, answer me.

*Oli.* Well, sir, for want of other idleness, I'll bide your proof.

*Clo.* Good madonna, why mournest thou?

*Oli.* Good fool, for my brother's death.

*Clo.* I think his soul is in hell, madonna.

*Oli.* I know his soul is in heaven, fool.

*Clo.* The more fool, madonna, to mourn for your brother's soul being in heaven.—Take away the fool, gentlemen.

*Oli.* What think you of this fool, Malvolio? doth he not mend?

*Mal.* Yes, and shall do till the pangs of death shake him: infirmity, that decays the wise, doth ever make the better fool.

*Clo.* God send you, sir, a speedy infirmity, for the better increasing your folly! Sir Toby will be sworn that I am no fox; but he will not pass his word for twopence that you are no fool.

*Oli.* How say you to that, Malvolio?

*Mal.* I marvel your ladyship takes delight in such a barren rascal: I saw him put down the other day with an ordinary fool, that has no more brain than a stone. Look you now, he's out of his guard already; unless you laugh and minister occasion to him, he is gagged. I protest, I take these wise men, that crow so at these set kind of fools, no better than the fools' zanies.

*Oli.* O, you are sick of self-love, Malvolio, and taste with a distempered appetite. To be generous, guiltless, and of free disposition, is to take those things for bird-bolts that you deem cannon-bullets: there is no slander in an allowed fool, though he do nothing but rail; nor no railing in a known discreet man, though he do nothing but reprove.

*Clo.* Now Mercury endue thee with leasing, for thou speakest well of fools!

*Re-enter MARIA.*

*Mar.* Madam, there is at the gate a young gentleman much desires to speak with you.

*Oli.* From the Count Orsino, is it?

*Mar.* I know not, madam: 'tis a fair young man, and well attended.

*Oli.* Who of my people hold him in delay?

*Mar.* Sir Toby, madam, your kinsman.

*Oli.* Fetch him off, I pray you; he speaks nothing but madman: fie on him! [*Exit Maria.*] Go you, Malvolio: if it be a suit from the count, I am sick, or not at home; what you will, to dismiss it. [*Exit Malvolio.*] Now you see, sir, how your fooling grows old, and people dislike it.

*Clo.* Thou hast spoke for us, madonna, as if thy eldest son should be a fool,—whose skull Jove cram with brains! for here he comes, one of thy kin, has a most weak *pia mater*.

*Enter Sir TOBY BELCH.*

*Oli.* By mine honour, half drunk.—What is he at the gate, cousin?

*Sir To.* A gentleman.

*Oli.* A gentleman! what gentleman?

*Sir To.* 'Tis a gentleman here—a plague o' these pickle-herring!—How now, sot!

*Clo.* Good Sir Toby!—

*Oli.* Cousin, cousin, how have you come so early by this lethargy?

*Sir To.* Lechery! I defy lechery. There's one at the gate.

*Oli.* Ay, marry, what is he?

*Sir To.* Let him be the devil, an he will, I care not: give me faith, say I. Well, it's all one. [*Exit.*]

*Oli.* What's a drunken man like, fool?

*Clo.* Like a drowned man, a fool, and a madman: one draught above heat makes him a fool; the second mads him; and a third drowns him.

*Oli.* Go thou and seek the crowner, and let him sit o' my coz; for he's in the third degree of drink,—he's drowned: go, look after him.

*Clo.* He is but mad yet, madonna; and the fool shall look to the madman.

[*Exit.*]

*Re-enter MALVOLIO.*

*Mal.* Madam, yond young fellow swears he will speak with you. I told him you were sick; he takes on him to understand so much, and therefore comes to speak with you: I told him you were asleep; he seems to have a foreknowledge of that too, and therefore comes to speak with you. What is to be said to him, lady? he's fortified against any denial.

*Oli.* Tell him he shall not speak with me.

*Mal.* Has been told so; and he says, he'll stand at your door like a sheriff's post, and be the supporter to a bench, but he'll speak with you.

*Oli.* What kind o' man is he?

*Mal.* Why, of man kind.

*Oli.* What manner of man?

*Mal.* Of very ill manner; he'll speak with you, will you or no.

*Oli.* Of what personage and years is he?

*Mal.* Not yet old enough for a man, nor young enough for a boy; as a squash is before 'tis a peascod, or a codling when 'tis almost an apple: 'tis with him in standing water, between boy and man. He is very well-favoured, and he speaks very shrewishly; one would think his mother's milk were scarce out of him.

*Oli.* Let him approach: call in my gentlewoman.

*Mal.* Gentlewoman, my lady calls. [*Exit.*]

*Re-enter MARIA.*

*Oli.* Give me my veil: come, throw it o'er my face.  
We'll once more hear Orsino's embassy.

*Enter VIOLA.*

*Vio.* The honourable lady of the house, which is she?

*Oli.* Speak to me; I shall answer for her. Your will?

*Vio.* Most radiant, exquisite, and unmatchable beauty,—  
I pray you, tell me if this be the lady of the house, for I never saw her: I would be loth to cast away my speech; for, besides that it is excellently well penned, I have taken

great pains to con it. Good beauties, let me sustain no scorn; I am very comptible, even to the least sinister usage.

*Oli.* Whence came you, sir?

*Vio.* I can say little more than I have studied, and that question's out of my part. Good gentle one, give me modest assurance if you be the lady of the house, that I may proceed in my speech.

*Oli.* Are you a comedian?

*Vio.* No, my profound heart: and yet, by the very fangs of malice I swear I am not that I play. Are you the lady of the house?

*Oli.* If I do not usurp myself, I am.

*Vio.* Most certain, if you are she, you do usurp yourself; for, what is yours to bestow is not yours to reserve. But this is from my commission: I will on with my speech in your praise, and then show you the heart of my message.

*Oli.* Come to what is important in't: I forgive you the praise.

*Vio.* Alas, I took great pains to study it; and 'tis poetical.

*Oli.* It is the more like to be feigned: I pray you, keep it in. I heard you were saucy at my gates; and allowed your approach rather to wonder at you than to hear you. If you be not(?) mad, be gone; if you have reason, be brief: 'tis not that time of moon with me to make one in so skipping a dialogue.

*Mar.* Will you hoist sail, sir? here lies your way.

*Vio.* No, good swabber; I am to hull here a little longer.—Some mollification for your giant, sweet lady.

*Oli.* Tell me your mind.

*Vio.* I am a messenger. (8)

*Oli.* Sure, you have some hideous matter to deliver, when the courtesy of it is so fearful. Speak your office.

*Vio.* It alone concerns your ear. I bring no overture of war, no taxation of homage: I hold the olive in my hand; my words are as full of peace as matter.

*Oli.* Yet you began rudely. What are you? what would you?

*Vio.* The rudeness that hath appeared in me have I learned from my entertainment. What I am, and what I would, are

as secret as maidenhead: to your ears, divinity; to any other's, profanation.

*Oli.* Give us the place alone: we will hear this divinity.

[*Exit Maria.*] Now, sir, what is your text?

*Vio.* Most sweet lady,—

*Oli.* A comfortable doctrine, and much may be said of it.

Where lies your text?

*Vio.* In Orsino's bosom.

*Oli.* In his bosom! In what chapter of his bosom?

*Vio.* To answer by the method, in the first of his heart.

*Oli.* O, I have read it: it is heresy. Have you no more to say?

*Vio.* Good madam, let me see your face.

*Oli.* Have you any commission from your lord to negotiate with my face? you are now out of your text: but we will draw the curtain, and show you the picture. Look you, sir, such a one I was this present: is't not well done?

[*Unveiling.*]

*Vio.* Excellently done, if God did all.

*Oli.* 'Tis in grain, sir; 'twill endure wind and weather.

*Vio.* 'Tis beauty truly blent, whose red and white

Nature's own sweet and cunning hand laid on:

Lady, you are the cruell'st she alive,

If you will lead these graces to the grave,

And leave the world no copy.

*Oli.* O, sir, I will not be so hard-hearted; I will give out divers schedules of my beauty: it shall be inventoried, and every particle and utensil labelled to my will:—as, item, two lips, indifferent red; item, two grey eyes, with lids to them; item, one neck, one chin, and so forth. Were you sent hither to praise me?

*Vio.* I see you what you are,—you are too proud;

But, if you were the devil, you are fair.

My lord and master loves you: O, such love

Could be but recompens'd, though you were crown'd

The nonpareil of beauty!

*Oli.* How does he love me?

*Vio.* With adorations, with<sup>(9)</sup> fertile tears,

With groans that thunder love, with sighs of fire.

*Oli.* Your lord does know my mind ; I cannot love him :  
 Yet I suppose him virtuous, know him noble,  
 Of great estate, of fresh and stainless youth ;  
 In voices well divulg'd, free, learn'd, and valiant ;  
 And, in dimension and the shape of nature,  
 A gracious person : but yet I cannot love him ;  
 He might have took his answer long ago.

*Vio.* If I did love you in my master's flame,  
 With such a suffering, such a deadly life,  
 In your denial I would find no sense ;  
 I would not understand it.

*Oli.* Why, what would you ?

*Vio.* Make me a willow cabin at your gate,  
 And call upon my soul within the house ;  
 Write loyal cantons of contemn'd love,  
 And sing them loud even in the dead of night ;  
 Holla your name to the reverberate hills,  
 And make the babbling gossip of the air  
 Cry out, Olivia ! O, you should not rest  
 Between the elements of air and earth,  
 But you should pity me !

*Oli.* You might do much. What is your parentage ?

*Vio.* Above my fortunes, yet my state is well :  
 I am a gentleman.

*Oli.* Get you to your lord ;  
 I cannot love him : let him send no more ;  
 Unless, perchance, you come to me again,  
 To tell me how he takes it. Fare you well :  
 I thank you for your pains : spend this for me.

*Vio.* I am no fee'd post, lady ; keep your purse :  
 My master, not myself, lacks recompense.  
 Love make his heart of flint, that you shall love ;  
 And let your fervour, like my master's, be  
 Plac'd in contempt ! Farewell, fair cruelty.

[*Exit.*

*Oli.* "What is your parentage ?"  
 "Above my fortunes, yet my state is well :  
 I am a gentleman." I'll be sworn thou art ;  
 Thy tongue, thy face, thy limbs, actions, and spirit,  
 Do give thee five-fold blazon :—not too fast :—soft, soft !



Unless the master were the man.—How now !  
 Even so quickly may one catch the plague ?  
 Methinks I feel this youth's perfections  
 With an invisible and subtle stealth  
 To creep in at mine eyes. Well, let it be.—  
 What ho, Malvolio !

*Re-enter MALVOLIO.*

*Mal.* Here, madam, at your service.

*Oli.* Run after that same peevish messenger,  
 The county's man : he left this ring behind him,  
 Would I or not : tell him I'll none of it.  
 Desire him not to flatter with his lord,  
 Nor hold him up with hopes ; I am not for him :  
 If that the youth will come this way to-morrow,  
 I'll give him reasons for 't. Hie thee, Malvolio.

*Mal.* Madam, I will.

[*Exit.*

*Oli.* I do I know not what ; and fear to find  
 Mine eye too great a flatterer for my mind.  
 Fate, show thy force : ourselves we do not owe ;  
 What is decreed must be,—and be this so !

[*Exit.*

---

## ACT II.

### SCÈNE I. *The sea-coast.*

*Enter ANTONIO and SEBASTIAN.*

*Ant.* Will you stay no longer ? nor will you not that I  
 go with you ?

*Seb.* By your patience, no. My stars shine darkly over  
 me : the malignancy of my fate might perhaps distemper  
 yours ; therefore I shall crave of you your leave that I may  
 bear my evils alone : it were a bad recompense for your love,  
 to lay any of them on you.

*Ant.* Let me yet know of you whither you are bound.

*Seb.* No, sooth, sir: my determinate voyage is mere extravagancy. But I perceive in you so excellent a touch of modesty, that you will not extort from me what I am willing to keep in; therefore it charges me in manners the rather to express myself. You must know of me then, Antonio, my name is Sebastian, which I called Roderigo. My father was that Sebastian of Messaline, whom I know you have heard of. He left behind him myself and a sister, both born in an hour: if the heavens had been pleased, would we had so ended! but you, sir, altered that; for some hour before you took me from the breach of the sea was my sister drowned.

*Ant.* Alas the day!

*Seb.* A lady, sir, though it was said she much resembled me, was yet of many accounted beautiful: but, though I could not with such estimable wonder overfar<sup>(10)</sup> believe that, yet thus far I will boldly publish her,—she bore a mind that envy could not but call fair. She is drowned already, sir, with salt water, though I seem to drown her remembrance again with more.

*Ant.* Pardon me, sir, your bad entertainment.

*Seb.* O good Antonio, forgive me your trouble!

*Ant.* If you will not murder me for my love, let me be your servant.

*Seb.* If you will not undo what you have done, that is, kill him whom you have recovered, desire it not. Fare ye well at once: my bosom is full of kindness; and I am yet so near the manners of my mother, that, upon the least occasion more, mine eyes will tell tales of me. I am bound to the Count Orsino's court: farewell. [Exit.]

*Ant.* The gentleness of all the gods go with thee!  
I have many enemies in Orsino's court,  
Else would I very shortly see thee there:  
But, come what may, I do adore thee so,  
That danger shall seem sport, and I will go. [Exit.]

SCENE II. *A street.*  
[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Enter VIOLA, MALVOLIO following.*

*Mal.* Were not you even now with the Countess Olivia ?

*Vio.* Even now, sir ; on a moderate pace I have since arrived but hither.

*Mal.* She returns this ring to you, sir : you might have saved me my pains, to have taken it away yourself. She adds, moreover, that you should put your lord into a desperate assurance she will none of him : and one thing more, that you be never so hardy to come again in his affairs, unless it be to report your lord's taking of this. Receive it so.

*Vio.* She took the ring of me ;—I'll none of it. <sup>(11)</sup>

*Mal.* Come, sir, you peevishly threw it to her ; and her will is, it should be so returned : if it be worth stooping for, there it lies in your eye ; if not, be it his that finds it. [*Exit.*]

*Vio.* I left no ring with her : what means this lady ?

Fortune forbid, my outside have not charm'd her !

She made good view of me ; indeed, so much,  
 That <sup>(12)</sup> methought her eyes had lost her tongue,  
 For she did speak in starts distractedly.

She loves me, sure ; the cunning of her passion  
 Invites me in this churlish messenger.

None of my lord's ring ! why, he sent her none.

I am the man :—if it be so,—as 'tis,—

Poor lady, she were better love a dream.

Disguise, I see, thou art a wickedness,

Wherein the pregnant enemy does much.

How easy is it for the proper-false

In women's waxen hearts to set their forms !

Alas, our frailty is the cause, not we !

For such as we are made of, <sup>(13)</sup> such we be.

How will this fadge ? my master loves her dearly ;

And I, poor monster, fond as much on him ;

And <sup>(14)</sup> she, mistaken, seems to dote on me.

What will become of this ? As I am man,

My state is desperate for my master's love ;

As I am woman,—now alas the day !—

What thriftless sighs shall poor Olivia breathe!  
 O Time, thou must untangle this, not I;  
 It is too hard a knot for me to untie!

[Exit.]

SCENE III. *A room in Olivia's house.**Enter* Sir TOBY BELCH *and* Sir ANDREW AGUECHEEK.

*Sir To.* Approach, Sir Andrew: not to be a-bed after midnight is to be up betimes; and *diluculo surgere*, thou knowest,—

*Sir And.* Nay, by my troth, I know not: but I know, to be up late is to be up late.

*Sir To.* A false conclusion: I hate it as an unfilled can. To be up after midnight, and to go to bed then, is early: so that, to go to bed after midnight, is to go to bed betimes. Do not our lives consist of the four elements?

*Sir And.* Faith, so they say; but, I think, it rather consists of eating and drinking.

*Sir To.* Thou 'rt a scholar; let us therefore eat and drink.—Marian, I say! a stoop of wine!

*Sir And.* Here comes the fool, i' faith.

*Enter* Clown.

*Clo.* How now, my hearts! did you never see the picture of we three?

*Sir To.* Welcome, ass. Now let's have a catch.

*Sir And.* By my troth, the fool has an excellent breast. I had rather than forty shillings I had such a leg, and so sweet a breath to sing, as the fool has. In sooth, thou wast in very gracious fooling last night, when thou spokest of Picrogromitus, of the Vapians passing the equinoctial of Queubus: 'twas very good, i' faith. I sent thee sixpence for thy leman: hadst it?

*Clo.* I did impetico thy gratillity; for Malvolio's nose is no whipstock: my lady has a white hand, and the Myrmidons are no bottle-ale houses.

*Sir And.* Excellent! why, this is the best fooling, when all is done. Now, a song.

*Sir To.* Come on ; there is sixpence for you : let's have a song.

*Sir And.* There's a testril of me too : if one knight give a—<sup>(15)</sup>

*Clo.* Would you have a love-song, or a song of good life ?

*Sir To.* A love-song, a love-song.

*Sir And.* Ay, ay : I care not for good life.

SONG.

*Clo.* O mistress mine, where are you roaming ?  
O, stay and hear ; your true-love's coming,  
That can sing both high and low :  
Trip no further, pretty sweeting ;  
Journeys end in lovers' meeting,  
Every wise man's son doth know.

*Sir And.* Excellent good, i' faith.

*Sir To.* Good, good.

*Clo.* What is love ? 'tis not hereafter ;  
Present mirth hath present laughter ;  
What's to come is still unsure :  
In delay there lies no plenty ;  
Then come kiss me, sweet-and-twenty,  
Youth's a stuff will not endure.

*Sir And.* A mellifluous voice, as I am true knight.

*Sir To.* A contagious breath.

*Sir And.* Very sweet and contagious, i' faith.

*Sir To.* To hear by the nose, it is dulcet in contagion.  
But shall we make the welkin dance indeed ? shall we rouse  
the night-owl in a catch that will draw three souls out of  
one weaver ? shall we do that ?

*Sir And.* An you love me, let's do 't : I am dog at a catch.

*Clo.* By'r lady, sir, and some dogs will catch well.

*Sir And.* Most certain. Let our catch be, "Thou knave."

*Clo.* "Hold thy peace, thou knave," knight ? I shall be  
constrained in't to call thee knave, knight.

*Sir And.* 'Tis not the first time I have constrained one to  
call me knave. Begin, fool : it begins, "Hold thy peace."

*Clo.* I shall never begin, if I hold my peace.

*Sir And.* Good, i' faith. Come, begin.

[*They sing a catch.*]

*Enter MARIA.*

*Mar.* What a caterwauling do you keep here! If my lady have not called up her steward, Malvolio, and bid him turn you out of doors, never trust me.

*Sir To.* My lady's a Cataian, we are politicians; Malvolio's a Peg-a-Ramsey, and "Three merry men be we." Am not I consanguineous? am I not of her blood? Tilly-vally, lady! There dwelt a man in Babylon, lady, lady! [*Singing.*]

*Clo.* Beshrew me, the knight's in admirable fooling.

*Sir And.* Ay, he does well enough if he be disposed, and so do I too: he does it with a better grace, but I do it more natural.

*Sir To.* O, the twelfth day of December,— [*Singing.*]

*Mar.* For the love o' God, peace!

*Enter MALVOLIO.*

*Mal.* My masters, are you mad? or what are you? Have you no wit, manners, nor honesty, but to gabble like tinkers at this time of night? Do ye make an alehouse of my lady's house, that ye squeak out your cosiers' catches without any mitigation or remorse of voice? Is there no respect of place, persons, nor time, in you?

*Sir To.* We did keep time, sir, in our catches. Snick-up!

*Mal.* Sir Toby, I must be round with you. My lady bade me tell you, that, though she harbours you as her kinsman, she's nothing allied to your disorders. If you can separate yourself and your misdemeanours, you are welcome to the house; if not, an it would please you to take leave of her, she is very willing to bid you farewell.

*Sir To.* Farewell, dear heart, since I must needs be gone.

[*Singing.*(16)]

*Mar.* Nay, good Sir Toby.

*Clo.* His eyes do show his days are almost done. [*Singing.*]

*Mal.* Is't even so?

*Sir To.* But I will never die. [*Singing.*]

*Clo.* Sir Toby, there you lie.

*Mal.* This is much credit to you.

*Sir To.* Shall I bid him go? [*Singing.*]

*Clo.* What an if you do? [*Singing.*]

*Sir To.* Shall I bid him go, and spare not? [*Singing.*]

*Clo.* O no, no, no, no, you dare not. [*Singing.*]

*Sir To.* Out o' time, (17) sir? ye lie.—Art any more than a steward? Dost thou think, because thou art virtuous, there shall be no more cakes and ale?

*Clo.* Yes, by Saint Anne; and ginger shall be hot i' the mouth too.

*Sir To.* Thou 'rt i' the right.—Go, sir, rub your chain with crums.—A stoop of wine, Maria!

*Mal.* Mistress Mary, if you prized my lady's favour at any thing more than contempt, you would not give means for this uncivil rule: she shall know of it, by this hand.

[*Exit.*]

*Mar.* Go shake your ears.

*Sir And.* 'Twere as good a deed as to drink when a man's a-hungry, to challenge him the field, and then to break promise with him, and make a fool of him.

*Sir To.* Do't, knight: I'll write thee a challenge; or I'll deliver thy indignation to him by word of mouth.

*Mar.* Sweet Sir Toby, be patient for to-night: since the youth of the count's was to-day with my lady, she is much out of quiet. For Monsieur Malvolio, let me alone with him: if I do not gull him into a nayword, and make him a common recreation, do not think I have wit enough to lie straight in my bed: I know I can do it.

*Sir To.* Possess us, possess us; tell us something of him.

*Mar.* Marry, sir, sometimes he is a kind of puritan.

*Sir And.* O, if I thought that, I'd beat him like a dog!

*Sir To.* What, for being a puritan? thy exquisite reason, dear knight?

*Sir And.* I have no exquisite reason for't, but I have reason good enough.

*Mar.* The devil a puritan that he is, or any thing constantly, but a time-pleaser; an affectioned ass, that cons state without book, and utters it by great swarths: the best persuaded of himself, so crammed, as he thinks, with excellencies, that it is his grounds of faith, that all that look on him love him; and on that vice in him will my revenge find notable cause to work.

*Sir To.* What wilt thou do?

*Mar.* I will drop in his way some obscure epistles of love; wherein, by the colour of his beard, the shape of his leg, the manner of his gait, the expressure of his eye, forehead, and complexion, he shall find himself most feelingly personated: I can write very like my lady, your niece; on a forgotten matter we can hardly make distinction of our hands.

*Sir To.* Excellent! I smell a device.

*Sir And.* I have't in my nose too.

*Sir To.* He shall think, by the letters that thou wilt drop, that they come from my niece, and that she's in love with him.

*Mar.* My purpose is, indeed, a horse of that colour.

*Sir And.* And your horse now would make him an ass.

*Mar.* Ass, I doubt not.

*Sir And.* O, 'twill be admirable!

*Mar.* Sport royal, I warrant you: I know my physic will work with him. I will plant you two, and let the fool make a third, where he shall find the letter: observe his construction of it. For this night, to bed, and dream on the event. Farewell.

*Sir To.* Good night, Penthesilea. [Exit Maria.]

*Sir And.* Before me, she's a good wench.

*Sir To.* She's a beagle, true-bred, and one that adores me: what o' that?

*Sir And.* I was adored once too.

*Sir To.* Let's to bed, knight.—Thou hadst need send for more money.

*Sir And.* If I cannot recover your niece, I am a foul way out.

*Sir To.* Send for money, knight: if thou hast her not i' the end, call me cut.

*Sir And.* If I do not, never trust me, take it how you will.

*Sir To.* Come, come; I'll go burn some sack; 'tis too late to go to bed now: come, knight; come, knight.

[Exit.]



SCENE IV. *An apartment in the Duke's palace.*[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)*Enter Duke, VIOLA, CURIO, and others.*

*Duke.* Give me some music:—now, good morrow, friends:—  
 Now, good Cesario, but that piece of song,  
 That old and antique song we heard last night:  
 Methought it did relieve my passion much,  
 More than light airs and recollected terms  
 Of these most brisk and giddy-pacèd times:—  
 Come, but one verse.

*Cur.* He is not here, so please your lordship, that should sing it.

*Duke.* Who was it?

*Cur.* Feste, the jester, my lord; a fool that the Lady Olivia's father took much delight in: he is about the house.

*Duke.* Seek him out:—and play the tune the while.

[*Exit Curio. Music.*]

Come hither, boy: if ever thou shalt love,  
 In the sweet pangs of it remember me;  
 For such as I am all true lovers are,—  
 Unstaid and skittish in all motions else,  
 Save in the constant image of the creature  
 That is belov'd.—How dost thou like this tune?

*Vio.* It gives a very echo to the seat  
 Where Love is thron'd.

*Duke.* Thou dost speak masterly:  
 My life upon 't, young though thou art, thine eye  
 Hath stay'd upon some favour that it loves;—  
 Hath it not, boy?

*Vio.* A little, by your favour.

*Duke.* What kind of woman is 't?

*Vio.* Of your complexion.

*Duke.* She is not worth thee, then. What years, i' faith?

*Vio.* About your years, my lord.

*Duke.* Too old, by heaven: let still the woman take  
 An elder than herself; so wears she to him,  
 So sways she level in her husband's heart:  
 For, boy, however we do praise ourselves,

Our fancies are more giddy and unfirm,  
 More longing, wavering, sooner lost and worn,  
 Than women's are.

*Vio.* I think it well, my lord.

*Duke.* Then let thy love be younger than thyself,  
 Or thy affection cannot hold the bent ;  
 For women are as roses, whose fair flower  
 Being once display'd, doth fall that very hour.

*Vio.* And so they are : alas, that they are so,—  
 To die, even when they to perfection grow !

*Re-enter CURIO with Clown.*

*Duke.* O, fellow, come, the song we had last night.—  
 Mark it, Cesario ; it is old and plain :  
 The spinsters and the knitters in the sun,  
 And the free maids that weave their thread with bones,  
 Do use to chant it : it is silly sooth,  
 And dallies with the innocence of love,  
 Like the old age.

*Clo.* Are you ready, sir ?

*Duke.* Ay ; prithee, sing.

[*Music.*

SONG.

*Clo.* Come away, come away, death,  
 And in sad cypress let me be laid ;  
 Fly away, fly away, breath ;  
 I am slain by a fair cruel maid.  
 My shroud of white, stuck all with yew,  
 O, prepare it !  
 My part of death, no one so true  
 Did share it.

Not a flower, not a flower sweet,  
 On my black coffin let there be strown ;  
 Not a friend, not a friend greet  
 My poor corpse, where my bones shall be thrown :  
 A thousand thousand sighs to save,  
 Lay me, O, where  
 Sad true lover never find my grave,  
 To weep there !

*Duke.* There's for thy pains.

*Clo.* No pains, sir; I take pleasure in singing, sir.

*Duke.* I'll pay thy pleasure then.

*Clo.* Truly, sir, and pleasure will be paid, one time or another.

*Duke.* Give me now leave to leave thee. (18)

*Clo.* Now, the melancholy god protect thee; and the tailor make thy doublet of changeable taffeta, for thy mind is a very opal!—I would have men of such constancy put to sea, that their business might be every thing, and their intent every where; for that's it that always makes a good voyage of nothing.—Farewell. [Exit.

*Duke.* Let all the rest give place.

[*Exeunt Curio and Attendants.*

Once more, Cesario,

Get thee to yond same sovereign cruelty :  
Tell her, my love, more noble than the world,  
Prizes not quantity of dirty lands ;  
The parts that fortune hath bestow'd upon her,  
Tell her, I hold as giddily as fortune ;  
But 'tis that miracle and queen of gems,  
That nature pranks her in, attracts my soul.

*Vio.* But if she cannot love you, sir ?

*Duke.* I cannot be so answer'd. (19)

*Vio.* Sooth, but you must.

Say that some lady, as, perhaps, there is,  
Hath for your love as great a pang of heart  
As you have for Olivia : you cannot love her ;  
You tell her so ; must she not, then, be answer'd ?

*Duke.* There is no woman's sides  
Can bide the beating of so strong a passion  
As love doth give my heart ; no woman's heart  
So big, to hold so much : they lack retention.  
Alas, their love may be call'd appetite,—  
No motion of the liver, but the palate,—  
That suffer surfeit, cloyment, and revolt ;  
But mine is all as hungry as the sea,  
And can digest as much : make no compare

Between that love a woman can bear me  
And that I owe Olivia.

*Vio.* Ay, but I know,—

*Duke.* What dost thou know?

*Vio.* Too well what love women to men may owe:  
In faith, they are as true of heart as we.  
My father had a daughter lov'd a man,  
As it might be, perhaps, were I a woman,  
I should your lordship.

*Duke.* And what's her history?

*Vio.* A blank, my lord. She never told her love,  
But let concealment, like a worm i' the bud,  
Feed on her damask cheek: she pin'd in thought;  
And, with a green and yellow melancholy,  
She sat like patience on a monument,  
Smiling at grief. Was not this love indeed?  
We men may say more, swear more: but, indeed,  
Our shows are more than will; for still we prove  
Much in our vows, but little in our love.

*Duke.* But died thy sister of her love, my boy?

*Vio.* I am all the daughters of my father's house,  
And all the brothers too;—and yet I know not.—  
Sir, shall I to this lady?

*Duke.* Ay, that's the theme.

To her in haste; give her this jewel; say,  
My love can give no place, bide no deny.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE V. *Olivia's garden.*

*Enter* SIR TOBY BELCH, SIR ANDREW AGUECHECK, *and* FABIAN.

*Sir To.* Come thy ways, Signior Fabian.

*Fab.* Nay, I'll come: if I lose a scruple of this sport, let me be boiled to death with melancholy.

*Sir To.* Wouldst thou not be glad to have the niggardly rascally sheep-biter come by some notable shame?

*Fab.* I would exult, man: you know, he brought me out o' favour with my lady about a bear-baiting here.

*Sir To.* To anger him, we'll have the bear again; and we will fool him black and blue:—shall we not, Sir Andrew?

*Sir And.* An we do not, it is pity of our lives.

*Sir To.* Here comes the little villain.

*Enter MARIA.*

How now, my metal<sup>(30)</sup> of India!

*Mar.* Get ye all three into the box-tree: Malvolio's coming down this walk: he has been yonder i' the sun, practising behaviour to his own shadow this half hour: observe him, for the love of mockery; for I know this letter will make a contemplative idiot of him. Close, in the name of jesting! [*The men hide themselves.*] Lie thou there [*throws down a letter*]; for here comes the trout that must be caught with tickling. [*Exit.*]

*Enter MALVOLIO.*

*Mal.* 'Tis but fortune; all is fortune. Maria once told me she did affect me: and I have heard herself come thus near, that, should she fancy, it should be one of my complexion. Besides, she uses me with a more exalted respect than any one else that follows her. What should I think on't?

*Sir To.* Here's an overweening rogue!

*Fab.* O, peace! Contemplation makes a rare turkey-cock of him: how he jets under his advanced plumes!

*Sir And.* 'Slight, I could so beat the rogue!

*Sir To.* Peace, I say.

*Mal.* To be Count Malvolio,—

*Sir To.* Ah, rogue!

*Sir And.* Pistol him, pistol him.

*Sir To.* Peace, peace!

*Mal.* There is example for't; the lady of the Strachy married the yeoman of the wardrobe.

*Sir And.* Fie on him, Jezebel!

*Fab.* O, peace! now he's deeply in: look how imagination blows him.

*Mal.* Having been three months married to her, sitting in my state,—

*Sir To.* O, for a stone-bow, to hit him in the eye!

*Mal.* Calling my officers about me, in my branched velvet gown; having come from a day-bed, where I have left Olivia sleeping,—

*Sir To.* Fire and brimstone!

*Fab.* O, peace, peace!

*Mal.* And then to have the humour of state; and after a demure travel of regard,—telling them I know my place, as I would they should do theirs,—to ask for my kinsman Toby,—

*Sir To.* Bolts and shackles!

*Fab.* O, peace, peace, peace! now, now.

*Mal.* Seven of my people, with an obedient start, make out for him: I frown the while; and perchance wind up my watch, or play with my some rich jewel.<sup>(21)</sup> Toby approaches; courtesies there to me,—

*Sir To.* Shall this fellow live?

*Fab.* Though our silence be drawn from us with cars,<sup>(22)</sup> yet peace.

*Mal.* I extend my hand to him thus, quenching my familiar smile with an austere regard of control,—

*Sir To.* And does not Toby take you a blow o' the lips then?

*Mal.* Saying, "Cousin Toby, my fortunes having cast me on your niece, give me this prerogative of speech,"—

*Sir To.* What, what?

*Mal.* "You must amend your drunkenness."

*Sir To.* Out, scab!

*Fab.* Nay, patience, or we break the sinews of our plot.

*Mal.* "Besides, you waste the treasure of your time with a foolish knight,"—

*Sir And.* That's me, I warrant you.

*Mal.* "One Sir Andrew,"—

*Sir And.* I knew 'twas I; for many do call me fool.

*Mal.* What employment have we here?

[*Taking up the letter.*]

*Fab.* Now is the woodcock near the gin.

*Sir To.* O, peace! and the spirit of humours intimate reading aloud to him!

*Mal.* By my life, this is my lady's hand: these be her

very C's, her U's, and her T's; and thus makes she her great P's. It is, in contempt of question, her hand.

*Sir And.* Her C's, her U's, and her T's: why that?

*Mal.* [reads] "To the unknown beloved, this, and my good wishes:" her very phrases!—By your leave, wax.—Soft!—and the impressure her Lucrece, with which she uses to seal: 'tis my lady. To whom should this be?

*Fab.* This wins him, liver and all.

*Mal.* [reads] "Jove knows, I love:

But who?

Lips do not move;

No man must know."

"No man must know."—What follows? the numbers altered! —"No man must know:"—if this should be thee, Malvolio?

*Sir To.* Marry, hang thee, brock!

*Mal.* [reads] "I may command where I adore;

But silence, like a Lucrece' knife,

With bloodless stroke my heart doth gore:

M, O, A, I, doth sway my life."

*Fab.* A fustian riddle!

*Sir To.* Excellent wench, say I.

*Mal.* "M, O, A, I, doth sway my life."—Nay, but first, let me see,—let me see,—let me see.

*Fab.* What dish o' poison has she dressed him!

*Sir To.* And with what wing the staniel<sup>(23)</sup> checks at it!

*Mal.* "I may command where I adore." Why, she may command me: I serve her; she is my lady. Why, this is evident to any formal capacity; there is no obstruction in this:—and the end,—what should that alphabetical position portend? if I could make that resemble something in me,—Softly!—M, O, A, I,—

*Sir To.* O, ay, make up that:—he is now at a cold scent.

*Fab.* Sowter will cry upon't, for all this, though it be as rank as a fox.

*Mal.* M,—Malvolio;—M,—why, that begins my name.

*Fab.* Did not I say he would work it out? the cur is excellent at faults.

*Mal.* M,—but then there is no consonancy in the sequel; that suffers under probation: A should follow, but O does.

*Fab.* And O shall end, I hope.

*Sir To.* Ay, or I'll cudgel him, and make him cry O!

*Mal.* And then I comes behind.

*Fab.* Ay, an you had any eye behind you, you might see more detraction at your heels than fortunes before you.

*Mal.* M, O, A, I;—this simulation is not as the former:—and yet, to crush this a little, it would bow to me, for every one of these letters are in my name. Soft! here follows prose.—[*Reads.*] “If this fall into thy hand, revolve. In my stars I am above thee; but be not afraid of greatness: some are born<sup>(24)</sup> great, some achieve greatness, and some have greatness thrust upon 'em. Thy Fates open their hands; let thy blood and spirit embrace them. And, to inure thyself to what thou art like to be, cast thy humble slough, and appear fresh. Be opposite with a kinsman, surly with servants; let thy tongue tang arguments of state; put thyself into the trick of singularity: she thus advises thee that sighs for thee. Remember who commended thy yellow stockings, and wished to see thee ever cross-gartered: I say, remember. Go to, thou art made, if thou desirest to be so; if not, let me see thee a steward still, the fellow of servants, and not worthy to touch Fortune's fingers. Farewell. She that would alter services with thee,

THE FORTUNATE-UNHAPPY.”

Daylight and champain<sup>(25)</sup> discovers not more: this is open. I will be proud, I will read politic authors, I will baffle Sir Toby, I will wash off gross acquaintance, I will be point-de-vise, the very man. I do not now fool myself, to let imagination jade me; for every reason excites to this, that my lady loves me. She did commend my yellow stockings of late, she did praise my leg being cross-gartered; and in this she manifests herself to my love, and, with a kind of injunction, drives me to these habits of her liking. I thank my stars, I am happy. I will be strange, stout, in yellow stockings, and cross-gartered, even with the swiftness of putting on. Jove and my stars be praised!—Here is yet a postscript. [*Reads.*] “Thou canst not choose but know who I am. If thou entertainest my love, let it appear in thy smiling: thy smiles become thee well; therefore in my presence still smile, dear my sweet, I prithee.” Jove, I thank thee.—I will smile; I will do every thing that thou wilt have me. [*Exit.*]



*Fab.* I will not give my part of this sport for a pension of thousands to be paid from the Sophy.

*Sir To.* I could marry this wench for this device,—

*Sir And.* So could I too.

*Sir To.* And ask no other dowry with her but such another jest.

*Sir And.* Nor I neither.

*Fab.* Here comes my noble gull-catcher.

*Re-enter MARIA.*

*Sir To.* Wilt thou set thy foot o' my neck?

*Sir And.* Or o' mine either?

*Sir To.* Shall I play my freedom at tray-trip, and become thy bond-slave?

*Sir And.* I' faith, or I either?

*Sir To.* Why, thou hast put him in such a dream, that, when the image of it leaves him, he must run mad.

*Mar.* Nay, but say true; does it work upon him?

*Sir To.* Like aqua-vitæ with a midwife.

*Mar.* If you will, then, see the fruits of the sport, mark his first approach before my lady: he will come to her in yellow stockings, and 'tis a colour she abhors, and cross-gartered, a fashion she detests; and he will smile upon her, which will now be so unsuitable to her disposition, being addicted to a melancholy as she is, that it cannot but turn him into a notable contempt. If you will see it, follow me.

*Sir To.* To the gates of Tartar,<sup>(26)</sup> thou most excellent devil of wit!

*Sir And.* I'll make one too.

[*Exeunt.*]

---



---

## ACT III.

### SCENE I. OLIVIA'S garden.

*Enter VIOLA, and Clown with a tabor.*

*Vio.* Save thee, friend, and thy music: dost thou live by thy tabor?

*Clo.* No, sir, I live by the church.

*Vio.* Art thou a churchman?

*Clo.* No such matter, sir: I do live by the church; for I do live at my house, and my house doth stand by the church.

*Vio.* So thou mayst say, the king lies by a beggar, if a beggar dwell near him; or, the church stands by thy tabor, if thy tabor stand by the church.

*Clo.* You have said, sir.—To see this age!—A sentence is but a cheveril glove to a good wit: how quickly the wrong side may be turned outward!

*Vio.* Nay, that's certain; they that dally nicely with words may quickly make them wanton.

*Clo.* I would, therefore, my sister had had no name, sir.

*Vio.* Why, man?

*Clo.* Why, sir, her name's a word; and to dally with that word might make my sister wanton. But, indeed, words are very rascals, since bonds disgraced them.

*Vio.* Thy reason, man?

*Clo.* Troth, sir, I can yield you none without words; and words are grown so false, I am loth to prove reason with them.

*Vio.* I warrant thou art a merry fellow, and carest for nothing.

*Clo.* Not so, sir, I do care for something; but in my conscience, sir, I do not care for you: if that be to care for nothing, sir, I would it would make you invisible.

*Vio.* Art not thou the Lady Olivia's fool?

*Clo.* No, indeed, sir; the Lady Olivia has no folly: she will keep no fool, sir, till she be married; and fools are as like husbands as pilchers are to herrings,—the husband's the bigger: I am, indeed, not her fool, but her corrupter of words.

*Vio.* I saw thee late at the Count Orsino's.

*Clo.* Foolery, sir, does walk about the orb; like the sun, it shines every where. I would be sorry, sir, but the fool should be as oft with your master as with my mistress: I think I saw your wisdom there.

*Vio.* Nay, an thou pass upon me, I'll no more with thee. Hold, there's expenses for thee.

*Clo.* Now Jove, in his next commodity of hair, send thee a beard!

*Vio.* By my troth, I'll tell thee,—I am almost sick for one; though I would not have it grow on my chin. Is thy lady within?

*Clo.* Would not a pair of these have bred, sir?

*Vio.* Yes, being kept together and put to use.

*Clo.* I would play Lord Pandarus of Phrygia, sir, to bring a Cressida to this Troilus.

*Vio.* I understand you, sir; 'tis well begged.

*Clo.* The matter, I hope, is not great, sir, begging but a beggar: Cressida was a beggar. My lady is within, sir. I will construe<sup>(27)</sup> to them whence you come; who you are, and what you would, are out of my welkin,—I might say element, but the word is over-worn. [*Exit.*]

*Vio.* This fellow is wise enough to play the fool;  
And to do that well craves a kind of wit:  
He must observe their mood on whom he jests,  
The quality of persons, and the time;  
Not,<sup>(28)</sup> like the haggard, check at every feather  
That comes before his eye. This is a practice  
As full of labour as a wise man's art:  
For folly, that he wisely shows, is fit;  
But wise men, folly-fallen, quite taint their wit.<sup>(29)</sup>

*Enter Sir TOBY BELCH and Sir ANDREW AGUECHEEK.*

*Sir To.* Save you, gentleman.

*Vio.* And you, sir.

*Sir And.* *Dieu vous garde, monsieur.*

*Vio.* *Et vous aussi; votre serviteur.*

*Sir And.* I hope, sir, you are; and I am yours.

*Sir To.* Will you encounter the house? my niece is desirous you should enter, if your trade be to her.

*Vio.* I am bound to your niece, sir; I mean, she is the list of my voyage.

*Sir To.* Taste your legs, sir; put them to motion.

*Vio.* My legs do better understand me, sir, than I understand what you mean by bidding me taste my legs.

*Sir To.* I mean, to go, sir, to enter.

*Vio.* I will answer you with gait and entrance:—but we are prevented.

*Enter OLIVIA and MARIA.*

Most excellent accomplished lady, the heavens rain odours on you!

*Sir And.* That youth's a rare courtier: "Rain odours:"—well.

*Vio.* My matter hath no voice, lady, but to your own most pregnant and vouchsafed ear.

*Sir And.* "Odours," "pregnant," and "vouchsafed:"—I'll get 'em all three all ready.

*Oli.* Let the garden-door be shut, and leave me to my hearing. [*Exeunt Sir Toby, Sir Andrew, and Maria.*] Give me your hand, sir.

*Vio.* My duty, madam, and most humble service.

*Oli.* What is your name?

*Vio.* Cesario is your servant's name, fair princess.

*Oli.* My servant, sir! 'Twas never merry world Since lowly feigning was call'd compliment: You're servant to the Count Orsino, youth.

*Vio.* And he is yours, and his must needs be yours: Your servant's servant is your servant, madam.

*Oli.* For him, I think not on him: for his thoughts, Would they were blanks, rather than fill'd with me!

*Vio.* Madam, I come to whet your gentle thoughts On his behalf:—

*Oli.* O, by your leave, I pray you,— I bade you never speak again of him: But, would you undertake another suit, I had rather hear you to solicit that Than music from the spheres.

*Vio.* Dear lady,—

*Oli.* Give me leave, beseech you. I did send, After the last enchantment you did here, A ring in chase of you: so did I abuse Myself, my servant, and, I fear me, you: Under your hard construction must I sit, To force that on you, in a shameful cunning,

Which you knew none of yours: what might you think?  
 Have you not set mine honour at the stake,  
 And baited it with all the unmuzzled thoughts  
 That tyrannous heart can think? To one of your receiving  
 Enough is shown: a cyprus, not a bosom,  
 Hides my heart. So, let me hear you speak.

*Vio.* I pity you.

*Oli.* That's a degree to love.

*Vio.* No, not a grise; for 'tis a vulgar proof,  
 That very oft we pity enemies.

*Oli.* Why, then, methinks 'tis time to smile again.  
 O world, how apt the poor are to be proud!  
 If one should be a prey, how much the better  
 To fall before the lion than the wolf!

[*Clock strikes.*]

The clock upbraids me with the waste of time.—  
 Be not afraid, good youth, I will not have you:  
 And yet, when wit and youth is come to harvest,  
 Your wife is like to reap a proper man:  
 There lies your way, due west.

*Vio.* Then westward-ho!—

Grace and good disposition attend your ladyship!  
 You'll nothing, madam, to my lord by me?

*Oli.* Stay:

I prithee, tell me what thou think'st of me.

*Vio.* That you do think you are not what you are.

*Oli.* If I think so, I think the same of you.

*Vio.* Then think you right: I am not what I am.

*Oli.* I would you were as I would have you be!

*Vio.* Would it be better, madam, than I am,  
 I wish it might; for now I am your fool.

*Oli.* O, what a deal of scorn looks beautiful  
 In the contempt and anger of his lip!  
 A murderous guilt shows not itself more soon  
 Than love that would seem hid: love's night is noon.  
 Cesario, by the roses of the spring,  
 By maidhood, honour, truth, and every thing,  
 I love thee so, that, maugre all thy<sup>(30)</sup> pride,  
 Nor wit nor reason can my passion hide.

Do not extort thy reasons from this clause,  
 For that I woo, thou therefore hast no cause;  
 But, rather, reason thus with reason fetter,—  
 Love sought is good, but given unsought is better.

*Vio.* By innocence I swear, and by my youth,  
 I have one heart, one bosom, and one truth,—  
 And that no woman has; nor never none  
 Shall mistress be of it, save I alone.  
 And so adieu, good madam: never more  
 Will I my master's tears to you deplore.

*Oli.* Yet come again; for thou perhaps mayst move  
 That heart, which now abhors, to like his love. [Exeunt.]

---

SCENE II. *A room in OLIVIA'S house.*

*Enter* SIR TOBY BELCH, SIR ANDREW AGUECREEK, *and* FABIAN.

*Sir And.* No, faith, I'll not stay a jot longer.

*Sir To.* Thy reason, dear venom, give thy reason.

*Fab.* You must needs yield your reason, Sir Andrew.

*Sir And.* Marry, I saw your niece do more favours to the count's serving-man than ever she bestowed upon me; I saw 't i' the orchard.

*Sir To.* Did she see thee the while, old boy? tell me that.

*Sir And.* As plain as I see you now.

*Fab.* This was a great argument of love in her toward you.

*Sir And.* 'Slight, will you make an ass o' me?

*Fab.* I will prove it legitimate, sir, upon the oaths of judgment and reason.

*Sir To.* And they have been grand-jurymen since before Noah was a sailor.

*Fab.* She did show favour to the youth in your sight only to exasperate you, to awake your dormouse valour, to put fire in your heart, and brimstone in your liver. You should then have accosted her; and with some excellent jests, fire-new from the mint, you should have banged the youth into dumbness. This was looked for at your hand,

and this was balked: the double gilt of this opportunity you let time wash off, and you are now sailed into the north of my lady's opinion; where you will hang like an icicle on a Dutchman's beard, unless you do redeem it by some laudable attempt either of valour or policy.

*Sir And.* An't be any way, it must be with valour; for policy I hate: I had as lief be a Brownist as a politician.

*Sir To.* Why, then, build me thy fortunes upon the basis of valour. Challenge me the count's youth to fight with him; hurt him in eleven places: my niece shall take note of it; and assure thyself, there is no love-broker in the world can more prevail in man's commendation with woman than report of valour.

*Fab.* There is no way but this, Sir Andrew.

*Sir And.* Will either of you bear me a challenge to him?

*Sir To.* Go, write it in a martial hand; be curst and brief; it is no matter how witty, so it be eloquent and full of invention: taunt him with the license of ink: if thou "thou'st" him some thrice, it shall not be amiss; and as many lies as will lie in thy sheet of paper, although the sheet were big enough for the bed of Ware in England, set 'em down: go, about it. Let there be gall enough in thy ink; though thou write with a goose-pen, no matter: about it.

*Sir And.* Where shall I find you?

*Sir To.* We'll call thee at the *cubiculo*: go.

[*Exit Sir Andrew.*]

*Fab.* This is a dear manakin to you, Sir Toby.

*Sir To.* I have been dear to him, lad,—some two thousand strong, or so.

*Fab.* We shall have a rare letter from him: but you'll not deliver 't?

*Sir To.* Never trust me, then; and by all means stir on the youth to an answer. I think oxen and wainropes cannot hale them together. For Andrew, if he were opened, and you find so much blood in his liver as will clog the foot of a flea, I'll eat the rest of the anatomy.

*Fab.* And his opposite, the youth, bears in his visage no great presage of cruelty.

*Sir To.* Look, where the youngest wren of nine<sup>(31)</sup> comes.

*Enter MARIA.*

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Mar.* If you desire the spleen, and will laugh yourselves into stitches, follow me. Yond gull Malvolio is turned heathen, a very renegado; for there is no Christian, that means to be saved by believing rightly, can ever believe such impossible passages of grossness. He's in yellow stockings.

*Sir To.* And cross-gartered?

*Mar.* Most villanously; like a pedant that keeps a school i' the church.—I have dogged him, like his murderer. He does obey every point of the letter that I dropped to betray him: he does smile his face into more lines than are in the new map, with the augmentation of the Indies: you have not seen such a thing as 'tis; I can hardly forbear hurling things at him. I know my lady will strike him: if she do, he'll smile, and take 't for a great favour.

*Sir To.* Come, bring us, bring us where he is. [*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE III. *A street.*

*Enter SEBASTIAN and ANTONIO.*

*Seb.* I would not, by my will, have troubled you;  
But, since you make your pleasure of your pains,  
I will no further chide you.

*Ant.* I could not stay behind you: my desire,  
More sharp than filèd steel, did spur me forth;  
And not all love to see you (though so much  
As might have drawn one to a longer voyage),  
But jealousy what might befall your travel,  
Being skillless in these parts; which to a stranger,  
Unguided and unfriended, often prove  
Rough and inhospitable: my willing love,  
The rather by these arguments of fear,  
Set forth in your pursuit.

*Seb.* My kind Antonio,  
I can no other answer make, but thanks,



And thanks, and ever thanks ; and oft good turns<sup>(39)</sup>  
 Are shuffled off with such uncurrent pay :  
 But, were my worth, as is my conscience, firm,  
 You should find better dealing. What's to do ?  
 Shall we go see the relics of this town ?

*Ant.* To-morrow, sir : best first go see your lodging.

*Seb.* I am not weary, and 'tis long to night :

I pray you, let us satisfy our eyes  
 With the memorials and the things of fame  
 That do renown this city.

*Ant.* Would you'd pardon me ;

I do not without danger walk these streets :  
 Once, in a sea-fight, 'gainst the count his galleys  
 I did some service ; of such note, indeed,  
 That, were I ta'en here, it would scarce be answer'd.

*Seb.* Belike you slew great number of his people ?

*Ant.* The offence is not of such a bloody nature ;  
 Albeit the quality of the time and quarrel  
 Might well have given us bloody argument.  
 It might have since been answer'd in repaying  
 What we took from them ; which, for traffic's sake,  
 Most of our city did : only myself stood out ;  
 For which, if I be lapsèd in this place,  
 I shall pay dear.

*Seb.* Do not, then, walk too open.

*Ant.* It doth not fit me. Hold, sir, here's my purse.  
 In the south suburbs, at the Elephant,  
 Is best to lodge : I will bespeak our diet,  
 Whiles you beguile the time and feed your knowledge  
 With viewing of the town : there shall you have me.

*Seb.* Why I your purse ?

*Ant.* Haply your eye shall light upon some toy  
 You have desire to purchase ; and your store,  
 I think, is not for idle markets, sir.

*Seb.* I'll be your purse-bearer, and leave you for  
 An hour.

*Ant.* To the Elephant.

*Seb.* I do remember. [Exeunt.

www.libriox.org.cn SCENE IV. OLIVIA'S garden.

*Enter OLIVIA and MARIA.*

*Oli.* I have sent after him : he says he'll come ;—  
How shall I feast him ? what bestow of him ?  
For youth is bought more oft than begg'd or borrow'd.  
I speak too loud.—  
Where is Malvolio ?—he is sad and civil,  
And suits well for a servant with my fortunes :—  
Where is Malvolio ?

*Mar.* He's coming, madam ; but in very strange manner.  
He is, sure, possessed, madam.

*Oli.* Why, what's the matter ? does he rave ?

*Mar.* No, madam, he does nothing but smile : your ladyship were best to have some guard about you, if he come ; for, sure, the man is tainted in 's wits.

*Oli.* Go call him hither. [*Exit Maria.*] I am as mad as he,  
If sad and merry madness equal be.

*Re-enter MARIA, with MALVOLIO.*

How now, Malvolio !

*Mal.* Sweet lady, ho, ho. [*Smiles fantastically.*]

*Oli.* Smil'st thou ?

I sent for thee upon a sad occasion.

*Mal.* Sad, lady ! I could be sad : this does make some obstruction in the blood, this cross-gartering ; but what of that ? if it please the eye of one, it is with me as the very true sonnet is, " Please one, and please all."

*Oli.* Why, how dost thou, man ? what is the matter with thee ?

*Mal.* Not black in my mind, though yellow in my legs. It did come to his hands, and commands shall be executed : I think we do know the sweet Roman hand.

*Oli.* Wilt thou go to bed, Malvolio ?

*Mal.* To bed ! ay, sweet-heart ; and I'll come to thee.

*Oli.* God comfort thee ! Why dost thou smile so, and kiss thy hand so oft ?

*Mar.* How do you, Malvolio ?

*Mal.* At your request! yes; nightingales answer daws.

*Mar.* Why appear you with this ridiculous boldness before my lady?

*Mal.* "Be not afraid of greatness:"—'twas well writ.

*Oli.* What meanest thou by that, Malvolio?

*Mal.* "Some are born great,"—

*Oli.* Ha!

*Mal.* "Some achieve greatness,"—

*Oli.* What sayest thou?

*Mal.* "And some have greatness thrust upon them."

*Oli.* Heaven restore thee!

*Mal.* "Remember who commended thy yellow stockings,"—

*Oli.* Thy<sup>(33)</sup> yellow stockings!

*Mal.* "And wished to see thee cross-gartered."

*Oli.* Cross-gartered!

*Mal.* "Go to, thou art made, if thou desirest to be so;"—

*Oli.* Am I made?

*Mal.* "If not, let me see thee a servant still."

*Oli.* Why, this is very midsummer madness.

*Enter Servant.*

*Ser.* Madam, the young gentleman of the Count Orsino's is returned: I could hardly entreat him back: he attends your ladyship's pleasure.

*Oli.* I'll come to him. [*Exit Servant.*] Good Maria, let this fellow be looked to. Where's my cousin Toby? Let some of my people have a special care of him: I would not have him miscarry for the half of my dowry.

[*Exeunt Olivia and Maria.*]

*Mal.* Oh, ho! do you come near me now? no worse man than Sir Toby to look to me? This concurs directly with the letter: she sends him on purpose, that I may appear stubborn to him; for she incites me to that in the letter. "Cast thy humble slough," says she; "be opposite with a kinsman, surly with servants; let thy tongue tang with arguments of state; put thyself into the trick of singularity;"—and, consequently, sets down the manner how; as, a sad face, a reverend carriage, a slow tongue, in the habit of some sir of

note, and so forth. I have limed her; but it is Jove's doing, and Jove make me thankful! And, when she went away now, "Let this fellow be looked to:" fellow! not Malvolio, nor after my degree, but fellow. Why, every thing adheres together, that no dram of a scruple, no scruple of a scruple, no obstacle, no incredulous or unsafe circumstance—What can be said? Nothing, that can be, can come between me and the full prospect of my hopes. Well, Jove, not I, is the doer of this, and he is to be thanked.

*Re-enter MARIA with Sir TOBY BELCH and FABIAN.*

*Sir To.* Which way is he, in the name of sanctity? If all the devils of hell be drawn in little, and Legion himself possessed him, yet I'll speak to him.

*Fab.* Here he is, here he is.—How is't with you, sir? how is't with you, man?

*Mal.* Go off; I discard you: let me enjoy my private: go off.

*Mar.* Lo, how hollow the fiend speaks within him! did not I tell you?—Sir Toby, my lady prays you to have a care of him.

*Mal.* Ah, ha! does she so?

*Sir To.* Go to, go to; peace, peace; we must deal gently with him: let me alone.—How do you, Malvolio? how is't with you? What, man! defy the devil: consider, he's an enemy to mankind.

*Mal.* Do you know what you say?

*Mar.* La you, an you speak ill of the devil, how he takes it at heart! Pray God, he be not bewitched!

*Fab.* Carry his water to the wise woman.

*Mar.* Marry, and it shall be done to-morrow morning, if I live. My lady would not lose him for more than I'll say.

*Mal.* How now, mistress!

*Mar.* O Lord!

*Sir To.* Prithee, hold thy peace; this is not the way: do you not see you move him? let me alone with him.

*Fab.* No way but gentleness; gently, gently: the fiend is rough, and will not be roughly used.

*Sir To.* Why, how now, my bawcock! how dost thou, chuck?

*Mal.* Sir!

*Sir To.* Ay, Bidy, come with me. What, man! 'tis not for gravity to play at cherry-pit with Satan: hang him, foul collier!

*Mar.* Get him to say his prayers; good Sir Toby, get him to pray.

*Mal.* My prayers, minx!

*Mar.* No, I warrant you, he will not hear of godliness.

*Mal.* Go, hang yourselves all! you are idle shallow things: I am not of your element: you shall know more hereafter. [*Exit.*

*Sir To.* Is 't possible?

*Fab.* If this were played upon a stage now, I could condemn it as an improbable fiction.

*Sir To.* His very genius hath taken the infection of the device, man.

*Mar.* Nay, pursue him now, lest the device take air, and taint.

*Fab.* Why, we shall make him mad indeed.

*Mar.* The house will be the quieter.

*Sir To.* Come, we'll have him in a dark room and bound. My niece is already in the belief that he 's mad: we may carry it thus, for our pleasure and his penance, till our very pastime, tired out of breath, prompt us to have mercy on him: at which time we will bring the device to the bar, and crown thee for a finder of madmen.—But see, but see.

*Fab.* More matter for a May morning.

*Enter Sir ANDREW AGUECHEEK.*

*Sir And.* Here's the challenge, read it: I warrant there's vinegar and pepper in 't.

*Fab.* Is 't so saucy?

*Sir And.* Ay, is 't, I warrant him: do but read.

*Sir To.* Give me. [*Reads.*] "Youth, whatsoever thou art, thou art but a scurvy fellow."

*Fab.* Good, and valiant.

*Sir To.* [*reads.*] "Wonder not, nor admire not in thy mind, why I do call thee so, for I will show thee no reason for 't."

*Fab.* A good note: that keeps you from the blow of the law.

*Sir To.* *[reads.]* "Thou comest to the Lady Olivia, and in my sight she uses thee kindly: but thou liest in thy throat; that is not the matter I challenge thee for."

*Fab.* Very brief, and to exceeding good sense—less.

*Sir To.* *[reads.]* "I will waylay thee going home; where if it be thy chance to kill me,"—

*Fab.* Good.

*Sir To.* *[reads.]* "Thou killest me like a rogue and a villain."

*Fab.* Still you keep o' the windy side of the law: good.

*Sir To.* *[reads.]* "Fare thee well; and God have mercy upon one of our souls! He may have mercy upon mine; but my hope is better, and so look to thyself. Thy friend, as thou usest him, and thy sworn enemy,  
ANDREW AGUECHEEK."
 If this letter move him not, his legs cannot: I'll give 't him.

*Mar.* You may have very fit occasion for 't: he is now in some commerce with my lady, and will by and by depart.

*Sir To.* Go, Sir Andrew; scout me for him at the corner of the orchard, like a bum-bailie: so soon as ever thou seest him, draw; and, as thou drawest, swear horrible; for it comes to pass oft, that a terrible oath, with a swaggering accent sharply twanged off, gives manhood more approbation than ever proof itself would have earned him. Away!

*Sir And.* Nay, let me alone for swearing. *[Exit.]*

*Sir To.* Now will not I deliver his letter: for the behaviour of the young gentleman gives him out to be of good capacity and breeding; his employment between his lord and my niece confirms no less: therefore this letter, being so excellently ignorant, will breed no terror in the youth,—he will find it comes from a clodpole. But, sir, I will deliver his challenge by word of mouth; set upon Aguecheek a notable report of valour; and drive the gentleman (as I know his youth will aptly receive it) into a most hideous opinion of his rage, skill, fury, and impetuosity. This will so fright them both, that they will kill one another by the look, like cockatrices.

*Fab.* Here he comes with your niece: give them way till he take leave, and presently after him.

*Sir To.* I will meditate the while upon some horrid message for a challenge. [*Exeunt Sir Toby, Fabian, and Maria.*]

*Re-enter OLIVIA, with VIOLA.*

*Oli.* I have said too much unto a heart of stone,  
And laid mine honour too uncharly out: <sup>(34)</sup>  
There's something in me that reproves my fault;  
But such a headstrong potent fault it is,  
That it but mocks reproof.

*Vio.* With the same 'haviour that your passion bears,  
Go on my master's griefs.

*Oli.* Here, wear this jewel for me,—'tis my picture;  
Refuse it not; it hath no tongue to vex you:  
And, I beseech you, come again to-morrow.  
What shall you ask of me that I'll deny,  
That honour, sav'd, may upon asking give?

*Vio.* Nothing but this,—your true love for my master.

*Oli.* How with mine honour may I give him that  
Which I have given to you?

*Vio.* I will acquit you.

*Oli.* Well, come again to-morrow: fare thee well:  
A fiend like thee might bear my soul to hell. [*Exit.*]

*Re-enter Sir TOBY BELCH and FABIAN.*

*Sir To.* Gentleman, God save thee.

*Vio.* And you, sir.

*Sir To.* That defence thou hast, betake thee to't: of what nature the wrongs are thou hast done him, I know not; but thy interceptor, full of despite, bloody as the hunter, attends thee at the orchard-end: dismount thy tuck, be yare in thy preparation; for thy assailant is quick, skilful, and deadly.

*Vio.* You mistake, sir, I am sure; no man hath any quarrel to me: my remembrance is very free and clear from any image of offence done to any man.

*Sir To.* You'll find it otherwise, I assure you: therefore,

if you hold your life at any price, betake you to your guard; for your opposite hath in him what youth, strength, skill, and wrath can furnish man withal.

*Vio.* I pray you, sir, what is he?

*Sir To.* He is knight, dubbed with unhatched rapier and on carpet consideration; but he is a devil in private brawl: souls and bodies hath he divorced three; and his incensement at this moment is so implacable, that satisfaction can be none but by pangs of death and sepulchre: hob, nob, is his word; give 't or take 't.

*Vio.* I will return again into the house, and desire some conduct of the lady. I am no fighter. I have heard of some kind of men that put quarrels purposely on others, to taste their valour: belike this is a man of that quirk.

*Sir To.* Sir, no; his indignation derives itself out of a very competent injury: therefore, get you on, and give him his desire. Back you shall not to the house, unless you undertake that with me which with as much safety you might answer him: therefore, on, or strip your sword stark naked; for meddle you must, that's certain, or forswear to wear iron about you.

*Vio.* This is as uncivil as strange. I beseech you, do me this courteous office, as to know of the knight what my offence to him is: it is something of my negligence, nothing of my purpose.

*Sir To.* I will do so.—Signior Fabian, stay you by this gentleman till my return. [*Exit.*

*Vio.* Pray you, sir, do you know of this matter?

*Fab.* I know the knight is incensed against you, even to a mortal arbitrement; but nothing of the circumstance more.

*Vio.* I beseech you, what manner of man is he?

*Fab.* Nothing of that wonderful promise, to read him by his form, as you are like to find him in the proof of his valour. He is, indeed, sir, the most skilful, bloody, and fatal opposite that you could possibly have found in any part of Illyria. Will you walk towards him? I will make your peace with him, if I can.

*Vio.* I shall be much bound to you for't: I am one that



had rather go with sir priest than sir knight: I care not who knows so much of my mettle. [Exeunt.

www.libtool.com.cn

SCENE V. *The street adjoining OLIVIA'S garden.*

*Enter* SIR TOBY BELCH *and* SIR ANDREW AGUECHEEK.<sup>(26)</sup>

*Sir To.* Why, man, he's a very devil; I have not seen such a firago. I had a pass with him, rapier, scabbard, and all, and he gives me the stuck in with such a mortal motion, that it is inevitable; and on the answer, he pays you as surely as your feet hit the ground they step on: they say he has been fencer to the Sophy.

*Sir And.* Pox on 't, I'll not meddle with him.

*Sir To.* Ay, but he will not now be pacified: Fabian can scarce hold him yonder.

*Sir And.* Plague on 't, an I thought he had been valiant and so cunning in fence, I'd have seen him damned ere I'd have challenged him. Let him let the matter slip, and I'll give him my horse, grey Capulet.

*Sir To.* I'll make the motion: stand here, make a good show on 't: this shall end without the perdition of souls.—[*Aside.*] Marry, I'll ride your horse as well as I ride you.

*Enter* FABIAN *and* VIOLA.

I have his horse [*to Fab.*] to take up the quarrel: I have persuaded him the youth's a devil.

*Fab.* He is as horribly conceited of him; and pants and looks pale, as if a bear were at his heels.

*Sir To.* [*to Vio.*] There's no remedy, sir; he will fight with you for 's oath-sake: marry, he hath better bethought him of his quarrel, and he finds that now scarce to be worth talking of: therefore draw, for the supportance of his vow; he protests he will not hurt you.

*Vio.* Pray God defend me! A little thing would make me tell them how much I lack of a man. [Aside.]

*Fab.* Give ground, if you see him furious.

*Sir To.* Come, Sir Andrew, there's no remedy; the gentleman will, for his honour's sake, have one bout with you; he

cannot by the duello avoid it: but he has promised me, as he is a gentleman and a soldier, he will not hurt you. Come on; [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Sir And.* Pray God, he keep his oath! [Draws.]

*Vio.* I do assure you, 'tis against my will. [Draws.]

*Enter ANTONIO.*

*Ant.* Put up your sword. If this young gentleman Have done offence, I take the fault on me: If you offend him, I for him defy you. [Drawing.]

*Sir To.* You, sir! why, what are you?

*Ant.* One, sir, that for his love dares yet do more Than you have heard him brag to you he will.

*Sir To.* Nay, if you be an undertaker, I am for you.

[Draws.]

*Fab.* O good Sir Toby, hold! here come the officers.

*Sir To.* I'll be with you anon. [To Antonio.]

*Vio.* Pray, sir, put your sword up, if you please.

[To Sir Andrew.]

*Sir And.* Marry, will I, sir; — and, for that I promised you, I'll be as good as my word: he will bear you easily, and reins well.

*Enter Officers.*

*First Off.* This is the man; do thy office.

*Sec. Off.* Antonio, I arrest thee at the suit Of Count Orsino.

*Ant.* You do mistake me, sir.

*First Off.* No, sir, no jot; I know your favour well, Though now you have no sea-cap on your head.— Take him away: he knows I know him well.

*Ant.* I must obey.—This comes [to *Vio.*] with seeking you: But there's no remedy; I shall answer it. What will you do, now my necessity Makes me to ask you for my purse? It grieves me Much more for what I cannot do for you Than what befalls myself. You stand amaz'd; But be of comfort.

*Sec. Off.* Come, sir, away.

*Ant.* I must entreat of you some of that money.

*Vio.* What money, sir?

For the fair kindness you have show'd me here,  
And, part, being prompted by your present trouble,  
Out of my lean and low ability  
I'll lend you something: my having is not much;  
I'll make division of my present with you:  
Hold, there 's half my coffer.

*Ant.* Will you deny me now?

Is 't possible that my deserts to you  
Can lack persuasion? Do not tempt my misery,  
Lest that it make me so unsound a man  
As to upbraid you with those kindnesses  
That I have done for you.

*Vio.* I know of none;

Nor know I you by voice or any feature:  
I hate ingratitude more in a man  
Than lying, vainness, babbling, drunkenness,  
Or any taint of vice whose strong corruption  
Inhabits our frail blood.

*Ant.* O heavens themselves!

*Sec. Off.* Come, sir, I pray you, go.

*Ant.* Let me speak a little. This youth that you see here  
I snatch'd one half out of the jaws of death;  
Reliev'd him with such sanctity of love,—  
And to his image, which methought did promise  
Most venerable<sup>(36)</sup> worth, did I devotion.

*First Off.* What's that to us? The time goes by: away!

*Ant.* But O how vile an idol proves this god!—

Thou hast, Sebastian, done good feature shame.—  
In nature there's no blemish but the mind;  
None can be call'd deform'd but the unkind:  
Virtue is beauty; but the beauteous-evil  
Are empty trunks, o'erflourish'd by the devil.

*First Off.* The man grows mad: away with him!—Come,  
come, sir.

*Ant.* Lead me on. [*Exeunt Officers with Antonio.*]

*Vio.* Methinks his words do from such passion fly,  
That he believes himself: so do not I.

Prove true, imagination, O, prove true,  
That I, dear brother, be now ta'en for you!

*Sir To.* Come hither, knight; come hither, Fabian: we'll  
whisper o'er a couplet or two of most sage saws.

*Vio.* He nam'd Sebastian: I my brother know  
Yet living in my glass; even such, and so,  
In favour was my brother; and he went  
Still in this fashion, colour, ornament,—  
For him I imitate: O, if it prove,  
Tempests are kind, and salt waves fresh in love! [Exit.

*Sir To.* A very dishonest paltry boy, and more a coward  
than a hare: his dishonesty appears in leaving his friend here  
in necessity, and denying him; and for his cowardship, ask  
Fabian.

*Fab.* A coward, a most devout coward, religious in it.

*Sir And.* 'Slid, I'll after him again, and beat him.

*Sir To.* Do; cuff him soundly, but never draw thy sword.

*Sir And.* An I do not,— [Exit.

*Fab.* Come, let's see the event.

*Sir To.* I dare lay any money 'twill be nothing yet.  
[Exit.

## ACT IV.

### SCENE I. *The street adjoining OLIVIA'S garden.*

*Enter SEBASTIAN and Clown.*

*Clo.* Will you make me believe that I am not sent for you?

*Seb.* Go to, go to, thou art a foolish fellow:

Let me be clear of thee.

*Clo.* Well held out, i' faith! No, I do not know you;  
nor I am not sent to you by my lady, to bid you come speak  
with her; nor your name is not Master Cesario; nor this is  
not my nose neither. Nothing that is so is so.

*Seb.* I prithee, vent thy folly somewhere else:  
Thou know'st not me.

*Clo.* Vent my folly! he has heard that word of some

great man, and now applies it to a fool: vent my folly! I am afraid this great lubber, the world, will prove a cockney. —I prithee, now, unguard thy strangeness, and tell me what I shall vent to my lady: shall I vent to her that thou art coming?

*Seb.* I prithee, foolish Greek, depart from me:

There's money for thee: if you tarry longer,  
I shall give worse payment.

*Clo.* By my troth, thou hast an open hand.—These wise men, that give fools money, get themselves a good report after fourteen years' purchase.

*Enter Sir ANDREW AGUECHEEK.*

*Sir And.* Now, sir, have I met you again? there's for you.

[*Striking Sebastian.*]

*Seb.* Why, there's for thee, and there, and there.—

Are all the people mad?

[*Beating Sir Andrew.*]

*Enter Sir TOBY BELCH and FABIAN.*

*Sir To.* Hold, sir, or I'll throw your dagger o'er the house.

*Clo.* This will I tell my lady straight: I would not be in some of your coats for twopence. [Exit.]

*Sir To.* Come on, sir; hold. [Holding Sebastian.]

*Sir And.* Nay, let him alone: I'll go another way to work with him; I'll have an action of battery against him, if there be any law in Illyria: though I struck him first, yet it's no matter for that.

*Seb.* Let go thy hand.

*Sir To.* Come, sir, I will not let you go. Come, my young soldier, put up your iron: you are well fleshed; come on.

*Seb.* I will be free from thee. [*Disengages himself.*] What wouldst thou now?

If thou dar'st tempt me further, draw thy sword.

*Sir To.* What, what? Nay, then I must have an ounce or two of this malapert blood from you. [Draws.]

*Enter OLIVIA.*

*Oli.* Hold, Toby; on thy life, I charge thee, hold!

*Sir To.* Madam—

*Oli.* Will it be ever thus? Ungracious wretch,

Fit for the mountains and the barbarous caves,  
Where manners ne'er were preach'd! out of my sight!—  
Be not offended, dear Cesario.—

Rudesby, be gone!—I prithee, gentle friend,

[*Exeunt Sir Toby, Sir Andrew, and Fabian.*]

Let thy fair wisdom, not thy passion, sway  
In this uncivil and unjust extent  
Against thy peace. Go with me to my house;  
And hear thou there how many fruitless pranks  
This ruffian hath botch'd up, that thou thereby  
Mayst smile at this: thou shalt not choose but go:  
Do not deny. Beshrew his soul for me,  
He started one poor heart of mine in thee.

*Seb.* What relish is in this? how runs the stream?

Or I am mad, or else this is a dream:

Let fancy still my sense in Lethe steep;

If it be thus to dream, still let me sleep!

*Oli.* Nay, come, I prithee: would thou'dst be rul'd by me!

*Seb.* Madam, I will.

*Oli.* O, say so, and so be! [*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE II. *A room in OLIVIA'S house.*

*Enter MARIA and Clown.*

*Mar.* Nay, I prithee, put on this gown and this beard;  
make him believe thou art Sir Topas the curate: do it  
quickly; I'll call Sir Toby the whilst. [*Exit.*]

*Clo.* Well, I'll put it on, and I will dissemble myself in 't;  
and I would I were the first that ever dissembled in such a  
gown. I am not tall<sup>(37)</sup> enough to become the function well;  
nor lean enough to be thought a good student: but to be  
said an honest man and a good housekeeper, goes as fairly as  
to say a careful man and a great scholar. The competitors  
enter.

*Enter Sir TOBY BELCH and MARIA.*

*Sir To.* Jove bless thee, master parson.

*Clo.* *Bonos dies*, Sir Toby: for, as the old hermit of

Prague, that never saw pen and ink, very wittily said to a niece of King Gorboduc, "That that is is;" so I, being master parson, am master parson; for, what is that but that, and is but is?

*Sir To.* To him, Sir Topas.

*Clo.* What, ho, I say,—peace in this prison!

*Sir To.* The knave counterfeits well; a good knave.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Who calls there?

*Clo.* Sir Topas the curate, who comes to visit Malvolio the lunatic.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Sir Topas, Sir Topas, good Sir Topas, go to my lady.

*Clo.* Out, hyperbolical fiend! how vexest thou this man! talkest thou nothing but of ladies?

*Sir To.* Well said, master parson.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Sir Topas, never was man thus wronged: good Sir Topas, do not think I am mad: they have laid me here in hideous darkness.

*Clo.* Fie, thou dishonest Satan! I call thee by the most modest terms; for I am one of those gentle ones that will use the devil himself with courtesy: sayest thou that house is dark?

*Mal.* [*within.*] As hell, Sir Topas.

*Clo.* Why, it hath bay-windows transparent as barricadoes, and the clear-stories<sup>(38)</sup> toward the south-north are as lustrous as ebony; and yet complainest thou of obstruction?

*Mal.* [*within.*] I am not mad, Sir Topas: I say to you, this house is dark.

*Clo.* Madman, thou errest: I say, there is no darkness but ignorance; in which thou art more puzzled than the Egyptians in their fog.

*Mal.* [*within.*] I say, this house is as dark as ignorance, though ignorance were as dark as hell; and I say, there was never man thus abused. I am no more mad than you are: make the trial of it in any constant question.

*Clo.* What is the opinion of Pythagoras concerning wild-fowl?

*Mal.* [*within.*] That the soul of our grandam might haply inhabit a bird.

*Clo.* What thinkest thou of his opinion?

*Mal.* [*within.*] I think nobly of the soul, and no way approve his opinion.

*Clo.* Fare thee well. Remain thou still in darkness: thou shalt hold the opinion of Pythagoras ere I will allow of thy wits; and fear to kill a woodcock, lest thou dispossess the soul of thy grandam. Fare thee well.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Sir Topas, Sir Topas,—

*Sir To.* My most exquisite Sir Topas!

*Clo.* Nay, I am for all waters.

*Mar.* Thou mightst have done this without thy beard and gown: he sees thee not.

*Sir To.* To him in thine own voice, and bring me word how thou findest him: I would we were well rid of this knavery. If he may be conveniently delivered, I would he were; for I am now so far in offence with my niece, that I cannot pursue with any safety this sport to the upshot. Come by and by to my chamber. [*Exeunt Sir Toby and Maria.*]

*Clo.* [*singing.*] Hey, Robin, jolly Robin,  
Tell me how thy lady does.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Fool,—

*Clo.* [*singing.*] My lady is unkind, perdy.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Fool,—

*Clo.* [*singing.*] Alas, why is she so?

*Mal.* [*within.*] Fool, I say,—

*Clo.* [*singing.*] She loves another—Who calls, ha?

*Mal.* [*within.*] Good fool, as ever thou wilt deserve well at my hand, help me to a candle, and pen, ink, and paper: as I am a gentleman, I will live to be thankful to thee for 't.

*Clo.* Master Malvolio!

*Mal.* [*within.*] Ay, good fool.

*Clo.* Alas, sir, how fell you besides your five wits?

*Mal.* [*within.*] Fool, there was never man so notoriously abused: I am as well in my wits, fool, as thou art.

*Clo.* But as well? then you are mad indeed, if you be no better in your wits than a fool.

*Mal.* [*within.*] They have here propertied me; keep me in darkness, send ministers to me, asses, and do all they can to face me out of my wits.



*Clo.* Advise you what you say; the minister is here.—  
Malvolio, Malvolio, thy wits the heavens restore! endeavour  
thyself to sleep, and leave thy vain bible-babble.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Sir Topas,—

*Clo.* Maintain no words with him, good fellow.—Who, I,  
sir? not I, sir. God b' wi' you, good Sir Topas.—Marry,  
amen.—I will, sir, I will.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Fool, fool, fool, I say,—

*Clo.* Alas, sir, be patient. What say you, sir? I am  
shent for speaking to you.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Good fool, help me to some light and some  
paper: I tell thee, I am as well in my wits as any man in  
Illyria.

*Clo.* Well-a-day, that you were, sir!

*Mal.* [*within.*] By this hand, I am. Good fool, some ink,  
paper, and light; and convey what I will set down to my  
lady: it shall advantage thee more than ever the bearing of  
letter did.

*Clo.* I will help you to't. But tell me true, are you not  
mad indeed? or do you but counterfeit?

*Mal.* [*within.*] Believe me, I am not; I tell thee true.

*Clo.* Nay, I'll ne'er believe a madman till I see his brains.  
I will fetch you light, and paper, and ink.

*Mal.* [*within.*] Fool, I'll requite it in the highest degree:  
I prithee, be gone.

*Clo.* [*singing.*] I am gone, sir,

And anon, sir,  
I'll be with you again,  
In a trice,  
Like to the old vice,  
Your need to sustain;

Who, with dagger of lath,  
In his rage and his wrath,  
Cries, ah, ha! to the devil:  
Like a mad lad,  
Pare thy nails, dad;  
Adieu, goodman drivell.<sup>(89)</sup>

[*Exit.*]

## SCENE III. OLIVIA'S garden.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Enter* SEBASTIAN.

*Seb.* This is the air ; that is the glorious sun ;  
 This pearl she gave me, I do feel 't and see 't :  
 And though 'tis wonder that enwraps me thus,  
 Yet 'tis not madness. Where's Antonio, then ?  
 I could not find him at the Elephant :  
 Yet there he was ; and there I found this credit,  
 That he did range the town to seek me out.  
 His counsel now might do me golden service ;  
 For though my soul disputes well with my sense,  
 That this may be some error, but no madness,  
 Yet doth this accident and flood of fortune  
 So far exceed all instance, all discourse,  
 That I am ready to distrust mine eyes,  
 And wrangle with my reason, that persuades me  
 To any other trust but that I am mad,—  
 Or else the lady's mad ; yet, if 'twere so,  
 She could not sway her house, command her followers,  
 Take and give back affairs, and their dispatch,  
 With such a smooth, discreet, and stable bearing,  
 As I perceive she does : there's something in 't  
 That is deceivable. But here the lady comes.

*Enter* OLIVIA and a Priest.

*Oli.* Blame not this haste of mine. If you mean well,  
 Now go with me and with this holy man  
 Into the chantry by : there, before him,  
 And underneath that consecrated roof,  
 Plight me the full assurance of your faith ;  
 That my most jealous and too doubtful soul  
 May live at peace : he shall conceal it,  
 Whiles you are willing it shall come to note,  
 What time we will our celebration keep,  
 According to my birth.—What do you say ?

*Seb.* I'll follow this good man, and go with you ;  
 And, having sworn truth, ever will be true.

*Oli.* Then lead the way, good father;—and heavens so shine,  
That they may fairly note this act of mine! [*Exeunt.*]

---



---

## ACT V.

SCENE I. *The street before OLIVIA'S house.*

*Enter Clown and FABIAN.*

*Fab.* Now, as thou lovest me, let me see his letter.

*Clo.* Good Master Fabian, grant me another request.

*Fab.* Any thing.

*Clo.* Do not desire to see this letter.

*Fab.* This is, to give a dog, and, in recompense, desire my dog again.

*Enter Duke, VIOLA, CURIO, and Attendants.*

*Duke.* Belong you to the Lady Olivia, friends?

*Clo.* Ay, sir; we are some of her trappings.

*Duke.* I know thee well: how dost thou, my good fellow?

*Clo.* Truly, sir, the better for my foes, and the worse for my friends.

*Duke.* Just the contrary; the better for thy friends.

*Clo.* No, sir, the worse.

*Duke.* How can that be?

*Clo.* Marry, sir, they praise me, and make an ass of me; now my foes tell me plainly I am an ass: so that by my foes, sir, I profit in the knowledge of myself; and by my friends I am abused: so that, conclusions to be as kisses, if your four negatives make your two affirmatives, why, then, the worse for my friends, and the better for my foes.

*Duke.* Why, this is excellent.

*Clo.* By my troth, sir, no; though it please you to be one of my friends.

*Duke.* Thou shalt not be the worse for me: there's gold.

*Clo.* But that it would be double-dealing, sir, I would you could make it another.

*Duke.* O, you give me ill counsel.

*Clo.* Put your grace in your pocket, sir, for this once, and let your flesh and blood obey it.

*Duke.* Well, I will be so much a sinner to be a double-dealer: there's another.

*Clo.* *Primo, secundo, tertio*, is a good play; and the old saying is, the third pays for all: the *triplex*, sir, is a good tripping measure; or the bells of Saint Bennet, sir, may put you in mind,—one, two, three.

*Duke.* You can fool no more money out of me at this throw: if you will let your lady know I am here to speak with her, and bring her along with you, it may awake my bounty further.

*Clo.* Marry, sir, lullaby to your bounty till I come again. I go, sir; but I would not have you to think that my desire of having is the sin of covetousness: but, as you say, sir, let your bounty take a nap, I will awake it anon. [*Exit.*]

*Vio.* Here comes the man, sir, that did rescue me.

*Enter Officers, with ANTONIO.*

*Duke.* That face of his I do remember well;  
Yet, when I saw it last, it was besmear'd  
As black as Vulcan in the smoke of war:  
A bawbling vessel was he captain of,  
For shallow draught and bulk unprizable;  
With which such scathful grapple did he make  
With the most noble bottom of our fleet,  
That very envy and the tongue of loss  
Cried fame and honour on him.—What's the matter?

*First Off.* Orsino, this is that Antonio  
That took the Phoenix and her fraught from Candy;  
And this is he that did the Tiger board,  
When your young nephew Titus lost his leg:  
Here in the streets, desperate of shame and state,  
In private brabble did we apprehend him.

*Vio.* He did me kindness, sir; drew on my side;  
But, in conclusion, put strange speech upon me,—  
I know not what 'twas, but distraction.

*Duke.* Notable pirate! thou salt-water thief!

What foolish boldness brought thee to their mercies,  
Whom thou, in terms so bloody and so dear,  
Hast made thine enemies?

*Ant.* Orsino, noble sir,  
Be pleas'd that I shake off these names you give me :  
Antonio never yet was thief or pirate,  
Though, I confess, on base and ground enough,  
Orsino's enemy. A witchcraft drew me hither :  
That most ingrateful boy there by your side,  
From the rude sea's enrag'd and foamy mouth  
Did I redeem ; a wreck past hope he was :  
His life I gave him, and did thereto add  
My love, without retention or restraint,  
All his in dedication ; for his sake  
Did I expose myself, pure for his love,  
Into the danger of this adverse town ;  
Drew to defend him when he was beset :  
Where being apprehended, his false cunning  
(Not meaning to partake with me in danger)  
Taught him to face me out of his acquaintance,  
And grew a twenty-years-removèd thing  
While one would wink ; denied me mine own purse,  
Which I had recommended to his use  
Not half an hour before.

*Vio.* How can this be ?

*Duke.* When came he to this town ?

*Ant.* To-day, my lord ; and for three months before  
(No interim, not a minute's vacancy)  
Both day and night did we keep company.

*Duke.* Here comes the countess : now heaven walks on  
earth.—

But for thee, fellow,—fellow, thy words are madness :  
Three months this youth hath tended upon me ;  
But more of that anon.—Take him aside.

*Enter OLIVIA and Attendants.*

*Oli.* What would my lord, but that he may not have,  
Wherein Olivia may seem serviceable ?—  
Cesario, you do not keep promise with me.

*Vio.* Madam!

*Duke.* Gracious Olivia,—

*Oli.* What do you say, Cesario?—Good my lord,—

*Vio.* My lord would speak; my duty hushes me.

*Oli.* If it be aught to the old tune, my lord,

It is as fat and fulsome to mine ear

As howling after music.

*Duke.* Still so cruel?

*Oli.* Still so constant, lord.

*Duke.* What, to perverseness? you uncivil lady,  
To whose ingrate and unauspicious altars  
My soul the faithfull'st offerings hath breath'd out  
That e'er devotion tender'd! What shall I do?

*Oli.* Even what it please my lord, that shall become him.

*Duke.* Why should I not, had I the heart to do it,  
Like to the Egyptian thief at point of death,  
Kill what I love? a savage jealousy  
That sometime savours nobly.—But hear me this:  
Since you to non-regardance cast my faith,  
And that I partly know the instrument  
That screws me from my true place in your favour,  
Live you, the marble-breasted tyrant, still;  
But this your minion, whom I know you love,  
And whom, by heaven I swear, I tender dearly,  
Him will I tear out of that cruel eye,  
Where he sits crownèd in his master's spite.—  
Come, boy, with me; my thoughts are ripe in mischief:  
I'll sacrifice the lamb that I do love,  
To spite a raven's heart within a dove. [Going.]

*Vio.* And I, most jocund, apt, and willingly,  
To do you rest, a thousand deaths would die. [Following.]

*Oli.* Where goes Cesario?

*Vio.* After him I love  
More than I love these eyes, more than my life,  
More, by all mores, than e'er I shall love wife.  
If I do feign, you witnesses above  
Punish my life for tainting of my love!

*Oli.* Aye me, detested! how am I beguil'd!

*Vio.* Who does beguile you? who does do you wrong?

*Oli.* Hast thou forgot thyself? is it so long?—  
Call forth the holy father. [*Exit an Attendant.*]

*Duke.* [www.libtool.com](http://www.libtool.com) Come, away! [*To Viola,*]

*Oli.* Whither, my lord?—Cesario, husband, stay.

*Duke.* Husband!

*Oli.* Ay, husband: can he that deny?

*Duke.* Her husband, sirrah!

*Vio.* No, my lord, not I.

*Oli.* Alas, it is the baseness of thy fear  
That makes thee strangle thy propriety:  
Fear not, Cesario; take thy fortunes up;  
Be that thou know'st thou art, and then thou art  
As great as that thou fear'st.

*Re-enter Attendant, with Priest.*

O, welcome, father!

Father, I charge thee, by thy reverence,  
Here to unfold (though lately we intended  
To keep in darkness what occasion now  
Reveals before 'tis ripe) what thou dost know  
Hath newly pass'd between this youth and me.

*Priest.* A contract of eternal bond of love,  
Confirm'd by mutual joinder of your hands,  
Attested by the holy close of lips,  
Strengthen'd by interchangement of your rings;  
And all the ceremony of this compáct  
Seal'd in my function, by my testimony:  
Since when, my watch hath told me, toward my grave  
I have travell'd but two hours.

*Duke.* O thou dissembling cub! what wilt thou be  
When time hath sow'd a grizzle on thy case?  
Or will not else thy craft so quickly grow,  
That thine own trip shall be thine overthrow?  
Farewell, and take her; but direct thy feet  
Where thou and I henceforth may never meet.

*Vio.* My lord, I do protest,—

*Oli.* O, do not swear!  
Hold little faith, though thou hast too much fear.

*Enter Sir ANDREW AGUECHEEK, with his head broken.*

*Sir And.* For the love of God, a surgeon! send one presently to Sir Toby.

*Oli.* What's the matter?

*Sir And.* Has broke my head across, and has given Sir Toby a bloody coxcomb too: for the love of God, your help! I had rather than forty pound I were at home.

*Oli.* Who has done this, Sir Andrew?

*Sir And.* The count's gentleman, one Cesario: we took him for a coward, but he's the very devil incardinate.

*Duke.* My gentleman, Cesario?

*Sir And.* 'Od's lifelings, here he is!—You broke my head for nothing; and that that I did, I was set on to do 't by Sir Toby.

*Vio.* Why do you speak to me? I never hurt you: You drew your sword upon me without cause; But I bespake you fair, and hurt you not.

*Sir And.* If a bloody coxcomb be a hurt, you have hurt me: I think you set nothing by a bloody coxcomb.—Here comes Sir Toby halting,—you shall hear more: but if he had not been in drink, he would have tickled you othergates than he did.

*Enter Sir TOBY BELCH, led by the Clown.*

*Duke.* How now, gentleman! how is 't with you?

*Sir To.* That's all one: has hurt me, and there's the end on 't.—Sot, didst see Dick surgeon, sot?

*Clo.* O, he's drunk, Sir Toby, an hour ago; his eyes were set at eight i' the morning.

*Sir To.* Then he's a rogue and a passy-measures pavin: I hate a drunken rogue.

*Oli.* Away with him! Who hath made this havoc with them?

*Sir And.* I'll help you, Sir Toby, because we'll be dressed together.

*Sir To.* Will you help,—an ass-head and a coxcomb and a knave,—a thin-faced knave, a gull?

*Oli.* Get him to bed, and let his hurt be look'd to.

[*Exeunt Clown, Fabian, Sir Toby, and Sir Andrew.*]



*Enter SEBASTIAN.*

*Seb.* I am sorry, madam, I have hurt your kinsman ;  
But, had it been the brother of my blood,  
I must have done no less with wit and safety.  
You throw a strange regard upon me, and by that  
I do perceive it hath offended you :  
Pardon me, sweet one, even for the vows  
We made each other but so late ago.

*Duke.* One face, one voice, one habit, and two persons,—  
A natural perspective, that is and is not !

*Seb.* Antonio, O my dear Antonio !  
How have the hours rack'd and tortur'd me,  
Since I have lost thee !

*Ant.* Sebastian are you ?

*Seb.* Fear'st thou that, Antonio ?

*Ant.* How have you made division of yourself?—  
An apple, cleft in two, is not more twin  
Than these two creatures. Which is Sebastian ?

*Oli.* Most wonderful !

*Seb.* Do I stand there ? I never had a brother ;  
Nor can there be that deity in my nature,  
Of here and every where. I had a sister,  
Whom the blind waves and surges have devour'd.—  
Of charity, what kin are you to me ? [To Viola.]  
What countryman ? what name ? what parentage ?

*Vio.* Of Messaline : Sebastian was my father ;  
Such a Sebastian was my brother too,  
So went he suited to his watery tomb :  
If spirits can assume both form and suit  
You come to fright us.

*Seb.* A spirit I am indeed ;  
But am in that dimension grossly clad,  
Which from the womb I did participate.  
Were you a woman, as the rest goes even,  
I should my tears let fall upon your cheek,  
And say, 'Thrice-welcome, drownèd Viola !

*Vio.* My father had a mole upon his brow,—

*Seb.* And so had mine.

*Vio.* And died that day when Viola from her birth  
Had number'd thirteen years.

*Seb.* O, that record is lively in my soul!  
He finishèd, indeed, his mortal act  
That day that made my sister thirteen years.

*Vio.* If nothing lets to make us happy both  
But this my masculine usurp'd attire,  
Do not embrace me till each circumstance  
Of place, time, fortune, do cohere and jump,  
That I am Viola: which to confirm,  
I'll bring you to a captain in this town,  
Where lie my maiden weeds; by whose gentle help  
I was preserv'd<sup>(40)</sup> to serve this noble count.  
All the occurrence of my fortune since  
Hath been between this lady and this lord.

*Seb.* So comes it, lady, you have been mistook:

[*To Olivia.*]

But nature to her bias drew in that.  
You would have been contracted to a maid;  
Nor are you therein, by my life, deceiv'd,—  
You are betroth'd both to a maid and man.

*Duke.* Be not amaz'd; right noble is his blood.—  
If this be so, as yet the glass seems true,  
I shall have share in this most happy wreck.—  
Boy, thou hast said to me a thousand times  
Thou never shouldst love woman like to me.

[*To Viola.*]

*Vio.* And all those sayings will I over-swear;  
And all those swearings keep as true in soul  
As doth that orbèd continent the fire  
That severs day from night.

*Duke.* Give me thy hand;  
And let me see thee in thy woman's weeds.

*Vio.* The captain that did bring me first on shore  
Hath my maid's garments: he, upon some action,  
Is now in durance; at Malvolio's suit,  
A gentleman, and follower of my lady's.

*Oli.* He shall enlarge him:—fetch Malvolio hither:—  
And yet, alas, now I remember me,  
They say, poor gentleman, he's much distract.

*Re-enter Clown with a letter, and FABIAN.*

A most extracting<sup>(41)</sup> frenzy of mine own  
From my remembrance clearly banish'd his.—  
How does he, sirrah?

*Clo.* Truly, madam, he holds Beelzebub at the stave's end as well as a man in his case may do: has here writ a letter to you; I should have given 't you to-day morning,—but as a madman's epistles are no gospels, so it skills not much when they are delivered.

*Oli.* Open 't, and read it.

*Clo.* Look, then, to be well edified when the fool delivers the madman. [*Reads.*] “By the Lord, madam,”—

*Oli.* How now! art thou mad?

*Clo.* No, madam, I do but read madness: an your ladyship will have it as it ought to be, you must allow *vox*.

*Oli.* Prithee, read i' thy right wits.

*Clo.* So I do, madonna; but to read his right wits is to read thus: therefore perpend, my princess, and give ear.

*Oli.* Read it you, sirrah. [*To Fabian.*]

*Fab.* [*reads.*] “By the Lord, madam, you wrong me, and the world shall know it: though you have put me into darkness, and given your drunken cousin rule over me, yet have I the benefit of my senses as well as your ladyship. I have your own letter that induced me to the semblance I put on; with the which I doubt not but to do myself much right, or you much shame. Think of me as you please. I leave my duty a little unthought of, and speak out of my injury.

THE MADLY-USED MALVOLIO.”

*Oli.* Did he write this?

*Clo.* Ay, madam.

*Duke.* This savours not much of distraction.

*Oli.* See him deliver'd, Fabian; bring him hither.

[*Exit Fabian.*]

My lord, so please you, these things further thought on,  
To think me as well a sister as a wife,  
One day shall crown the alliance on 't, so please you,  
Here at my house, and at my proper cost.

*Duke.* Madam, I am most apt to embrace your offer.—  
Your master quits you [*to Viola*]; and, for your service done  
him,

So much against the mettle of your sex,  
So far beneath your soft and tender breeding,  
And since you call'd me master for so long,  
Here is my hand: you shall from this time be  
Your master's mistress.

*Oli.* A sister!—you are she.

*Re-enter FABIAN, with MALVOLIO.*

*Duke.* Is this the madman?

*Oli.* Ay, my lord, this same.—

How now, Malvolio!

*Mal.* Madam, you have done me wrong,  
Notorious wrong.

*Oli.* Have I, Malvolio? no.

*Mal.* Lady, you have. Pray you, peruse that letter:  
You must not now deny it is your hand,—  
Write from it, if you can, in hand or phrase;  
Or say 'tis not your seal, not your invention:  
You can say none of this: well, grant it, then,  
And tell me, in the modesty of honour,  
Why you have given me such clear lights of favour,  
Bade me come smiling and cross-garter'd to you,  
To put on yellow stockings, and to frown  
Upon Sir Toby and the lighter people;  
And, acting this in an obedient hope,  
Why have you suffer'd me to be imprison'd,  
Kept in a dark house, visited by the priest,  
And made the most notorious geck and gull  
That e'er invention play'd on? tell me why.

*Oli.* Alas, Malvolio, this is not my writing,  
Though, I confess, much like the character:  
But, out of question, 'tis Maria's hand.  
And now I do bethink me, it was she  
First told me thou wast mad; then (<sup>42</sup>) cam'st in smiling,  
And in such forms which here were presuppos'd

Upon thee in the letter. Prithee, be content :  
 This practice hath most shrewdly pass'd upon thee ;  
 But, when we know the grounds and authors of it,  
 Thou shalt be both the plaintiff and the judge  
 Of thine own cause.

*Fab.* Good madam, hear me speak ;  
 And let no quarrel nor no brawl to come  
 Taint the condition of this present hour,  
 Which I have wonder'd at. In hope it shall not,  
 Most freely I confess, myself and Toby  
 Set this device against Malvolio here,  
 Upon some stubborn and uncourteous parts  
 We had conceiv'd against him : Maria writ  
 The letter at Sir Toby's great importance ;  
 In recompense whereof he hath married her.  
 How with a sportful malice it was follow'd,  
 May rather pluck on laughter than revenge ;  
 If that the injuries be justly weigh'd  
 That have on both sides pass'd.

*Oli.* Alas, poor fool,<sup>(43)</sup> how have they baffled thee !

*Clo.* Why, "some are born great, some achieve greatness,  
 and some have greatness thrown<sup>(44)</sup> upon them." I was one,  
 sir, in this interlude,—one Sir Topas, sir ; but that's all one.  
 —"By the Lord, fool, I am not mad ;"—but do you remem-  
 ber ? "Madam, why laugh you at such a barren rascal ? an  
 you smile not, he's gagged : " and thus the whirligig of time  
 brings in his revenges.

*Mal.* I'll be reveng'd on the whole pack of you. [*Exit.*

*Oli.* He hath been most notoriously abus'd.

*Duke.* Pursue him, and entreat him to a peace :—  
 He hath not told us of the captain yet :  
 When that is known, and golden time conveys,  
 A solemn combination shall be made  
 Of our dear souls. Meantime, sweet sister,  
 We will not part from hence.—Cesario, come ;  
 For so you shall be, while you are a man ;  
 But when in other habits you are seen,  
 Orsino's mistress, and his fancy's queen.

[*Exeunt all, except Clown.*

## SONG.

*Cl.* When that I was and a little tiny boy,  
With hey, ho, the wind and the rain,  
A foolish thing was but a toy,  
For the rain it raineth every day.

But when I came to man's estate,  
With hey, ho, the wind and the rain,  
'Gainst knaves and thieves men shut their gate,  
For the rain it raineth every day.

But when I came, alas! to wive,  
With hey, ho, the wind and the rain,  
By swaggering could I never thrive,  
For the rain it raineth every day.

But when I came unto my bed,  
With hey, ho, the wind and the rain,  
With toss-pots still had drunken head,  
For the rain it raineth every day.

A great while ago the world begun,  
With hey, ho, the wind and the rain :—  
But that's all one, our play is done,  
And we'll strive to please you every day.

[*Exit.*]

P. 3. (1) *“like the sweet south,” &c.*

So Pope (and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector).—The folio has “*like the sweet sound,*” &c.

P. 5. (2) *“she hath abjur'd the company  
And sight of men.”*

So Hammer.—The folio has

*“she hath abjur'd the sight  
And company of men.”*

P. 7. (3) *“Castiliano vulgo.”*

Should be perhaps “*Castiliano volto.*”

P. 9. (4) *“curl by nature.”*

Theobald's emendation (and so Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector).—The folio has “*coole my nature.*”

P. 9. (5) *“a flame-coloured stock.”*

So Pope.—The folio has “*a dam'd colour'd stocke.*” (Mr. Knight prints “*a damask-coloured stock.*”—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector makes it “*a dun-coloured stock.*” see my *Few Notes*, &c. p. 75.)

P. 12. (6) *“that's as much to say as, I wear not,” &c.*

Mr. Collier, who (with Malone, &c.) prints “*that's as much as to say,*” &c., tells us that here in the old copies “*as*” is misplaced: yet in *Sec. Part of Henry VI.* act iv. sc. 2, he gives, with the old copies, “*which is as much to say as,—let the magistrates,*” &c.

P. 16. (7) *“If you be not mad,” &c.*

Mason would read “*If you be mad,*” &c.

P. 16. (8)

*“Vio. . . . Some mollification for your giant, sweet lady.*

*Oli. Tell me your mind.*

*Vio. I am a messenger.”*

The folio (from which perhaps something more than prefixes has dropped out) makes the whole of the above run on as one speech,—“*Vio. . . . Some*

mollification for your Giant, sweete Ladie; tell me your minde, I am a messenger." I adopt here the usual modern distribution of the dialogue,—what has been urged against it by Mr. Collier (*ad l.*) and by Mr. Hunter (*New Illust. of Shakespeare*, vol. i. 402) having only tended to strengthen my conviction that "*Tell me your mind*" cannot possibly belong to Viola. (With respect to "*I am a messenger*," Mason remarks that "as a messenger, Viola was not to speak her own mind, but that of her employer.")

P. 17. (9) "With adorations, with fertile tears,  
With groans that thunder love, with sighs of fire."

In the first line the folio omits the second "*with*,"—a mistake, as the context (to say nothing of the metre) shows plainly.

P. 20. (10)  
"but, though I could not with such estimable wonder overfar believe that," &c.

Here Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector makes an alteration which a critic in *Blackwood's Magazine* for August 1853, p. 201, rightly calls "a very bad piece of tinkering;" and Mr. Singer's Ms. Corrector (see *Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 64) makes another, which comes under the same description. Indeed, I believe that the folio gives the passage as the author wrote it.

P. 21. (11) "Vio. *She took the ring of me;—I'll none of it.*"

On the reading of his Ms. Corrector, "*She took no ring*," &c. (which Malone also conjectures), Mr. Collier observes, "This alteration renders what the heroine afterwards says quite consistent, 'I left no ring with her,' and 'Why, he sent her none?' but "what the heroine afterwards says" is *said to herself*, not to Malvolio. I agree with Steevens and Mr. Knight that the old text is uncorrupted.

P. 21. (12)  
"That methought her eyes had lost her tongue," &c.

The editor of the second folio printed, for the metre, "*That sure methought*," &c. ("Sure, in the present instance, is not very likely to have been the word omitted in the first copy, being found in the next line but one."—MALONE.)

P. 21. (13) "Alas, our frailty is the cause, not we!  
For such as we are made of, such we be."

The folio has,

"Alas, O [sec. folio "our"] frailtie is the cause, not wee,  
For such as we are made, if such we bee."

P. 21. (14) "And I, poor monster, fond as much on him;  
And she, mistaken, seems to dote on me."



To this, as far as I am aware, no editor has objected: but I question if we ought not to read,—

www.libtool.~~om~~ as much on him  
As she, mistaken, seems to dote on me."

P. 23. (16) "if one knight give a —"

The Ms. Corrector completes this speech with what Mr. Collier calls "a welcome addition:"—he ought to have said, "an addition welcome to those who will have the speech filled up." (Mr. Collier talks of "the elongation of the *hyphen* in modern editions,"—forgetting that here *the folio has NO HYPHEN.*)

P. 24. (16)

"Farewell, dear heart, since I must needs be gone. [Singing.]"

In the folio, this line, and "*His eyes do show,*" &c., and "*But I will never die,*" are not marked as sung (that is, they are not in italic type): but it is evident that Sir Toby and the Clown were intended to *sing these* as well as the verses which presently follow, "*Shall I bid him go,*" &c.,—all being quotations (slightly altered) from the same ballad.

P. 25. (17)

"Out o' time, sir? ye lie."

So Theobald.—The folio has "*Out o' tune,*" &c.: but see, in the preceding page, "*We did keep time, sir,*" &c. (The whole of this is obviously spoken to Malvolio: yet Mr. Collier, who retains the old reading, and gives a new punctuation to the passage, tells us—"all that Sir Toby means, is that the Clown had sung out of tune. 'Sir, ye lie,' is addressed to Malvolio with the purpose of affronting him"! *The Clown* would hardly *sing out of tune*: he is *the singer* of the play; see pp. 23, 28, 72.)

P. 29. (18) "Duke. Give me now leave to leave thee."

For this courteous form of dismissal Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes most unhappily, "*I give thee now leave to leave me.*"

P. 29. (19)

"Duke. I cannot be so answer'd."

The folio has "*It cannot,*" &c.; which is proved to be wrong by the next speech,—"*Sooth, but you must. . . must she not, then, be answer'd?*" And compare, at p. 18, "*He might have took his answer long ago.*"

P. 31. (20)

"my metal of India!"

May mean (see notes to the *Variorum Shakespeare*) my girl of gold, my precious girl.—The second folio has "*My Nettle of India,*"—a reading which some have thought more suited to the context. (Mr. W. N. Lettsom remarks:

"It is to me a matter of doubt whether 'Nettle' was, as Malone says, an arbitrary alteration by the editor of the second folio, or a mere misprint for 'Mettle' [the spelling in the first folio], and consequently it is also doubtful in my mind whether that editor found a difficulty in the reading of the first folio.")

P. 32. (21) "my some rich jewel."

"May signify," says Steevens, "some rich jewel of my own." Perhaps so: but the "my" may be only an accidental repetition, occasioned by the preceding "my watch."

P. 32. (22)

"Though our silence be drawn from us with cars," &c.

In the notes to the *Variorum Shakespeare*, we are told that here Johnson would read "— with carts," &c. (comparing "but a team of horse shall not pluck that from me," *Two Gent. of Verona*, act iii. sc. 1);—that Steevens observed, "It is well known that cars and carts have the same meaning;"—and that Tyrwhitt proposed altering "cars" to "cables"[1]:—but we are not told that Hanmer gave "— drawn from us by th' ears;" which is also the emendation of Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector; and which, I must be allowed to think, Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 66) treats with undeserved contempt. (Formerly "bith" was not uncommon as the contraction of "by the;" and therefore "bith ears" might easily be corrupted into "with cars.")—The late Mr. Sidney Walker's alteration is "— drawn from us with racks,"—as I am informed by Mr. W. N. Lettsom, in whose opinion it is much preferable to Hanmer's.

P. 33. (23) "the staniel," &c.

Hanmer's correction.—The folio has "the stallion," &c.

P. 34. (24) "some are born great," &c.

The folio has "some are become great," &c.

P. 34. (25) "champain."

Here the folio has "champion:" but I have not retained that spelling, because in *King Lear*, act i. sc. 1, it has "With shadowie Forrests, and with Champains rich'd."

P. 35. (26) "To the gates of Tartar," &c.

Mr. Collier declares that this "is to be read," with the Ms. Corrector, "To the gates of Tartarus,"—he and the Corrector having altogether overlooked the following passage in our author's *Henry V.* act ii. sc. 2,—

"If that same demon, that hath gull'd thee thus,  
Should with his lion gait walk the whole world,  
He might return to vasty Tartar back," &c.

P. 37. (27) "construe."

Here the folio has "conster." See note (26) on *The Taming of the Shrew*, vol. ii. p. 504. (Had "conster" been a mere vulgarism, I should have retained it as perhaps not inappropriate in the mouth of the Clown: but it is nothing more than a variety of spelling.)

P. 37. (28) "Not, like the haggard," &c.

The folio has "And like the Haggard," &c.—Johnson remarks: "The meaning [of the original reading] may be, that he must catch every opportunity, as the wild hawk strikes every bird. But perhaps it might be read more properly, 'Not like the haggard.' He must choose persons and times, and observe tempers; he must fly at proper game, like the trained hawk, and not fly at large like the unreclaimed haggard, to seize all that comes in his way." Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector also gives "Not, like the haggard," &c.; and the alteration is indispensable,—for who can fail to perceive that Johnson would fasten on the old reading a sense which it will not bear? (The line next above but two begins with "And:" hence perhaps the error here.)

P. 37. (29) "But wise men, folly-fallen, quite taint their wit."

So Capell and Tyrwhitt.—Mr. Collier prints "But wise men's folly fall'n quite taints their wit," and calls it "the old and correct reading:" but in the folio the line stands *literatim* thus,—"*But wisemens folly false, quite taint their wit.*"

P. 39. (30) "maugre all thy pride," &c.

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "maugre all my pride," &c. Mr. W. N. Lettsom observes to me; "The alteration 'my' is very specious; but does not Olivia allege 'wit' and 'reason' as the principles that are overpowered by her passion? and does not 'pride' apply better here to Cesario?"

P. 41. (31) "the youngest wren of nine comes."

Theobald's correction.—The folio has "— wren of mine comes."

P. 43. (32) "And thanks, and ever thanks; and oft good turns," &c.

The folio has "And thanks: and euer oft good turnes," &c.—I adopt the emendation of Theobald, which doubtless is not far off from the true reading.—Steevens fancied that he was improving Theobald's emendation when he altered it to "— thanks: often good turns," &c.,—which, in fact, introduces a disagreeable abruptness of expression. Mr. W. N. Lettsom proposes "— thanks; though oft good turns," &c.—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector gives "And thanks, still thanks; and very oft good turns," &c.

P. 45. (23)

“Mal. ‘Remember who commended thy yellow stockings,’—  
Oli. *Thy yellow stockings!*”

Mr. W. N. Lettson would read “*Oli. My yellow stockings!*” for Olivia has no idea that Malvolio is quoting the letter; and when he presently continues “Go to, thou art made, if thou desirest to be so,” she exclaims “*Am I made?*”

P. 49. (24) “*I have said too much unto a heart of stone,  
And laid mine honour too unchary out.*”

The folio has “— *too unchary on't;*” which Mr. Collier and Mr. Knight erroneously retain (see my *Few Notes*, &c. p. 76).

P. 51. (25) “SCENE V. *The street adjoining OLIVIA'S garden.*”

*Enter Sir TOBY BELCH and Sir ANDREW AGUECHEEK.*”

In the preceding page, Sir Toby, before going out, has desired Fabian to “stay by this gentleman” (Viola) till his return from talking with Sir Andrew: a little after, Fabian says to Viola, “will you *walk towards him*” (Sir Andrew)? and accordingly *makes his exit with her*. Sir Toby now enters accompanied by Sir Andrew; and though the folio does not mark a new scene, it is certain that, previous to the entrance of the two knights, the audience of Shakespeare's days (who had no painted moveable scenery before their eyes) were to *suppose* a change of scene. Presently Antonio enters, draws his sword in defence of Viola (whom he mistakes for Sebastian), and is arrested by the Officers: and from the speech of the First Officer, in act v. sc. 1, p. 62, we learn distinctly where his arrest took place;—

“Here in *the streets*, desperate of shame and state,  
In private brabble did we apprehend him.”—

Sir Andrew, then, was waiting for the pretended page, “at the corner of the orchard,” p. 48, “at the orchard-end,” p. 49,—that is, in the street at the extremity of Olivia's orchard or garden: there Sir Toby had joined him; and thither Fabian and Viola walk.—I may add that the rather unsatisfactory stage-arrangements here were in a certain degree forced upon Shakespeare: he found it necessary to get rid of Viola while Sir Toby was terrifying Sir Andrew with an account of his antagonist's ferocity. (Since writing the above, I have examined a modern acting copy of the play: in it the scene is changed here from “*A Room in Olivia's house*” to “*Olivia's garden.*”)

P. 53. (26) “*And to his image, which methought did promise  
Most venerable worth, did I devotion.*”

*But O how vile an idol proves this god!*”

The Ms. Corrector reads “*Most veritable worth;*” and, according to Mr. Collier, “‘veritable’ must have been the author's own word.” But the context (“*devotion,*” “*idol,*” “*god*”) is decisive against the alteration.

P. 56. (37) " *I am not tall enough,*" &c.

In most of the recent editions "*tall*" is altered to "*fat*;" and Tyrwhitt says "I should have no objection to read—*pale*." [Open in Libgen](#)

P. 57. (38) " *Why, it hath bay-windows transparent as barricadoes, and the clear-stories,*" &c.

The folio has "*the cleere stores,*" &c.—The second folio has "*the cleare stones,*" &c. (which is defended by Mr. Hunter, *New Illust. of Shakespeare*, vol. i. p. 409: "what," he asks, "have *clear-stories* to do with the *cell* in which Malvolio was confined?" As much surely as "*bay-windows*" have.)

P. 59. (39) " *Adieu, goodman drivel!*"

So Rowe in his ed. 1714 (and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector).—The folio has "— *good man diuell.*"

P. 68. (40)

" *Where lie my maiden weeds; by whose gentle help  
I was preserv'd to serve this noble count.*"

Theobald reads "— *my maid's weeds*" (so, lower down, we have "*my maid's garments*"); and he alters "*preserv'd*" to "*prefer'd*" (comparing,

"I'll serve this duke.  
Thou shalt *present* me," &c. p. 6.)

P. 69. (41) " *A most extracting frenzy,*" &c.

Here Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector alters "*extracting*" to "*distracting*,"—wrongly beyond doubt: see the notes of Malone and Steevens *ad l.*, and Richardson's *Dict.* in *v. Extract*.

P. 70. (42)

" *And now I do bethink me, it was she  
First told me thou wast mad; then cam'st in smiling,  
And in such forms which here were presuppos'd  
Upon thee in the letter.*"

In Shakespeare (as in other early writers) passages where the nominative is understood are frequent enough; and nothing can be plainer than that in the second of the above lines "*cam'st*" is equivalent to "*cam'st thou*:" yet here Mr. Knight and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector alter "*then*" to "*thou*,"—not observing, it would seem, that "*then*" is *absolutely necessary for the sense*. The Ms. Corrector also improperly changes "*pre-suppos'd*" to "*pre-impos'd*."

P. 71. (43)

“Oli. *Alas, poor fool, how have they baffled thee!*”

To prove how ~~unnecessarily~~ in the present passage Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector would substitute “*poor soul*” for “*poor fool*,”—Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 70) has quoted from *The Two Gentlemen of Verona*, act iv. sc. 2, the exclamation of Julia,

“*Alas, poor fool!* why do I pity him  
That with his very heart despiseth me?”—

I may also cite from *The Winter's Tale*, act ii. sc. 1, what Hermione says to her attendant ladies,—

“Do not weep, good *fools*;  
There is no cause,” &c.

P. 71. (44)

“*greatness thrown upon them.*”

Qy. is “*thrown*” (instead of “*thrust*”) an oversight of the author? or an error of the scribe or printer?

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

**THE WINTER'S TALE.**

**VOL. III.**

**G**

LEONTES, king of Sicilia.

MAMILLIUS, his son.

CAMILLO,

ANTIGONUS,

CLEOMENES,

DION,

} Sicilian Lords.

Other Sicilian Lords.

Officers of a Court of Judicature.

Sicilian Gentlemen.

POLIXENES, king of Bohemia.

FLORIZEL, his son.

ARCHIDAMUS, a Bohemian Lord.

A Mariner.

Gaoler.

An old Shepherd, reputed father of Perdita.

Clown, his son.

Servant to the old Shepherd.

AUTOLYCUS, a rogue.

HERMIONE, queen to Leontes.

PERDITA, daughter to Leontes and Hermione.

PAULINA, wife to Antigonus.

EMILIA, a lady,

Other Ladies,

} attending on the Queen.

MOPSA,

DORCAS,

} Shepherdesses.

Attendants, Guards; Shepherds and Shepherdesses.

Time, as Chorus.

SCENE—*Sometimes in Sicilia, sometimes in Bohemia.*



## THE WINTER'S TALE.

---

---

### ACT I.

SCENE I. *Sicilia. An antechamber in the palace of*  
LEONTES.

*Enter CAMILLO and ARCHIDAMUS.*

*Arch.* If you shall chance, Camillo, to visit Bohemia, on the like occasion whereon my services are now on foot, you shall see, as I have said, great difference betwixt our Bohemia and your Sicilia.

*Cam.* I think, this coming summer, the King of Sicilia means to pay Bohemia the visitation which he justly owes him.

*Arch.* Wherein our entertainment shall shame us we will be justified in our loves; for, indeed,—

*Cam.* Beseech you,—

*Arch.* Verily, I speak it in the freedom of my knowledge: we cannot with such magnificence—in so rare—I know not what to say.—We will give you sleepy drinks, that your senses, unintelligent of our insufficiency, may, though they cannot praise us, as little accuse us.

*Cam.* You pay a great deal too dear for what's given freely.

*Arch.* Believe me, I speak as my understanding instructs me, and as mine honesty puts it to utterance.

*Cam.* Sicilia cannot show himself over-kind to Bohemia. They were trained together in their childhoods; and there rooted betwixt them then such an affection, which cannot

choose but branch now. Since their more mature dignities and royal necessities made separation of their society, their encounters, though not personal, have been royally attorneyed, with interchange of gifts, letters, loving embassies; that they have seemed to be together, though absent; shook hands, as over a vast; and embraced, as it were, from the ends of opposed winds. The heavens continue their loves!

*Arch.* I think there is not in the world either malice or matter to alter it. You have an unspeakable comfort of your young prince Mamillius: it is a gentleman of the greatest promise that ever came into my note.

*Cam.* I very well agree with you in the hopes of him: it is a gallant child; one that, indeed, physics the subject, makes old hearts fresh: they that went on crutches ere he was born desire yet their life to see him a man.

*Arch.* Would they else be content to die?

*Cam.* Yes; if there were no other excuse why they should desire to live.

*Arch.* If the king had no son, they would desire to live on crutches till he had one. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *The same. A room of state in the palace.*

*Enter LEONTES, POLIXENES, HERMIONE, MAMILLIUS, CAMILLO, and Attendants.*

*Pol.* Nine changes of the watery star have been  
The shepherd's note since we have left our throne  
Without a burden: time as long again  
Would be fill'd up, my brother, with our thanks;  
And yet we should, for perpetuity,  
Go hence in debt: and therefore, like a cipher,  
Yet standing in rich place, I multiply  
With one we-thank-you many thousands more  
That go before it.

*Leon.* Stay your thanks awhile,  
And pay them when you part.

*Pol.* Sir, that's to-morrow.

I am question'd by my fears, of what may chance  
 Or breed upon our absence; that may blow  
 No sneaping winds at home, to make us say,  
 "This is put forth too truly."<sup>(1)</sup> Besides, I have stay'd  
 To tire your royalty.

*Leon.* We are tougher, brother,  
 That you can put us to 't.

*Pol.* No longer stay.

*Leon.* One seven-night longer.

*Pol.* Very sooth, to-morrow.

*Leon.* We'll part the time between's, then: and in that  
 I'll no gainsaying.

*Pol.* Press me not, beseech you, so.  
 There is no tongue that moves, none, none i' the world,  
 So soon as yours, could win me: so it should now,  
 Were there necessity in your request, although  
 'Twere needful I denied it. My affairs  
 Do even drag me homeward: which to hinder,  
 Were, in your love, a whip to me; my stay,  
 To you a charge and trouble: to save both,  
 Farewell, our brother.

*Leon.* Tongue-tied our queen? speak you.

*Her.* I had thought, sir, to have held my peace until  
 You had drawn oaths from him not to stay. You, sir,  
 Charge him too coldly. Tell him, you are sure  
 All in Bohemia's well; this satisfaction  
 The by-gone day proclaim'd: say this to him,  
 He's beat from his best ward.

*Leon.* Well said, Hermione.

*Her.* To tell, he longs to see his son, were strong:  
 But let him say so then, and let him go;  
 But let him swear so, and he shall not stay,  
 We'll thwack him hence with distaffs.—  
 Yet of your royal presence [*to Polixenes*] I'll adventure  
 The borrow of a week. When at Bohemia  
 You take my lord, I'll give him my commission  
 To let him there a month behind the gest  
 Prefix'd for 's parting:—yet, good deed, Leontes,

I love thee not a jar o' the clock behind  
 What lady she (?) her lord.—You 'll stay ?

*Pol.* [w.libtool.com.cn](http://w.libtool.com.cn) No, madam.

*Her.* Nay, but you will ?

*Pol.* I may not, verily.

*Her.* Verily !

You put me off with limber vows ; but I,  
 Though you would seek to unsphere the stars with oaths,  
 Should yet say, " Sir, no going." Verily,  
 You shall not go : a lady's verily is  
 As potent as a lord's. Will you go yet ?  
 Force me to keep you as a prisoner,  
 Not like a guest ; so you shall pay your fees  
 When you depart, and save your thanks. How say you ?  
 My prisoner, or my guest ? by your dread verily,  
 One of them you shall be.

*Pol.* Your guest, then, madam :  
 To be your prisoner should import offending ;  
 Which is for me less easy to commit  
 Than you to punish.

*Her.* Not your gaoler, then,  
 But your kind hostess. Come, I'll question you  
 Of my lord's tricks and yours when you were boys :  
 You were pretty lordings then ?

*Pol.* We were, fair queen,  
 Two lads that thought there was no more behind  
 But such a day to-morrow as to-day,  
 And to be boy eternal.

*Her.* Was not my lord the verier wag o' the two ?

*Pol.* We were as twinn'd lambs that did frisk i' the sun,  
 And bleat the one at the other : what we chang'd  
 Was innocence for innocence ; we knew not  
 The doctrine of ill-doing, nor dream'd  
 That any did. Had we pursu'd that life,  
 And our weak spirits ne'er been higher rear'd  
 With stronger blood, we should have answer'd heaven  
 Boldly, " Not guilty ;" the imposition clear'd  
 Hereditary ours.

*Her.* By this we gather  
You have tripp'd since.

*Pol.* [www.libtool.com](http://www.libtool.com) my most sacred lady,  
Temptations have since then been born to 's! for  
In those unfledg'd days was my wife a girl;  
Your precious self had then not cross'd the eyes  
Of my young play-fellow.

*Her.* Grace to boot!  
Of this make no conclusion, lest you say  
Your queen and I are devils: yet, go on;  
The offences we have made you do, we'll answer;  
If you first sinn'd with us, and that with us  
You did continue fault, and that you slipp'd not  
With any but with us.

*Leon.* Is he won yet?

*Her.* He'll stay, my lord.

*Leon.* At my request he would not.  
Hermione, my dearest, thou never spok'st  
To better purpose.

*Her.* Never?

*Leon.* Never, but once.

*Her.* What! have I twice said well? when was't before?  
I prithee tell me; cram 's with praise, and make 's  
As fat as tame things: one good deed dying tongueless  
Slaughters a thousand waiting upon that.  
Our praises are our wages: you may ride 's  
With one soft kiss a thousand furlongs, ere  
With spur we heat an acre. But to the goal:—<sup>(3)</sup>  
My last good deed was to entreat his stay:  
What was my first? it has an elder sister,  
Or I mistake you: O, would her name were Grace!  
But once before I spoke to the purpose: when?  
Nay, let me have 't; I long.

*Leon.* Why, that was when  
Three crabbed months had sour'd themselves to death,  
Ere I could make thee open thy white hand,  
And clap thyself my love: then didst thou utter,  
"I am yours for ever."

*Her.* It is Grace indeed.—

Why, lo you now, I have spoke to the purpose twice :  
 The one for ever earn'd a royal husband ;  
 The other for some while a friend.

[Giving her hand to Polixenes.]

*Leon.*

Too hot, too hot ! [Aside.]

To mingle friendship far, is mingling bloods.  
 I have *tremor cordis* on me,—my heart dances ;  
 But not for joy,—not joy.—This entertainment  
 May a free face put on ; derive a liberty  
 From heartiness, from bounty, fertile bosom,(\*)  
 And well become the agent ; 't may, I grant :  
 But to be paddling palms and pinching fingers,  
 As now they are ; and making practis'd smiles,  
 As in a looking-glass ; and then to sigh, as 'twere  
 The mort o' the deer ; O, that is entertainment  
 My bosom likes not, nor my brows !—Mamillius,  
 Art thou my boy ?

*Mam.*

Ay, my good lord.

*Leon.*

I' fecks !

Why, that's my bawcock. What, hast smutch'd thy nose?—  
 They say, it's a copy out of mine. Come, captain,  
 We must be neat ;—not neat, but cleanly, captain :  
 And yet the steer, the heifer, and the calf,  
 Are all call'd neat.—Still virginalling

[Observing Polixenes and Hermione.]

Upon his palm ?—How now, you wanton calf !  
 Art thou my calf ?

*Mam.*

Yes, if you will, my lord.

*Leon.* Thou want'st a rough pash, and the shoots that I  
 have,

To be full like me :—yet they say we are  
 Almost as like as eggs ; women say so,  
 That will say any thing : but were they false  
 As o'er-dy'd blacks, as wind, as waters,—false  
 As dice are to be wish'd by one that fixes  
 No bourn 'twixt his and mine ; yet were it true  
 To say this boy were like me.—Come, sir page,  
 Look on me with your welkin eye : sweet villain !  
 Most dear'st ! my collop !—Can thy dam ?—may't be ?—

Affection! thy intention stabs the centre:  
 Thou dost make possible things not so held,  
 Communicat'st with dreams;—(how can this be?)—  
 With what's unreal thou coactive art,  
 And fellow'st nothing: then 'tis very credent  
 Thou mayst co-join with something; and thou dost,—  
 And that beyond commission; and I find it,—  
 And that to the infection of my brains  
 And hardening of my brows.

*Pol.* What means Sicilia?

*Her.* He something seems unsettled.

*Pol.* How, my lord!

What cheer? how is't with you, best brother?<sup>(5)</sup>

*Her.* You look

As if you held a brow of much distraction:  
 Are you mov'd, my lord?

*Leon.* No, in good earnest.—

How sometimes nature will betray its folly,  
 Its tenderness, and make itself a pastime  
 To harder bosoms!—Looking on the lines  
 Of my boy's face, methoughts<sup>(6)</sup> I did recoil  
 Twenty-three years; and saw myself unbreech'd,  
 In my green velvet coat; my dagger muzzled,  
 Lest it should bite its master, and so prove,  
 As ornaments oft do, too dangerous:  
 How like, methought, I then was to this kernel,  
 This squash, this gentleman.—Mine honest friend,  
 Will you take eggs for money?

*Mam.* No, my lord, I'll fight.

*Leon.* You will? why, happy man be's dole!—My brother,

Are you so fond of your young prince, as we  
 Do seem to be of ours?

*Pol.* If at home, sir,

He's all my exercise, my mirth, my matter:  
 Now my sworn friend, and then mine enemy;  
 My parasite, my soldier, statesman, all:  
 He makes a July's day short as December;

And with his varying childness cures in me  
Thoughts that would thicken my blood.

*Leon.* [libtool.com.cn](http://libtool.com.cn)

So stands this squire

Offic'd with me: we two will walk, my lord,  
And leave you to your graver steps.—Hermione,  
How thou lov'st us, show in our brother's welcome;  
Let what is dear in Sicily be cheap:  
Next to thyself and my young rover, he's  
Apparent to my heart.

*Her.*

If you would seek us,

We are yours i' the garden: shall 's attend you there?

*Leon.* To your own bents dispose you: you'll be found,

Be you beneath the sky.—[*Aside.*] I am angling now,  
Though you perceive me not how I give line.

Go to, go to!

[*Observing Polixenes and Hermione.*

How she holds up the neb, the bill to him!

And arms her with the boldness of a wife

To her allowing husband! Gone already!

[*Exeunt Polixenes, Hermione, and Attendants.*

Inch-thick, knee-deep, o'er head and ears a fork'd one!—

Go, play, boy, play:—thy mother plays, and I

Play too; but so disgrac'd a part, whose issue

Will hiss me to my grave: contempt and clamour

Will be my knell.—Go, play, boy, play.—There have  
been,

Or I am much deceiv'd, cuckolds ere now;

And many a man there is (even at this present,

Now while I speak this), holds his wife by the arm,

That little thinks she has been sluic'd in 's absence,

And his pond fish'd by his next neighbour, by

Sir Smile, his neighbour: nay, there 's comfort in 't,

Whiles other men have gates, and those gates open'd,

As mine, against their will: should all despair,

That have revolted wives, the tenth of mankind

Would hang themselves. Physic for 't, there is none;

It is a bawdy planet, that will strike

Where 'tis predominant; and 'tis powerful, think it,

From east, west, north, and south: be it concluded,



No barricado for a belly; know 't;  
 It will let in and out the enemy  
 With bag and baggage: many thousand on 's  
 Have the disease, and feel 't not.—How now, boy!

*Mam.* I am like you, they say.

*Leon.* Why, that 's some comfort.—

What, Camillo there?

*Cam.* Ay, my good lord.

*Leon.* Go play, Mamillius; thou 'rt an honest man.

[*Exit Mamillius.*]

Camillo, this great sir will yet stay longer.

*Cam.* You had much ado to make his anchor hold:  
 When you cast out, it still came home.

*Leon.* Didst note it?

*Cam.* He would not stay at your petitions; made  
 His business more material.

*Leon.* Didst perceive it?—

They're here with me already; whispering, rounding,  
 "Sicilia is a so-forth:" 'tis far gone,  
 When I shall gust it last.—How came 't, Camillo,  
 That he did stay?

*Cam.* At the good queen's entreaty.

*Leon.* At the queen's be't: good should be pertinent;  
 But, so it is, it is not. Was this taken  
 By any understanding pate but thine?  
 For thy conceit is soaking, will draw in  
 More than the common blocks:—not noted, is 't,  
 But of the finer natures? by some severals  
 Of head-piece extraordinary? lower messes  
 Perchance are to this business purblind? say.

*Cam.* Business, my lord! I think most understand  
 Bohemia stays here longer.

*Leon.* Ha!

*Cam.* Stays here longer.

*Leon.* Ay, but why?

*Cam.* To satisfy your highness, and the entreaties  
 Of our most gracious mistress.

*Leon.* Satisfy

The entreaties of your mistress!—satisfy!—  
 Let that suffice. I have trusted thee, Camillo,  
 With all the nearest things to my heart, as well  
 My chamber-councils; wherein, priest-like, thou  
 Hast cleans'd my bosom,—I from thee departed  
 Thy penitent reform'd: but we have been  
 Deceiv'd in thy integrity, deceiv'd  
 In that which seems so.

*Cam.* Be it forbid, my lord!

*Leon.* To bide upon 't,—thou art not honest; or,  
 If thou inclin'st that way, thou art a coward,  
 Which hoxes honesty behind, restraining  
 From course requir'd; or else thou must be counted  
 A servant grafted in my serious trust,  
 And therein negligent; or else a fool,  
 That seest a game play'd home, the rich stake drawn,  
 And tak'st it all for jest.

*Cam.* My gracious lord,  
 I may be negligent, foolish, and fearful;  
 In every one of these no man is free,  
 But that his negligence, his folly, fear,  
 Among the infinite doings of the world,  
 Sometime puts forth: in your affairs, my lord,  
 If ever I were wilful-negligent,  
 It was my folly; if industriously  
 I play'd the fool, it was my negligence,  
 Not weighing well the end; if ever fearful  
 To do a thing, where I the issue doubted,  
 Whereof the execution did cry out  
 Against the non-performance, 'twas a fear  
 Which oft infects the wisest: these, my lord,  
 Are such allow'd infirmities that honesty  
 Is never free of. But, beseech your grace,  
 Be plainer with me; let me know my trespass  
 By its own visage: if I then deny it,  
 'Tis none of mine.

*Leon.* Ha' not you seen, Camillo,  
 (But that's past doubt,—you have, or your eye-glass

Is thicker than a cuckold's horn), or heard  
 (For, to a vision so apparent, rumour  
 Cannot be mute), or thought (for cogitation  
 Resides not in that man that does not think)  
 My wife is slippery? If thou wilt confess  
 (Or else be impudently negative,  
 To have nor eyes nor ears nor thought), then say  
 My wife's a hobbyhorse; deserves a name  
 As rank as any flax-wench that puts to  
 Before her troth-plight: say 't, and justify 't.

*Cam.* I would not be a stander-by to hear  
 My sovereign mistress clouded so, without  
 My present vengeance taken: 'shrew my heart,  
 You never spoke what did become you less  
 Than this; which to reiterate were sin  
 As deep as that, though true.

*Leon.* Is whispering nothing?  
 Is leaning cheek to cheek? is meeting noses?  
 Kissing with inside lip? stopping the career  
 Of laughter with a sigh? (a note infallible  
 Of breaking honesty); horsing foot on foot?  
 Skulking in corners? wishing clocks more swift?  
 Hours, minutes? noon, midnight? and all eyes  
 Blind with the pin and web, but theirs, theirs only,  
 That would unseen be wicked? is this nothing?  
 Why, then the world and all that's in 't is nothing;  
 The covering sky is nothing; Bohemia nothing;  
 My wife is nothing; nor nothing have these nothings,  
 If this be nothing.

*Cam.* Good my lord, be cur'd  
 Of this diseas'd opinion, and betimes;  
 For 'tis most dangerous.

*Leon.* Say it be, 'tis true.

*Cam.* No, no, my lord.

*Leon.* It is; you lie, you lie:  
 I say thou liest, Camillo, and I hate thee;  
 Pronounce thee a gross lout, a mindless slave;  
 Or else a hovering temporizer, that

Canst with thine eyes at once see good and evil,  
 Inclining to them both: were my wife's liver  
 Infected as her life, she would not live  
 The running of one glass.

*Cam.* Who does infect her?

*Leon.* Why, he that wears her like her (?) medal, hanging  
 About his neck, Bohemia: who—if I  
 Had servants true about me, that bare eyes  
 To see alike mine honour as their profits,  
 Their own particular thrifts,—they would do that  
 Which should undo more doing: ay, and thou,  
 His cup-bearer,—whom I from meaner form  
 Have bench'd, and rear'd to worship; who mayst see  
 Plainly, as heaven sees earth, and earth sees heaven,  
 How I am gallèd,—mightst bespice a cup,  
 To give mine enemy a lasting wink;  
 Which draught to me were cordial.

*Cam.* Sir, my lord,  
 I could do this, and that with no rash potion,  
 But with a lingering dram, that should not work  
 Maliciously like poison: but I cannot  
 Believe this crack to be in my dread mistress,  
 So sovereignly being honourable.<sup>(8)</sup>  
 I have lov'd thee,—

*Leon.* Make that thy question, and go rot!  
 Dost think I am so muddy, so unsettled,  
 To appoint myself in this vexation; sully  
 The purity and whiteness of my sheets,—  
 Which to preserve is sleep, which being spotted  
 Is goads, thorns, nettles, tails of wasps;  
 Give scandal to the blood o' the prince my son,—  
 Who I do think is mine, and love as mine,—  
 Without ripe moving to 't? Would I do this?  
 Could man so blench?

*Cam.* I must believe you, sir:  
 I do; and will fetch off Bohemia for 't;  
 Provided that, when he's remov'd, your highness  
 Will take again your queen as yours at first,

Even for your son's sake ; and thereby for sealing  
The injury of tongues in courts and kingdoms  
Known and allied to yours.

*Leon.* Thou dost advise me  
Even so as I mine own course have set down :  
I'll give no blemish to her honour, none.

*Cam.* My lord,  
Go then ; and with a countenance as clear  
As friendship wears at feasts, keep with Bohemia  
And with your queen. I am his cupbearer :  
If from me he have wholesome beverage,  
Account me not your servant.

*Leon.* This is all :—  
Do 't, and thou hast the one half of my heart ;  
Do 't not, thou splitt'st thine own.

*Cam.* I'll do 't, my lord.

*Leon.* I will seem friendly, as thou hast advis'd me.

[*Exit.*

*Cam.* O miserable lady !—But, for me,  
What case stand I in ? I must be the poisoner  
Of good Polixenes : and my ground to do 't  
Is the obedience to a master ; one,  
Who, in rebellion with himself, will have  
All that are his so too.—To do this deed,  
Promotion follows : if I could find example  
Of thousands that had struck anointed kings,  
And flourish'd after, I'd not do 't ; but since  
Nor brass nor stone nor parchment bears not one,  
Let villany itself forswear 't. I must  
Forsake the court : to do 't, or no, is certain  
To me a break-neck.—Happy star reign now !  
Here comes Bohemia.

*Re-enter POLIXENES.*

*Pol.* This is strange : methinks  
My favour here begins to warp. Not speak ?—  
Good day, Camillo.

*Cam.* Hail, most royal sir !

*Pol.* What is the news i' the court ?

*Cam.* None rare, my lord.

*Pol.* The king hath on him such a countenance  
As he had lost some province, and a region  
Lov'd as he loves himself: even now I met him  
With customary compliment; when he,  
Wafting his eyes to the contrary, and falling  
A lip of much contempt, speeds from me; and  
So leaves me, to consider what is breeding  
That changes thus his manners.

*Cam.* I dare not know, my lord.

*Pol.* How! dare not! do not. Do you know, and dare  
not

Be intelligent to me? 'Tis thereabouts;  
For, to yourself, what you do know, you must,  
And cannot say, you dare not. Good Camillo,  
Your chang'd complexions are to me a mirror,  
Which shows me mine chang'd too; for I must be  
A party in this alteration, finding  
Myself thus alter'd with 't.

*Cam.* There is a sickness  
Which puts some of us in distemper; but  
I cannot name the disease; and it is caught  
Of you that yet are well.

*Pol.* How! caught of me!  
Make me not sighted like the basilisk:  
I have look'd on thousands, who have sped the better  
By my regard, but kill'd none so. Camillo,—  
As you are certainly a gentleman; thereto  
Clerk-like, experienc'd, which no less adorns  
Our gentry than our parents' noble names,  
In whose success we are gentle,—I beseech you,  
If you know aught which does behove my knowledge  
Thereof to be inform'd, imprison 't not  
In ignorant concealment.

*Cam.* I may not answer.

*Pol.* A sickness caught of me, and yet I well!  
I must be answer'd.—Dost thou hear, Camillo,  
I conjure thee, by all the parts of man  
Which honour does acknowledge,—whereof the least

Is not this suit of mine,—that thou declare  
 What incidency thou dost guess of harm  
 Is creeping toward me; how far off, how near;  
 Which way to be prevented, if to be;  
 If not, how best to bear it.

*Cam.* Sir, I will tell you;  
 Since I am charg'd in honour, and by him  
 That I think honourable: therefore mark my counsel,  
 Which must be even as swiftly follow'd as  
 I mean to utter it, or both yourself and me  
 Cry lost, and so good night!

*Pol.* On, good Camillo.

*Cam.* I am appointed him to murder you.

*Pol.* By whom, Camillo?

*Cam.* By the king.

*Pol.* For what?

*Cam.* He thinks, nay, with all confidence he swears,  
 As he had seen't, or been an instrument  
 To vice you to't, that you have touch'd his queen  
 Forbiddenly.

*Pol.* O, then my best blood turn  
 To an infected jelly, and my name  
 Be yok'd with his that did betray the best!  
 Turn then my freshest reputation to  
 A savour that may strike the dullest nostril  
 Where I arrive, and my approach be shunn'd,  
 Nay, hated too, worse than the great'st infection  
 That e'er was heard or read!

*Cam.* Swear his thought over<sup>(9)</sup>  
 By each particular star in heaven and  
 By all their influences, you may as well  
 Forbid the sea for to obey the moon,  
 As, or by oath, remove, or counsel, shake  
 The fabric of his folly, whose foundation  
 Is pil'd upon his faith, and will continue  
 The standing of his body.

*Pol.* How should this grow?

*Cam.* I know not: but I am sure 'tis safer to

Avoid what's grown than question how 'tis born.  
 If, therefore, you dare trust my honesty,—  
 That lies enclosed in this trunk, which you  
 Shall bear along impawn'd,—away to-night.  
 Your followers I will whisper to the business;  
 And will, by twos and threes, at several posterns,  
 Clear them o' the city: for myself, I'll put  
 My fortunes to your service, which are here  
 By this discovery lost. Be not uncertain;  
 For, by the honour of my parents, I  
 Have utter'd truth: which if you seek to prove,  
 I dare not stand by; nor shall you be safer  
 Than one condemn'd by the king's own mouth, thereon  
 His execution sworn.

*Pol.* I do believe thee:  
 I saw his heart in 's face. Give me thy hand:  
 Be pilot to me, and thy places shall  
 Still neighbour mine. My ships are ready, and  
 My people did expect my hence departure  
 Two days ago.—This jealousy  
 Is for a precious creature: as she's rare,  
 Must it be great; and, as his person's mighty,  
 Must it be violent; and as he does conceive  
 He is dishonour'd by a man which ever  
 Profess'd to him, why, his revenges must  
 In that be made more bitter. Fear o'ershades me:  
 Good expedition be my friend, and<sup>(10)</sup> comfort  
 The gracious queen, part of his theme, but nothing  
 Of his ill-ta'en suspicion! Come, Camillo;  
 I will respect thee as a father, if  
 Thou bear'st my life off hence: let us avoid.

*Cam.* It is in mine authority to command  
 The keys of all the posterns: please your highness  
 To take the urgent hour: come, sir, away.

[*Exeunt.*



www.libtool.com.cn  
ACT II.

SCENE I. *Sicilia. A room in the palace.*

*Enter HERMIONE, MAMILLIUS, and Ladies.*

*Her.* Take the boy to you : he so troubles me,  
'Tis past enduring.

*First Lady.* Come, my gracious lord,  
Shall I be your playfellow ?

*Mam.* No, I'll none of you.

*First Lady.* Why, my sweet lord ?

*Mam.* You'll kiss me hard, and speak to me as if  
I were a baby still.—I love you better.

*Sec. Lady.* And why so, my lord ?

*Mam.* Not for because

Your brows are blacker ; yet black brows, they say,  
Become some women best, so that there be not  
Too much hair there, but in a semicircle,  
Or a half-moon made with a pen.

*Sec. Lady.* Who taught 'this ?<sup>(11)</sup>

*Mam.* I learn'd it out of women's faces.—Pray now  
What colour are your eyebrows ?

*First Lady.* Blue, my lord.

*Mam.* Nay, that's a mock : I have seen a lady's nose  
That has been blue, but not her eyebrows.

*First Lady.* Hark ye ;

The queen your mother rounds apace : we shall  
Present our services to a fine new prince  
One of these days ; and then you'd wanton with us,  
If we would have you.

*Sec. Lady.* She is spread of late  
Into a goodly bulk : good time encounter her !

*Her.* What wisdom stirs amongst you ? Come, sir, now  
I am for you again : pray you, sit by us,  
And tell's a tale.

*Mam.* Merry or sad shall 't be ?

*Her.* As merry as you will.

*Mam.* A sad tale's best for winter : I have one  
Of sprites and goblins.

*Her.* [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn) Let's have that, good sir.  
Come on, sit down :—come on, and do your best  
To fright me with your sprites ; you're powerful at it.

*Mam.* There was a man,—

*Her.* Nay, come, sit down ; then on.

*Mam.* Dwelt by a churchyard :—I will tell it softly ;  
Yond crickets shall not hear it.

*Her.* Come on, then,  
And give't me in mine ear.

*Enter LEONTES, ANTIGONUS, Lords, and Guards.*

*Leon.* Was he met there ? his train ? Camillo with him ?

*First Lord.* Behind the tuft of pines I met them ; never  
Saw I men scour so on their way : I ey'd them  
Even to their ships.

*Leon.* How blest am I  
In my just censure, in my true opinion !—  
Alack, for lesser knowledge ! how accurs'd  
In being so blest !—There may be in the cup  
A spider steep'd, and one may drink, depart,  
And yet partake no venom ; for his knowledge  
Is not infected : but if one present  
The abhorr'd ingredient to his eye, make known  
How he hath drunk, he cracks his gorge, his sides,  
With violent hefts :—I have drunk, and seen the spider.  
Camillo was his help in this, his pander :—  
There is a plot against my life, my crown ;  
All's true that is mistrusted :—that false villain,  
Whom I employ'd, was pre-employ'd by him :  
He has discover'd my design, and I  
Remain a pinch'd thing ; yea, a very trick  
For them to play at will.—How came the posterns  
So easily open ?

*First Lord.* By his great authority ;  
Which often hath no less prevail'd than so,  
On your command.

*Leon.* I know 't too well.—

Give me the boy :—I am glad you did not nurse him :  
Though he does bear some signs of me, yet you  
Have too much blood in him.

*Her.* What is this? sport?

*Leon.* Bear the boy hence; he shall not come about her;  
Away with him!—and let her sport herself

[*Exit Mamillius, with some of the Guards.*]

With that she's big with;—for 'tis Polixenes  
Has made thee swell thus.

*Her.* But I'd say he had not,  
And I'll be sworn you would believe my saying,  
How'er you lean to the nayward.

*Leon.* You, my lords,  
Look on her, mark her well; be but about  
To say "she is a goodly lady," and  
The justice of your hearts will thereto add,  
" 'Tis pity she's not honest, honourable :"  
Praise her but for this her without-door form  
(Which, on my faith, deserves high speech), and straight  
The shrug, the hum, or ha,—these petty brands  
That calumny doth use :—O, I am out,  
That mercy does; for calumny will sear  
Virtue itself :—these shrugs, these hums and ha's,  
When you have said "she's goodly," come between,  
Ere you can say "she's honest :"  
but be 't known,  
From him that has most cause to grieve it should be,  
She's an adultrous.

*Her.* Should a villain say so,  
The most replenish'd villain in the world,  
He were as much more villain : you, my lord,  
Do but mistake.

*Leon.* You have mistook, my lady,  
Polixenes for Leontes : O thou thing,  
Which I'll not call a creature of thy place,  
Lest barbarism, making me the precedent,  
Should a like language use to all degrees,  
And mannerly distinguishment leave out  
Betwixt the prince and beggar!—I have said  
She's an adultrous; I have said with whom :

More, she's a traitor ; and Camillo is  
 A federy with her ; and one that knows,  
 What she should shame to know herself  
 But with her most vile principal, that she's  
 A bed-swerver, even as bad as those  
 That vulgars give bold'st titles ; ay, and privy  
 To this their late escape.

*Her.* No, by my life,  
 Privy to none of this. How will this grieve you,  
 When you shall come to clearer knowledge, that  
 You thus have publish'd me ! Gentle my lord,  
 You scarce can right me throughly then, to say  
 You did mistake.

*Leon.* No ; if I mistake  
 In those foundations which I build upon,  
 The centre is not big enough to bear  
 A school-boy's top.—Away with her to prison !  
 He who shall speak for her is afar off guilty  
 But that he speaks.

*Her.* There's some ill planet reigns :  
 I must be patient till the heavens look  
 With an aspéct more favourable.—Good my lords,  
 I am not prone to weeping, as our sex  
 Commonly are,—the want of which vain dew  
 Perchance shall dry your pities ; but I have  
 That honourable grief lodg'd here which burns  
 Worse than tears drown : beseech you all, my lords,  
 With thoughts so qualified as your charities  
 Shall best instruct you, measure me ;—and so  
 The king's will be perform'd !

*Leon.* Shall I be heard ?

[*To the Guards.*]

*Her.* Who is't that goes with me ?—Beseech your high-  
 ness,  
 My women may be with me ; for, you see,  
 My plight requires it.—Do not weep, good fools ;  
 There is no cause : when you shall know your mistress  
 Has deserv'd prison, then abound in tears  
 As I come out : this action I now go on

Is for my better grace.—Adieu, my lord :  
 I never wish'd to see you sorry ; now  
 I trust I shall.—My women, come ; you have leave.

*Leon.* Go, do our bidding ; hence !

[*Exeunt Queen and Ladies, with Guards.*]

*First Lord.* Beseech your highness, call the queen again.

*Ant.* Be certain what you do, sir, lest your justice  
 Prove violence ; in the which three great ones suffer,  
 Yourself, your queen, your son.

*First Lord.* For her, my lord,  
 I dare my life lay down, and will do't, sir,  
 Please you to accept it, that the queen is spotless  
 I' the eyes of heaven and to you ; I mean,  
 In this which you accuse her.

*Ant.* If it prove  
 She's otherwise, I'll keep my stables where  
 I lodge my wife ; I'll go in couples with her ;  
 Than when I feel and see her no further trust her ;  
 For every inch of woman in the world,  
 Ay, every dram of woman's flesh, is false,  
 If she be.

*Leon.* Hold your peaces.

*First Lord.* Good my lord,—

*Ant.* It is for you we speak, not for ourselves :  
 You are abus'd, and by some putter-on,  
 That will be damn'd for't ; would I knew the villain,  
 I would land-damn<sup>(12)</sup> him. Be she honour-flaw'd,—  
 I have three daughters ; the eldest is eleven ;  
 The second and the third, nine and some five ;  
 If this prove true, they'll pay for't : by mine honour,  
 I'll geld 'em all ; fourteen they shall not see,  
 To bring false generations : they are co-heirs ;  
 And I had rather glib myself than they  
 Should not produce fair issue.

*Leon.* Cease ; no more.  
 You smell this business with a sense as cold  
 As is a dead man's nose : but I do see't and feel't,  
 As you feel doing thus ; and see withal  
 The instruments that feel.

*Ant.* If it be so,  
 We need no grave to bury honesty :  
 There's not a grain of it the face to sweeten  
 Of the whole dungy earth.

*Leon.* What ! lack I credit ?

*First Lord.* I had rather you did lack than I, my lord,  
 Upon this ground ; and more it would content me  
 To have her honour true than your suspicion,  
 Be blam'd for't how you might.

*Leon.* Why, what need we  
 Commune with you of this, but rather follow  
 Our forceful instigation ? Our prerogative  
 Calls not your counsels ; but our natural goodness  
 Imparts this : which, if you (or stupified,  
 Or seeming so in skill) cannot or will not  
 Relish a truth, like us, inform yourselves  
 We need no more of your advice : the matter,  
 The loss, the gain, the ordering on't, is all  
 Properly ours.

*Ant.* And I wish, my liege,  
 You had only in your silent judgment tried it,  
 Without more overture.

*Leon.* How could that be ?  
 Either thou art most ignorant by age,  
 Or thou wert born a fool. Camillo's flight,  
 Added to their familiarity  
 (Which was as gross as ever touch'd conjecture,  
 That lack'd sight only, naught for approbation  
 But only seeing, all other circumstances  
 Made up to the deed), doth push on this proceeding :  
 Yet, for a greater confirmation  
 (For, in an act of this importance 'twere  
 Most piteous to be wild), I have dispatch'd in post  
 To sacred Delphos, to Apollo's temple,  
 Cleomenes and Dion, whom you know  
 Of stuff'd sufficiency : now, from the oracle  
 They will bring all ; whose spiritual counsel had,  
 Shall stop or spur me. Have I done well ?

*First Lord.* Well done, my lord.

*Leon.* Though I am satisfied, and need no more  
 Than what I know, yet shall the oracle  
 Give rest to the minds of others ; such as he  
 Whose ignorant credulity will not  
 Come up to the truth. So have we thought it good  
 From our free person she should be confin'd,  
 Lest that the treachery of the two fled hence  
 Be left her to perform. Come, follow us ;  
 We are to speak in public ; for this business  
 Will raise us all.

*Ant.* [*aside.*] To laughter, as I take it,  
 If the good truth were known.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The same. The outer room of a prison.*

*Enter PAULINA and Attendants.*

*Paul.* The keeper of the prison,—call to him ;  
 Let him have knowledge who I am. [*Exit an Attendant.*  
 Good lady !

No court in Europe is too good for thee ;  
 What dost thou, then, in prison ?

*Re-enter Attendant, with the Gaoler.*

Now, good sir,

You know me, do you not ?

*Gaol.* For a worthy lady,  
 And one who much I honour.

*Paul.* Pray you, then,  
 Conduct me to the queen.

*Gaol.* I may not, madam : to the contrary  
 I have express commandment.

*Paul.* Here's ado,  
 To lock up honesty and honour from  
 The access of gentle visitors !—Is 't lawful,  
 Pray you, to see her women ? any of them ?  
 Emilia ?

*Gaol.* So please you, madam,

To put apart these your attendants, I  
Shall bring Emilia forth.

*Paul.* I pray now, call her.—

Withdraw yourselves.

[*Exeunt Attend.*]

*Gaol.* And, madam,

I must be present at your conference.

*Paul.* Well, be't so, prithee.

[*Exit Gaoler.*]

Here's such ado to make no stain a stain,  
As passes colouring.

*Re-enter Gaoler, with EMILIA.*

Dear gentlewoman,

How fares our gracious lady?

*Emil.* As well as one so great and so forlorn  
May hold together: on her frights and griefs  
(Which never tender lady hath borne greater),  
She is, something before her time, deliver'd.

*Paul.* A boy?

*Emil.* A daughter; and a goodly babe,

Lusty, and like to live: the queen receives  
Much comfort in't; says, "My poor prisoner,  
I am innocent as you."

*Paul.* I dare be sworn:—

These dangerous unsafe lunes i' the king, beshrew them!  
He must be told on't, and he shall: the office  
Becomes a woman best; I'll take't upon me:  
If I prove honey-mouth'd, let my tongue blister,  
And never to my red-look'd anger be  
The trumpet any more.—Pray you, Emilia,  
Commend my best obedience to the queen:  
If she dares trust me with her little babe,  
I'll show't the king, and undertake to be  
Her advocate to the loud'st. We do not know  
How he may soften at the sight o' the child:  
The silence often of pure innocence  
Persuades, when speaking fails.

*Emil.* Most worthy madam,

Your honour and your goodness is so evident,  
That your free undertaking cannot miss



A thriving issue : there is no lady living  
 So meet for this great errand. Please your ladyship  
 To visit the next room, I'll presently  
 Acquaint the queen of your most noble offer ;  
 Who but to-day hammer'd of this design,  
 But durst not tempt a minister of honour,  
 Lest she should be denied.

*Paul.* Tell her, Emilia,  
 I'll use that tongue I have : if wit flow from 't,  
 As boldness from my bosom, let 't not be doubted  
 I shall do good.

*Emil.* Now be you bless'd for it !  
 I'll to the queen : please you, come something nearer.

*Gaol.* Madam, if 't please the queen to send the babe,  
 I know not what I shall incur to pass it,  
 Having no warrant.

*Paul.* You need not fear it, sir :  
 The child was prisoner to the womb, and is,  
 By law and process of great nature, thence  
 Freed and enfranchis'd ; not a party to  
 The anger of the king, nor guilty of,  
 If any be, the trespass of the queen.

*Gaol.* I do believe it.

*Paul.* Do not you fear : upon mine honour, I  
 Will stand betwixt you and danger. *[Exeunt.]*

---

SCENE III. *The same. A room in the palace.*

*Enter LEONTES, ANTIGONUS, Lords, and Attendants.*

*Leon.* Nor night nor day no rest : it is but weakness  
 To bear the matter thus,—mere weakness. If  
 The cause were not in being,—part o' the cause,  
 She the adultrous ; for the harlot king  
 Is quite beyond mine arm, out of the blank  
 And level of my brain, plot-proof ; but she  
 I can hook to me :—say that she were gone,

Given to the fire, a moiety of my rest  
Might come to me again.—Who's there ?

*First Atten.* [*advancing.*]

My lord ?

*Leon.* How does the boy ?

*First Atten.*

He took good rest to-night ;

'Tis hop'd his sickness is discharg'd.

*Leon.* To see his nobleness !

Conceiving the dishonour of his mother,  
He straight declin'd, droop'd, took it deeply,  
Fasten'd and fix'd the shame on't in himself,  
Threw off his spirit, his appetite, his sleep,  
And downright languish'd.—Leave me solely :—go,  
See how he fares. [*Exit First Atten.*].—Fie, fie ! no thought  
of him ;—

The very thought of my revenges that way  
Recoil upon me : in himself too mighty,  
And in his parties, his alliance,—let him be,  
Until a time may serve : for present vengeance,  
Take it on her. Camillo and Polixenes  
Laugh at me, make their pastime at my sorrow :  
They should not laugh, if I could reach them ; nor  
Shall she, within my power.

*Enter PAULINA, with a child.*

*First Lord.*

You must not enter.

*Paul.* Nay, rather, good my lords, be second to me :  
Fear you his tyrannous passion more, alas,  
Than the queen's life ? a gracious innocent soul,  
More free than he is jealous.

*Ant.*

That's enough.

*Sec. Atten.* Madam, he hath not slept to-night ; com-  
manded

None should come at him.

*Paul.*

Not so hot, good sir :

I come to bring him sleep. 'Tis such as you,—  
That creep like shadows by him, and do sigh  
At each his needless heavings,—such as you  
Nourish the cause of his awaking : I  
Do come, with words as med'cinal as true,

Honest as either, to purge him of that humour  
That presses him from sleep.

*Leon.* [www.libtool.com](http://www.libtool.com) What noise there, ho ?

*Paul.* No noise, my lord ; but needful conference  
About some gossips for your highness.

*Leon.* How !—

Away with that audacious lady !—Antigonus,  
I charg'd thee that she should not come about me :  
I knew she would.

*Ant.* I told her so, my lord,  
On your displeasure's peril and on mine,  
She should not visit you.

*Leon.* What, canst not rule her ?

*Paul.* From all dishonesty he can : in this  
(Unless he take the course that you have done,  
Commit me for committing honour), trust it,  
He shall not rule me.

*Ant.* La you now, you hear :  
When she will take the rein, I let her run ;  
But she'll not stumble.

*Paul.* Good my liege, I come,—  
And, I beseech you, hear me, who professes  
Myself your loyal servant, your physician,  
Your most obedient counsellor ; yet that dares  
Less appear so, in comforting your evils,  
Than such as most seem yours :—I say, I come  
From your good queen.

*Leon.* Good queen !

*Paul.* Good queen, my lord, good queen ; I say good  
queen ;  
And would by combat make her good, so were I  
A man, the worst about you.

*Leon.* Force her hence.

*Paul.* Let him that makes but trifles of his eyes  
First hand me : on mine own accord I'll off ;  
But first I'll do my errand.—The good queen,  
For she is good, hath brought you forth a daughter ;  
Here 'tis ; commends it to your blessing.

[Laying down the child.]

*Leon.* Out!

A mankind witch! Hence with her, out o' door:  
A most intelligencing bawd!

*Paul.* Not so:

I am as ignorant in that as you  
In so entitling me; and no less honest  
Than you are mad; which is enough, I'll warrant,  
As this world goes, to pass for honest.

*Leon.* Traitors!

Will you not push her out?—Give her the bastard:—  
Thou dotard [*to Antigonus*], thou art woman-tir'd, un-  
roosted

By thy dame Partlet here:—take up the bastard;  
Take't up, I say; give't to thy crone.

*Paul.* For ever

Unvenerable be thy hands, if thou  
Tak'st up the princess by that forcèd baseness  
Which he has put upon't!

*Leon.* He dreads his wife.

*Paul.* So I would you did; then 'twere past all doubt  
You'd call your children yours.

*Leon.* A nest of traitors!

*Ant.* I am none, by this good light.

*Paul.* Nor I; nor any,

But one, that's here, and that's himself; for he  
The sacred honour of himself, his queen's,  
His hopeful son's, his babe's, betrays to slander,  
Whose sting is sharper than the sword's; and will not  
(For, as the case now stands, it is a curse  
He cannot be compell'd to't) once remove  
The root of his opinion, which is rotten  
As ever oak or stone was sound.

*Leon.* A callat

Of boundless tongue, who late hath beat her husband,  
And now baits me!—This brat is none of mine;  
It is the issue of Polixenes:  
Hence with it; and, together with the dam,  
Commit them to the fire!

*Paul.* It is yours;

And, might we lay the old proverb to your charge,  
 So like you, 'tis the worse.—Behold, my lords,  
 Although the print be little, the whole matter  
 And copy of the father,—eye, nose, lip;  
 The trick of 's frown; his forehead; nay, the valley,  
 The pretty dimples of 's chin and cheek; his smiles;  
 The very mould and frame of hand, nail, finger:—  
 And thou, good goddess Nature, which hast made it  
 So like to him that got it, if thou hast  
 The ordering of the mind too, 'mongst all colours  
 No yellow in't, lest she suspect, as he does,  
 Her children not her husband's!

*Leon.* A gross hag!—

And, losel, thou art worthy to be hang'd,  
 That wilt not stay her tongue.

*Ant.* Hang all the husbands  
 That cannot do that feat, you'll leave yourself  
 Hardly one subject.

*Leon.* Once more, take her hence.

*Paul.* A most unworthy and unnatural lord  
 Can do no more.

*Leon.* I'll ha' thee burn'd.

*Paul.* I care not:

It is an heretic that makes the fire,  
 Not she which burns in't. I'll not call you tyrant;  
 But this most cruel usage of your queen  
 (Not able to produce more accusation  
 Than your own weak-hinge'd fancy) something savours  
 Of tyranny, and will ignoble make you,  
 Yea, scandalous to the world.

*Leon.* On your allegiance,  
 Out of the chamber with her! Were I a tyrant,  
 Where were her life? she durst not call me so,  
 If she did know me one. Away with her!

*Paul.* I pray you, do not push me; I'll be gone.—  
 Look to your babe, my lord; 'tis yours: Jove send her  
 A better guiding spirit!—What needs these hands?  
 You, that are thus so tender o'er his follies,

Will never do him good, not one of you.

So, so :—farewell ; we are gone.

[*Exit.*

*Leon.* ~~Thou, traitor,~~ hast set on thy wife 'to this.—  
My child ? away with't !—even thou, that hast  
A heart so tender o'er it, take it hence,  
And see it instantly consum'd with fire ;  
Even thou, and none but thou. Take it up straight :  
Within this hour bring me word 'tis done  
(And by good testimony), or I'll seize thy life,  
With what thou else call'st thine. If thou refuse,  
And wilt encounter with my wrath, say so ;  
The bastard-brains with these my proper hands  
Shall I dash out. Go, take it to the fire ;  
For thou sett'st on thy wife.

*Ant.*

I did not, sir :

These lords, my noble fellows, if they please,  
Can clear me in't.

*First Lord.* We can :—my royal liege,  
He is not guilty of her coming hither.

*Leon.* You're liars all.

*First Lord.* Beseech your highness, give us better credit :  
We have always truly serv'd you ; and beseech  
So to esteem of us : and on our knees we beg  
(As recompense of our dear services  
Past and to come), that you do change this purpose,  
Which being so horrible, so bloody, must  
Lead on to some foul issue : we all kneel.

*Leon.* I am a feather for each wind that blows :—  
Shall I live on, to see this bastard kneel  
And call me father ? better burn it now  
Than curse it then. But be it ; let it live :—  
It shall not neither.—You, sir, come you hither ;

[*To Antigonus.*

You that have been so tenderly officious  
With Lady Margery, your midwife, there,  
To save this bastard's life,—for 'tis a bastard,  
So sure as thy<sup>(15)</sup> beard's grey,—what will you adventure  
To save this brat's life ?

*Ant.* Any thing, my lord,  
That my ability may undergo,  
And nobleness impose : at least, thus much,—  
I'll pawn the little blood which I have left  
To save the innocent :—any thing possible.

*Leon.* It shall be possible. Swear by this sword  
Thou wilt perform my bidding.

*Ant.* I will, my lord.

*Leon.* Mark, and perform it,—seest thou ? for the fail  
Of any point in 't shall not only be  
Death to thyself, but to thy lewd-tongu'd wife,  
Whom for this time we pardon. We enjoin thee,  
As thou art liegeman to us, that thou carry  
This female bastard hence ; and that thou bear it  
To some remote and desert place, quite out  
Of our dominions ; and that there thou leave it,  
Without more mercy, to its own protection  
And favour of the climate. As by strange fortune  
It came to us, I do in justice charge thee,  
On thy soul's peril and thy body's torture,  
That thou commend it strangely to some place,  
Where chance may nurse or end it. Take it up.

*Ant.* I swear to do this, though a present death  
Had been more merciful.—Come on, poor babe :  
Some powerful spirit instruct the kites and ravens  
To be thy nurses ! Wolves and bears, they say,  
Casting their savageness aside, have done  
Like offices of pity.—Sir, be prosperous  
In more than this deed does require !—and blessing,  
Against this cruelty, fight on thy side,  
Poor thing, condemn'd to loss ! *[Exit with the child.*

*Leon.* No, I'll not rear  
Another's issue.

*Sec. Atten.* Please your highness, posts,  
From those you sent to the oracle, are come  
An hour since : Cleomenes and Dion,  
Being well arriv'd from Delphos, are both landed,  
Hasting to the court.

*First Lord.* So please you, sir, their speed  
Hath been beyond account.

*Leon.* [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn) Twenty-three days  
They have been absent: 'tis good speed; foretells  
The great Apollo suddenly will have  
The truth of this appear. Prepare you, lords;  
Summon a session, that we may arraign  
Our most disloyal lady; for, as she hath  
Been publicly accus'd, so shall she have  
A just and open trial. While she lives,  
My heart will be a burden to me. Leave me;  
And think upon my bidding.

[*Exeunt.*]

## ACT III.

SCENE I. *Sicilia. A street in some town.*

*Enter CLEOMENES and DION.*

*Cleo.* The climate's delicate; the air most sweet;  
Fertile the isle; the temple much surpassing  
The common praise it bears.

*Dion.* I shall report,  
For most it caught me, the celestial habits  
(Methinks I so should term them) and the reverence  
Of the grave wearers. O, the sacrifice!  
How ceremonious, solemn, and unearthly  
It was i' the offering!

*Cleo.* But, of all, the burst  
And the ear-deafening voice o' the oracle,  
Kin to Jove's thunder, so surpriz'd my sense,  
That I was nothing.

*Dion.* If the event o' the journey  
Prove as successful to the queen,—O be't so!—  
As it hath been to us rare, pleasant, speedy,  
The time is worth the use on't.



*Cleo.* Great Apollo  
Turn all to the best! These proclamations,  
So forcing faults upon Hermione,  
I little like.

*Dion.* The violent carriage of it  
Will clear or end the business: when the oracle  
(Thus by Apollo's great divine seal'd up)  
Shall the contents discover, something rare  
Even then will rush to knowledge.—Go,—fresh horses;—  
And gracious be the issue! [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *The same. A court of justice.*

LEONTES, Lords, and Officers, *discovered.*

*Leon.* This sessions (to our great grief, we pronounce)  
Even pushes 'gainst our heart;—the party tried,  
The daughter of a king, our wife, and one  
Of us too much belov'd. Let us be clear'd  
Of being tyrannous, since we so openly  
Proceed in justice; which shall have due course,  
Even to the guilt or the purgation.—  
Produce the prisoner.

*Offi.* It is his highness' pleasure that the queen  
Appear in person here in court.

*Crier.* Silence! (14)

HERMIONE is brought in guarded; PAULINA and Ladies attending.

*Leon.* Read the indictment.

*Offi.* [*reads.*] "Hermione, queen to the worthy Leontes, king of Sicilia, thou art here accused and arraigned of high treason, in committing adultery with Polixenes, king of Bohemia, and conspiring with Camillo to take away the life of our sovereign lord the king, thy royal husband: the pretence whereof being by circumstances partly laid open, thou, Hermione, contrary to the faith and allegiance of a true subject, didst counsel and aid them, for their better safety, to fly away by night."

*Her.* Since what I am to say must be but that  
Which contradicts my accusation, and

The testimony on my part no other  
 But what comes from myself, it shall scarce boot me  
 To say, "Not guilty:" mine integrity  
 Being counted falsehood, shall, as I express it,  
 Be so receiv'd. But thus,—if powers divine  
 Behold our human actions (as they do),  
 I doubt not, then, but innocence shall make  
 False accusation blush, and tyranny  
 Tremble at patience.—You, my lord, best know  
 (Who least will seem to do so) my past life  
 Hath been as continent, as chaste, as true,  
 As I am now unhappy: which is more  
 Than history can pattern, though devis'd  
 And play'd to take spectators; for, behold me,—  
 A fellow of the royal bed, which owe  
 A moiety of the throne, a great king's daughter,  
 The mother to a hopeful prince,—here standing  
 To prate and talk for life and honour 'fore  
 Who please to come and hear. For life, I prize it  
 As I weigh grief, which I would spare: for honour,  
 'Tis a derivative from me to mine;  
 And only that I stand for. I appeal  
 To your own conscience, sir, before Polixenes  
 Came to your court, how I was in your grace,  
 How merited to be so; since he came,  
 With what encounter so uncurrent I  
 Have strain'd, to appear thus: if one jot beyond  
 The bound of honour, or in act or will  
 That way inclining, harden'd be the hearts  
 Of all that hear me, and my near'st of kin  
 Cry, Fie, upon my grave!

*Leon.* I ne'er heard yet

That any of these bolder vices wanted  
 Less impudence to gainsay what they did  
 Than to perform it first.

*Her.* That's true enough;

Though 'tis a saying, sir, not due to me.

*Leon.* You will not own it.

*Her.* More than mistress of

Which comes to me in name of fault, I must not  
 At all acknowledge. For Polixenes  
 (With whom I am accus'd), I do confess  
 I lov'd him, as in honour he requir'd ;  
 With such a kind of love as might become  
 A lady like me ; with a love even such,  
 So and no other, as yourself commanded :  
 Which not to have done, I think had been in me  
 Both disobedience and ingratitude  
 To you and toward your friend ; whose love had spoke,  
 Even since it could speak, from an infant, freely,  
 That it was yours. Now, for conspiracy,  
 I know not how it tastes ; though it be dish'd  
 For me to try how : all I know of it  
 Is, that Camillo was an honest man ;  
 And why he left your court, the gods themselves,  
 Wotting no more than I, are ignorant.

*Leon.* You knew of his departure, as you know  
 What you have underta'en to do in 's absence.

*Her.* Sir,  
 You speak a language that I understand not :  
 My life stands in the level of your dreams,  
 Which I'll lay down.

*Leon.* Your actions are my dreams ;  
 You had a bastard by Polixenes,  
 And I but dream'd it :—as you were past all shame  
 (Those of your fact are so), so past all truth :  
 Which to deny concerns more than avails ; for as  
 Thy brat hath been cast out, like to itself,  
 No father owning it (which is, indeed,  
 More criminal in thee than it), so thou  
 Shalt feel our justice ; in whose easiest passage  
 Look for no less than death.

*Her.* Sir, spare your threats :  
 The bug which you would fright me with, I seek.  
 To me can life be no commodity :  
 The crown and comfort of my life, your favour,  
 I do give lost ; for I do feel it gone,  
 But know not how it went : my second joy,

And first-fruits of my body, from his presence  
 I am barr'd, like one infectious: my third comfort,  
 Starr'd most unluckily, is from my breast,  
 The innocent milk in its most innocent mouth,  
 Hal'd out to murder: myself on every post  
 Proclaim'd a strumpet; with immodest hatred,  
 The child-bed privilege denied, which 'longs  
 To women of all fashion; lastly, hurried  
 Here to this place, i' the open air, before  
 I have got strength of limit. Now, my liege,  
 Tell me what blessings I have here alive,  
 That I should fear to die? Therefore, proceed.  
 But yet hear this; mistake me not;—no life,—  
 I prize it not a straw:—but for mine honour  
 (Which I would free), if I shall be condemn'd  
 Upon surmises,—all proofs sleeping else,  
 But what your jealousies awake,—I tell you,  
 'Tis rigour, and not law.—Your honours all,  
 I do refer me to the oracle:  
 Apollo be my judge!

*First Lord.* This your request  
 Is altogether just:—therefore, bring forth,  
 And in Apollo's name, his oracle. [*Exeunt certain Officers.*]

*Her.* The Emperor of Russia was my father:  
 O that he were alive, and here beholding  
 His daughter's trial! that he did but see  
 The flatness of my misery,—yet with eyes  
 Of pity, not revenge!

*Re-enter Officers, with CLEOMENES and DION.*

*Offi.* You here shall swear upon this sword of justice,  
 That you, Cleomenes and Dion, have  
 Been both at Delphos; and from thence have brought  
 This seal'd-up oracle, by the hand deliver'd  
 Of great Apollo's priest; and that, since then,  
 You have not dar'd to break the holy seal,  
 Nor read the secrets in 't.

*Cleo. and Dion.* All this we swear.

*Leon.* Break up the seals, and read.

*Offi.* [*reads.*] "Hermione is chaste; Polixenes blameless; Camillo a true subject; Leontes a jealous tyrant; his innocent babe truly begotten; and the king shall live without an heir, if that which is lost be not found."

*Lords.* Now blessèd be the great Apollo!

*Her.* Praisèd!

*Leon.* Hast thou read truth?

*Offi.* Ay, my lord; even so

As it is here set down.

*Leon.* There is no truth at all i' the oracle:  
The sessions shall proceed: this is mere falsehood.

*Enter an Attendant, hastily.*

*Atten.* My lord the king, the king!

*Leon.* What is the business?

*Atten.* O sir, I shall be hated to report it!

The prince your son, with mere conceit and fear  
Of the queen's speed, is gone.

*Leon.* How! gone!

*Atten.* Is dead.

*Leon.* Apollo's angry; and the heavens themselves  
Do strike at my injustice. [*Hermione faints.*] How now  
there!

*Paul.* This news is mortal to the queen:—look down,  
And see what death is doing.

*Leon.* Take her hence:

Her heart is but o'ercharg'd; she will recover:—

I have too much believ'd mine own suspicion:—

Beseech you, tenderly apply to her

Some remedies for life.—Apollo, pardon

[*Exeunt Paulina and Ladies, with Hermione.*]

My great profaneness 'gainst thine oracle!—

I'll reconcile me to Polixenes;

New woo my queen; recall the good Camillo,

Whom I proclaim a man of truth, of mercy;

For, being transported by my jealousies

To bloody thoughts and to revenge, I chose

Camillo for the minister, to poison

My friend Polixenes: which had been done,

But that the good mind of Camillo tardied  
 My swift command, though I with death and with  
 Reward did threaten and encourage him,  
 Not doing it and being done: he, most humane,  
 And fill'd with honour, to my kingly guest  
 Unclasp'd my practice; quit his fortunes here,  
 Which you knew great; and to the hazard<sup>(15)</sup>  
 Of all incertainties himself commended,  
 No richer than his honour:—how he glisters  
 Thorough my rust! and how his piety  
 Does my deeds make the blacker!

*Re-enter PAULINA.*

*Paul.* Woe the while!  
 O, cut my lace, lest my heart, cracking it,  
 Break too!

*First Lord.* What fit is this, good lady?

*Paul.* What studied torments, tyrant, hast for me?  
 What wheels? racks? fires? what flaying? boiling  
 In leads or oils? what old or newer torture  
 Must I receive, whose every word deserves  
 To taste of thy most worst? Thy tyranny  
 Together working with thy jealousies,—  
 Fancies too weak for boys, too green and idle  
 For girls of nine,—O, think what they have done,  
 And then run mad indeed,—stark mad! for all  
 Thy by-gone fooleries were but spices of it.  
 That thou betray'dst Polixenes, 'twas nothing,—  
 That did but show thee, of a fool, inconstant,  
 And damnable ingrateful; nor was 't much,  
 Thou wouldst have poison'd good Camillo's honour,  
 To have him kill a king;—poor trespasses,  
 More monstrous standing by: whereof I reckon  
 The casting forth to crows thy baby daughter,  
 To be or none, or little,—though a devil  
 Would have shed water out of fire ere done 't;  
 Nor is 't directly laid to thee, the death  
 Of the young prince, whose honourable thoughts  
 (Thoughts high for one so tender) cleft the heart

That could conceive a gross and foolish sire  
 Blemish'd his gracious dam: this is not, no,  
 Laid to thy answer: but the last,—O lords,  
 When I have said, cry, Woe!—the queen, the queen,  
 The sweet'st, dear'st creature's dead; and vengeance for't  
 Not dropp'd down yet.

*First Lord.* The higher powers forbid!

*Paul.* I say she's dead; I'll swear't. If word nor oath  
 Prevail not, go and see: if you can bring  
 Tincture or lustre in her lip, her eye,  
 Heat outwardly or breath within, I'll serve you  
 As I would do the gods.—But, O thou tyrant!  
 Do not repent these things; for they are heavier  
 Than all thy woes can stir: therefore betake thee  
 To nothing but despair. A thousand knees  
 Ten thousand years together, naked, fasting,  
 Upon a barren mountain, and still winter  
 In storm perpetual, could not move the gods  
 To look that way thou wert.

*Leon.* Go on, go on:

Thou canst not speak too much; I have deserv'd  
 All tongues to talk their bitterest.

*First Lord.* Say no more:

Howe'er the business goes, you have made fault  
 I' the boldness of your speech.

*Paul.* I am sorry for't:

All faults I make, when I shall come to know them,  
 I do repent. Alas, I have show'd too much  
 The rashness of a woman! he is touch'd  
 To the noble heart.—What's gone, and what's past help,  
 Should be past grief: do not receive affliction  
 At my petition; (<sup>16</sup>) I beseech you, rather  
 Let me be punish'd, that have minded you  
 Of what you should forget. Now, good my liege,  
 Sir, royal sir, forgive a foolish woman:  
 The love I bore your queen,—lo, fool again!—  
 I'll speak of her no more, nor of your children;  
 I'll not remember you of my own lord,

Who is lost too : take your patience to you,  
And I'll say nothing.

*Leon.* Thou didst speak but well,  
When most the truth ; which I receive much better  
Than to be pitied of thee. Prithee, bring me  
To the dead bodies of my queen and son :  
One grave shall be for both ; upon them shall  
The causes of their death appear, unto  
Our shame perpetual. Once a day I'll visit  
The chapel where they lie ; and tears shed there  
Shall be my recreation : so long as nature  
Will bear up with this exercise, so long  
I daily vow to use it. Come, and lead me  
To these sorrows.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE III. *Bohemia. A desert country near the sea.*

*Enter ANTIGONUS with the Child, and a Mariner.*

*Ant.* Thou art perfect, then, our ship hath touch'd upon  
The deserts of Bohemia ?

*Mar.* Ay, my lord ; and fear  
We have landed in ill time : the skies look grimly,  
And threaten present blusters. In my conscience,  
The heavens with that we have in hand are angry,  
And frown upon 's.

*Ant.* Their sacred wills be done !—Go, get aboard ;  
Look to thy bark : I'll not be long before  
I call upon thee.

*Mar.* Make your best haste ; and go not  
Too far i' the land : 'tis like to be loud weather ;  
Besides, this place is famous for the creatures  
Of prey that keep upon't.

*Ant.* Go thou away :  
I'll follow instantly.

*Mar.* I am glad at heart  
To be so rid o' the business.

[*Exit.*]



*Ant.*

Come, poor babe :—

I have heard (but not believ'd), the spirits o' the dead  
 May walk again : if such thing be, thy mother  
 Appear'd to me last night ; for ne'er was dream  
 So like a waking. To me comes a creature,  
 Sometimes her head on one side, some another ;  
 I never saw a vessel of like sorrow,  
 So fill'd and so becoming :<sup>(17)</sup> in pure white robes,  
 Like very sanctity, she did approach  
 My cabin where I lay ; thrice bow'd before me ;  
 And, gasping to begin some speech, her eyes  
 Became two spouts : the fury spent, anon  
 Did this break from her : “ Good Antigonus,  
 Since fate, against thy better disposition,  
 Hath made thy person for the thrower-out  
 Of my poor babe, according to thine oath,—  
 Places remote enough are in Bohemia,  
 There weep, and leave it crying ; and, for the babe  
 Is counted lost for ever, Perdita,  
 I prithee, call't. For this ungentle business,  
 Put on thee by my lord, thou ne'er shalt see  
 Thy wife Paulina more : ”—and so, with shrieks,  
 She melted into air. Affrighted much,  
 I did in time collect myself ; and thought  
 This was so, and no slumber. Dreams are toys :  
 Yet, for this once, yea, superstitiously,  
 I will be squar'd by this. I do believe  
 Hermione hath suffer'd death ; and that  
 Apollo would, this being indeed the issue  
 Of King Polixenes, it should here be laid,  
 Either for life or death, upon the earth  
 Of its right father.—Blossom, speed thee well !

*[Laying down the child.*

There lie ; and there thy character : there these ;

*[Laying down a bundle.*

Which may, if fortune please, both breed thee, pretty,  
 And still rest thine.—The storm begins :—poor wretch,  
 That, for thy mother's fault, art thus expos'd  
 To loss and what may follow !—Weep I cannot,

But my heart bleeds: and most accurs'd am I  
 To be by oath enjoin'd to this.—Farewell!—  
 The day frowns more and more:—thou 'rt like to have  
 A lullaby too rough:—I never saw  
 The heavens so dim by day.—A savage clamour!—  
 Well may I get aboard!—This is the chase:  
 I am gone for ever. [Exit, pursued by a bear.]

*Enter an old Shepherd.*

*Shep.* I would there were no age between ten and three-and-twenty, or that youth would sleep out the rest; for there is nothing in the between but getting wenches with child, wronging the ancientry, stealing, fighting—Hark you now!—Would any but these boiled brains of nineteen and two-and-twenty hunt this weather? They have scared away two of my best sheep, which I fear the wolf will sooner find than the master: if any where I have them, 'tis by the seaside, browsing of ivy. Good luck, an't be thy will! what have we here? [*Taking up the child.*] Mercy on's, a bairn; a very pretty bairn! A boy or a child, I wonder? A pretty one; a very pretty one: sure, some scape: though I am not bookish, yet I can read waiting-gentlewoman in the scape. This has been some stair-work, some trunk-work, some behind-door-work: they were warmer that got this than the poor thing is here. I'll take it up for pity: yet I'll tarry till my son come; he hollaed but even now.—Whoa, ho, ho!

*Clo.* [*within.*] Hilloa, loa!

*Shep.* What, art so near? If thou'lt see a thing to talk on when thou art dead and rotten, come hither.

*Enter Clown.*

What ailest thou, man?

*Clo.* I have seen two such sights, by sea and by land!—but I am not to say it is a sea, for it is now the sky: betwixt the firmament and it you cannot thrust a bodkin's point.

*Shep.* Why, boy, how is it?

*Clo.* I would you did but see how it chafes, how it rages, how it takes up the shore!—but that's not to the point. O, the most piteous cry of the poor souls! sometimes to see 'em,

and not to see 'em; now the ship boring the moon with her main-mast, and anon swallowed with yest and froth, as you'd thrust a cork into a hog's head. And then for the land-service,—to see how the bear tore out his shoulder-bone; how he cried to me for help, and said his name was Antigonus, a nobleman:—but to make an end of the ship,—to see how the sea flap-dragoned it:—but, first, how the poor souls roared, and the sea mocked them;—and how the poor gentleman roared, and the bear mocked him, both roaring louder than the sea or weather.

*Shep.* Name of mercy, when was this, boy?

*Clo.* Now, now; I have not winked since I saw these sights: the men are not yet cold under water, nor the bear half dined on the gentleman,—he's at it now.

*Shep.* Would I had been by, to have helped the old man!

*Clo.* I would you had been by the ship-side, to have helped her: there your charity would have lacked footing.

*Shep.* Heavy matters! heavy matters! but look thee here, boy. Now bless thyself: thou mettest with things dying, I with things new-born. Here's a sight for thee; look thee, a bearing-cloth for a squire's child! look thee here; take up, take up, boy; open't. So, let's see:—it was told me I should be rich by the fairies; this is some changeling:—open't. What's within, boy?

*Clo.* You're a made old man: if the sins of your youth are forgiven you, you're well to live. Gold! all gold!

*Shep.* This is fairy gold, boy, and 'twill prove so: up with't, keep it close: home, home, the next way. We are lucky, boy; and to be so still, requires nothing but secrecy.—Let my sheep go:—come, good boy, the next way home.

*Clo.* Go you the next way with your findings. I'll go see if the bear be gone from the gentleman, and how much he hath eaten: they are never curst, but when they are hungry: if there be any of him left, I'll bury it.

*Shep.* That's a good deed. If thou mayest discern by that which is left of him, what he is, fetch me to the sight of him.

*Clo.* Marry, will I; and you shall help to put him i' the ground.

*Shep.* 'Tis a lucky day, boy, and we'll do good deeds on't.

[*Exeunt.*]

www.libtool.com.cn ACT IV.

*Enter TIME, as Chorus.*

*Time.* I,—that please some, try all ; both joy and terror  
 Of good and bad ; that make and unfold error,—  
 Now take upon me, in the name of Time,  
 To use my wings. Impute it not a crime  
 To me or my swift passage, that I slide  
 O'er sixteen years, and leave the growth untried  
 Of that wide gap ; since it is in my power  
 To o'erthrow law, and in one self-born hour  
 To plant and o'erwhelm custom. Let me pass  
 The same I am, ere ancient'st order was,  
 Or what is now receiv'd : I witness to  
 The times that brought them in ; so shall I do  
 To the freshest things now reigning, and make stale  
 The glistening of this present, as my tale  
 Now seems to it. Your patience this allowing,  
 I turn my glass, and give my scene such growing  
 As you had slept between. Leontes leaving  
 The effects of his fond jealousies, so grieving  
 That he shuts up himself ; imagine me,  
 Gentle spectators, that I now may be  
 In fair Bohemia ; and remember well,  
 I mention'd a son o' the king's, which Florizel  
 I now name to you ; and with speed so pace  
 To speak of Perdita, now grown in grace  
 Equal with wondering : what of her ensues,  
 I list not prophesy ; but let Time's news  
 Be known when 'tis brought forth :—a shepherd's daughter,  
 And what to her adheres, which follows after,  
 Is the argument of Time. Of this allow,  
 If ever you have spent time worse ere now ;  
 If never, yet that Time himself doth say  
 He wishes earnestly you never may.

[*Exit.*]

SCENE I. *Bohemia. A room in the palace of POLIXENES.*

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Enter POLIXENES and CAMILLO.*

*Pol.* I pray thee, good Camillo, be no more importunate: 'tis a sickness denying thee any thing; a death to grant this.

*Cam.* It is fifteen years since I saw my country: though I have, for the most part, been aired abroad, I desire to lay my bones there. Besides, the penitent king, my master, hath sent for me; to whose feeling sorrows I might be some allay, or I o'erween to think so,—which is another spur to my departure.

*Pol.* As thou lovest me, Camillo, wipe not out the rest of thy services by leaving me now: the need I have of thee, thine own goodness hath made; better not to have had thee than thus to want thee: thou, having made me businesses, which none, without thee, can sufficiently manage, must either stay to execute them thyself, or take away with thee the very services thou hast done; which if I have not enough considered (as too much I cannot), to be more thankful to thee shall be my study; and my profit therein, the heaping friendships. Of that fatal country Sicilia, prithee speak no more; whose very naming punishes me with the remembrance of that penitent, as thou callest him, and reconciled king, my brother; whose loss of his most precious queen and children are even now to be afresh lamented. Say to me, when sawest thou the Prince Florizel, my son? Kings are no less unhappy, their issue not being gracious, than they are in losing them when they have approved their virtues.

*Cam.* Sir, it is three days since I saw the prince. What his happier affairs may be, are to me unknown: but I have missingly noted, he is of late much retired from court, and is less frequent to his princely exercises than formerly he hath appeared.

*Pol.* I have considered so much, Camillo, and with some care; so far, that I have eyes under my service which look upon his removedness; from whom I have this intelligence:—that he is seldom from the house of a most homely shepherd; a man, they say, that from very nothing, and beyond

the imagination of his neighbours, is grown into an unspeakable estate.

*Cam.* I have heard, sir, of such a man, who hath a daughter of most rare note: the report of her is extended more than can be thought to begin from such a cottage.

*Pol.* That's likewise part of my intelligence. But I fear the angle that plucks our son thither. Thou shalt accompany us to the place; where we will, not appearing what we are, have some question with the shepherd; from whose simplicity I think it not uneasy to get the cause of my son's resort thither. Prithee, be my present partner in this business, and lay aside the thoughts of Sicilia.

*Cam.* I willingly obey your command.

*Pol.* My best Camillo!—We must disguise ourselves.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *The same. A road near the Shepherd's cottage.*

*Enter AUTOLYCUS, singing.*

When daffodils begin to peer,—

With, hey! the doxy over the dale,—

Why, then comes in the sweet o' the year;

For the red blood reigns in the winter's pale.

The white sheet bleaching on the hedge,—

With, hey! the sweet birds, O, how they sing!—

Doth set my pugging tooth on edge;

For a quart of ale is a dish for a king.

The lark, that tirra-lirra chants,—

With, hey! with, hey! (1<sup>6</sup>) the thrush and the jay,—

Are summer songs for me and my aunts,

While we lie tumbling in the hay.

I have served Prince Florizel, and, in my time, wore three-pile; but now I am out of service:

But shall I go mourn for that, my dear?

[*Singing.*]

The pale moon shines by night:

And when I wander here and there,

I then do most go right.

If tinkers may have leave to live,  
 And bear the sow-skin budget,  
 Then my account I well may give,  
 And in the stocks avouch it.

My traffic is sheets; when the kite builds, look to lesser linen. My father named me Autolycus; who being, as I am, littered under Mercury, was likewise a snapper-up of unconsidered trifles. With die and drab I purchased this caparison; and my revenue is the silly-cheat: gallows and knock are too powerful on the highway; beating and hanging are terrors to me; for the life to come, I sleep out the thought of it.—A prize! a prize!

*Enter Clown.*

*Clo.* Let me see:—every 'leven wether tods; every tod yields pound and odd shilling; fifteen hundred shorn, what comes the wool to?

*Aut.* If the spring hold, the cock's mine. [*Aside.*

*Clo.* I cannot do't without counters.—Let me see; what am I to buy for our sheep-shearing feast?<sup>(19)</sup> Three pound of sugar; five pound of currants; rice—what will this sister of mine do with rice? But my father hath made her mistress of the feast, and she lays it on. She hath made me four-and-twenty nosebags for the shearers,—three-man songmen all, and very good ones; but they are most of them means and bases; but one puritan amongst them, and he sings psalms to hornpipes. I must have saffron, to colour the warden-pies; mace, dates,—none, that's out of my note; nutmegs, seven; a race or two of ginger,—but that I may beg; four pound of prunes, and as many of raisins o' the sun.

*Aut.* O that ever I was born! [*Groveling on the ground.*

*Clo.* I' the name of me,—

*Aut.* O, help me, help me! pluck but off these rags; and then, death, death!

*Clo.* Alack, poor soul! thou hast need of more rags to lay on thee, rather than have these off.

*Aut.* O sir, the loathsomeness of them offend<sup>(20)</sup> me more than the stripes I have received, which are mighty ones and millions.

*Clo.* Alas, poor man! a million of beating may come to a great matter.

*Aut.* I am robbed, sir, and beaten; my money and apparel ta'en from me, and these detestable things put upon me.

*Clo.* What, by a horseman or a footman?

*Aut.* A footman, sweet sir, a footman.

*Clo.* Indeed, he should be a footman by the garments he has left with thee: if this be a horseman's coat, it hath seen very hot service. Lend me thy hand, I'll help thee: come, lend me thy hand. *[Helping him up.]*

*Aut.* O, good sir, tenderly, O!

*Clo.* Alas, poor soul!

*Aut.* O, good sir, softly, good sir! I fear, sir, my shoulder-blade is out.

*Clo.* How now! canst stand?

*Aut.* Softly, dear sir *[picks his pocket]*; good sir, softly. You ha' done me a charitable office.

*Clo.* Dost lack any money? I have a little money for thee.

*Aut.* No, good sweet sir; no, I beseech you, sir: I have a kinsman not past three quarters of a mile hence, unto whom I was going; I shall there have money, or any thing I want: offer me no money, I pray you,—that kills my heart.

*Clo.* What manner of fellow was he that robbed you?

*Aut.* A fellow, sir, that I have known to go about with troll-my-dames: I knew him once a servant of the prince: I cannot tell, good sir, for which of his virtues it was, but he was certainly whipped out of the court.

*Clo.* His vices, you would say; there's no virtue whipped out of the court: they cherish it, to make it stay there; and yet it will no more but abide.

*Aut.* Vices, I would say, sir. I know this man well: he hath been since an ape-bearer; then a process-server,—a bailiff; then he compassed a motion of the Prodigal Son, and married a tinker's wife within a mile where my land and living lies; and, having flown over many knavish professions, he settled only in rogue: some call him Autolycus.

*Clo.* Out upon him! prig, for my life, prig: he haunts wakes, fairs, and bear-baitings.



*Aut.* Very true, sir; he, sir, he; that's the rogue that put me into this apparel.

*Clo.* Not a more cowardly rogue in all Bohemia: if you had but looked big and spit at him, he'd have run.

*Aut.* I must confess to you, sir, I am no fighter: I am false of heart that way; and that he knew, I warrant him.

*Clo.* How do you now?

*Aut.* Sweet sir, much better than I was; I can stand and walk: I will even take my leave of you, and pace softly towards my kinsman's.

*Clo.* Shall I bring thee on the way?

*Aut.* No, good-faced sir; no, sweet sir.

*Clo.* Then fare thee well: I must go buy spices for our sheep-shearing.

*Aut.* Prosper you, sweet sir! [*Exit Clown.*] Your purse is not hot enough to purchase your spice. I'll be with you at your sheep-shearing too: if I make not this cheat bring out another, and the shearers prove sheep, let me be unrolled, and my name put in the book of virtue!

Jog on, jog on, the footpath way, [*Sings.*

And merrily hent the stile-a:

A merry heart goes all the day,

Your sad tires in a mile-a. [*Exit.*

SCENE III. *The same.* A lawn before a Shepherd's cottage.

*Enter FLORIZEL and PERDITA.*

*Flo.* These your unusual weeds to each part of you  
Do give a life: no shepherdess; but Flora  
Peering in April's front. This your sheep-shearing  
Is as a meeting of the petty gods,  
And you the queen on't.

*Per.* Sir, my gracious lord,  
To chide at your extremes, it not becomes me,—  
O, pardon, that I name them!—your high self,  
The gracious mark o' the land, you have obscur'd  
With a swain's wearing; and me, poor lowly maid,

Most goddess-like prank'd up : but that our feasts  
 In every mess have folly, and the feeders  
 Digest it with a custom, I should blush  
 To see you so attir'd ; swoon,<sup>(21)</sup> I think,  
 To show myself a glass.

*Flo.* I bless the time  
 When my good falcon made her flight across  
 Thy father's ground.

*Per.* Now Jove afford you cause !  
 To me the difference forges dread ; your greatness  
 Hath not been us'd to fear. Even now I tremble  
 To think, your father, by some accident,  
 Should pass this way, as you did : O, the Fates !  
 How would he look, to see his work, so noble,  
 Vilely bound up ? What would he say ? Or how  
 Should I, in these my borrow'd flaunts, behold  
 The sternness of his presence ?

*Flo.* Apprehend  
 Nothing but jollity. The gods themselves,  
 Humbling their deities to love, have taken  
 The shapes of beasts upon them : Jupiter  
 Became a bull, and bellow'd ; the green Neptune  
 A ram, and bleated ; and the fire-rob'd god,  
 Golden Apollo, a poor humble swain,  
 As I seem now :—their transformations  
 Were never for a piece of beauty rarer,—  
 Nor in a way so chaste, since my desires  
 Run not before mine honour, nor my lusts  
 Burn hotter than my faith.

*Per.* O, but, sir,  
 Your resolution cannot hold, when 'tis  
 Oppos'd, as it must be, by the power of the king :  
 One of these two must be necessities,  
 Which then will speak,—that you must change this purpose,  
 Or I my life.

*Flo.* Thou dearest Perdita,  
 With these forc'd thoughts, I prithee, darken not  
 The mirth o' the feast : or I'll be thine, my fair,  
 Or not my father's ; for I cannot be

Mine own, nor any thing to any, if  
 I be not thine; to this I am most constant,  
 Though destiny say no. Be merry, gentle;  
 Strangle such thoughts as these with any thing  
 That you behold the while. Your guests are coming:  
 Lift up your countenance, as it were the day  
 Of celebration of that nuptial which  
 We two have sworn shall come.

*Per.*

O lady Fortune,

Stand you auspicious!

*Flo.*

See, your guests approach:

Address yourself to entertain them sprightly,  
 And let's be red with mirth.

*Enter Shepherd, with POLIXENES and CAMILLO disguised; Clown,  
 MOPSA, DORCAS, and other Shepherds and Shepherdesses.*

*Shep.* Fie, daughter! when my old wife liv'd, upon  
 This day she was both pantler, butler, cook;  
 Both dame and servant; welcom'd all; serv'd all;  
 Would sing her song and dance her turn; now here,  
 At upper end o' the table, now i' the middle;  
 On his shoulder, and his; her face o' fire  
 With labour, and the thing she took to quench it,  
 She would to each one sip. You are retir'd,  
 As if you were a feasted one, and not  
 The hostess of the meeting: pray you, bid  
 These unknown friends to's welcome; for it is  
 A way to make us better friends, more known.  
 Come, quench your blushes, and present yourself  
 That which you are, mistress o' the feast: come on,  
 And bid us welcome to your sheep-shearing,  
 As your good flock shall prosper.

*Per.*

Sir, welcome:

[*To Pol.*

It is my father's will I should take on me  
 The hostess-ship o' the day:—you're welcome, sir.—

[*To Camillo.*

Give me those flowers there, Dorcas.—Reverend sirs,  
 For you there's rosemary and rue; these keep

Seeming and savour all the winter long :  
 Grace and remembrance be to you both,  
 And welcome to our shearing !

*Pol.* Shepherdess  
 (A fair one are you), well you fit our ages  
 With flowers of winter.

*Per.* Sir, the year growing ancient,—  
 Not yet on summer's death, nor on the birth  
 Of trembling winter,—the fairest flowers o' the season  
 Are our carnations, and streak'd gillyvors,  
 Which some call nature's bastards: of that kind  
 Our rustic garden's barren; and I care not  
 To get slips of them.

*Pol.* Wherefore, gentle maiden,  
 Do you neglect them ?

*Per.* For I have heard it said,  
 There is an art which, in their piedness, shares  
 With great creating nature.

*Pol.* Say there be ;  
 Yet nature is made better by no mean,  
 But nature makes that mean: so, o'er that art  
 Which you say adds to nature, is an art  
 That nature makes. You see, sweet maid, we marry  
 A gentler scion to the wildest stock,  
 And make conceive a bark of baser kind  
 By bud of nobler race: this is an art  
 Which does mend nature,—change it rather; but  
 The art itself is nature.

*Per.* So it is.

*Pol.* Then make your garden rich in gillyvors,  
 And do not call them bastards.

*Per.* I'll not put  
 The dibble in earth to set one slip of them ;  
 No more than, were I painted, I would wish  
 This youth should say, 'twere well, and only therefore  
 Desire to breed by me.—Here's flowers for you ;  
 Hot lavender, mints, savory, marjoram ;  
 The marigold, that goes to bed wi' the sun,

And with him rises weeping : these are flowers  
Of middle summer, and, I think, they are given  
To men of middle age. Ye're very welcome.

*Cam.* I should leave grazing, were I of your flock,  
And only live by gazing.

*Per.* Out, alas !

You'd be so lean, that blasts of January  
Would blow you through and through.—Now, my fair'st  
friend,

I would I had some flowers o' the spring that might  
Become your time of day ;—and yours, and yours,  
That wear upon your virgin branches yet  
Your maidenheads growing :—O Proserpina,  
For the flowers now, that, frighted, thou lett'st fall  
From Dis's wagon ! daffodils,  
That come before the swallow dares, and take  
The winds of March with beauty ; violets, dim,  
But sweeter than the lids of Juno's eyes  
Or Cytherea's breath ; pale primroses,  
That die unmarried, ere they can behold  
Bright Phœbus in his strength,—a malady  
Most incident to maids ; bold oxlips and  
The crown-imperial ; lilies of all kinds,  
The flower-de-luce being one ! O, these I lack,  
To make you garlands of ; and my sweet friend,  
To strew him o'er and o'er !

*Flo.* What, like a corse ?

*Per.* No, like a bank for love to lie and play on ;  
Not like a corse ; or if,—not to be buried,  
But quick, and in mine arms.—Come, take your flowers :  
Methinks I play as I have seen them do  
In Whitsun pastorals : sure, this robe of mine  
Does change my disposition.

*Flo.* What you do  
Still betters what is done. When you speak, sweet,  
I'd have you do it ever : when you sing,  
I'd have you buy and sell so ; so give alms ;  
Pray so ; and, for the ordering your affairs,  
To sing them too : when you do dance, I wish you

A wave o' the sea, that ybu might ever do  
 Nothing but that; move still, still so,  
 And own no other function: each your doing,  
 So singular in each particular,  
 Crowns what you are doing in the present deeds,  
 That all your acts are queens.

*Per.*

O Doricles,

Your praises are too large: but that your youth,  
 And the true blood which peeps fairly through it,  
 Do plainly give you out an unstain'd shepherd,  
 With wisdom I might fear, my Doricles,  
 You woo'd me the false way.

*Flo.*

I think you have

As little skill to fear as I have purpose  
 To put you to 't.—But, come; our dance, I pray:  
 Your hand, my Perdita: so turtles pair,  
 That never mean to part.

*Per.*

I'll swear for 'em.

*Pol.* This is the prettiest low-born lass that ever  
 Ran on the green-sward: nothing she does or seems  
 But smacks of something greater than herself,  
 Too noble for this place.

*Cam.*

He tells her something

That makes her blood look out: (22) good sooth, she is  
 The queen of curds and cream.

*Clo.*

Come on, strike up!

*Dor.* Mopsa must be your mistress: marry, garlic,  
 To mend her kissing with.

*Mop.*

Now, in good time!

*Clo.* Not a word, a word; we stand upon our manners.—  
 Come, strike up!

[*Music.* Here a dance of Shepherds and Shepherdesses.]

*Pol.* Pray, good shepherd, what fair swain is this  
 Which dances with your daughter?

*Shep.* They call him Doricles; and boasts himself  
 To have a worthy feeding: but I have it  
 Upon his own report, and I believe it;  
 He looks like sooth. He says he loves my daughter:  
 I think so too; for never gaz'd the moon

Upon the water, as he'll stand, and read,  
 As 'twere, my daughter's eyes: and, to be plain,  
 I think there is not half a kiss to choose  
 Who loves another best.

*Pol.* She dances featly.

*Shep.* So she does any thing; though I report it,  
 That should be silent: if young Doricles  
 Do light upon her, she shall bring him that  
 Which he not dreams of.

*Enter a Servant.*

*Serv.* O master, if you did but hear the pedler at the door, you would never dance again after a tabor and pipe; no, the bagpipe could not move you: he sings several tunes faster than you'll tell money; he utters them as he had eaten ballads, and all men's ears grew to his tunes.

*Clo.* He could never come better: he shall come in: I love a ballad but even too well; if it be doleful matter merrily set down, or a very pleasant thing indeed and sung lamentably.

*Serv.* He hath songs for man or woman, of all sizes,—no milliner can so fit his customers with gloves: he has the prettiest love-songs for maids; so without bawdry, which is strange; with such delicate burdens of "dildos" and "fadings," "jump her and thump her;" and where some stretch-mouthed rascal would, as it were, mean mischief, and break a foul gap<sup>(23)</sup> into the matter, he makes the maid to answer, "Whoop, do me no harm, good man;" puts him off, slights him, with "Whoop, do me no harm, good man."

*Pol.* This is a brave fellow.

*Clo.* Believe me, thou talkest of an admirable-conceited fellow. Has he any unbraided wares?

*Serv.* He hath ribands of all the colours i' the rainbow; points more than all the lawyers in Bohemia can learnedly handle, though they come to him by the gross; inkles, caddisses, cambrics, lawns: why, he sings 'em over, as they were gods or goddesses; you would think, a smock were a she-angel, he so chants to the sleeve-hand, and the work about the square on't.

*Clo.* Prithce, bring him in; and let him approach singing.

*Per.* Forewarn him that he use no scurrilous words in 's tunes.  
[*Exit Servant.*]

*Clo.* You have of these pedlers, that have more in them than you'd think, sister.

*Per.* Ay, good brother, or go about to think.

*Enter AUTOLYCUS, singing.*

Lawn as white as driven snow ;  
Cyprus black as e'er was crow ;  
Gloves as sweet as damask roses ;  
Masks for faces and for noses ;  
Bugle-bracelet, necklace-amber,  
Perfume for a lady's chamber ;  
Golden quoifs and stomachers,  
For my lads to give their dears ;  
Pins and poking-sticks of steel,  
What maids lack from head to heel :  
Come buy of me, come ; come buy, come buy ;  
Buy, lads, or else your lasses cry :  
Come buy.

*Clo.* If I were not in love with Mopsa, thou shouldst take no money of me ; but being enthralled as I am, it will also be the bondage of certain ribands and gloves.

*Mop.* I was promised them against the feast ; but they come not too late now.

*Dor.* He hath promised you more than that, or there be liars.

*Mop.* He hath paid you all he promised you : may be, he has paid you more,—which will shame you to give him again.

*Clo.* Is there no manners left among maids ? will they wear their plackets where they should bear their faces ? Is there not milking-time, when you are going to bed, or kiln-hole, to whistle off these secrets, but you must be tittle-tattling before all our guests ? 'tis well they are whispering. Clamour your tongues, and not a word more.

*Mop.* I have done. Come, you promised me a tawdry-lace and a pair of sweet gloves.

*Clo.* Have I not told thee how I was cozened by the way, and lost all my money ?



*Aut.* And, indeed, sir, there are cozeners abroad; therefore it behoves men to be wary.

*Clo.* Fear not thou, man, thou shalt lose nothing here.

*Aut.* I hope so, sir; for I have about me many parcels of charge.

*Clo.* What hast here? ballads?

*Mop.* Pray now, buy some: I love a ballad in print a-life; for then we are sure they are true.

*Aut.* Here's one to a very doleful tune, How a usurer's wife was brought to bed of twenty money-bags at a burden, and how she longed to eat adders' heads and toads carbonadoed.

*Mop.* Is it true, think you?

*Aut.* Very true; and but a month old.

*Dor.* Bless me from marrying a usurer!

*Aut.* Here's the midwife's name to't, one Mistress Taleporter, and five or six honest wives' that were present. Why should I carry lies abroad?

*Mop.* Pray you now, buy it.

*Clo.* Come on, lay it by: and let's first see more ballads; we'll buy the other things anon.

*Aut.* Here's another ballad, Of a fish, that appeared upon the coast on Wednesday the fourscore of April, forty thousand fathom above water, and sung this ballad against the hard hearts of maids: it was thought she was a woman, and was turned into a cold fish for she would not exchange flesh with one that loved her: the ballad is very pitiful, and as true.

*Dor.* Is it true too, think you?

*Aut.* Five justices' hands at it, and witnesses more than my pack will hold.

*Clo.* Lay it by too: another.

*Aut.* This is a merry ballad, but a very pretty one.

*Mop.* Let's have some merry ones.

*Aut.* Why, this is a passing merry one, and goes to the tune of, "Two maids wooing a man:" there's scarce a maid westward but she sings it; 'tis in request, I can tell you.

*Mop.* We can both sing it: if thou'lt bear a part, thou shalt hear; 'tis in three parts.

*Dor.* We had the tune on't a month ago.

*Aut.* I can bear my part; you must know 'tis my occupation: have at it with you.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

SONG.

*A.* Get you hence, for I must go;  
Where, it fits not you to know.

*D.* Whither? *M.* O, whither? *D.* Whither?

*M.* It becomes thy oath full well,  
Thou to me thy secrets tell:

*D.* Me too, let me go thither.

*M.* Or thou go'st to the grange or mill:

*D.* If to either, thou dost ill.

*A.* Neither. *D.* What, neither? *A.* Neither.

*D.* Thou hast sworn my love to be;

*M.* Thou hast sworn it more to me:

Then, whither go'st? say, whither?

*Clo.* We'll have this song out anon by ourselves: my father and the gentlemen are in sad talk, and we'll not trouble them.—Come, bring away thy pack after me.—Wenches, I'll buy for you both.—Pedler, let's have the first choice.—Follow me, girls.

[*Exit with Dorcas and Mopsa.*]

*Aut.* [*aside.*] And you shall pay well for 'em.—

Will you buy any tape,  
Or lace for your cape,  
My dainty duck, my dear-a?  
Any silk, any thread,  
Any toys for your head,  
Of the new'st and fin'st, fin'st wear-a?  
Come to the pedler;  
Money's a medler,  
That doth utter all men's ware-a.

[*Singing.*]

[*Exit.*]

*Re-enter* Servant.

*Serv.* Master, there is three carters, three shepherds, three neat-herds, three swine-herds, that have made themselves all men of hair,—they call themselves Saltiers: and they have a dance which the wenches say is a gallimaufry of gambols, because they are not in't; but they themselves are o' the mind

(if it be not too rough for some that know little but bowling) it will please plentifully.

*Shep.* Away! we'll none on't: here has been too much homely foolery already.—I know, sir, we weary you.

*Pol.* You weary those that refresh us: pray, let's see these four threes of herdsmen.

*Serv.* One three of them, by their own report, sir, hath danced before the king; and not the worst of the three but jumps twelve foot and a half by the squire.

*Shep.* Leave your prating: since these good men are pleased, let them come in; but quickly now.

*Serv.* Why, they stay at door, sir. [*Exit.*

*Enter twelve Rustics habited like Satyrs, who dance, and then exeunt.*

*Pol.* O, father, you'll know more of that hereafter.—  
Is it not too far gone? 'Tis time to part them.  
He's simple and tells much. [*Aside.*—How now, fair shepherd!

Your heart is full of something that does take  
Your mind from feasting. Sooth, when I was young,  
And handed love as you do, I was wont  
To load my she with knacks: I would have ransack'd  
The pedler's silken treasury, and have pour'd it  
To her acceptance; you have let him go,  
And nothing marted with him. If your lass  
Interpretation should abuse, and call this  
Your lack of love or bounty, you were straited  
For a reply, at least if you make a care  
Of happy holding her.

*Flo.* Old sir, I know  
She prizes not such trifles as these are:  
The gifts she looks from me are pack'd and lock'd  
Up in my heart; which I have given already,  
But not deliver'd.—O, hear me breathe my life  
Before this ancient sir, who, it should seem,  
Hath sometime lov'd! I take thy hand,—this hand,  
As soft as dove's down and as white as it,  
Or Ethiopian's<sup>(24)</sup> tooth, or the fann'd snow that's bolted

By the northern blasts twice o'er.

*Pol.* What follows this?—

How prettily the young swain seems to wash  
The hand was fair before!—I have put you out:—  
But to your protestation; let me hear  
What you profess.

*Flo.* Do, and be witness to't.

*Pol.* And this my neighbour too?

*Flo.* And he, and more

Than he, and men,—the earth, the heavens, and all:—  
That, were I crown'd the most imperial monarch,  
Thereof most worthy; were I the fairest youth  
That ever made eye swerve; had force and knowledge  
More than was ever man's,—I would not prize them  
Without her love; for her employ them all;  
Commend them, and condemn them, to her service,  
Or to their own perdition.

*Pol.* Fairly offer'd.

*Cam.* This shows a sound affection.

*Shep.* But, my daughter,

Say you the like to him?

*Per.* I cannot speak

So well, nothing so well; no, nor mean better:  
By the pattern of mine own thoughts I cut out  
The purity of his.

*Shep.* Take hands, a bargain!—

And, friends unknown, you shall bear witness to't:  
I give my daughter to him, and will make  
Her portion equal his.

*Flo.* O, that must be  
I' the virtue of your daughter: one being dead,  
I shall have more than you can dream of yet;  
Enough then for your wonder. But, come on,  
Contract us 'fore these witnesses.

*Shep.* Come, your hand;—

And, daughter, yours.

*Pol.* Soft, swain, awhile, beseech you;

Have you a father?

*Flo.* I have: but what of him?

*Pol.* Knows he of this ?

*Flo.* He neither does nor shall.

*Pol.* Methinks a father

Is, at the nuptial of his son, a guest  
That best becomes the table. Pray you, once more ;  
Is not your father grown incapable  
Of reasonable affairs ? is he not stupid  
With age and altering rheums ? can he speak ? hear ?  
Know man from man ? dispute his own estate ?  
Lies he not bed-rid ? and again does nothing  
But what he did being childish ?

*Flo.* No, good sir ;

He has his health, and ampler strength indeed  
Than most have of his age.

*Pol.* By my white beard,

You offer him, if this be so, a wrong  
Something unfilial : reason my son  
Should choose himself a wife ; but as good reason  
The father (all whose joy is nothing else  
But fair posterity) should hold some counsel  
In such a business.

*Flo.* I yield all this ;

But, for some other reasons, my grave sir,  
Which 'tis not fit you know, I not acquaint  
My father of this business.

*Pol.* Let him know 't.

*Flo.* He shall not.

*Pol.* Prithee, let him.

*Flo.* No, he must not.

*Shep.* Let him, my son : he shall not need to grieve  
At knowing of thy choice.

*Flo.* Come, come, he must not.—

Mark our contract.

*Pol.* Mark your divorce, young sir,

[*Discovering himself.*

Whom son I dare not call ; thou art too base  
To be acknowledg'd : thou a sceptre's heir,  
That thus affect'st a sheep-hook !—Thou old traitor,  
I am sorry that, by hanging thee, I can

But shorten thy life one week.—And thou, fresh piece  
Of excellent witchcraft, who, of force, must know  
The royal fool thou cop'st with,—

*Shep.*

O, my heart!

*Pol.* I'll have thy beauty scratch'd with briers, and made  
More homely than thy state.—For thee, fond boy,—  
If I may ever know thou dost but sigh  
That thou no more shalt never<sup>(25)</sup> see this knack (as never  
I mean thou shalt), we'll bar thee from succession;  
Not hold thee of our blood, no, not our kin,  
Far than Deucalion off:—mark thou my words:—  
Follow us to the court.—Thou churl, for this time,  
Though full of our displeasure, yet we free thee  
From the dead blow of it.—And you, enchantment,—  
Worthy enough a herdsman; yea, him too,  
That makes himself, but for our honour therein,  
Unworthy thee,—if ever henceforth thou  
These rural latches to his entrance open,  
Or hoop his body more with thy embraces,  
I will devise a death as cruel for thee  
As thou art tender to 't.

[*Exit.*

*Per.*

Even here undone!

I was not much afeard; for once or twice  
I was about to speak, and tell him plainly,  
The selfsame sun that shines upon his court  
Hides not his visage from our cottage, but  
Looks on alike.—Will 't please you, sir, be gone?

[*To Florizel.*

I told you what would come of this: beseech you,  
Of your own state take care: this dream of mine,  
Being now awake, I'll queen it no inch further,  
But milk my ewes and weep.

*Cam.*

Why, how now, father!

Speak ere thou diest.

*Shep.*

I cannot speak, nor think,

Nor dare to know that which I know.—O sir, [*To Florizel.*  
You have undone a man of fourscore three,  
That thought to fill his grave in quiet,—yea,  
To die upon the bed my father died,

To lie close by his honest bones ! but now  
Some hangman must put on my shroud, and lay me  
Where no priest shovels in dust.—O cursèd wretch,

[*To Perdita.*

That knew'st this was the prince, and wouldst adventure  
To mingle faith with him !—Undone ! undone !  
If I might die within this hour, I have liv'd  
To die when I desire.

[*Exit.*

*Flo.* Why look you so upon me ?

I am but sorry, not afeard ; delay'd,  
But nothing alter'd : what I was, I am ;  
More straining on for plucking back ; not following  
My leash unwillingly.

*Cam.* Gracious my lord,  
You know your father's temper : at this time  
He will allow no speech,—which I do guess  
You do not purpose to him ;—and as hardly  
Will he endure your sight as yet, I fear :  
Then, till the fury of his highness settle,  
Come not before him.

*Flo.* I not purpose it.

I think Camillo ?

*Cam.* Even he, my lord.

*Per.* How often have I told you 'twould be thus !  
How often said, my dignity would last  
But till 'twere known !

*Flo.* It cannot fail but by  
The violation of my faith ; and then  
Let nature crush the sides o' the earth together,  
And mar the seeds within !—Lift up thy looks :—  
From my succession wipe me, father ; I  
Am heir to my affection.

*Cam.* Be advis'd.

*Flo.* I am,—and by my fancy : if my reason  
Will thereto be obedient, I have reason ;  
If not, my senses, better pleas'd with madness,  
Do bid it welcome.

*Cam.* This is desperate, sir.

*Flo.* So call it: but it does fulfil my vow;  
 I needs must think it honesty. Camillo,  
 Not for Bohemia, nor the pomp that may  
 Be thereat glean'd; for all the sun sees, or  
 The close earth wombs, or the profound seas hide  
 In unknown fathoms, will I break my oath  
 To this my fair belov'd: therefore, I pray you,  
 As you have ever been my father's honour'd friend,  
 When he shall miss me (as, in faith, I mean not  
 To see him any more), cast your good counsels  
 Upon his passion: let myself and fortune  
 Tug for the time to come. This you may know,  
 And so deliver,—I am put to sea  
 With her who here I cannot hold on shore;  
 And, most oppórtune to our<sup>26</sup> need, I have  
 A vessel rides fast by, but not prepar'd  
 For this design. What course I mean to hold  
 Shall nothing benefit your knowledge, nor  
 Concern me the reporting.

*Cam.* O my lord,  
 I would your spirit were easier for advice,  
 Or stronger for your need!

*Flo.* Hark, Perdita.— [*Taking her aside.*  
 I'll hear you by and by. [*To Camillo.*

*Cam.* He's irremovable,  
 Resolv'd for flight. Now were I happy, if  
 His going I could frame to serve my turn;  
 Save him from danger, do him love and honour;  
 Purchase the sight again of dear Sicilia,  
 And that unhappy king, my master, whom  
 I so much thirst to see.

*Flo.* Now, good Camillo,  
 I am so fraught with curious business, that  
 I leave out ceremony.

[*Going.*

*Cam.* Sir, I think  
 You have heard of my poor services, i' the love  
 That I have borne your father?

*Flo.* Very nobly



Have you deserv'd: it is my father's music  
To speak your deeds; not little of his care  
To have them recompens'd as thought on.

*Cam.* Well, my lord,

If you may please to think I love the king,  
And, through him, what is nearest to him, which is  
Your gracious self, embrace but my direction  
(If your more ponderous and settled project  
May suffer alteration), on mine honour  
I'll point you where you shall have such receiving  
As shall become your highness; where you may  
Enjoy your mistress (from the whom, I see,  
There's no disjunction to be made, but by,  
As heavens forefend! your ruin); marry her;  
And (with my best endeavours in your absence)  
Your discontenting father strive to qualify,  
And bring him up to liking.

*Flo.* How, Camillo,

May this, almost a miracle, be done?  
That I may call thee something more than man,  
And, after that, trust to thee.

*Cam.* Have you thought on

A place whereto you'll go?

*Flo.* Not any yet:

But as the unthought-on accident is guilty  
To what we wildly do, so we profess  
Ourselves to be the slaves of chance, and flies  
Of every wind that blows.

*Cam.* Then list to me:

This follows,—if you will not change your purpose,  
But undergo this flight,—make for Sicilia;  
And there present yourself and your fair princess  
(For so I see she must be) 'fore Leontes:  
She shall be habited as it becomes  
The partner of your bed. Methinks I see  
Leontes opening his free arms, and weeping  
His welcomes forth; asks thee, the son, forgiveness,  
As 'twere i' the father's person; kisses the hands

Of your fresh princess; o'er and o'er divides him  
 'Twixt his unkindness and his kindness,—the one  
 He chides to hell, and bids the other grow  
 Faster than thought or time.

*Flo.* Worthy Camillo,

What colour for my visitation shall I  
 Hold up before him?

*Cam.* Sent by the king your father  
 To greet him and to give him comforts. Sir,  
 The manner of your bearing towards him, with  
 What you, as from your father, shall deliver,  
 Things known betwixt us three, I'll write you down:  
 The which shall point you forth at every sitting  
 What you must say; that he shall not perceive  
 But that you have your father's bosom there,  
 And speak his very heart.

*Flo.* I am bound to you:  
 There is some sap in this.

*Cam.* A course more promising  
 Than a wild dedication of yourselves  
 To unpath'd waters, undream'd shores, most certain  
 To miseries enough: no hope to help you;  
 But, as you shake off one, to take another:  
 Nothing so certain as your anchors; who  
 Do their best office, if they can but stay you  
 Where you'll be loth to be: besides, you know  
 Prosperity's the very bond of love,  
 Whose fresh complexion and whose heart together  
 Affliction alters.

*Per.* One of these is true:  
 I think affliction may subdue the cheek,  
 But not take in the mind.

*Cam.* Yea, say you so?  
 There shall not, at your father's house, these seven years  
 Be born another such.

*Flo.* My good Camillo,  
 She is as forward of her breeding as  
 She is i' the rear 'our birth.

*Cam.* I cannot say 'tis pity  
She lacks instructions, for she seems a mistress  
To most that teach.

*Per.* Your pardon, sir, for this ;  
I'll blush you thanks.

*Flo.* My prettiest Perdita !—  
But, O, the thorns we stand upon !—Camillo,—  
Preserver of my father, now of me,  
The medicine of our house !—how shall we do ?  
We are not furnish'd like Bohemia's son,  
Nor shall appear in Sicilia.<sup>(27)</sup>

*Cam.* My lord,  
Fear none of this : I think you know my fortunes  
Do all lie there : it shall be so my care  
To have you royally appointed as if  
The scene you play were mine. For instance, sir,  
That you may know you shall not want,—one word.

[*They talk aside.*]

*Re-enter AUTOLYCUS.*

*Aut.* Ha, ha ! what a fool Honesty is ! and Trust, his sworn brother, a very simple gentleman ! I have sold all my trumpery ; not a counterfeit stone, not a riband, glass, pomander, brooch, table-book, ballad, knife, tape, glove, shoe-tie, bracelet, horn-ring, to keep my pack from fasting : they throng who should buy first, as if my trinkets had been hallowed, and brought a benediction to the buyer : by which means I saw whose purse was best in picture ; and what I saw, to my good use I remembered. My clown (who wants but something to be a reasonable man) grew so in love with the wenches' song, that he would not stir his pettitoes till he had both tune and words ; which so drew the rest of the herd to me, that all their other senses stuck in ears : you might have pinched a placket,—it was senseless ; 'twas nothing to geld a codpiece of a purse,—I would have filed keys off that hung in chains : no hearing, no feeling, but my sir's song, and admiring the nothing of it. So that, in this time of lethargy, I picked and cut most of their festival purses ; and had not the old man come in with a whoobub against his daughter and the king's son, and scared

my choughs from the chaff, I had not left a purse alive in the whole army. [*Camillo, Florizel, and Perdita come forward.*

*Cam.* Nay, but my letters, by this means being there So soon as you arrive, shall clear that doubt.

*Flo.* And those that you'll procure from King Leontes,—

*Cam.* Shall satisfy your father.

*Per.* Happy be you!

All that you speak shows fair.

*Cam.* Who have we here?

[*Seeing Autolycus.*

We'll make an instrument of this; omit

Nothing may give us aid.

*Aut.* If they have overheard me now,—why, hanging.

[*Aside.*

*Cam.* How now, good fellow! why shakest thou so? Fear not, man; here's no harm intended to thee.

*Aut.* I am a poor fellow, sir.

*Cam.* Why, be so still; here's nobody will steal that from thee: yet, for the outside of thy poverty, we must make an exchange; therefore discase thee instantly (thou must think there's a necessity in't), and change garments with this gentleman: though the pennyworth on his side be the worst, yet hold thee, there's some boot.

[*Giving money.*

*Aut.* I am a poor fellow, sir.—I know ye well enough.

[*Aside.*

*Cam.* Nay, prithee, dispatch: the gentleman is half flayed already.

*Aut.* Are you in earnest, sir?—I smell the trick on 't.

[*Aside.*

*Flo.* Dispatch, I prithee.

*Aut.* Indeed, I have had earnest; but I cannot with conscience take it.

*Cam.* Unbuckle, unbuckle.—

[*Florizel and Autolycus exchange garments.*

Fortunate mistress,—let my prophecy

Come home to ye!—you must retire yourself

Into some covert: take your sweetheart's hat

And pluck it o'er your brows; muffle your face;

Dismantle you; and, as you can, disliken

The truth of your own seeming ; that you may  
 (For I do fear eyes over)<sup>(38)</sup> to shipboard  
 Get undescried.

*Per.* I see the play so lies  
 That I must bear a part.

*Cam.* No remedy.—  
 Have you done there ?

*Flo.* Should I now meet my father,  
 He would not call me son.

*Cam.* Nay, you shall have no hat.—

[*Giving it to Perdita.*]

Come, lady, come.—Farewell, my friend.

*Aut.* Adieu, sir.

*Flo.* O Perdita, what have we twain forgot !

Pray you, a word. [*They converse apart.*]

*Cam.* What I do next, shall be to tell the king [*Aside.*]  
 Of this escape, and whither they are bound ;  
 Wherein, my hope is, I shall so prevail  
 To force him after : in whose company  
 I shall review Sicilia, for whose sight  
 I have a woman's longing.

*Flo.* Fortune speed us !—

Thus we set on, Camillo, to the sea-side.

*Cam.* The swifter speed the better.

[*Exeunt Florizel, Perdita, and Camillo.*]

*Aut.* I understand the business, I hear it : to have an  
 open ear, a quick eye, and a nimble hand, is necessary for a  
 cut-purse ; a good nose is requisite also, to smell out work for  
 the other senses. I see this is the time that the unjust man  
 doth thrive. What an exchange had this been without boot !  
 what a boot is here with this exchange ! Sure, the gods do  
 this year connive at us, and we may do any thing extempore.  
 The prince himself is about a piece of iniquity,—stealing away  
 from his father with his clog at his heels : if I thought it were  
 a piece of honesty to acquaint the king withal, I would not  
 do't : I hold it the more knavery to conceal it ; and therein  
 am I constant to my profession.

*Re-enter Clown and Shepherd.*

*Aside,* *aside*,—here is more matter for a hot brain: every lane's end, every shop, church, session, hanging, yields a careful man work.

*Clo.* See, see; what a man you are now! There is no other way but to tell the king she's a changeling, and none of your flesh and blood.

*Shep.* Nay, but hear me.

*Clo.* Nay, but hear me.

*Shep.* Go to, then.

*Clo.* She being none of your flesh and blood, your flesh and blood has not offended the king; and so your flesh and blood is not to be punished by him. Show those things you found about her; those secret things, all but what she has with her: this being done, let the law go whistle; I warrant you.

*Shep.* I will tell the king all, every word, yea, and his son's pranks too,—who, I may say, is no honest man neither to his father nor to me, to go about to make me the king's brother-in-law.

*Clo.* Indeed, brother-in-law was the furthest off you could have been to him; and then your blood had been the dearer by I know how much an ounce.

*Aut.* Very wisely, puppies! *[Aside.]*

*Shep.* Well, let us to the king: there is that in this fardel will make him scratch his beard.

*Aut.* I know not what impediment this complaint may be to the flight of my master. *[Aside.]*

*Clo.* Pray heartily he be at 'palace.

*Aut.* Though I am not naturally honest, I am so sometimes by chance:—let me pocket up my pedler's excrement. *[Aside, and takes off his false beard.]*—How now, rustics! whither are you bound?

*Shep.* To the palace, an it like your worship.

*Aut.* Your affairs there, what, with whom, the condition of that fardel, the place of your dwelling, your names, your ages, of what having, breeding, and any thing that is fitting to be known? discover.

*Clo.* We are but plain fellows, sir.

*Aut.* A lie; you are rough and hairy. Let me have no lying: it becomes none but tradesmen, and they often give us soldiers the lie: but we pay them for it with stamped coin, not stabbing steel; therefore they do not give us the lie.

*Clo.* Your worship had like to have given us one, if you had not taken yourself with the manner.

*Shep.* Are you a courtier, an't like you, sir?

*Aut.* Whether it like me or no, I am a courtier. See'st thou not the air of the court in these enfoldings? hath not my gait in it the measure of the court? receives not thy nose court-odour from me? reflect I not on thy baseness court-contempt? Thinkest thou, for that I insinuate, or toze from thee thy business, I am therefore no courtier? I am courtier cap-a-pè; and one that will either push on or pluck back thy business there: whereupon I command thee to open thy affair.

*Shep.* My business, sir, is to the king.

*Aut.* What advocate hast thou to him?

*Shep.* I know not, an't like you.

*Clo.* Advocate's the court-word for a pheasant: say you have none.

*Shep.* None, sir; I have no pheasant, cock nor hen.

*Aut.* How bless'd are we that are not simple men!  
Yet nature might have made me as these are,  
Therefore I will not disdain.

*Clo.* This cannot be but a great courtier.

*Shep.* His garments are rich, but he wears them not handsomely.

*Clo.* He seems to be the more noble in being fantastical: a great man, I'll warrant; I know by the picking on's teeth.

*Aut.* The fardel there? what's i' the fardel? Wherefore that box?

*Shep.* Sir, there lies such secrets in this fardel and box, which none must know but the king; and which he shall know within this hour, if I may come to the speech of him.

*Aut.* Age, thou hast lost thy labour.

*Shep.* Why, sir?

*Aut.* The king is not at the palace; he is gone aboard a

new ship to purge melancholy and air himself: for, if thou beest capable of things serious, thou must know the king is full of grief.

*Shep.* So 'tis said, sir,—about his son, that should have married a shepherd's daughter.

*Aut.* If that shepherd be not in hand-fast, let him fly: the curses he shall have, the tortures he shall feel, will break the back of man, the heart of monster.

*Clo.* Think you so, sir?

*Aut.* Not he alone shall suffer what wit can make heavy and vengeance bitter; but those that are germane to him, though removed fifty times, shall all come under the hangman: which though it be great pity, yet it is necessary. An old sheep-whistling rogue, a ram-tender, to offer to have his daughter come into grace! Some say he shall be stoned; but that death is too soft for him, say I: draw our throne into a sheep-cote! all deaths are too few, the sharpest too easy.

*Clo.* Has the old man e'er a son, sir, do you hear, an't like you, sir?

*Aut.* He has a son,—who shall be flayed alive; then, 'nointed over with honey, set on the head of a wasp's nest; then<sup>(29)</sup> stand till he be three quarters and a dram dead; then recovered again with aqua-vitæ or some other hot infusion; then, raw as he is, and in the hottest day prognostication proclaims, shall he be set against a brick-wall, the sun looking with a southward eye upon him,—where he is to behold him with flies blown to death. But what talk we of these traitorly rascals, whose miseries are to be smiled at, their offences being so capital? Tell me (for you seem to be honest plain men) what you have to the king: being something gently considered, I'll bring you where he is aboard, tender your persons to his presence, whisper him in your behalfs; and if it be in man besides the king to effect your suits, here is man shall do it.

*Clo.* He seems to be of great authority: close with him, give him gold; and though authority be a stubborn bear, yet he is oft led by the nose with gold: show the inside of your purse to the outside of his hand, and no more ado. Remember,—stoned, and flayed alive.

*Shep.* An't please you, sir, to undertake the business for



us, here is that gold I have : I'll make it as much more, and leave this young man in pawn till I bring it you.

*Aut.* After I have done what I promised ?

*Shep.* Ay, sir.

*Aut.* Well, give me the moiety.—Are you a party in this business ?

*Clo.* In some sort, sir : but though my case be a pitiful one, I hope I shall not be flayed out of it.

*Aut.* O, that's the case of the shepherd's son :—hang him, he'll be made an example.

*Clo.* Comfort, good comfort ! We must to the king, and show our strange sights : he must know 'tis none of your daughter nor my sister ; we are gone else.—Sir, I will give you as much as this old man does, when the business is performed ; and remain, as he says, your pawn till it be brought you.

*Aut.* I will trust you. Walk before toward the sea-side ; go on the right hand : I will but look upon the hedge, and follow you.

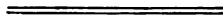
*Clo.* We are blessed in this man, as I may say, even blessed.

*Shep.* Let's before, as he bids us : he was provided to do us good.

[*Exeunt Shepherd and Clown.*]

*Aut.* If I had a mind to be honest, I see Fortune would not suffer me : she drops booties in my mouth. I am courted now with a double occasion,—gold, and a means to do the prince my master good ; which who knows how that may turn back to my advancement ? I will bring these two moles, these blind ones, aboard him : if he think it fit to shore them again, and that the complaint they have to the king concerns him nothing, let him call me rogue for being so far officious ; for I am proof against that title, and what shame else belongs to't. To him will I present them : there may be matter in it.

[*Exit.*]



www.libtool.com.cn ACT V.

SCENE I. *Sicilia. A room in the palace of LEONTES.*

*Enter LEONTES, CLEOMENES, DION, PAULINA, and others.*

*Cleo.* Sir, you have done enough, and have perform'd  
A saint-like sorrow: no fault could you make,  
Which you have not redeem'd; indeed, paid down  
More penitence than done trespass: at the last,  
Do as the heavens have done, forget your evil;  
With them, forgive yourself.

*Leon.* Whilst I remember  
Her and her virtues, I cannot forget  
My blemishes in them; and so still think of  
The wrong I did myself: which was so much,  
That heirless it hath made my kingdom; and  
Destroy'd the sweet'st companion that e'er man  
Bred his hopes out of.

*Paul.* True, too true, my lord:  
If, one by one, you wedded all the world,  
Or from the all that are took something good,  
To make a perfect woman, she you kill'd  
Would be unparallel'd.

*Leon.* I think so. Kill'd!  
She I kill'd! I did so: but thou strik'st me  
Sorely, to say I did; it is as bitter  
Upon thy tongue as in my thought: now, good now,  
Say so but seldom.

*Cleo.* Not at all, good lady:  
You might have spoken a thousand things that would  
Have done the time more benefit, and grac'd  
Your kindness better.

*Paul.* You are one of those  
Would have him wed again.

*Dion.* If you would not so,  
You pity not the state, nor the remembrance  
Of his most sovereign name; consider little

What dangers, by his highness' fail of issue,  
 May drop upon his kingdom, and devour  
 Uncertain lookers-on. What were more holy  
 Than to rejoice the former queen is well?  
 What holier than,—for royalty's repair,  
 For present comfort, and for future good,—  
 To bless the bed of majesty again  
 With a sweet fellow to 't?

*Paul.* There is none worthy,  
 Respecting her that's gone. Besides, the gods  
 Will have fulfill'd their secret purposes;  
 For has not the divine Apollo said,  
 Is 't not the tenour of his oracle,  
 That King Leontes shall not have an heir  
 Till his lost child be found? which that it shall,  
 Is all as monstrous to our human reason  
 As my Antigonus to break his grave  
 And come again to me; who, on my life,  
 Did perish with the infant. 'Tis your counsel  
 My lord should to the heavens be contrary,  
 Oppose against their wills.—Care not for issue; [*To Leontes.*  
 The crown will find an heir: great Alexander  
 Left his to the worthiest; so his successor  
 Was like to be the best.

*Leon.* Good Paulina,—  
 Who hast the memory of Hermione,  
 I know, in honour,—O, that ever I  
 Had squar'd me to thy counsel!—then, even now,  
 I might have look'd upon my queen's full eyes;  
 Have taken treasure from her lips,—

*Paul.* And left them  
 More rich for what they yielded.

*Leon.* Thou speak'st truth.  
 No more such wives; therefore, no wife: one worse,  
 And better us'd, would make her sainted spirit  
 Again possess her corpse, and on this stage  
 (Where we offend her now) appear,<sup>(80)</sup> soul-vex'd,  
 And begin, "Why to me?"

*Paul.* Had she such power,  
She had just cause.<sup>(31)</sup>

*Leon.* ~~w.libtool.~~ She had; and would incense me  
To murder her I married.

*Paul.* I should so.  
Were I the ghost that walk'd, I'd bid you mark  
Her eye, and tell me for what dull part in't  
You chose her; then I'd shriek, that even your ears  
Should rift to hear me; and the words that follow'd  
Should be, "Remember mine."

*Leon.* Stars, stars,  
And all eyes else dead coals!—fear thou no wife;  
I'll have no wife, Paulina.

*Paul.* Will you swear  
Never to marry but by my free leave?

*Leon.* Never, Paulina; so be bless'd my spirit!

*Paul.* Then, good my lords, bear witness to his oath.

*Cleo.* You tempt him over-much.

*Paul.* Unless another,  
As like Hermione as is her picture,  
Affront his eye.

*Cleo.* Good madam,—

*Paul.* I have done.<sup>(32)</sup>  
Yet, if my lord will marry,—if you will, sir,  
No remedy, but you will,—give me the office  
To choose you a queen: she shall not be so young  
As was your former; but she shall be such  
As, walk'd your first queen's ghost, it should take joy  
To see her in your arms.

*Leon.* My true Paulina,  
We shall not marry till thou bidd'st us.

*Paul.* That  
Shall be when your first queen's again in breath;  
Never till then.

*Enter a Gentleman.*

*Gent.* One that gives out himself Prince Florizel,  
Son of Polixenes, with his princess (she

The fairest I have yet beheld), desires access  
To your high presence.

*Leon.* What with him? he comes not  
Like to his father's greatness: his approach,  
So out of circumstance and sudden, tells us  
'Tis not a visitation fram'd, but forc'd  
By need and accident. What train?

*Gent.* But few,  
And those but mean.

*Leon.* His princess, say you, with him?

*Gent.* Ay, the most peerless piece of earth, I think,  
That e'er the sun shone bright on.

*Paul.* O Hermione,  
As every present time doth boast itself  
Above a better gone, so must thy grave<sup>(33)</sup>  
Give way to what's seen now! Sir, you yourself  
Have said and writ so (but your writing now  
Is colder than that theme), "She had not been,  
Nor was not to be equall'd;"—thus your verse  
Flow'd with her beauty once: 'tis shrewdly ebb'd,  
To say you have seen a better.

*Gent.* Pardon, madam:  
The one I have almost forgot (your pardon);  
The other, when she has obtain'd your eye,  
Will have your tongue too. This is a creature,  
Would she begin a sect, might quench the zeal  
Of all professors else; make proselytes  
Of who she but bid follow.

*Paul.* How! not women?

*Gent.* Women will love her, that she is a woman  
More worth than any man; men, that she is  
The rarest of all women.

*Leon.* Go, Cleomenes;  
Yourself, assisted with your honour'd friends,  
Bring them to our embracement.—Still, 'tis strange  
[*Exeunt Cleomenes and others.*

He thus should steal upon us.

*Paul.* Had our prince  
(Jewel of children) seen this hour, he had pair'd

Well with this lord: there was not full a month  
Between their births.

*Leon.* Prithce, no more; cease; thou know'st  
He dies to me again when talk'd of: sure,  
When I shall see this gentleman, thy speeches  
Will bring me to consider that which may  
Unfurnish me of reason.—They are come.—

*Re-enter CLEOMENES and others, with FLORIZEL and PERDITA.*

Your mother was most true to wedlock, prince;  
For she did print your royal father off,  
Conceiving you: were I but twenty-one,  
Your father's image is so hit in you,  
His very air, that I should call you brother,  
As I did him; and speak of something wildly  
By us perform'd before. Most dearly welcome!  
And your fair princess,—goddess!—O, alas,  
I lost a couple, that 'twixt heaven and earth  
Might thus have stood, begetting wonder, as  
You, gracious couple, do! and then I lost  
(All mine own folly) the society,  
Amity too, of your brave father, whom,  
Though bearing misery, I desire my life  
Once more to look on him.

*Flo.*

By his command

Have I here touch'd Sicilia, and from him  
Give you all greetings, that a king, at friend,  
Can send his brother: and, but infirmity  
(Which waits upon worn times) hath something seiz'd  
His wish'd ability, he had himself  
The lands and waters 'twixt your throne and his  
Measur'd to look upon you; whom he loves  
(He bade me say so) more than all the sceptres,  
And those that bear them, living.

*Leon.*

O my brother

(Good gentleman), the wrongs I have done thee stir  
Afresh within me; and these thy offices,  
So rarely kind, are as interpreters  
Of my behind-hand slackness!—Welcome hither,

As is the spring to the earth. And hath he too  
 Expos'd this paragon to the fearful usage  
 (At least ungentle) of the dreadful Neptune,  
 To greet a man not worth her pains, much less  
 The adventure of her person ?

*Flo.* Good my lord,

She came from Libya.

*Leon.* Where the warlike Smalus,

That noble honour'd lord, is fear'd and lov'd ?

*Flo.* Most royal sir, from thence; from him, whose daughter  
 His tears proclaim'd his, parting with her : thence  
 (A prosperous south-wind friendly) we have cross'd,  
 To execute the charge my father gave me,  
 For visiting your highness : my best train  
 I have from your Sicilian shores dismiss'd ;  
 Who for Bohemia bend, to signify  
 Not only my success in Libya, sir,  
 But my arrival, and my wife's, in safety  
 Here where we are.

*Leon.* The blessèd gods

Purge all infection from our air whilst you  
 Do climate here ! You have a holy father,  
 A graceful gentleman ; against whose person,  
 So sacred as it is, I have done sin :  
 For which the heavens, taking angry note,  
 Have left me issueless ; and your father's bless'd  
 (As he from heaven merits it) with you,  
 Worthy his goodness. What might I have been,  
 Might I a son and daughter now have look'd on,  
 Such goodly things as you !

*Enter a Lord.*

*Lord.* Most noble sir,

That which I shall report will bear no credit,  
 Were not the proof so nigh. Please you, great sir,  
 Bohemia greets you from himself by me ;  
 Desires you to attach his son, who has  
 (His dignity and duty both cast off)

Fled from his father, from his hopes, and with  
A shepherd's daughter.

*Leon.* [www.libtool.com](http://www.libtool.com) Where's Bohemia? speak.

*Lord.* Here in your city; I now came from him:  
I speak amazedly; and it becomes  
My marvel and my message. To your court  
Whiles he was hastening (in the chase, it seems,  
Of this fair couple), meets he on the way  
The father of this seeming lady, and  
Her brother, having both their country quitted  
With this young prince.

*Flo.* Camillo has betray'd me;  
Whose honour and whose honesty, till now,  
Endur'd all weathers.

*Lord.* Lay't so to his charge:  
He's with the king your father.

*Leon.* Who? Camillo?

*Lord.* Camillo, sir; I spake with him; who now  
Has these poor men in question. Never saw I  
Wretches so quake: they kneel, they kiss the earth;  
Forswear themselves as often as they speak:  
Bohemia stops his ears, and threatens them  
With divers deaths in death.

*Per.* O my poor father!—  
The heaven sets spies upon us, will not have  
Our contract celebrated.

*Leon.* You are married?

*Flo.* We are not, sir, nor are we like to be;  
The stars, I see, will kiss the valleys first:—  
The odds for high and low's alike.

*Leon.* My lord,  
Is this the daughter of a king?

*Flo.* She is,  
When once she is my wife.

*Leon.* That once, I see by your good father's speed,  
Will come on very slowly. I am sorry,  
Most sorry, you have broken from his liking,  
Where you were tied in duty; and as sorry



Your choice is not so rich in worth as beauty,  
That you might well enjoy her.

*Flo.* Dear, look up :  
Though Fortune, visible an enemy,  
Should chase us, with my father, power no jot  
Hath she to change our loves.—Beseech you, sir,  
Remember since you ow'd no more to time  
Than I do now : with thought of such affections,  
Step forth mine advocate ; at your request  
My father will grant precious things as trifles.

*Leon.* Would he do so, I'd beg your precious mistress,  
Which he counts but a trifle.

*Paul.* Sir, my liege,  
Your eye hath too much youth in 't : not a month  
'Fore your queen died, she was more worth such gazes  
Than what you look on now.

*Leon.* I thought of her,  
Even in these looks I made.—But your petition [*To Florizel.*  
Is yet unanswer'd. I will to your father :  
Your honour not o'erthrown by your desires,  
I am friend to them and you : upon which errand  
I now go toward him ; therefore, follow me,  
And mark what way I make : come, good my lord. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The same. Before the palace of Leontes.*

*Enter AUTOLYCUS and a Gentleman.*

*Aut.* Beseech you, sir, were you present at this relation ?

*First Gent.* I was by at the opening of the fardel, heard  
the old shepherd deliver the manner how he found it :  
whereupon, after a little amazedness, we were all com-  
manded out of the chamber ; only this, methought I heard  
the shepherd say he found the child.

*Aut.* I would most gladly know the issue of it.

*First Gent.* I make a broken delivery of the business ;—  
but the changes I perceived in the king and Camillo were  
very notes of admiration : they seemed almost, with staring

on one another, to tear the cases of their eyes; there was speech in their dumbness, language in their very gesture; they looked as they had heard of a world ransomed, or one destroyed: a notable passion of wonder appeared in them; but the wisest beholder, that knew no more but seeing, could not say if the importance were joy or sorrow,—but in the extremity of the one, it must needs be.—Here comes a gentleman that happily knows more.

*Enter another Gentleman.*

The news, Rogero?

*Sec. Gent.* Nothing but bonfires: the oracle is fulfilled; the king's daughter is found: such a deal of wonder is broken out within this hour, that ballad-makers cannot be able to express it.—Here comes the Lady Paulina's steward: he can deliver you more.

*Enter a third Gentleman.*

How goes it now, sir? this news, which is called true, is so like an old tale, that the verity of it is in strong suspicion: has the king found his heir?

*Third Gent.* Most true, if ever truth were pregnant by circumstance: that which you hear you'll swear you see, there is such unity in the proofs. The mantle of Queen Hermione; her jewel about the neck of it; the letters of Antigonus, found with it, which they know to be his character; the majesty of the creature, in resemblance of the mother; the affection of nobleness, which nature shows above her breeding; and many other evidences,—proclaim her with all certainty to be the king's daughter. Did you see the meeting of the two kings?

*Sec. Gent.* No.

*Third Gent.* Then have you lost a sight, which was to be seen, cannot be spoken of. There might you have beheld one joy crown another, so and in such manner, that it seemed sorrow wept to take leave of them,—for their joy waded in tears. There was casting up of eyes, holding up of hands, with countenance of such distraction, that they were to be known by garment, not by favour. Our king,

being ready to leap out of himself for joy of his found daughter, as if that joy were now become a loss, cries, "O, thy mother, thy mother!" then asks Bohemia forgiveness; then embraces his son-in-law; then again worries he his daughter with clipping her; now he thanks the old shepherd, which stands by like a weather-bitten conduit of many kings' reigns. I never heard of such another encounter, which lames report to follow it, and undoes description to do it.

*Sec. Gent.* What, pray you, became of Antigonus, that carried hence the child?

*Third Gent.* Like an old tale still, which will have matter to rehearse, though credit be asleep, and not an ear open. He was torn to pieces with a bear: this avouches the shepherd's son; who has not only his innocence (which seems much) to justify him, but a handkerchief and rings of his, that Paulina knows.

*First Gent.* What became of his bark and his followers?

*Third Gent.* Wrecked the same instant of their master's death, and in the view of the shepherd: so that all the instruments which aided to expose the child were even then lost when it was found. But, O, the noble combat that, 'twixt joy and sorrow, was fought in Paulina! She had one eye declined for the loss of her husband, another elevated that the oracle was fulfilled: she lifted the princess from the earth; and so locks her in embracing, as if she would pin her to her heart, that she might no more be in danger of losing.

*First Gent.* The dignity of this act was worth the audience of kings and princes; for by such was it acted.

*Third Gent.* One of the prettiest touches of all, and that which angled for mine eyes (caught the water, though not the fish), was when, at the relation of the queen's death, with the manner how she came to 't (bravely confessed and lamented by the king), how attentiveness wounded his daughter; till, from one sign of dolour to another, she did, with an "Alas," I would fain say, bleed tears,—for I am sure my heart wept blood. Who was most marble there changed colour; some swooned, all sorrowed: if all the world could have seen 't, the woe had been universal.

*First Gent.* Are they returned to the court?

*Third Gent.* No: the princess hearing of her mother's statue, which is in the keeping of Paulina,—a piece many years in doing, and now newly performed by that rare Italian master, Julio Romano, who, had he himself eternity, and could put breath into his work, would beguile Nature of her custom, so perfectly he is her ape: he so near to Hermione hath done Hermione, that they say one would speak to her, and stand in hope of answer:—thither with all greediness of affection are they gone; and there they intend to sup.

*Sec. Gent.* I thought she had some great matter there in hand; for she hath privately twice or thrice a day, ever since the death of Hermione, visited that removed house. Shall we thither, and with our company piece the rejoicing?

*First Gent.* Who would be thence that has the benefit of access? every wink of an eye, some new grace will be born: our absence makes us unthrifty to our knowledge. Let's along. [*Exeunt Gentlemen.*]

*Aut.* Now, had I not the dash of my former life in me, would preferment drop on my head. I brought the old man and his son aboard the prince; told him I heard them talk of a fardel, and I know not what: but he at that time, overfond of the shepherd's daughter (so he then took her to be), who began to be much sea-sick, and himself little better, extremity of weather continuing, this mystery remained undiscovered. But 'tis all one to me; for had I been the finder-out of this secret, it would not have relished among my other discredits.—Here come those I have done good to against my will, and already appearing in the blossoms of their fortune.

*Enter Shepherd and Clown.*

*Shep.* Come, boy; I am past more children, but thy sons and daughters will be all gentlemen born.

*Clo.* You are well met, sir. You denied to fight with me this other day, because I was no gentleman born. See you these clothes? say, you see them not, and think me still no gentleman born: you were best say these robes are not gentlemen born: give me the lie, do; and try whether I am not now a gentleman born.

*Aut.* I know you are now, sir, a gentleman born.

*Clo.* Ay, and have been so any time these four hours.

*Shep.* And so have I, boy.

*Clo.* So you have:—but I was a gentleman born before my father; for the king's son took me by the hand, and called me brother; and then the two kings called my father brother; and then the prince my brother, and the princess my sister, called my father father; and so we wept,—and there was the first gentleman-like tears that ever we shed.

*Shep.* We may live, son, to shed many more.

*Clo.* Ay; or else 'twere hard luck, being in so preposterous estate as we are.

*Aut.* I humbly beseech you, sir, to pardon me all the faults I have committed to your worship, and to give me your good report to the prince my master.

*Shep.* Prithee, son, do; for we must be gentle, now we are gentlemen.

*Clo.* Thou wilt amend thy life?

*Aut.* Ay, an it like your good worship.

*Clo.* Give me thy hand: I will swear to the prince thou art as honest a true fellow as any is in Bohemia.

*Shep.* You may say it, but not swear it.

*Clo.* Not swear it, now I am a gentleman? Let boors and franklins say it, I'll swear it.

*Shep.* How if it be false, son?

*Clo.* If it be ne'er so false, a true gentleman may swear it in the behalf of his friend:—and I'll swear to the prince thou art a tall fellow of thy hands, and that thou wilt not be drunk; but I know thou art no tall fellow of thy hands, and that thou wilt be drunk: but I'll swear it; and I would thou wouldst be a tall fellow of thy hands.

*Aut.* I will prove so, sir, to my power.

*Clo.* Ay, by any means prove a tall fellow: if I do not wonder how thou darrest venture to be drunk, not being a tall fellow, trust me not.—Hark! the kings and the princes, our kindred, are going to see the queen's picture. Come, follow us: we'll be thy good masters. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III. *The same. A chapel in PAULINA'S house.*

*Enter* LEONTES, POLIXENES, FLORIZEL, PERDITA, CAMILLO, PAULINA,  
Lords, and Attendants.

*Leon.* O grave and good Paulina, the great comfort  
That I have had of thee!

*Paul.* What, sovereign sir,  
I did not well, I meant well. All my services  
You have paid home: but that you have vouchsaf'd  
With your crown'd brother, and these your contracted  
Heirs of your kingdoms, my poor house to visit,  
It is a surplus of your grace, which never  
My life may last to answer.

*Leon.* O Paulina,  
We honour you with trouble:—but we came  
To see the statue of our queen: your gallery  
Have we pass'd through, not without much content  
In many singularities; but we saw not  
That which my daughter came to look upon,  
The statue of her mother.

*Paul.* As she liv'd peerless,  
So her dead likeness, I do well believe,  
Excels whatever yet you look'd upon,  
Or hand of man hath done; therefore I keep it  
Lonely, apart. But here it is: prepare  
To see the life as lively mock'd as ever  
Still sleep mock'd death: behold; and say 'tis well.

*[Paulina draws back a curtain, and discovers  
Hermione standing as a statue.]*

I like your silence,—it the more shows off  
Your wonder: but yet speak;—first, you, my liege.  
Comes it not something near?

*Leon.* Her natural posture!—  
Chide me, dear stone, that I may say indeed  
Thou art Hermione; or rather, thou art she,  
In thy not chiding, for she was as tender  
As infancy and grace.—But yet, Paulina,  
Hermione was not so much wrinkled, nothing  
So aged as this seems.

*Pol.* O, not by much.

*Paul.* So much the more our carver's excellence;  
Which lets go by some sixteen years, and makes her  
As she liv'd now.

*Leon.* As now she might have done,  
So much to my good comfort, as it is  
Now piercing to my soul. O, thus she stood,  
Even with such life of majesty (warm life,  
As now it coldly stands), when first I woo'd her!  
I am asham'd: does not the stone rebuke me,  
For being more stone than it?—O royal piece,  
There's magic in thy majesty; which has  
My evils conjur'd to remembrance; and  
From thy admiring daughter took the spirits,  
Standing like stone with thee!

*Per.* And give me leave;  
And do not say 'tis superstition, that  
I kneel, and then implore her blessing.—Lady,  
Dear queen, that ended when I but began,  
Give me that hand of yours to kiss.

*Paul.* O, patience!  
The statue is but newly fix'd, the colour's  
Not dry.

*Cam.* My lord, your sorrow was too sore laid on,  
Which sixteen winters cannot blow away,  
So many summers dry: scarce any joy  
Did ever so long live; no sorrow  
But kill'd itself much sooner.

*Pol.* Dear my brother,  
Let him that was the cause of this have power  
To take off so much grief from you as he  
Will piece up in himself.

*Paul.* Indeed, my lord,  
If I had thought the sight of my poor image  
Would thus have wrought you (for the stone is mine),  
I'd not have show'd it.

*Leon.* Do not draw the curtain.

*Paul.* No longer shall you gaze on 't, lest your fancy  
May think anon it moves.

*Leon.* Let be, let be.—  
 Would I were dead, but that, methinks, already—<sup>(34)</sup>  
 What was he, that did make it?—See, my lord,  
 Would you not deem it breath'd? and that those veins  
 Did verily bear blood?

*Pol.* Masterly done :  
 The very life seems warm upon her lip.

*Leon.* The fixure of her eye has motion in 't,  
 As we are mock'd with art.

*Paul.* I'll draw the curtain :  
 My lord's almost so far transported, that  
 He'll think anon it lives.

*Leon.* O sweet Paulina,  
 Make me to think so twenty years together !  
 No settled senses of the world can match  
 The pleasure of that madness. Let 't alone.

*Paul.* I am sorry, sir, I have thus far stirr'd you : but  
 I could afflict you further.

*Leon.* Do, Paulina ;  
 For this affliction has a taste as sweet  
 As any cordial comfort.—Still, methinks,  
 There is an air comes from her : what fine chisel  
 Could ever yet cut breath? Let no man mock me,  
 For I will kiss her.

*Paul.* Good my lord, forbear :  
 The ruddiness upon her lip is wet ;  
 You'll mar it, if you kiss it ; stain your own  
 With oily painting. Shall I draw the curtain?

*Leon.* No, not these twenty years.

*Per.* So long could I  
 Stand by, a looker-on.

*Paul.* Either forbear,  
 Quit presently the chapel, or resolve you  
 For more amazement. If you can behold it,  
 I'll make the statue move indeed, descend  
 And take you by the hand : but then you'll think  
 (Which I protest against) I am assisted  
 By wicked powers.

*Leon.* What you can make her do,



I am content to look on: what to speak,  
I am content to hear; for 'tis as easy  
To make her speak as move.

*Paul.* It is requir'd  
You do awake your faith. Then all stand still;  
Or those that think it is unlawful business  
I am about, let them depart.

*Leon.* Proceed:  
No foot shall stir.

*Paul.* Music, awake her; strike!— [*Music.*  
'Tis time; descend; be stone no more; approach;  
Strike all that look upon with marvel. Come;  
I'll fill your grave up: stir; nay, come away;  
Bequeath to death your numbness, for from him  
Dear life redeems you.—You perceive she stirs:

[*Hermione comes down from the pedestal.*  
Start not; her actions shall be holy as  
You hear my spell is lawful: do not shun her,  
Until you see her die again; for then  
You kill her double. Nay, present your hand:  
When she was young, you woo'd her; now in age  
Is she become the suitor.

*Leon.* O, she's warm! [*Embracing her.*  
If this be magic, let it be an art  
Lawful as eating.

*Pol.* She embraces him.

*Cam.* She hangs about his neck:  
If she pertain to life, let her speak too.

*Pol.* Ay, and make 't manifest where she has liv'd,  
Or how stolen from the dead.

*Paul.* That she is living,  
Were it but told you, should be hooted at  
Like an old tale: but it appears she lives,  
Though yet she speak not. Mark a little while.—  
Please you to interpose, fair madam: kneel,  
And pray your mother's blessing.—Turn, good lady;  
Our Perdita is found.

[*Presenting Perdita, who kneels to Hermione.*

*Her.* You gods, look down,

And from your sacred vials pour your graces  
 Upon my daughter's head!—Tell me, mine own,  
 Where hast thou been preserv'd? where liv'd? how found  
 Thy father's court? for thou shalt hear that I,—  
 Knowing by Paulina that the oracle  
 Gave hope thou wast in being,—have preserv'd  
 Myself, to see the issue.

*Paul.* There's time enough for that;  
 Lest they desire, upon this push, to trouble  
 Your joys with like relation.—Go together,  
 You precious winners all; your exultation  
 Partake to every one. I, an old turtle,  
 Will wing me to some wither'd bough, and there  
 My mate, that's never to be found again,  
 Lament till I am lost.

*Leon.* O, peace, Paulina!  
 Thou shouldst a husband take by my consent,  
 As I by thine a wife: this is a match,  
 And made between's by vows. Thou hast found mine;  
 But how, is to be question'd,—for I saw her,  
 As I thought, dead; and have, in vain, said many  
 A prayer upon her grave. I'll not seek far  
 (For him, I partly know his mind) to find thee  
 An honourable husband.—Come, Camillo,  
 And take her by the hand, whose worth and honesty  
 Is richly noted, and here justified  
 By us, a pair of kings.—Let's from this place.—  
 What! look upon my brother:—both your pardons,  
 That e'er I put between your holy looks  
 My ill suspicion.—This your son-in-law,  
 And son unto the king, whom heavens directing,  
 Is troth-plight to your daughter.—Good Paulina,  
 Lead us from hence; where we may leisurely  
 Each one demand, and answer to his part  
 Perform'd in this wide gap of time, since first  
 We were dissever'd: hastily lead away.

[*Exeunt.*]

P. 85. (1) *“that may blow  
No sneaping winds at home, to make us say,  
‘This is put forth too truly.’”*

We are not to conclude that this passage is free from corruption, because Malone and others have explained it,—commentators being often gifted with the power of explaining *any thing*.—According to Farmer, “*that*” is here equivalent to “*O, that;*” which I doubt greatly.—Hanmer altered the lines thus;

*“there may blow  
Some sneaping winds at home, to make us say,  
This is put forth too early:”—*

and so Capell, except that he gave,—

*“This is put forth too tardily.”*

Mr. Collier’s Ms. Corrector reads “*May there blow,*” and (like Hanmer) “*This is put forth too early.*”

P. 86. (2) *“I love thee not a jar o’ the clock behind  
What lady she her lord.”*

Mr. Collier in his ed. of *Shakespeare* gives “*What lady should her lord,*” from an old Ms. correction in Lord Ellesmere’s copy of the first folio; and so too Mr. Collier’s own Ms. Corrector reads.

P. 87. (3) *“ere  
With spur we heat an acre. But to the goal:—”*

Mr. Collier’s Ms. Corrector alters this to “— *we clear an acre. But to the good:—*” of which alteration (at least, of “clear”) I will not say with Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 72) that it “rather mars than improves the passage.”

P. 88. (4) *“bounty, fertile bosom,” &c.*

Hanmer printed “*bounty’s fertile bosom,*” &c.; and so Mr. Collier’s Ms. Corrector reads.

P. 89. (5) *“Pol. How, my lord!  
What cheer? how is’t with you, best brother?  
Her. You look  
As if you held a brow of much distraction:  
Are you mov’d, my lord?  
Leon. No, in good earnest.—”*

In the folio, the words “*What cheer? how is’t with you, best brother?*” have the prefix “*Leo.*” Hanmer assigned them to Polixenes. Mr. Collier and Mr.



I am so muddy, so unsettled  
To appoint," &c.

Mr. Walker regarding "unsettled" as a quadrisyllable:—but earlier in this scene, p. 89, Shakespeare has used "unsettled" without any such *ἐπέκτασις*,—

"*Her*. He something seems *unsettled*.  
*Pol*. How, my lord!" &c.

P. 97. (9) "Cam. Swear his thought over  
By each particular star," &c.

Theobald printed "*Swear this though over*," &c.: but surely the old text is quite right (meaning *over-swear his thought*): Camillo has said in his preceding speech, "*He thinks, nay, with all confidence he swears*," &c.

P. 98. (10)  
"Good expedition be my friend, and comfort  
The gracious queen, part of his theme, but nothing  
Of his ill-ta'en suspicion!"

Hanmer reads, "*Good expedition be my friend! Heaven comfort*," &c.:—and so does Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, who also substitutes "dream" for "theme."

P. 99. (11) "Or a half-moon made with a pen.  
Sec. Lady. Who taught 'this?'"

"*Who taught 'this?'*" i.e. Who taught *ye* this (presently the First Lady says to Mamillius "*Hark ye*," &c.).—The usual modern reading is "*Who taught you this?'*"—Mr. Collier and Mr. Knight print "*Who taught this?'*" but certainly, when they rejected the modern "*you*," they ought to have given, with the folio, "*'this*."

P. 103. (18) "land-damn."

For this puzzling verb (on which see the notes to the *Var. Shakespeare*, Nares's *Glossary*, and Mr. Halliwell's *Dict. of Arch. and Prov. Words*) Mr. Collier *ad l.* suggested "lamback,"—in which, it now appears, he had been anticipated by his Ms. Corrector.

P. 112. (19)  
"To save this bastard's life,—for 'tis a bastard,  
So sure as thy beard's grey,—what will you adventure  
To save this brat's life?"

The folio has "*So sure as this Beard's gray*,"—an error arising, I apprehend, from the occurrence of "*this*" both just above and just below.—The alteration

of "this" to "*thy*" was made by the old Ms. Corrector of Lord Ellesmere's copy of the folio: and that there is nothing objectionable in "*thy* beard" and "will *you* adventure" being so placed in juxta-position, might be shown by many passages of Shakespeare; e.g. at p. 143 of the present play, we find,—

"Mark *your* divorce, young sir,  
Whom son I dare not call; *thou* art too base," &c.

P. 115. (14) "Crier. *Silence!*"

In the folio the word "*Silence*" is separated from the rest, and printed in italic. That it belongs to a *Crier*, is, I think, manifest. Compare the following passage from *Henry VIII.*, at the opening of the trial of Queen Katharine;

"Wol. Whilst our commission from Rome is read,  
*Let silence be commanded.*  
K. Hen. What's the need?  
It hath already publicly been read,  
And on all sides the authority allow'd;  
You may, then, spare that time.  
Wol. Be't so.—Proceed.  
Scribe. Say, Henry King of England, come into the court.  
Crier. Henry King of England," &c.  
Act ii. sc. 4.

If the "commission from Rome" had been read in court, the Crier would previously have called "*Silence!*"

P. 120. (14) "quit his fortunes here,  
*Which you knew great; and to the hazard  
Of all uncertainties himself commended,"* &c.

From the second of these lines (as from many other lines throughout our author's plays) some word has dropped out. The reading of the second folio is, "*and to the certaine hazard,"* &c.; and I am informed by Mr. W. N. Lettson that the late Mr. Sydney Walker pronounced it to be "unquestionably right;" it is, at least, as Steevens remarks, quite in Shakespeare's manner.

P. 121. (16) "do not receive affliction  
*At my petition; I beseech you, rather  
Let me be punish'd, that have minded you  
Of what you should forget."*

Since Mr. Collier published the new readings of his Corrector,—who substitutes here

"do not receive affliction  
*At repetition,"* &c.,—

more than one alteration has been proposed in this passage, which formerly was not considered as suspicious. But, in spite of the unusual phraseology,

I should hesitate to say that the old text is corrupt: indeed, the expression "*At my petition*" seems to be supported by the preceding "*receive*" and the following "*beseek*." (The modern editors, in opposition to the folio, point

www.libtool.com.cn  
"do not receive affliction  
At my petition, I beseech you; rather," &c.)

P. 123. (17)      "*I never saw a vessel of like sorrow,  
So fill'd and so becoming.*"

Such is the discrepancy of opinion which will sometimes prevail among critics, that, while Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 75) perceives great beauty in the epithet "*becoming*," Mr. W. N. Lettsom feels confident that it is a misprint.—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "— and so o'er-running."

P. 128. (18)      "*With, hey! with, hey! the thrush and the jay.*"

The second "*with, hey!*" is from the second folio: but perhaps the name of some bird has dropped out.

P. 129. (19)      "*Three pound of sugar,*" &c.

The more recent editors (probably because the expression "*out of my note*" occurs presently) mark these and some other words in this speech as if they were read from a paper: but I believe that the Clown is trusting to his memory alone.

P. 129. (20)      "*O sir, the loathsomeness of them offends,*" &c.

The modern editors give, with the second folio, "— offends," &c.: but see note on *Love's Labour's lost*, vol. ii. p. 169.

P. 132. (21)      "*but that our feasts  
In every mess have folly, and the feeders  
Digest it with a custom, I should blush  
To see you so attyr'd; swoon, I think,  
To show myself a glass.*"

The folio has, "*To see you so attyr'd, sworne, I think,*" &c.,—which Malone retains, and makes a miserable attempt to explain. The Rev. J. Mitford (*Gent. Magazine* for August, 1844, p. 127) proposes "*scorn, I think,*" &c. Zachary Jackson and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitute "*so worn, I think,*"—which is hardly intelligible.—I adopt the emendation of Hanmer, "*a reading,*" observes Mr. Singer, "which, but for the opposition of Steevens

and the pertinacity of Malone, should long since have been that of the text. Perdita, in her charming modest way, tells Florizel that, but it was a rural custom to put on these disguises, she should *blush* to see him so meanly attired, and *swoon*, she thinks, to see herself in a glass so finely dressed." *Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 76. ("Hanmer," says Malone, "probably thought the similitude of the words *swoon* and *swoon* favourable to his emendation; but he forgot that *swoon* in the old copies of these plays is ALWAYS written *sound* or *swound*." Yet Malone might have found, in the first folio, "Many will swoon when they do look on bloud." *As you like it*, act iv. sc. 3.)—I have not altered the "attyr'd" of the old copy to "attirèd," because, perhaps, the pronunciation intended here was "*attirèd*."

P. 136. (13) "He tells her something  
That makes her blood look out."

Theobald's correction.—The folio has "— her blood look on 't" (the same misprint has occurred before: see note, p. 78 of the present vol.).

P. 137. (23) "and break a foul gap into the matter," &c.  
Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "— a foul jape," &c.

P. 141. (24)  
"Or Ethiopian's tooth, or the fann'd snow that's bolted  
By the northern blasts twice o'er.  
Pol. What follows this?—"

Qy. ought we to read "Or Ethiop's tooth," &c.? (Shakespeare evidently did not intend that the arrangement should be,—

"Or Ethiopian's tooth, or the fann'd snow  
That's bolted by the northern blasts twice o'er.")

P. 144. (25)  
"That thou no more shalt never see this knack (as never  
I mean thou shalt)," &c.

Here Rowe omitted "*never*." Malone restored it. (However the reader may object to the length of the line, he certainly need not be offended at the double negative.)

P. 146. (26) "most opportune to our need," &c.

The folio has "— to her need," (which, according to Boswell, may mean the need we have of her, i.e. the vessel): but compare, in the next speech, "Or stronger for your need."



P. 149. (27) "We are not furnish'd like Bohemia's son,  
Nor shall appear in Sicilia."

i. e. Nor shall appear like Bohemia's son in Sicilia. (The modern editors, in opposition to the old copy, put a break after "Sicilia," as if the sense were incomplete.)

P. 151. (28) "(For I do fear eyes over)"

The usual modern reading is "— eyes over you".—Mr. Collier prints, from a Ms. correction in Lord Ellesmere's copy of the folio, "— eyes ever".

P. 154. (29) "then stand," &c.

Capell prints "there stand," &c.

P. 157. (30) "would make her sainted spirit  
Again possess her corpse, and on this stage  
(Where we offend her now) appear, soul-ver'd,  
And begin, 'Why to me?'"

The folio has "(Where we Offendors now appeare) Soule-ver't," &c.—This passage has been amended in various ways. I adopt the alteration of Theobald, which is by no means violent, and which connects (as is evidently required) the word "appear" with "sainted spirit." (A parenthesis wrongly marked is not unfrequent in the folio.)

P. 158. (31) "She had just cause."

So the third folio.—The earlier folios have "She had just such cause" (an error originally occasioned by the word "such" in the line immediately above).

P. 158. (32) Cleo. Good madam,—  
Paul. I have done.  
Yet, if my lord will marry," &c.

The folio has,

"Cleo. Good madame, I haue done.  
Paul. Yet if my Lord will marry," &c.

Rowe printed "Cleo. Good madam, pray, have done." But the regulation suggested by Steevens, which I have adopted, is far preferable:—and it must not be forgotten that, near the commencement of the present scene, p. 156, a word, which undoubtedly belongs to Paulina, is in the folio made a portion of the preceding speech, thus,—



[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

# **KING JOHN.**

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

—◆—  
KING JOHN.

PRINCE HENRY, his son; afterwards King Henry III.

ARTHUR, duke of Bretagne, son to Geoffrey, late Duke of Bretagne,  
the elder brother to King John.

WILLIAM MARSHALL, earl of Pembroke.

GEFFREY FITZ-PETER, earl of Essex, chief-justiciary of England.

WILLIAM LONGSWORD, earl of Salisbury.

ROBERT BIGOT, earl of Norfolk.

HUBERT DE BURGH, chamberlain to the King.

ROBERT FALCONBRIDGE, son to Sir Robert Falconbridge.

PHILIP FALCONBRIDGE, his half-brother, bastard son to King  
Richard the First.

JAMES GUERNEY, servant to Lady Falconbridge.

PETER of Pomfret, a prophet.

PHILIP, king of France.

LOUIS, the Dauphin.

Archduke of Austria.

CARDINAL PANDULFH, the Pope's legate.

MELUN, a French lord.

CHATILLON, ambassador from France to King John.

ELINOR, widow of King Henry II. and mother to King John.

CONSTANCE, mother to Arthur.

BLANCH, daughter to Alphonso, king of Castile, and niece to King  
John.

LADY FALCONBRIDGE, mother to the Bastard and Robert Falcon-  
bridge.

Lords, Citizens of Angiers, Sheriff, Heralds, Officers, Soldiers, Messengers,  
and other Attendants.

SCENE—*Sometimes in England, and sometimes in France.*

# KING JOHN.

---

---

## ACT I.

SCENE I. *Northampton. A room of state in the palace.*

*Enter King JOHN, Queen ELINOR, PEMBROKE, ESSEX, SALISBURY,  
and others, with CHATILLON.*

*K. John.* Now, say, Chatillon, what would France with us?

*Chat.* Thus, after greeting, speaks the King of France,  
In my behaviour, to the majesty,  
The borrow'd majesty of England here.

*Eli.* A strange beginning;—borrow'd majesty!

*K. John.* Silence, good mother; hear the embassy.

*Chat.* Philip of France, in right and true behalf  
Of thy deceased brother Geoffrey's son,  
Arthur Plantagenet, lays most lawful claim  
To this fair island and the territories,—  
To Ireland, Poitiers, Anjou, Touraine, Maine;  
Desiring thee to lay aside the sword  
Which sways usurpingly these several titles,  
And put the same into young Arthur's hand,  
Thy nephew and right royal sovereign.

*K. John.* What follows, if we disallow of this?

*Chat.* The proud control of fierce and bloody war,  
To enforce these rights so forcibly withheld.

*K. John.* Here have we war for war, and blood for blood,  
Controlment for controlment: so answer France.

*Chat.* Then take my king's defiance from my mouth,  
The furthest limit of my embassy.

*K. John.* Bear mine to him, and so depart in peace:

Be thou as lightning in the eyes of France ;  
 For ere thou canst report I will be there,  
 The thunder of my cannon shall be heard :  
 So, hence ! Be thou the trumpet of our wrath,  
 And sullen presage of your own decay.—  
 An honourable conduct let him have :—  
 Pembroke, look to 't.—Farewell, Chatillon.

[*Exeunt Chatillon and Pembroke.*]

*Eli.* What now, my son ! have I not ever said  
 How that ambitious Constance would not cease  
 Till she had kindled France and all the world,  
 Upon the right and party of her son ?  
 This might have been prevented and made whole  
 With very easy arguments of love ;  
 Which now the manage of two kingdoms must  
 With fearful bloody issue arbitrate.

*K. John.* Our strong possession and our right for us.

*Eli.* Your strong possession much more than your right,  
 Or else it must go wrong with you and me :  
 So much my conscience whispers in your ear,  
 Which none but heaven and you and I shall hear.

*Enter the Sheriff of Northamptonshire, who whispers ESSEX.*

*Essex.* My liege, here is the strangest controversy,  
 Come from the country to be judg'd by you,  
 That e'er I heard : shall I produce the men ?

*K. John.* Let them approach.—

[*Exit Sheriff.*]

Our abbeyes and our priories shall pay  
 This expedition's charge.

*Re-enter Sheriff, with ROBERT FALCONBRIDGE, and PHILIP his  
 bastard brother.*

What men are you ?

*Bast.* Your faithful subject I, a gentleman  
 Born in Northamptonshire, and eldest son,  
 As I suppose, to Robert Falconbridge,—  
 A soldier, by the honour-giving hand  
 Of Cœur-de-lion knighted in the field.

*K. John.* What art thou ?

*Rob.* The son and heir to that same Falconbridge.

*K. John.* Is that the elder, and art thou the heir ?

You came not of one mother, then, it seems.

*Bast.* Most certain of one mother, mighty king,—

That is well known ; and, as I think, one father :

But for the certain knowledge of that truth,

I put you o'er to heaven and to my mother :—

Of that I doubt, as all men's children may.

*Eli.* Out on thee, rude man ! thou dost shame thy mother  
And wound her honour with this diffidence.

*Bast.* I, madam ? no, I have no reason for it,—

That is my brother's plea, and none of mine ;

The which if he can prove, 'a pops me out

At least from fair five hundred pound a year :

Heaven guard my mother's honour and my land !

*K. John.* A good blunt fellow.—Why, being younger  
born,

Doth he lay claim to thine inheritance ?

*Bast.* I know not why, except to get the land.

But once he slander'd me with bastardy :

But whêr I be as true begot or no,

That still I lay upon my mother's head ;

But, that I am as well begot, my liege,

(Fair fall the bones that took the pains for me !)

Compare our faces, and be judge yourself.

If old Sir Robert did beget us both,

And were our father, and this son like him,—

O old Sir Robert, father, on my knee

I give heaven thanks I was not like to thee !

*K. John.* Why, what a madcap hath heaven lent<sup>(1)</sup> us here !

*Eli.* He hath a trick of Cœur-de-lion's face ;

The accent of his tongue affecteth him :

Do you not read some tokens of my son

In the large composition of this man ?

*K. John.* Mine eye hath well examinèd his parts,  
And finds them perfect Richard.—Sirrah, speak,  
What doth move you to claim your brother's land ?

*Bast.* Because he hath a half-face, like my father,  
With that half-face (?) would he have all my land :  
A half-fac'd groat five hundred pound a year !

*Rob.* My gracious liege, when that my father liv'd,  
Your brother did employ my father much,—

*Bast.* Well, sir, by this you cannot get my land :  
Your tale must be, how he employ'd my mother.

*Rob.* And once dispatch'd him in an embassy  
To Germany, there with the emperor  
To treat of high affairs touching that time.  
The advantage of his absence took the king,  
And in the mean time sojourn'd at my father's ;  
Where how he did prevail, I shame to speak,—  
But truth is truth : large lengths of seas and shores  
Between my father and my mother lay  
(As I have heard my father speak himself),  
When this same lusty gentleman was got.  
Upon his death-bed he by will bequeath'd  
His lands to me ; and took it, on his death,  
That this, my mother's son, was none of his ;  
And if he were, he came into the world  
Full fourteen weeks before the course of time.  
Then, good my liege, let me have what is mine,  
My father's land, as was my father's will.

*K. John.* Sirrah, your brother is legitimate,—  
Your father's wife did after wedlock bear him ;  
And if she did play false, the fault was hers ;  
Which fault lies on the hazards of all husbands  
That marry wives. Tell me, how if my brother,  
Who, as you say, took pains to get this son,  
Had of your father claim'd this son for his ?  
In sooth, good friend, your father might have kept  
This calf, bred from his cow, from all the world ;  
In sooth, he might : then, if he were my brother's,  
My brother might not claim him ; nor your father,  
Being none of his, refuse him : this concludes,—  
My mother's son did get your father's heir ;  
Your father's heir must have your father's land.



*Rob.* Shall, then, my father's will be of no force  
To dispossess that child which is not his?

*Bast.* Of no more force to dispossess me, sir,  
Than was his will to get me, as I think.

*Eli.* Whether hadst thou rather be a Falconbridge,  
And like thy brother, to enjoy thy land,  
Or the reputed son of Cœur-de-lion,  
Lord of thy presence, and no land beside?

*Bast.* Madam, an if my brother had my shape,  
And I had his, Sir Robert his, like him;  
And if my legs were two such riding-rods,  
My arms such eel-skins stuff'd; my face so thin,  
That in mine ear I durst not stick a rose,  
Lest men should say, "Look, where three-farthings goes!"  
And, to his shape, were heir to all this land,—  
Would I might never stir from off this place,  
I'd give it every foot to have this face;  
I would not be Sir Nob in any case.

*Eli.* I like thee well: wilt thou forsake thy fortune,  
Bequeath thy land to him, and follow me?  
I am a soldier, and now bound to France.

*Bast.* Brother, take you my land, I'll take my chance:  
Your face hath got five hundred pound a year;  
Yet sell your face for five pence, and 'tis dear.—  
Madam, I'll follow you unto the death.

*Eli.* Nay, I would have you go before me thither.

*Bast.* Our country manners give our betters way.

*K. John.* What is thy name?

*Bast.* Philip, my liege,—so is my name begun,—  
Philip, good old Sir Robert's wife's eldest son.

*K. John.* From henceforth bear his name whose form thou  
bearest:  
Kneel thou down Philip, but arise<sup>(\*)</sup> more great,—  
Arise Sir Richard and Plantagenet.

*Bast.* Brother by the mother's side, give me your hand:  
My father gave me honour, yours gave land.—  
Now blessèd be the hour, by night or day,  
When I was got, Sir Robert was away!

*Eliz.* The very spirit of Plantagenet!—

I am thy grandam, Richard; call me so.

*Bast.* Madam, by chance, but not by truth: what though?  
Something about, a little from the right,

In at the window, or else o'er the hatch;

Who dares not stir by day must walk by night;

And have is have, however men do catch;

Near or far off, well won is still well shot;

And I am I, howe'er I was begot.

*K. John.* Go, Falconbridge: now hast thou thy desire;  
A landless knight makes thee a landed squire.—

Come, madam,—and come, Richard; we must speed  
For France, for France; for it is more than need.

*Bast.* Brother, adieu: good fortune come to thee!  
For thou wast got i' the way of honesty.

[*Exeunt all except the Bastard.*]

A foot of honour better than I was;

But many a many foot of land the worse.

Well, now can I make any Joan a lady:—

“Good den, Sir Richard:”—“God-a-mercy, fellow;”—

And if his name be George, I'll call him Peter;

For new-made honour doth forget men's names,—

'Tis too respective and too sociable

For your conversion. Now your traveller,—

He and his toothpick at my worship's mess;

And when my knightly stomach is suffic'd,

Why then I suck my teeth, and catechize

My pickèd man of countries:—“My dear sir,”

Thus, leaning on mine elbow, I begin,

“I shall beseech you”—that is question now;

And then comes answer like an Abcee-book:—

“O sir,” says answer, “at your best command;

At your employment; at your service, sir:”

“No, sir,” says question, “I, sweet sir, at yours:”

And so, ere answer knows what question would,—

Saving in dialogue of compliment,

And talking of the Alps and Apennines,

The Pyrenean and the river Po,—

It draws toward supper in conclusion so.  
 But this is worshipful society,  
 And fits the mounting spirit like myself;  
 For he is but a bastard to the time,  
 That doth not smack of observation,—  
 And so am I, whether I smack or no;  
 And not alone in habit and device,  
 Exterior form, outward accoutrement,  
 But from the inward motion to deliver  
 Sweet, sweet, sweet poison for the age's tooth:  
 Which, though I will not practise to deceive,  
 Yet, to avoid deceit, I mean to learn;  
 For it shall strew the footsteps of my rising.—  
 But who comes in such haste in riding-ropes?  
 What woman-post is this? hath she no husband,  
 That will take pains to blow a horn before her?

*Enter Lady FALCONBRIDGE and JAMES GURNEY.*

O me! it is my mother.—How now, good lady!  
 What brings you here to court so hastily?

*Lady F.* Where is that slave, thy brother? where is he,  
 That holds in chase mine honour up and down?

*Bast.* My brother Robert? old Sir Robert's son?  
 Colbrand the giant, that same mighty man?  
 Is it Sir Robert's son that you seek so?

*Lady F.* Sir Robert's son! Ay, thou unreverend boy,  
 Sir Robert's son: why scorn'st thou at Sir Robert?  
 He is Sir Robert's son; and so art thou.

*Bast.* James Gurney, wilt thou give us leave awhile?

*Gur.* Good leave, good Philip.

*Bast.* Philip?—sparrow!—James,  
 There's toys abroad: anon I'll tell thee more. [*Exit Gurney.*  
 Madam, I was not old Sir Robert's son;  
 Sir Robert might have eat his part in me  
 Upon Good-Friday, and ne'er broke his fast:  
 Sir Robert could do well: marry, to confess,  
 Could not<sup>(4)</sup> get me; Sir Robert could not do it,—  
 We know his handiwork:—therefore, good mother,

To whom am I beholding for these limbs?  
 Sir Robert never help to make this leg.

*Lady F.* Hast thou conspirèd with thy brother too,  
 That for thine own gain shouldst defend mine honour?  
 What means this scorn, thou most untoward knave?

*Bast.* Knight, knight, good mother,—Basilisco-like:  
 What! I am dubb'd; I have it on my shoulder.  
 But, mother, I am not Sir Robert's son;  
 I have disclaim'd Sir Robert and my land;  
 Legitimation, name, and all is gone:

Then, good my mother, let me know my father,—  
 Some proper man, I hope: who was it, mother?

*Lady F.* Hast thou denied thyself a Falconbridge?

*Bast.* As faithfully as I deny the devil.

*Lady F.* King Richard Cœur-de-lion was thy father:  
 By long and vehement suit I was seduc'd  
 To make room for him in my husband's bed:—  
 Heaven lay not my transgression to my charge!—  
 Thou art the issue of my dear offence,  
 Which was so strongly urg'd, past my defence.

*Bast.* Now, by this light, were I to get again,  
 Madam, I would not wish a better father.  
 Some sins do bear their privilege on earth,  
 And so doth yours; your fault was not your folly:  
 Needs must you lay your heart at his dispose,  
 Subjècted tribute to commanding love,  
 Against whose fury and unmatched force  
 The aweless lion could not wage the fight,  
 Nor keep his princely heart from Richard's hand:  
 He that perforce robs lions of their hearts  
 May easily win a woman's. Ay, my mother,  
 With all my heart I thank thee for my father!  
 Who lives and dares but say, thou didst not well  
 When I was got, I'll send his soul to hell.  
 Come, lady, I will show thee to my kin;  
 And they shall say, when Richard me begot,  
 If thou hadst said him nay, it had been sin:

Who says it was, he lies; I say 'twas not.

[*Exeunt.*]

www.libtool.com  
ACT II.

SCENE I. *France. Before the walls of Angiers.*

*Enter, on one side, PHILIP, king of France, LOUIS, CONSTANOE, ARTHUR, and Forces; on the other, the Archduke of Austria and Forces.*

*Lou.* Before Angiers well met, brave Austria.—  
Arthur, that great forerunner of thy blood,  
Richard, that robb'd the lion of his heart,  
And fought the holy wars in Palestine,  
By this brave duke came early to his grave:  
And, for amends to his posterity,  
At our importance hither is he come,  
To spread his colours, boy, in thy behalf;  
And to rebuke the usurpation  
Of thy unnatural uncle, English John:  
Embrace him, love him, give him welcome hither.

*Arth.* God shall forgive you Cœur-de-lion's death  
The rather that you give his offspring life,  
Shadowing their right under your wings of war:  
I give you welcome with a powerless hand,  
But with a heart full of unstainèd<sup>(9)</sup> love:  
Welcome before the gates of Angiers, duke.

*Lou.* A noble boy! Who would not do thee right?

*Aust.* Upon thy cheek lay I this zealous kiss,  
As seal to this indenture of my love;—  
That to my home I will no more return,  
Till Angiers, and the right thou hast in France,  
Together with that pale, that white-fac'd shore,  
Whose foot spurns back the ocean's roaring tides,  
And coops from other lands her islanders,—  
Even till that England, hedg'd in with the main,  
That water-wallèd bulwark, still secure  
And confident from foreign purposes,—  
Even till that utmost corner of the west

Salute thee for her king: till then, fair boy,  
Will I not think of home, but follow arms.

*Const.* O, take his mother's thanks, a widow's thanks,  
Till your strong hand shall help to give him strength  
To make a more requital to your love!

*Aust.* The peace of heaven is theirs that lift their swords  
In such a just and charitable war.

*K. Phi.* Well, then, to work: our cannon shall be bent  
Against the brows of this resisting town.—  
Call for our chieftest men of discipline,  
To cull the plots of best advantages:  
We'll lay before this town our royal bones,  
Wade to the market-place in Frenchmen's blood,  
But we will make it subject to this boy.

*Const.* Stay for an answer to your embassy,  
Lest unadvis'd you stain your swords with blood:  
My Lord Chatillon may from England bring  
That right in peace, which here we urge in war;  
And then we shall repent each drop of blood,  
That hot rash haste so indirectly shed.

*K. Phi.* A wonder, lady,—lo, upon thy wish,  
Our messenger Chatillon is arriv'd!

*Enter CHATILLON.*

What England says, say briefly, gentle lord;  
We coldly pause for thee; Chatillon, speak.

*Chat.* Then turn your forces from this paltry siege,  
And stir them up against a mightier task.  
England, impatient of your just demands,  
Hath put himself in arms: the adverse winds,  
Whose leisure I have stay'd, have given him time  
To land his legions all as soon as I;  
His marches are expedient to this town,  
His forces strong, his soldiers confident.  
With him along is come the mother-queen,  
An Até, stirring him to blood and strife;  
With her her niece, the Lady Blanch of Spain;  
With them a bastard of the king's deceas'd:

And all the unsettled humours of the land,—  
 Rash, inconsiderate, fiery voluntaries,  
 With ladies' faces and fierce dragons' spleens,—  
 Have sold their fortunes at their native homes,  
 Bearing their birthrights proudly on their backs,  
 To make a hazard of new fortunes here :  
 In brief, a braver choice of dauntless spirits,  
 Than now the English bottoms have waft o'er,  
 Did never float upon the swelling tide,  
 To do offence and scath in Christendom.  
 The interruption of their churlish drums     [*Drums within.*  
 Cuts off more circumstance : they are at hand,  
 To parley or to fight ; therefore prepare.

*K. Phi.* How much unlook'd for is this expedition !

*Aust.* By how much unexpected, by so much  
 We must awake endeavour for defence ;  
 For courage mounteth with occasion :  
 Let them be welcome, then ; we are prepar'd.

*Enter King JOHN, ELINOR, BLANCH, the Bastard, Lords, and Forces.*

*K. John.* Peace be to France, if France in peace permit  
 Our just and lineal entrance to our own !  
 If not, bleed France, and peace ascend to heaven !  
 Whiles we, God's wrathful agent, do correct  
 Their proud contempt that beat his peace to heaven.

*K. Phi.* Peace be to England, if that war return  
 From France to England, there to live in peace !  
 England we love ; and for that England's sake  
 With burden of our armour here we sweat.  
 This toil of ours should be a work of thine ;  
 But thou from loving England art so far,  
 That thou hast under-wrought his lawful king,  
 Cut off the sequence of posterity,  
 Out-facèd infant state, and done a rape  
 Upon the maiden virtue of the crown.  
 Look here upon thy brother Geoffrey's face ;—  
 These eyes, these brows, were moulded out of his :  
 This little abstract doth contain that large

Which died in Geffrey ; and the hand of time  
 Shall draw this brief into as huge a volume.  
 That Geffrey was thy elder brother born,  
 And this his son ; England was Geffrey's right,  
 And this (?) is Geffrey's : in the name of God,  
 How comes it, then, that thou art call'd a king,  
 When living blood doth in these temples beat,  
 Which owe the crown that thou o'ermasterest ?

*K. John.* From whom hast thou this great commission,  
 France,

To draw my answer from thy articles ?

*K. Phi.* From that supernal judge, that stirs good thoughts  
 In any breast of strong authority,  
 To look into the blots and stains of right.  
 That judge hath made me guardian to this boy :  
 Under whose warrant I impeach thy wrong ;  
 And by whose help I mean to chastise it.

*K. John.* Alack, thou dost usurp authority.

*K. Phi.* Excuse,—it is to beat usurping down.

*Eli.* Who is it thou dost call usurper, France ?

*Const.* Let me make answer ;—thy usurping son.

*Eli.* Out, insolent ! thy bastard shall be king,  
 That thou mayst be a queen, and check the world !

*Const.* My bed was ever to thy son as true  
 As thine was to thy husband ; and this boy  
 Liker in feature to his father Geffrey  
 Than thou and John in manners,—being as like  
 As rain to water, or devil to his dam.  
 My boy a bastard ! By my soul, I think  
 His father never was so true begot :  
 It cannot be, an if thou wert his mother.

*Eli.* There's a good mother, boy, that blots thy father.

*Const.* There's a good grandam, boy, that would blot thee.

*Aust.* Peace !

*Bast.* Hear the crier.

*Aust.* What the devil art thou ?

*Bast.* One that will play the devil, sir, with you,  
 An 'a may catch your hide and you alone :  
 You are the hare of whom the proverb goes,



Whose valour plucks dead lions by the beard :  
 I'll smoke your skin-coat, an I catch you right ;  
 Sirrah, look to't; i' faith, I will; i' faith.

*Blanch.* O, well did he become that lion's robe  
 That did disrobe the lion of that robe !

*Bast.* It lies as sightly on the back of him  
 As great Alcides' shoes upon an ass :—  
 But, ass, I'll take that burden from your back,  
 Or lay on that shall make your shoulders crack.

*Aust.* What cracker is this same that deafs our ears  
 With this abundance of superfluous breath ?

*K. Phi.*<sup>(8)</sup> Louis, determine what we shall do straight.

*Lou.* Women and fools, break off your conference.—  
 King John, this is the very sum of all,—  
 England and Ireland, Anjou,<sup>(9)</sup> Touraine, Maine,  
 In right of Arthur do I claim of thee :  
 Wilt thou resign them, and lay down thy arms ?

*K. John.* My life as soon :—I do defy thee, France.—  
 Arthur of Bretagne, yield thee to my hand ;  
 And, out of my dear love, I'll give thee more  
 Than e'er the coward hand of France can win :  
 Submit thee, boy.

*Eli.* Come to thy grandam, child.

*Const.* Do, child, go to it' grandam, child ;  
 Give grandam kingdom, and it' grandam will  
 Give it a plum, a cherry, and a fig :  
 There's a good grandam.

*Arth.* Good my mother, peace !  
 I would that I were low laid in my grave :  
 I am not worth this coil that's made for me.

*Eli.* His mother shames him so, poor boy, he weeps.

*Const.* Now shame upon you, whêr she does or no !  
 His grandam's wrongs, and not his mother's shames,  
 Draw those heaven-moving pearls from his poor eyes,  
 Which heaven shall take in nature of a fee ;  
 Ay, with these crystal beads heaven shall be brib'd  
 To do him justice, and revenge on you.

*Eli.* Thou monstrous slanderer of heaven and earth !

*Const.* Thou monstrous injurer of heaven and earth !

Call not me slanderer ; thou and thine usurp  
 The dominations, royalties, and rights  
 Of this oppressèd boy ; this is thy eldest son's son,<sup>(10)</sup>  
 Infortunate in nothing but in thee :  
 Thy sins are visited in this poor child ;  
 The canon of the law is laid on him,  
 Being but the second generation  
 Removèd from thy sin-conceiving womb.

*K. John.* Bedlam, have done.

*Const.* I have but this to say,—

That he is not only plaguèd for her sin,  
 But God hath made her sin and her the plague  
 On this removèd issue, plagu'd for her,  
 And with her plague, her sin ; his injury  
 Her injury,—the beadle to her sin ;  
 All punish'd in the person of this child,  
 And all for her ; a plague upon her !

*Eli.* Thou unadvisèd scold, I can produce  
 A will that bars the title of thy son.

*Const.* Ay, who doubts that ? a will ! a wicked will ;  
 A woman's will ; a canker'd grandam's will !

*K. Phi.* Peace, lady ! pause, or be more temperate :  
 It ill beseems this presence to cry aim  
 To these ill-tunèd repetitions.—  
 Some trumpet summon hither to the walls  
 These men of Angiers : let us hear them speak,  
 Whose title they admit, Arthur's or John's.

*Trumpet sounds. Enter Citizens upon the walls.*

*First Cit.* Who is it that hath warn'd us to the walls ?

*K. Phi.* 'Tis France, for England.

*K. John.* England, for itself :—

You men of Angiers, and my loving subjects,—

*K. Phi.* You loving men of Angiers, Arthur's subjects,  
 Our trumpet call'd you to this gentle parle.

*K. John.* For our advantage ; therefore hear us first.  
 These flags of France, that are advancèd here  
 Before the eye and prospect of your town,  
 Have hither march'd to your endamagement :

The cannons have their bowels full of wrath,  
 And ready mounted are they to spit forth  
 Their iron indignation 'gainst your walls :  
 All preparation for a bloody siege  
 And merciless proceeding by these French  
 Confronts<sup>(11)</sup> your city's eyes, your winking gates ;  
 And, but for our approach, those sleeping stones,  
 That as a waist do girdle you about,  
 By the compulsion of their ordnance  
 By this time from their fixèd beds of lime  
 Had been dishabited, and wide havoc made  
 For bloody power to rush upon your peace.  
 But, on the sight of us, your lawful king,—  
 Who painfully, with much expedient march,  
 Have brought a countercheck before your gates,  
 To save unscratch'd your city's threaten'd cheeks,—  
 Behold, the French, amaz'd, vouchsafe a parole ;  
 And now, instead of bullets wrapp'd in fire,  
 To make a shaking fever in your walls,  
 They shoot but calm words, folded up in smoke,  
 To make a faithless error in your ears :  
 Which trust accordingly, kind citizens,  
 And let us in, your king ; whose labour'd spirits,  
 Forwearied in this action of swift speed,  
 Crave harbourage within your city-walls.

*K. Phi.* When I have said, make answer to us both.

Lo, in this right hand, whose protection  
 Is most divinely vow'd upon the right  
 Of him it holds, stands young Plantagenet,  
 Son to the elder brother of this man,  
 And king o'er him, and all that he enjoys :  
 For this down-trodden equity, we tread  
 In warlike march these greens before your town ;  
 Being no further enemy to you  
 Than the constraint of hospitable zeal  
 In the relief of this oppressèd child  
 Religiously provokes. Be pleasèd, then,  
 To pay that duty which you truly owe  
 To him that owes it, namely, this young prince :

And then our arms, like to a muzzled bear,  
 Save in aspect, have all offence seal'd up ;  
 Our cannons' malice vainly shall be spent  
 Against the invulnerable clouds of heaven ;  
 And with a blessèd and unvex'd retire,  
 With unhack'd swords and helmets all unbruise'd,  
 We will bear home that lusty blood again,  
 Which here we came to spout against your town,  
 And leave your children, wives, and you in peace.  
 But if you fondly pass our proffer'd offer,<sup>(12)</sup>  
 'Tis not the rondure<sup>(13)</sup> of your old-fac'd walls  
 Can hide you from our messengers of war,  
 Though all these English, and their discipline,  
 Were harbour'd in their rude circumference.  
 Then, tell us, shall your city call us lord,  
 In that behalf which we have challeng'd it ?  
 Or shall we give the signal to our rage,  
 And stalk in blood to our possession ?

*First Cit.* In brief, we are the king of England's subjects:  
 For him, and in his right, we hold this town.

*K. John.* Acknowledge, then, the king, and let me in.

*First Cit.* That can we not ; but he that proves the king,  
 To him will we prove loyal : till that time  
 Have we ramm'd up our gates against the world.

*K. John.* Doth not the crown of England prove the king ?  
 And if not that, I bring you witnesses,  
 Twice fifteen thousand hearts of England's breed,—

*Bast.* Bastards, and else.

*K. John.* To verify our title with their lives.

*K. Phi.* As many and as well-born bloods as those,—

*Bast.* Some bastards too.

*K. Phi.* Stand in his face, to contradict his claim.

*First Cit.* Till you compound whose right is worthiest,  
 We for the worthiest hold the right from both.

*K. John.* Then God forgive the sin of all those souls  
 That to their everlasting residence,  
 Before the dew of evening fall, shall fleet,  
 In dreadful trial of our kingdom's king !

*K. Phi.* Amen, amen !—Mount, chevaliers ! to arms !

*Bast.* Saint George, that swinge'd the dragon, and e'er since  
 Sits on his horse back at mine hostess' door,  
 Teach us some fence!—Sirrah [*to Austria*], were I at home,  
 At your den, sirrah, with your lioness,  
 I would set an ox-head to your lion's hide,  
 And make a monster of you.

*Aust.* Peace! no more.

*Bast.* O, tremble, for you hear the lion roar!

*K. John.* Up higher to the plain; where we'll set forth  
 In best appointment all our regiments.

*Bast.* Speed, then, to take advantage of the field.

*K. Phi.* It shall be so;—[*to Louis*] and at the other hill  
 Command the rest to stand.—God and our right!

[*Exeunt, severally, the English and French Kings, &c.*]

*After excursions, enter a French Herald, with trumpets, to the gates.*

*F. Her.* You men of Angiers, open wide your gates,  
 And let young Arthur, Duke of Bretagne, in,  
 Who, by the hand of France, this day hath made  
 Much work for tears in many an English mother,  
 Whose sons lie scatter'd on the bleeding ground:  
 Many a widow's husband grovelling lies,  
 Coldly embracing the discolour'd earth;  
 And victory, with little loss, doth play  
 Upon the dancing banners of the French,  
 Who are at hand, triumphantly display'd,  
 To enter conquerors, and to proclaim  
 Arthur of Bretagne England's king and yours.

*Enter an English Herald, with trumpets.*

*E. Her.* Rejoice, you men of Angiers, ring your bells;  
 King John, your king and England's, doth approach,  
 Commander of this hot malicious day:  
 Their armours, that march'd hence so silver-bright,  
 Hither return all gilt with Frenchmen's blood;  
 There stuck no plume in any English crest  
 That is removed by a staff of France;

Our colours do return in those same hands  
 That did display them when we first march'd forth ;  
 And, like a jolly troop of huntsmen, come  
 Our lusty English, all with purpled hands,  
 Dy'd in the dying slaughter of their foes :  
 Open your gates, and give the victors way.

*First Cit.* (14) Heralds, from off our towers we might behold,

From first to last, the onset and retire  
 Of both your armies ; whose equality  
 By our best eyes cannot be censurèd :  
 Blood hath bought blood, and blows have answer'd blows ;  
 Strength match'd with strength, and power confronted power :  
 Both are alike ; and both alike we like.  
 One must prove greatest : while they weigh so even,  
 We hold our town for neither ; yet for both.

*Re-enter, on one side, King JOHN, ELINOR, BLANCH, the Bastard, Lords, and Forces ; on the other, King PHILIP, LOUIS, AUSTRIA, and Forces.*

*K. John.* France, hast thou yet more blood to cast away ?

Say, shall the current of our right run (15) on ?  
 Whose passage, vex'd with thy impediment,  
 Shall leave his native channel, and o'erswell  
 With course disturb'd even thy confining shores,  
 Unless thou let his silver water keep  
 A peaceful progress to the ocean.

*K. Phi.* England, thou hast not sav'd one drop of blood,  
 In this hot trial, more than we of France ;  
 Rather, lost more : and by this hand I swear,  
 That sways the earth this climate overlooks,  
 Before we will lay down our just-borne arms,  
 We'll put thee down, 'gainst whom these arms we bear,  
 Or add a royal number to the dead,  
 Gracing the scroll that tells of this war's loss  
 With slaughter coupled to the name of kings.

*Bast.* Ha, majesty ! how high thy glory towers,  
 When the rich blood of kings is set on fire !

O, now doth Death line his dead chaps with steel ;  
 The swords of soldiers are his teeth, his fangs ;  
 And now he feasts, mousing the flesh of men,  
 In undetermin'd differences of kings.—

Why stand these royal fronts amazèd thus ?  
 Cry, havoc, kings ! back to the stainèd field,  
 You equal potents, fiery-kindled spirits !

Then let confusion of one part confirm

The other's peace ; till then, blows, blood, and death !

*K. John.* Whose party do the townsmen yet admit ?

*K. Phi.* Speak, citizens, for England ; who's your king ?

*First Cit.* The king of England, when we know the king.

*K. Phi.* Know him in us, that here hold up his right.

*K. John.* In us, that are our own great deputy,

And bear possession of our person here ;

Lord of our presence, Angiers, and of you.

*First Cit.* A greater power than we denies all this ;

And till it be undoubted, we do lock

Our former scruple in our strong-barr'd gates ;

King'd of our fear,<sup>(16)</sup> until our fears, resolv'd,

Be by some certain king purg'd and depos'd.

*Bast.* By heaven, these scroyles of Angiers flout you,  
 kings,

And stand securely on their battlements,

As in a theatre, whence they gape and point

At your industrious scenes and acts of death.

Your royal presences be rul'd by me :—

Do like the mutines of Jerusalem,

Be friends awhile, and both conjointly bend

Your sharpest deeds of malice on this town :

By east and west let France and England mount

Their battering cannon, chargèd to the mouths,

Till their soul-fearing clamours have brawl'd down

The flinty ribs of this contemptuous city :

I'd play incessantly upon these jades,

Even till unfencèd desolation

Leave them as naked as the vulgar air.

That done, dissever your united strengths,

And part your mingled colours once again ;

Turn face to face, and bloody point to point ;  
 Then, in a moment, Fortune shall cull forth  
 Out of one side her happy minion,  
 To whom in favour she shall give the day,  
 And kiss him with a glorious victory.  
 How like you this wild counsel, mighty states ?  
 Smacks it not something of the policy ?

*K. John.* Now, by the sky that hangs above our heads,  
 I like it well.—France, shall we knit our powers,  
 And lay this Angiers even with the ground ;  
 Then, after, fight who shall be king of it ?

*Bast.* An if thou hast the mettle of a king,—  
 Being wrong'd, as we are, by this peevish town,—  
 Turn thou the mouth of thy artillery,  
 As we will ours, against these saucy walls ;  
 And when that we have dash'd them to the ground,  
 Why, then defy each other, and, pell-mell,  
 Make work upon ourselves, for heaven or hell.

*K. Phi.* Let it be so.—Say, where will you assault ?

*K. John.* We from the west will send destruction  
 Into this city's bosom.

*Aust.* I from the north.

*K. Phi.* Our thunder from the south  
 Shall rain their drift of bullets on this town.

*Bast.* O prudent discipline ! From north to south,—  
 Austria and France shoot in each other's mouth :  
 I'll stir them to it. [*Aside.*]—Come, away, away !

*First Cit.* Hear us, great kings : vouchsafe awhile to stay,  
 And I shall show you peace and fair-fac'd league ;  
 Win you this city without stroke or wound ;  
 Rescue those breathing lives to die in beds,  
 That here come sacrifices for the field :  
 Perséver not, but hear me, mighty kings.

*K. John.* Speak on, with favour ; we are bent to hear.

*First Cit.* That daughter there of Spain, the Lady  
 Blanch,  
 Is niece<sup>(17)</sup> to England :—look upon the years  
 Of Louis the Dauphin, and that lovely maid :  
 If lusty love should go in quest of beauty,



Where should he find it fairer than in Blanch ?  
 If zealous love should go in search of virtue,  
 Where should he find it purer than in Blanch ?  
 If love ambitious sought a match of birth,  
 Whose veins bound richer blood than Lady Blanch ?  
 Such as she is, in beauty, virtue, birth,  
 Is the young Dauphin every way complete,—  
 If not complete of, say he is not she ;  
 And she again wants nothing, to name want,  
 If want it be not, that she is not he :  
 He is the half part of a blessèd man,  
 Left to be finishèd by such a she ;  
 And she a fair divided excellence,  
 Whose fulness of perfection lies in him.  
 O, two such silver currents, when they join,  
 Do glorify the banks that bound them in ;  
 And two such shores to two such streams made one,  
 Two such controlling bounds shall you be, kings,  
 To these two princes, if you marry them.  
 This union shall do more than battery can  
 To our fast-closèd gates ; for, at this match,  
 With swifter spleen than powder can enforce,  
 The mouth of passage shall we fling wide ope,  
 And give you entrance : but without this match,  
 The sea enragèd is not half so deaf,  
 Lions more confident, mountains and rocks  
 More free from motion ; no, not Death himself  
 In mortal fury half so peremptory,  
 As we to keep this city.

*Bast.* Here's a stay,  
 That shakes the rotten carcass of old Death  
 Out of his rags ! Here's a large mouth, indeed,  
 That spits forth death and mountains, rocks and seas ;  
 Talks as familiarly of roaring lions  
 As maids of thirteen do of puppy-dogs !  
 What cannoneer begot this lusty blood ?  
 He speaks plain cannon,—fire and smoke and bounce ;  
 He gives the bastinado with his tongue :

Our ears are cudgell'd ; not a word of his  
 But buffets better than a fist of France :  
 Zounds ! I was never so bethump'd with words  
 Since I first call'd my brother's father dad.

*Eli.* Son, list to this conjunction, make this match ;  
 Give with our niece a dowry large enough :  
 For by this knot thou shalt so surely tie  
 Thy now unsur'd assurance to the crown,  
 That yon green boy shall have no sun to ripe  
 The bloom that promiseth a mighty fruit.  
 I see a yielding in the looks of France ;  
 Mark, how they whisper : urge them while their souls  
 Are capable of this ambition,  
 Lest zeal, now melted by the windy breath  
 Of soft petitions, pity, and remorse,  
 Cool and congeal again to what it was.

*First Cit.* Why answer not the double majestias  
 This friendly treaty of our threaten'd town ?

*K. Phi.* Speak England first, that hath been forward first  
 To speak unto this city : what say you ?

*K. John.* If that the Dauphin there, thy princely son,  
 Can in this book of beauty read " I love,"  
 Her dowry shall weigh equal with a queen :  
 For Anjou,<sup>(18)</sup> and fair Touraine, Maine, Poitiers,  
 And all that we upon this side the sea  
 (Except this city now by us besieg'd)  
 Find liable to our crown and dignity,  
 Shall gild her bridal bed ; and make her rich  
 In titles, honours, and promotions,  
 As she in beauty, education, blood,  
 Holds hand with any princess of the world.

*K. Phi.* What say'st thou, boy ? look in the lady's face.

*Lou.* I do, my lord ; and in her eye I find  
 A wonder, or a wondrous miracle,  
 The shadow of myself form'd in her eye ;  
 Which, being but the shadow of your son,  
 Becomes a sun, and makes your son a shadow :  
 I do protest I never lov'd myself,

Till now infixèd I beheld myself  
 Drawn in the flattering table of her eye.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn) [*Whispers with Blanch.*]

*Bast.* [*aside.*] Drawn in the flattering table of her eye!—

Hang'd in the frowning wrinkle of her brow!—  
 And quarter'd in her heart!—he doth espy  
 Himself love's traitor :—this is pity now,  
 That, hang'd and drawn and quarter'd, there should be  
 In such a love so vile a lout as he.

*Blanch.* My uncle's will in this respect is mine :  
 If he see aught in you that makes him like,  
 That any thing he sees, which moves his liking,  
 I can with ease translate it to my will ;  
 Or if you will, to speak more properly,  
 I will enforce it easily to my love.  
 Further I will not flatter you, my lord,  
 That all I see in you is worthy love,  
 Than this,—that nothing do I see in you,  
 Though churlish thoughts themselves should be your judge,  
 That I can find should merit any hate.

*K. John.* What say these young ones?—What say you,  
 my niece ?

*Blanch.* That she is bound in honour still to do  
 What you in wisdom still vouchsafe to say.

*K. John.* Speak then, Prince Dauphin ; can you love this  
 lady ?

*Lou.* Nay, ask me if I can refrain from love ;  
 For I do love her most unfeignedly.

*K. John.* Then do I give Volquessen, Touraine, Maine,  
 Poictiers, and Anjou, these five provinces,  
 With her to thee ; and this addition more,  
 Full thirty thousand marks of English coin.—  
 Philip of France, if thou be pleas'd withal,  
 Command thy son and daughter to join hands.

*K. Phi.* It likes us well.—Young princes, close your  
 hands.

*Aust.* And your lips too ; for I am well assur'd  
 That I did so when I was first assur'd.<sup>(19)</sup>

*K. Phi.* Now, citizens of Angiers, ope your gates,

Let in that amity which you have made ;  
 For at Saint Mary's chapel presently  
 The rites of marriage shall be solemniz'd.—  
 Is not the Lady Constance in this troop ?  
 I know she is not ; for this match made up  
 Her presence would have interrupted much :  
 Where is she and her son ? tell me, who knows.

*Lou.* She is sad and passionate at your highness' tent.

*K. Phi.* And, by my faith, this league that we have made  
 Will give her sadness very little cure.—  
 Brother of England, how may we content  
 This widow lady ? In her right we came ;  
 Which we, God knows, have turn'd another way,  
 To our own vantage.

*K. John.* We will heal up all ;  
 For we'll create young Arthur Duke of Bretagne  
 And Earl of Richmond ; and this rich fair town  
 We make him lord of.—Call the Lady Constance ;  
 Some speedy messenger bid her repair  
 To our solemnity :—I trust we shall,  
 If not fill up the measure of her will,  
 Yet in some measure satisfy her so  
 That we shall stop her exclamation.  
 Go we, as well as haste will suffer us,  
 To this unlook'd-for, unpreparèd pomp.

*[Exeunt all except the Bastard. The Citizens  
 retire from the walls.]*

*Bast.* Mad world ! mad kings ! mad composition !  
 John, to stop Arthur's title in the whole,  
 Hath willingly departed with a part ;  
 And France,—whose armour conscience buckled on,  
 Whom zeal and charity brought to the field  
 As God's own soldier,—rounded in the ear  
 With that same purpose-changer, that sly devil ;  
 That broker, that still breaks the pate of faith ;  
 That daily break-vow ; he that wins of all,  
 Of kings, of beggars, old men, young men, maids,—  
 Who having no external thing to lose  
 But the word maid, cheats the poor maid of that ;

That smooth-fac'd gentleman, tickling commodity,—  
 Commodity, the bias of the world ;  
 The world, who of itself is peisèd well,  
 Made to run even upon even ground,  
 Till this advantage, this vile-drawing bias,  
 This sway of motion, this commodity,  
 Makes it take head from all indifferency,  
 From all direction, purpose, course, intent :  
 And this same bias, this commodity,  
 This bawd, this broker, this all-changing word,  
 Clapp'd on the outward eye of fickle France,  
 Hath drawn him from his own determin'd aid,<sup>(20)</sup>  
 From a resolv'd and honourable war,  
 To a most base and vile-concluded peace.—  
 And why rail I on this commodity ?  
 But for because he hath not woo'd me yet :  
 Not that I have the power to clutch my hand,  
 When his fair angels would salute my palm ;  
 But for my hand, as unattempted yet,  
 Like a poor beggar, railèth on the rich.  
 Well, whiles I am a beggar, I will rail,  
 And say, There is no sin but to be rich ;  
 And being rich, my virtue then shall be,  
 To say, There is no vice but beggary :  
 Since kings break faith upon commodity,  
 Gain, be my lord,—for I will worship thee! [Exit.

---

### ACT III.

SCENE I. *France. The French King's tent.*

*Enter* CONSTANCE, ARTHUR, *and* SALISBURY.

*Const.* Gone to be married! gone to swear a peace!  
 False blood to false blood join'd! gone to be friends!  
 Shall Louis have Blanch? and Blanch those provinces?  
 It is not so; thou hast misspoke, misheard;

Be well advis'd, tell o'er thy tale again :  
 It cannot be ; thou dost but say 'tis so :  
 I trust I may not trust thee ; for thy word  
 Is but the vain breath of a common man :  
 Believe me, I do not believe thee, man ;  
 I have a king's oath to the contrary.  
 Thou shalt be punish'd for thus frightening me,  
 For I am sick, and capable of fears ;  
 Oppress'd with wrongs, and therefore full of fears ;  
 A widow, husbandless, subject to fears ;  
 A woman, naturally born to fears ;  
 And though thou now confess thou didst but jest,  
 With my vex'd spirits I cannot take a truce,  
 But they will quake and tremble all this day.  
 What dost thou mean by shaking of thy head ?  
 Why dost thou look so sadly on my son ?  
 What means that hand upon that breast of thine ?  
 Why holds thine eye that lamentable rheum,  
 Like a proud river peering o'er his bounds ?  
 Be these sad signs confirmers of thy words ?  
 Then speak again,—not all thy former tale,  
 But this one word, whether thy tale be true.

*Sal.* As true as I believe you think them false  
 That give you cause to prove my saying true.

*Const.* O, if thou teach me to believe this sorrow,  
 Teach thou this sorrow how to make me die ;  
 And let belief and life encounter so  
 As doth the fury of two desperate men,  
 Which in the very meeting fall and die !—  
 Louis marry Blanch ! O boy, then where art thou ?  
 France friend with England ! what becomes of me ?—  
 Fellow, be gone : I cannot brook thy sight ;  
 This news hath made thee a most ugly man.

*Sal.* What other harm have I, good lady, done,  
 But spoke the harm that is by others done ?

*Const.* Which harm within itself so heinous is,  
 As it makes harmful all that speak of it.

*Arth.* I do beseech you, madam, be content.

*Const.* If thou, that bidd'st me be content, wert grim,

Ugly, and slanderous to thy mother's womb,  
 Full of unpleasing blots and sightless stains,  
 Lame, foolish, crooked, swart, prodigious,  
 Patch'd with foul moles and eye-offending marks,  
 I would not care, I then would be content;  
 For then I should not love thee; no, nor thou  
 Become thy great birth, nor deserve a crown.  
 But thou art fair; and at thy birth, dear boy,  
 Nature and Fortune join'd to make thee great:  
 Of Nature's gifts thou mayst with lilies boast  
 And with the half-blown rose: but Fortune, O!  
 She is corrupted, chang'd, and won from thee;  
 She adulterates hourly with thine uncle John;  
 And with her golden hand hath pluck'd on France  
 To tread down fair respect of sovereignty,  
 And made his majesty the bawd to theirs.  
 France is a bawd to Fortune and King John,—  
 That strumpet Fortune, that usurping John!—  
 Tell me, thou fellow, is not France forsworn?  
 Envenom him with words; or get thee gone,  
 And leave those woes alone which I alone  
 Am bound to under-bear.

*Sal.* Pardon me, madam,

I may not go without you to the kings.

*Const.* Thou mayst, thou shalt; I will not go with thee:  
 I will instruct my sorrows to be proud;  
 For grief is proud, and makes his owner stout.<sup>(21)</sup>  
 To me, and to the state of my great grief,  
 Let kings assemble; for my grief's so great,  
 That no supporter but the huge firm earth  
 Can hold it up: here I and sorrows sit;  
 Here is my throne, bid kings come bow to it.

[*Sits herself on the ground.*]

*Enter King JOHN, King PHILIP, LOUIS, BLANCH, ELINOR, the  
 Bastard, Austria, and Attendants.*

*K. Phi.* 'Tis true, fair daughter; and this blessèd day  
 Ever in France shall be kept festival:  
 To solemnize this day the glorious sun

Stays in his course, and plays the alchemist,  
 Turning with splendour of his precious eye  
 The meagre cloddy earth to glittering gold :  
 The yearly course that brings this day about  
 Shall never see it but a holiday.

*Const.* A wicked day, and not a holy day!— [Rising.  
 What hath this day deserv'd ? what hath it done,  
 That it in golden letters should be set  
 Among the high tides in the calendar ?  
 Nay, rather turn this day out of the week,  
 This day of shame, oppression, perjury :  
 Or, if it must stand still, let wives with child  
 Pray that their burdens may not fall this day,  
 Lest that their hopes prodigiously be cross'd :  
 But on this day let seamen fear no wreck ;  
 No bargains break that are not this day made :  
 This day, all things begun come to ill end,—  
 Yea, faith itself to hollow falsehood change !

*K. Phi.* By heaven, lady, you shall have no cause  
 To curse the fair proceedings of this day :  
 Have I not pawn'd to you my majesty ?

*Const.* You have beguil'd me with a counterfeit,  
 Resembling majesty ; which, being touch'd and tried,  
 Proves valueless : you are forsworn, forsworn ;  
 You came in arms to spill mine enemies' blood,  
 But now in arms you strengthen it with yours :  
 The grappling vigour and rough frown of war  
 Is cold in amity and painted peace,  
 And our oppression hath made up this league.—  
 Arm, arm, you heavens, against these perjur'd kings !  
 A widow cries ; be husband to me, heavens !  
 Let not the hours of this ungodly day  
 Wear out the day in peace ; but, ere sunset,  
 Set armèd discord 'twixt these perjur'd kings !  
 Hear me, O, hear me !

*Aust.* Lady Constance, peace !

*Const.* War ! war ! no peace ! peace is to me a war.  
 O Lymoges ! O Austria ! thou dost shame  
 That bloody spoil : thou slave, thou wretch, thou coward !



Thou little valiant, great in villany !  
 Thou ever strong upon the stronger side !  
 Thou Fortune's champion that dost never fight  
 But when her humorous ladyship is by  
 To teach thee safety ! thou art perjur'd too,  
 And sooth'st up greatness. What a fool art thou,  
 A ramping fool, to brag, and stamp, and swear,  
 Upon my party ! Thou cold-blooded slave,  
 Hast thou not spoke like thunder on my side ?  
 Been sworn my soldier ? bidding me depend  
 Upon thy stars, thy fortune, and thy strength ?  
 And dost thou now fall over to my foes ?  
 Thou wear a lion's hide ! doff it for shame,  
 And hang a calf's-skin on those recreant limbs.

*Aust.* O, that a man should speak those words to me !

*Bast.* And hang a calf's-skin on those recreant limbs.

*Aust.* Thou dar'st not say so, villain, for thy life.

*Bast.* And hang a calf's-skin on those recreant limbs.

*K. John.* We like not this ; thou dost forget thyself.

*K. Phi.* Here comes the holy legate of the pope.

*Enter PANDULPH.*

*Pand.* Hail, you anointed deputies of heaven !  
 To thee, King John, my holy errand is.  
 I Pandulph, of fair Milan cardinal,  
 And from Pope Innocent the legate here,  
 Do in his name religiously demand,  
 Why thou against the church, our holy mother,  
 So wilfully dost spurn ; and, force perforce,  
 Keep Stephen Langton, chosen archbishop  
 Of Canterbury, from that holy see ?  
 This, in our foresaid holy father's name,  
 Pope Innocent, I do demand of thee.

*K. John.* What earthly name to interrogatories  
 Can task the free breath of a sacred king ?  
 Thou canst not, cardinal, devise a name  
 So slight, unworthy, and ridiculous,  
 To charge me to an answer, as the pope.  
 Tell him this tale ; and from the mouth of England

Add thus much more,—That no Italian priest  
 Shall tithe or toll in our dominions ;  
 But as we under heaven are supreme head,  
 So, under him, that great supremacy,  
 Where we do reign, we will alone uphold,  
 Without the assistance of a mortal hand :  
 So tell the pope ; all reverence set apart  
 To him and his usurp'd authority.

*K. Phi.* Brother of England, you blaspheme in this.

*K. John.* Though you, and all the kings of Christendom,  
 Are led so grossly by this meddling priest,  
 Dreading the curse that money may buy out ;  
 And by the merit of vile gold, dross, dust,  
 Purchase corrupted pardon of a man,  
 Who in that sale sells pardon from himself ;  
 Though you and all the rest, so grossly led,  
 This juggling witchcraft with revenue cherish ;  
 Yet I, alone, alone do me oppose  
 Against the pope, and count his friends my foes.

*Pand.* Then, by the lawful power that I have,  
 Thou shalt stand curs'd and excommunicate :  
 And blessèd shall he be that doth revolt  
 From his allegiance to an heretic ;  
 And meritorious shall that hand be call'd,  
 Canónizèd, and worshipp'd as a saint,  
 That takes away by any secret cource  
 Thy hateful life.

*Const.* O, lawful let it be  
 That I have room with Rome to curse awhile !  
 Good father cardinal, cry thou amen  
 To my keen curses ; for without my wrong  
 There is no tongue hath power to curse him right.

*Pand.* There's law and warrant, lady, for my curse.

*Const.* And for mine too : when law can do no right,  
 Let it be lawful that law bar no wrong :  
 Law cannot give my child his kingdom here ;  
 For he that holds his kingdom holds the law :  
 Therefore, since law itself is perfect wrong,  
 How can the law forbid my tongue to curse ?

*Pand.* Philip of France, on peril of a curse,  
Let go the hand of that arch-heretic;  
And raise the power of France upon his head,  
Unless he do submit himself to Rome.

*Eli.* Look'st thou pale, France? do not let go thy hand.

*Const.* Look to that, devil; lest that France repent,  
And by disjoining hands, hell lose a soul.

*Aust.* King Philip, listen to the cardinal.

*Bast.* And hang a calf's-skin on his recreant limbs.

*Aust.* Well, ruffian, I must pocket up these wrongs,  
Because—

*Bast.* Your breeches best may carry them.

*K. John.* Philip, what say'st thou to the cardinal?

*Const.* What should he say, but as the cardinal?

*Lou.* Bethink you, father; for the difference  
Is, purchase of a heavy curse from Rome,  
Or the light loss of England for a friend:  
Forego the easier.

*Blanch.* That's the curse of Rome.

*Const.* O Louis, stand fast! the devil tempts thee here  
In likeness of a new-uptrimmèd<sup>(22)</sup> bride.

*Blanch.* The Lady Constance speaks not from her faith,  
But from her need.

*Const.* O, if thou grant my need,  
Which only lives but by the death of faith,  
That need must needs infer this principle,—  
That faith would live again by death of need!  
O, then, tread down my need, and faith mounts up;  
Keep my need up, and faith is trodden down!

*K. John.* The king is mov'd, and answers not to this.

*Const.* O, be remov'd from him, and answer well!

*Aust.* Do so, King Philip; hang no more in doubt.

*Bast.* Hang nothing but a calf's-skin, most sweet lout.

*K. Phi.* I am perplex'd, and know not what to say.

*Pand.* What canst thou say but will perplex thee more,  
If thou stand excommunicate and curs'd?

*K. Phi.* Good reverend father, make my person yours,  
And tell me how you would bestow yourself.  
This royal hand and mine are newly knit,

And the conjunction of our inward souls  
 Married in league, coupled and link'd together  
 With all religious strength of sacred vows ;  
 The latest breath that gave the sound of words  
 Was deep-sworn faith, peace, amity, true love  
 Between our kingdoms and our royal selves ;  
 And even before this truce, but new before,—  
 No longer than we well could wash our hands,  
 To clap this royal bargain up of peace,—  
 Heaven knows, they were besmear'd and overstain'd  
 With slaughter's pencil, where revenge did paint  
 The fearful difference of incensèd kings :  
 And shall these hands, so lately purg'd of blood,  
 So newly join'd in love, so strong in both,  
 Unyoke this seizure and this kind regret ?  
 Play fast and loose with faith ? so jest with heaven,  
 Make such unconstant children of ourselves,  
 As now again to snatch our palm from palm ;  
 Unswear faith sworn ; and on the marriage-bed  
 Of smiling peace to march a bloody host,  
 And make a riot on the gentle brow  
 Of true sincerity ? O, holy sir,  
 My reverend father, let it not be so !  
 Out of your grace, devise, ordain, impose  
 Some gentle order ; and then we shall be bless'd  
 To do your pleasure, and continue friends.

*Pand.* All form is formless, order orderless,  
 Save what is opposite to England's love.  
 Therefore, to arms ! be champion of our church !  
 Or let the church, our mother, breathe her curse,—  
 A mother's curse,—on her revolting son.  
 France, thou mayst hold a serpent by the tongue,  
 A chafèd<sup>(23)</sup> lion by the mortal paw,  
 A fasting tiger safer by the tooth,  
 Than keep in peace that hand which thou dost hold.

*K. Phi.* I may disjoin my hand, but not my faith.

*Pand.* So mak'st thou faith an enemy to faith ;  
 And, like a civil war, sett'st oath to oath,  
 Thy tongue against thy tongue. O, let thy vow

First made to heaven, first be to heaven perform'd,—  
 That is, to be the champion of our church!  
 What since thou swor'st is sworn against thyself,  
 And may not be performèd by thyself:  
 For that which thou hast sworn to do amiss  
 Is not amiss when it is truly done; <sup>(24)</sup>  
 And being not done, where doing tends to ill,  
 The truth is then most done not doing it:  
 The better act of purposes mistook  
 Is to mistake again; though indirect,  
 Yet indirection thereby grows direct,  
 And falsehood falsehood cures; as fire cools fire  
 Within the scorched veins of one new burn'd.  
 It is religion that doth make vows kept;  
 But thou hast sworn against religion,  
 By what thou swear'st against the thing thou swear'st;  
 And mak'st an oath the surety for thy truth  
 Against an oath: the truth thou art unsure  
 To swear, swears <sup>(25)</sup> only not to be forsworn;  
 Else what a mockery should it be to swear!  
 But thou dost swear only to be forsworn;  
 And most forsworn, to keep what thou dost swear.  
 Therefore thy later vows against thy first  
 Is in thyself rebellion to thyself;  
 And better conquest never canst thou make  
 Than arm thy constant and thy nobler parts  
 Against these giddy loose suggestions:  
 Upon which better part our prayers come in,  
 If thou vouchsafe them; but if not, then know  
 The peril of our curses light on thee,  
 So heavy as thou shalt not shake them off,  
 But in despair die under their black weight.

*Aust.* Rebellion, flat rebellion!

*Bast.*

Will't not be?

Will not a calf's-skin stop that mouth of thine?

*Lou.* Father, to arms!

*Blanch.*

Upon thy wedding-day?

Against the blood that thou hast married?

What, shall our feast be kept with slaughter'd men?

Shall braying trumpets and loud churlish drums,—  
 Clamours of hell,—be measures to our pomp?  
 O husband, hear me!—ay, alack, how new  
 Is husband in my mouth!—even for that name,  
 Which till this time my tongue did ne'er pronounce,  
 Upon my knee I beg, go not to arms  
 Against mine uncle.

*Const.* O, upon my knee,  
 Made hard with kneeling, I do pray to thee,  
 Thou virtuous Dauphin, alter not the doom  
 Forethought by heaven!

*Blanch.* Now shall I see thy love: what motive may  
 Be stronger with thee than the name of wife?

*Const.* That which upholdeth him that thee upholds,  
 His honour:—O, thine honour, Louis, thine honour!

*Lou.* I muse your majesty doth seem so cold,  
 When such profound respects do pull you on.

*Pand.* I will denounce a curse upon his head.

*K. Phi.* Thou shalt not need.—England, I will fall from  
 thee.

*Const.* O fair return of banish'd majesty!

*Eli.* O foul revolt of French inconstancy!

*K. John.* France, thou shalt rue this hour within this  
 hour.

*Bast.* Old Time the clock-setter, that bald sexton Time,  
 Is it as he will? well, then, France shall rue.

*Blanch.* The sun's o'er-cast with blood: fair day, adieu!

Which is the side that I must go withal?

I am with both: each army hath a hand;

And in their rage, I having hold of both,

They whirl asunder and dismember me.

Husband, I cannot pray that thou mayst win;

Uncle, I needs must pray that thou mayst lose;

Father, I may not wish the fortune thine;

Grandam, I will not wish thy wishes thrive:

Whoever wins, on that side shall I lose;

Assured loss before the match be play'd.

*Lou.* Lady, with me; with me thy fortune lies.

*Blanch.* There where my fortune lives, there my life dies.

*K. John.* Cousin, go draw our puissance together.—

[*Exit Bastard.*]

France, I am burn'd up with inflaming wrath;  
 A rage whose heat hath this condition,  
 That nothing can allay, nothing but blood,—  
 The blood,<sup>(26)</sup> and dearest-valu'd blood of France.

*K. Phi.* Thy rage shall burn thee up, and thou shalt turn  
 To ashes, ere our blood shall quench that fire:  
 Look to thyself, thou art in jeopardy.

*K. John.* No more than he that threatens.—To arms let's hie!  
 [*Exeunt, severally, the English and French Kings, &c.*]

SCENE II. *The same. Plains near Angiers.*

*Alarums, excursions. Enter the Bastard, with Austria's head.*

*Bast.* Now, by my life, this day grows wondrous hot;  
 Some airy<sup>(27)</sup> devil hovers in the sky,  
 And pours down mischief.—Austria's head lie there,  
 While Philip breathes.

*Enter King JOHN, ARTHUR, and HUBERT.*

*K. John.* Hubert, keep this boy.—Philip, make up:  
 My mother is assailed in our tent,  
 And ta'en, I fear.

*Bast.* My lord, I rescu'd her;  
 Her highness is in safety, fear you not:  
 But on, my liege; for very little pains  
 Will bring this labour to an happy end. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *The same. Another part of the plains.*

*Alarums, excursions, retreat. Enter King JOHN, ELINOR, ARTHUR,  
 the Bastard, HUBERT, and Lords.*

*K. John.* So shall it be; your grace shall stay behind,  
 [To Elinor.  
 So strongly guarded.—Cousin, look not sad: [To Arthur.]

Thy grandam loves thee; and thy uncle will  
As dear be to thee as thy father was.

*Arth.* O, this will make my mother die with grief!

*K. John.* Cousin [*to the Bastard*], away for England;  
haste before:

And, ere our coming, see thou shake the bags  
Of hoarding abbots; imprison'd angels<sup>(28)</sup>  
Set at liberty: the fat ribs of peace  
Must by the hungry now be fed upon:  
Use our commission in his utmost force.

*Bast.* Bell, book, and candle shall not drive me back,  
When gold and silver becks me to come on.  
I leave your highness.—Grandam, I will pray  
(If ever I remember to be holy)  
For your fair safety; so, I kiss your hand.

*Eli.* Farewell, gentle cousin.

*K. John.*

Coz, farewell.

[*Exit Bastard.*]

*Eli.* Come hither, little kinsman; hark, a word.

[*She takes Arthur aside.*]

*K. John.* Come hither, Hubert. O my gentle Hubert,  
We owe thee much! within this wall of flesh  
There is a soul counts thee her creditor,  
And with advantage means to pay thy love:  
And, my good friend, thy voluntary oath  
Lives in this bosom, dearly cherishèd.  
Give me thy hand. I had a thing to say,—  
But I will fit it with some better time.<sup>(29)</sup>  
By heaven, Hubert, I am almost asham'd  
To say what good respect I have of thee.

*Hub.* I am much bounden to your majesty.

*K. John.* Good friend, thou hast no cause to say so yet:  
But thou shalt have; and creep time ne'er so slow,  
Yet it shall come for me to do thee good.  
I had a thing to say,—but let it go:  
The sun is in the heaven, and the proud day,  
Attended with the pleasures of the world,  
Is all too wanton and too full of gawds  
To give me audience:—if the midnight bell



Did, with his iron tongue and brazen mouth,  
 Sound one into the drowsy ear<sup>(30)</sup> of night ;  
 If this same were a churchyard where we stand,  
 And thou possessèd with a thousand wrongs ;  
 Or if that surly spirit, melancholy,  
 Had bak'd thy blood, and made it heavy, thick,  
 (Which else runs tickling<sup>(31)</sup> up and down the veins,  
 Making that idiot, laughter, keep men's eyes,  
 And strain their cheeks to idle merriment,—  
 A passion hateful to my purposes) ;  
 Or if that thou couldst see me without eyes,  
 Hear me without thine ears, and make reply  
 Without a tongue, using conceit alone,  
 Without eyes, ears, and harmful sound of words ;  
 Then, in despite of brooded watchful day,  
 I would into thy bosom pour my thoughts :  
 But, ah, I will not !—yet I love thee well ;  
 And, by my troth, I think thou lov'st me well.

*Hub.* So well, that what you bid me undertake,  
 Though that my death were adjunct to my act,  
 By heaven, I would do it.

*K. John.* Do not I know thou wouldst ?  
 Good Hubert, Hubert, Hubert, throw thine eye  
 On yon young boy : I'll tell thee what, my friend,  
 He is a very serpent in my way ;  
 And wheresoe'er this foot of mine doth tread,  
 He lies before me :—dost thou understand me ?  
 Thou art his keeper.

*Hub.* And I'll keep him so,  
 That he shall not offend your majesty.

*K. John.* Death.

*Hub.* My lord ?

*K. John.* A grave.

*Hub.* He shall not live.

*K. John.* Enough.

I could be merry now. Hubert, I love thee ;  
 Well, I'll not say what I intend for thee :  
 Remember.—Madam, fare you well :  
 I'll send those powers o'er to your majesty.

*Eli.* My blessing go with thee!

*K. John.* For England, cousin, go :  
Hubert shall be your man, attend on you  
With all true duty.—On toward Calais, ho! [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV. *The same. The French King's tent.*

*Enter King PHILIP, LOUIS, PANDULPH, and Attendants.*

*K. Phi.* So, by a roaring tempest on the flood,  
A whole armado of convicted (<sup>32</sup>) sail  
Is scatter'd and disjoin'd from fellowship.

*Pand.* Courage and comfort! all shall yet go well.

*K. Phi.* What can go well, when we have run so ill?  
Are we not beaten? Is not Angiers lost?  
Arthur ta'en prisoner? divers dear friends slain?  
And bloody England into England gone,  
O'erbearing interruption, spite of France?

*Lou.* What he hath won, that hath he fortified:  
So hot a speed with such advice dispos'd,  
Such temperate order in so fierce a cause,  
Doth want example: who hath read or heard  
Of any kindred action like to this?

*K. Phi.* Well could I bear that England had this praise,  
So we could find some pattern of our shame.—  
Look, who comes here! a grave unto a soul;  
Holding the eternal spirit, against her will,  
In the vile prison of afflicted breath.

*Enter CONSTANCE.*

I prithee, lady, go away with me.

*Const.* Lo, now! now see the issue of your peace!

*K. Phi.* Patience, good lady! comfort, gentle Constance!

*Const.* No, I defy all counsel, all redress,  
But that which ends all counsel, true redress,  
Death, death:—O amiable lovely death!  
Thou odoriferous stench! sound rottenness!  
Arise forth from the couch of lasting night,  
Thou hate and terror to prosperity,

And I will kiss thy détestable bones ;  
 And put my eyeballs in thy vaulty brows ;  
 And ring these fingers with thy household worms ;  
 And stop this gap of breath with fulsome dust,  
 And be a carrion monster like thyself :  
 Come, grin on me ; and I will think thou smil'st,  
 And buss thee as thy wife ! Misery's love,  
 O, come to me !

*K. Phi.* O fair affliction, peace !

*Const.* No, no, I will not, having breath to cry :—  
 O, that my tongue were in the thunder's mouth !  
 Then with a passion would I shake the world ;  
 And rouse from sleep that fell anatomy  
 Which cannot hear a lady's feeble voice,  
 Which scorns a modern invocation.

*Pand.* Lady, you utter madness, and not sorrow.

*Const.* Thou art not holy to belie me so ;  
 I am not mad : this hair I tear is mine ;  
 My name is Constance ; I was Geoffrey's wife ;  
 Young Arthur is my son, and he is lost :  
 I am not mad ;—I would to heaven I were !  
 For then 'tis like I should forget myself :  
 O, if I could, what grief should I forget !—  
 Preach some philosophy to make me mad,  
 And thou shalt be canóniz'd, cardinal ;  
 For, being not mad, but sensible of grief,  
 My reasonable part produces reason  
 How I may be deliver'd of these woes,  
 And teaches me to kill or hang myself :  
 If I were mad, I should forget my son,  
 Or madly think a babe of clouts were he :  
 I am not mad ; too well, too well I feel  
 The different plague of each calamity.

*K. Phi.* Bind up those tresses.—O, what love I note  
 In the fair multitude of those her hairs !  
 Where but by chance a silver drop hath fallen,  
 Even to that drop ten thousand wiry friends  
 Do glue themselves in sociable grief ;

Like true, inseparable, faithful loves,  
Sticking together in calamity.

*Const.* To England, if you will.

*K. Phi.*

Bind up your hairs.

*Const.* Yes, that I will ; and wherefore will I do it ?

I tore them from their bonds, and cried aloud,

“ O that these hands could so redeem my son,

As they have given these hairs their liberty !”

But now I envy at their liberty,

And will again commit them to their bonds,

Because my poor child is a prisoner.—

And, father cardinal, I have heard you say

That we shall see and know our friends in heaven :

If that be true, I shall see my boy again ;

For since the birth of Cain, the first male child,

To him that did but yesterday suspire,

There was not such a gracious creature born.

But now will canker-sorrow eat my bud,

And chase the native beauty from his cheek,

And he will look as hollow as a ghost,

As dim and meagre as an ague's fit ;

And so he'll die ; and, rising so again,

When I shall meet him in the court of heaven

I shall not know him : therefore never, never

Must I behold my pretty Arthur more.

*Pand.* You hold too heinous a respect of grief.

*Const.* He talks to me that never had a son.

*K. Phi.* You are as fond of grief as of your child.

*Const.* Grief fills the room up of my absent child,

Lies in his bed, walks up and down with me,

Puts on his pretty looks, repeats his words,

Remembers me of all his gracious parts,

Stuffs out his vacant garments with his form ;

Then have I reason to be fond of grief.

Fare you well : had you such a loss as I,

I could give better comfort than you do.—

I will not keep this form upon my head,

[*Tearing off her head-dress.*]

When there is such disorder in my wit.

O Lord! my boy, my Arthur, my fair son!

My life, my joy, my food, my all the world!

My widow-comfort, and my sorrows' cure! [Exit.

*K. Phi.* I fear some outrage, and I'll follow her. [Exit.

*Lou.* There's nothing in this world can make me joy:

Life is as tedious as a twice-told tale

Vexing the dull ear of a drowsy man;

And bitter shame hath spoil'd the sweet world's taste,

That it yields naught but shame<sup>(23)</sup> and bitterness.

*Pand.* Before the curing of a strong disease,

Even in the instant of repair and health,

The fit is strongest; evils that take leave,

On their departure most of all show evil:

What have you lost by losing of this day?

*Lou.* All days of glory, joy, and happiness.

*Pand.* If you had won it, certainly you had.

No, no; when Fortune means to men most good,

She looks upon them with a threatening eye.

'Tis strange to think how much King John hath lost

In this which he accounts so clearly won:

Are not you griev'd that Arthur is his prisoner?

*Lou.* As heartily as he is glad he hath him.

*Pand.* Your mind is all as youthful as your blood.

Now hear me speak with a prophetic spirit;

For even the breath of what I mean to speak

Shall blow each dust, each straw, each little rub,

Out of the path which shall directly lead

Thy foot to England's throne; and therefore mark.

John hath seiz'd Arthur; and it cannot be,

That, whiles warm life plays in that infant's veins,

The misplac'd John should entertain an hour,

One minute, nay, one quiet breath of rest:

A sceptre snatch'd with an unruly hand

Must be as boisterously maintain'd as gain'd;

And he that stands upon a slippery place

Makes nice of no vile hold to stay him up:

That John may stand, then Arthur needs must fall;

So be it, for it cannot be but so.

*Lou.* But what shall I gain by young Arthur's fall?

*Pand.* You, in the right of Lady Blanch your wife,  
May then make all the claim that Arthur did.

*Lou.* And lose it, life and all, as Arthur did.

*Pand.* How green you are, and fresh in this old world!  
John lays you plots; the times conspire with you;  
For he that steeps his safety in true blood  
Shall find but bloody safety and untrue.  
This act, so evilly borne, shall cool the hearts  
Of all his people, and freeze up their zeal,  
That none so small advantage shall step forth  
To check his reign, but they will cherish it;  
No natural exhalation in the sky,  
No scape of nature, no distemper'd day,  
No common wind, no customèd event,  
But they will pluck away his natural cause,  
And call them meteors, prodigies, and signs,  
Abortives, présages, and tongues of heaven,  
Plainly denouncing vengeance upon John.

*Lou.* May be he will not touch young Arthur's life,  
But hold himself safe in his prisonment.

*Pand.* O, sir, when he shall hear of your approach,  
If that young Arthur be not gone already,  
Even at that news he dies; and then the hearts  
Of all his people shall revolt from him,  
And kiss the lips of unacquainted change;  
And pick strong matter of revolt and wrath  
Out of the bloody fingers' ends of John.  
Methinks I see this hurly all on foot:  
And, O, what better matter breeds for you  
Than I have nam'd!—The bastard Falconbridge  
Is now in England, ransacking the church,  
Offending charity: if but a dozen French  
Were there in arms, they would be as a call  
To train ten thousand English to their side;  
Or, as a little snow, tumbled about,  
Anon becomes a mountain. O noble Dauphin,  
Go with me to the king:—'tis wonderful  
What may be wrought out of their discontent,

Now that their souls are topful of offence :  
For England go :—I will whet on the king.

*Lou.* Strong reasons make strong<sup>(34)</sup> actions : let us go :  
If you say ay, the king will not say no. [*Exeunt.*

## ACT IV.

SCENE I. *Northampton. A room in the castle.*

*Enter HUBERT and two Attendants.*

*Hub.* Heat me these irons hot ; and look thou stand  
Within the arras : when I strike my foot  
Upon the bosom of the ground, rush forth,  
And bind the boy which you shall find with me  
Fast to the chair : be heedful : hence, and watch.

*First Attend.* I hope your warrant will bear out the deed.

*Hub.* Uncleanly scruples ! fear not you : look to't.

[*Exeunt Attendants.*

Young lad, come forth ; I have to say with you.

*Enter ARTHUR.*

*Arth.* Good morrow, Hubert.

*Hub.* Good morrow, little prince.

*Arth.* As little prince, having so great a title  
To be more prince, as may be.—You are sad.

*Hub.* Indeed, I have been merrier.

*Arth.* Mercy on me !

Methinks no body should be sad but I :  
Yet, I remember, when I was in France,  
Young gentlemen would be as sad as night,  
Only for wantonness. By my christendom,  
So I were out of prison, and kept sheep,  
I should be as merry as the day is long ;  
And so I would be here, but that I doubt  
My uncle practises more harm to me :

He is afraid of me, and I of him :  
 Is it my fault that I was Geoffrey's son ?  
 No, indeed, is't not; and I would to heaven  
 I were your son, so you would love me, Hubert.

*Hub.* [*aside.*] If I talk to him, with his innocent prate  
 He will awake my mercy, which lies dead :  
 Therefore I will be sudden and dispatch.

*Arth.* Are you sick, Hubert? you look pale to-day :  
 In sooth, I would you were a little sick,  
 That I might sit all night and watch with you :  
 I warrant I love you more than you do me.

*Hub.* [*aside.*] His words do take possession of my bosom.—  
 Read here, young Arthur. [*Showing a paper.*]

[*Aside.*] How now, foolish rheum !  
 Turning spiteous torture out of door !  
 I must be brief, lest resolution drop  
 Out at mine eyes in tender womanish tears.—  
 Can you not read it? is it not fair writ?

*Arth.* Too fairly, Hubert, for so foul effect :  
 Must you with hot irons burn out both mine eyes?

*Hub.* Young boy, I must.

*Arth.* And will you?

*Hub.* And I will.

*Arth.* Have you the heart? When your head did but ache,  
 I knit my handkercher about your brows  
 (The best I had, a princess wrought it me),  
 And I did never ask it you again ;  
 And with my hand at midnight held your head ;  
 And like the watchful minutes to the hour,  
 Still and anon cheer'd up the heavy time,  
 Saying, " What lack you?" and, " Where lies your grief?"  
 Or, " What good love may I perform for you?"  
 Many a poor man's son would have lien still,  
 And ne'er have spoke a loving word to you ;  
 But you at your sick service had a prince.  
 Nay, you may think my love was crafty love,  
 And call it cunning :—do, an if you will :  
 If heaven be pleas'd that you must use me ill,  
 Why, then you must.—Will you put out mine eyes?



These eyes that never did nor never shall  
So much as frown on you ?

*Hub.* I have sworn to do it ;

And with hot irons must I burn them out.

*Arth.* Ah, none but in this iron age would do it !  
The iron of itself, though heat red-hot,  
Approaching near these eyes, would drink my tears,  
And quench his fiery indignation,  
Even in the matter of mine innocence ;  
Nay, after that, consume away in rust,  
But for containing fire to harm mine eye.  
Are you more stubborn-hard than hammer'd iron ?  
An if an angel should have come to me,  
And told me Hubert should put out mine eyes,  
I would not have believ'd him,—no tongue but Hubert's.

*Hub.* Come forth. [Stamps.

*Re-enter Attendants, with cord, irons, &c.*

Do as I bid you do.

*Arth.* O, save me, Hubert, save me ! my eyes are out  
Even with the fierce looks of these bloody men.

*Hub.* Give me the iron, I say, and bind him here.

*Arth.* Alas, what need you be so boisterous-rough ?  
I will not struggle, I will stand stone-still.  
For heaven-sake, Hubert, let me not be bound !  
Nay, hear me, Hubert !—drive these men away,  
And I will sit as quiet as a lamb ;  
I will not stir, nor wince, nor speak a word,  
Nor look upon the iron angerly :  
Thrust but these men away, and I'll forgive you,  
Whatever torment you do put me to.

*Hub.* Go, stand within ; let me alone with him.

*First Attend.* I am best pleas'd to be from such a deed.

[*Exeunt Attendants.*

*Arth.* Alas, I then have chid away my friend !  
He hath a stern look, but a gentle heart :—  
Let him come back, that his compassion may  
Give life to yours.

*Hub.* Come, boy, prepare yourself.

*Arth.* Is there no remedy ?

*Hub.* None, but to lose your eyes.

*Arth.* O heaven!—that there were but a mote in yours,  
A grain, a dust, a gnat, a wandering hair,  
Any annoyance in that precious sense!  
Then, feeling what small things are boisterous there,  
Your vile intent must needs seem horrible.

*Hub.* Is this your promise? go to, hold your tongue.

*Arth.* Hubert, the utterance of a brace of tongues  
Must needs want pleading for a pair of eyes;  
Let me not hold my tongue,—let me not, Hubert;  
Or, Hubert, if you will, cut out my tongue,  
So I may keep mine eyes: O, spare mine eyes,  
Though to no use but still to look on you!—  
Lo, by my troth, the instrument is cold,  
And would not harm me.

*Hub.* I can heat it, boy.

*Arth.* No, in good sooth; the fire is dead with grief,  
Being create for comfort, to be us'd  
In undeserv'd extremes: see else yourself;  
There is no malice in this burning coal;  
The breath of heaven hath blown his spirit out,  
And strew'd repentant ashes on his head.

*Hub.* But with my breath I can revive it, boy.

*Arth.* And if you do, you will but make it blush,  
And glow with shame of your proceedings, Hubert:  
Nay, it, perchance, will sparkle in your eyes;  
And, like a dog that is compell'd to fight,  
Snatch at his master that doth tarre him on.  
All things that you should use to do me wrong,  
Deny their office: only you do lack  
That mercy which fierce fire and iron extends,  
Creatures of note for mercy-lacking uses.

*Hub.* Well, see to live; I will not touch thine eyes  
For all the treasure that thine uncle owes:  
Yet am I sworn, and I did purpose, boy,  
With this same very iron to burn them out.

*Arth.* O, now you look like Hubert! all this while  
You were disguis'd.

*Hub.* Peace; no more. Adieu.  
Your uncle must not know but you are dead;  
I'll fill these dogged spies with false reports:  
And, pretty child, sleep doubtless and secure,  
That Hubert, for the wealth of all the world,  
Will not offend thee.

*Arth.* O heaven! I thank you, Hubert.

*Hub.* Silence; no more: go closely in with me:  
Much danger do I undergo for thee. [Exeunt.]

SCENE II. *The same. A room of state in the palace.*

*Enter King JOHN, crowned; PEMBROKE, SALISBURY, and other Lords.*  
*The King takes his state.*

*K. John.* Here once again we sit, once again crown'd,  
And look'd upon, I hope, with cheerful eyes.

*Pem.* This once again, but that your highness pleas'd,  
Was once superfluous: you were crown'd before,  
And that high royalty was ne'er pluck'd off;  
The faiths of men ne'er stain'd with revolt;  
Fresh expectation troubled not the land  
With any long'd-for change or better state.

*Sal.* Therefore, to be possess'd with double pomp,  
To guard a title that was rich before,  
To gild refin'd gold, to paint the lily,  
To throw a perfume on the violet,  
To smooth the ice, or add another hue  
Unto the rainbow, or with taper-light  
To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,  
Is wasteful and ridiculous excess.

*Pem.* But that your royal pleasure must be done,  
This act is as an ancient tale new told;  
And in the last repeating troublesome,  
Being urg'd at a time unseasonable.

*Sal.* In this, the antique and well-noted face  
Of plain old form is much disfigur'd;  
And, like a shifted wind unto a sail,

It makes the course of thoughts to fetch about ;  
 Startles and frights consideration ;  
 Makes sound opinion sick, and truth suspected,  
 For putting on so new a fashion'd robe.

*Pem.* When workmen strive to do better than well,  
 They do confound their skill in covetousness ;  
 And oftentimes excusing of a fault  
 Doth make the fault the worse by the excuse,—  
 As patches set upon a little breach  
 Discredit more in hiding of the fault  
 Than did the fault before it was so patch'd.

*Sal.* To this effect, before you were new-crown'd,  
 We breath'd our counsel : but it pleas'd your highness  
 To overbear it ; and we are all well pleas'd,  
 Since all and every part of what we would  
 Doth make a stand at what your highness will.

*K. John.* Some reasons of this double coronation  
 I have possess'd you with, and think them strong ;  
 And more, more strong (when<sup>(35)</sup> lesser is my fear),  
 I shall indue you with : meantime but ask  
 What you would have reform'd that is not well,  
 And well shall you perceive how willingly  
 I will both hear and grant you your requests.

*Pem.* Then I (as one that am the tongue of these,  
 To sound the purposes of all their hearts),  
 Both for myself and them (but, chief of all,  
 Your safety, for the which myself and them  
 Bend their best studies), heartily request  
 The enfranchisement of Arthur ; whose restraint  
 Doth move the murmuring lips of discontent  
 To break into this dangerous argument,—  
 If what in rest you have in right you hold,  
 Why, then,<sup>(36)</sup> your fears (which, as they say, attend  
 The steps of wrong) should move you to mew up  
 Your tender kinsman, and to choke his days  
 With barbarous ignorance, and deny his youth  
 The rich advantage of good exercise ?  
 That the time's enemies may not have this  
 To grace occasions, let it be our suit

That you have bid us ask his liberty ;  
 Which for our goods we do no further ask  
 Than whereupon our weal, on you depending,  
 Counts it your weal he have his liberty.

*K. John.* Let it be so : I do commit his youth  
 To your direction.

*Enter HUBERT.*

Hubert, what news with you ?

*Pem.* This is the man should do the bloody deed ;  
 He show'd his warrant to a friend of mine :  
 The image of a wicked heinous fault  
 Lives in his eye ; that close aspect of his  
 Doth show the mood of a much-troubled breast ;  
 And I do fearfully believe 'tis done,  
 What we so fear'd he had a charge to do.

*Sal.* The colour of the king doth come and go  
 Between his purpose and his conscience,  
 Like heralds 'twixt two dreadful battles set :  
 His passion is so ripe, it needs must break.

*Pem.* And when it breaks, I fear will issue thence  
 The foul corruption of a sweet child's death.

*K. John.* We cannot hold mortality's strong hand :—  
 Good lords, although my will to give is living,  
 The suit which you demand is gone and dead :  
 He tells us Arthur is deceas'd to-night.

*Sal.* Indeed, we fear'd his sickness was past cure.

*Pem.* Indeed, we heard how near his death he was  
 Before the child himself felt he was sick :  
 This must be answer'd either here or hence.

*K. John.* Why do you bend such solemn brows on me ?  
 Think you I bear the shears of destiny ?  
 Have I commandment on the pulse of life ?

*Sal.* It is apparent foul-play ; and 'tis shame  
 That greatness should so grossly offer it :  
 So thrive it in your game ! and so, farewell.

*Pem.* Stay yet, Lord Salisbury ; I'll go with thee,  
 And find the inheritance of this poor child,  
 His little kingdom of a forcèd grave.

That blood which ow'd the breadth of all this isle,  
 Three foot of it doth hold:—bad world the while!  
 This must not be thus borne: this will break out  
 To all our sorrows, and ere long I doubt. [Exeunt Lords.]

*K. John.* They burn in indignation. I repent:  
 There is no sure foundation set on blood,  
 No certain life achiev'd by others' death.—

*Enter a Messenger.*

A fearful eye thou hast: where is that blood  
 That I have seen inhabit in those cheeks?  
 So foul a sky clears not without a storm:  
 Pour down thy weather:—how goes all in France?

*Mess.* From France to England.—Never such a power  
 For any foreign preparation  
 Was levied in the body of a land.  
 The copy of your speed is learn'd by them;  
 For when you should be told they do prepare,  
 The tidings come that they are all arriv'd.

*K. John.* O, where hath our intelligence been drunk?  
 Where hath it slept? Where is my mother's care,<sup>(37)</sup>  
 That such an army could be drawn in France,  
 And she not hear of it?

*Mess.* My liege, her ear  
 Is stopp'd with dust; the first of April died  
 Your noble mother: and, as I hear, my lord,  
 The Lady Constance in a frenzy died  
 Three days before; but this from rumour's tongue  
 I idly heard,—if true or false I know not.

*K. John.* Withhold thy speed, dreadful occasion!  
 O, make a league with me, till I have pleas'd  
 My discontented peers!—What! mother dead!  
 How wildly, then, walks my estate in France!—  
 Under whose conduct came those powers of France  
 That thou for truth giv'st out are landed here?

*Mess.* Under the Dauphin.

*K. John.* Thou hast made me giddy  
 With these ill tidings.

*Enter the Bastard and PETER of Pomfret.*

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

Now, what says the world  
To your proceedings? do not seek to stuff  
My head with more ill news, for it is full.

*Bast.* But if you be afeard to hear the worst,  
Then let the worst, unheard, fall on your head.

*K. John.* Bear with me, cousin; for I was amaz'd  
Under the tide: but now I breathe again  
Aloft the flood; and can give audience  
To any tongue, speak it of what it will.

*Bast.* How I have sped among the clergymen,  
The sums I have collected shall express.  
But as I travell'd hither through the land,  
I find the people strangely fantasied;  
Possess'd with rumours, full of idle dreams,  
Not knowing what they fear, but full of fear:  
And here's a prophet, that I brought with me  
From forth the streets of Pomfret, whom I found  
With many hundreds treading on his heels;  
To whom he sung, in rude harsh-sounding rhymes,  
That, ere the next Ascension-day at noon,  
Your highness should deliver up your crown.

*K. John.* Thou idle dreamer, wherefore didst thou so?

*Peter.* Foreknowing that the truth will fall out so.

*K. John.* Hubert, away with him; imprison him;  
And on that day at noon, whereon he says  
I shall yield up my crown, let him be hang'd.  
Deliver him to safety; and return,  
For I must use thee.

*[Exit Hubert with Peter.]*

O my gentle cousin,  
Hear'st thou the news abroad, who are arriv'd?

*Bast.* The French, my lord; men's mouths are full of it:  
Besides, I met Lord Bigot and Lord Salisbury  
(With eyes as red as new-enkindled fire),  
And others more, going to seek the grave  
Of Arthur, whom they say is kill'd to-night  
On your suggestion.

*K. John.* Gentle kinsman, go,

And thrust thyself into their companies :  
I have a way to win their loves again ;  
Bring them before me.

*Bast.* I will seek them out.

*K. John.* Nay, but make haste ; the better foot before.

O, let me have no subject enemies,  
When adverse foreigners affright my towns  
With dreadful pomp of stout invasion !  
Be Mercury, set feathers to thy heels,  
And fly like thought from them to me again.

*Bast.* The spirit of the time shall teach me speed.

*K. John.* Spoke like a spriteful noble gentleman.

[*Exit Bastard.*]

Go after him ; for he perhaps shall need  
Some messenger betwixt me and the peers ;  
And be thou he.

*Mess.* With all my heart, my liege. [*Exit.*]

*K. John.* My mother dead !

*Re-enter HUBERT.*

*Hub.* My lord, they say five moons were seen to-night ;  
Four fixèd ; and the fifth did whirl about  
The other four in wondrous motion.

*K. John.* Five moons !

*Hub.* Old men and beldams in the streets  
Do prophesy upon it dangerously :  
Young Arthur's death is common in their mouths ;  
And when they talk of him, they shake their heads,  
And whisper one another in the ear ;  
And he that speaks doth gripe the hearer's wrist ;  
Whilst he that hears makes fearful action,  
With wrinkled brows, with nods, with rolling eyes.  
I saw a smith stand with his hammer, thus,  
The whilst his iron did on the anvil cool,  
With open mouth swallowing a tailor's news ;  
Who, with his shears and measure in his hand,  
Standing on slippers (which his nimble haste  
Had falsely thrust upon contráry feet),  
Told of a many thousand warlike French



That were embattailèd and rank'd in Kent :  
 Another lean unwash'd artificer  
 Cuts off his tale, and talks of Arthur's death.

*K. John.* Why seek'st thou to possess me with these fears?  
 Why urgest thou so oft young Arthur's death?  
 Thy hand hath murder'd him : I had a mighty cause  
 To wish him dead, but thou hadst none to kill him.

*Hub.* No had,<sup>(38)</sup> my lord! why, did you not provoke me?

*K. John.* It is the curse of kings to be attended  
 By slaves that take their humours for a warrant  
 To break within the bloody house of life ;  
 And, on the winking of authority,  
 To understand a law ; to know the meaning  
 Of dangerous majesty, when perchance it frowns  
 More upon humour than advis'd respect.

*Hub.* Here is your hand and seal for what I did.

*K. John.* O, when the last account 'twixt heaven and earth  
 Is to be made, then shall this hand and seal  
 Witness against us to damnation !  
 How oft the sight of means to do ill deeds  
 Make<sup>(39)</sup> ill deeds done ! Hadst not thou been by,  
 A fellow by the hand of nature mark'd,  
 Quoted, and sign'd, to do a deed of shame,  
 This murder had not come into my mind :  
 But, taking note of thy abhorr'd aspèct,  
 Finding thee fit for bloody villany,  
 Apt, liable to be employ'd in danger,  
 I faintly broke with thee of Arthur's death ;  
 And thou, to be endearèd to a king,  
 Made it no conscience to destroy a prince.

*Hub.* My lord,—

*K. John.* Hadst thou but shook thy head, or made a pause,  
 When I spake darkly what I purposèd,  
 Or turn'd an eye of doubt upon my face,  
 As bid me tell my tale in express words,  
 Deep shame had struck me dumb, made me break off,  
 And those thy fears might have wrought fears in me :  
 But thou didst understand me by my signs,  
 And didst in signs again parley with sin ;<sup>(40)</sup>

Yea, without stop, didst let thy heart consent,  
 And consequently thy rude hand to act  
 The deed, which both our tongues held vile to name.—  
 Out of my sight, and never see me more!  
 My nobles leave me; and my state is brav'd,  
 Even at my gates, with ranks of foreign powers:  
 Nay, in the body of this fleshly land,  
 This kingdom, this confine of blood and breath,  
 Hostility and civil tumult reigns  
 Between my conscience and my cousin's death.

*Hub.* Arm you against your other enemies,  
 I'll make a peace between your soul and you.  
 Young Arthur is alive: this hand of mine  
 Is yet a maiden and an innocent hand,  
 Not painted with the crimson spots of blood.  
 Within this bosom never enter'd yet  
 The dreadful motion of a murderous thought;  
 And you have slander'd nature in my form,—  
 Which, howsoever rude exteriorly,  
 Is yet the cover of a fairer mind  
 Than to be butcher of an innocent child.

*K. John.* Doth Arthur live? O, haste thee to the peers,  
 Throw this report on their incensèd rage,  
 And make them tame to their obedience!  
 Forgive the comment that my passion made  
 Upon thy feature; for my rage was blind,  
 And foul imaginary eyes of blood  
 Presented thee more hideous than thou art.  
 O, answer not; but to my closet bring  
 The angry lords with all expedient haste!  
 I conjure thee but slowly; run more fast.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *The same. Before the castle.*

*Enter ARTHUR, on the walls.*

*Arth.* The wall is high, and yet will I leap down:—  
 Good ground, be pitiful, and hurt me not!—  
 There's few or none do know me: if they did,  
 This ship-boy's semblance hath disguis'd me quite.

I am afraid; and yet I'll venture it.  
 If I get down, and do not break my limbs,  
 I'll find a thousand shifts to get away:  
 As good to die and go, as die and stay. [Leaps down.  
 O me! my uncle's spirit is in these stones:—  
 Heaven take my soul, and England keep my bones! [Dies.

*Enter PEMBROKE, SALISBURY, and BIGOT.*

*Sal.* Lords, I will meet him at Saint Edmund's-Bury:  
 It is our safety, and we must embrace  
 This gentle offer of the perilous time.

*Pem.* Who brought that letter from the cardinal?

*Sal.* The Count Melun, a noble lord of France;  
 Whose private with me<sup>(41)</sup> of the Dauphin's love  
 Is much more general than these lines import.

*Big.* To-morrow morning let us meet him, then.

*Sal.* Or rather then set forward; for 'twill be  
 Two long days' journey, lords, or e'er we meet.

*Enter the Bastard.*

*Bast.* Once more to-day well met, distemper'd lords!  
 The king by me requests your presence straight.

*Sal.* The king hath disposess'd himself of us:  
 We will not line his thin bestain'd<sup>(42)</sup> cloak  
 With our pure honours, nor attend the foot  
 That leaves the print of blood where'er it walks.  
 Return and tell him so: we know the worst.

*Bast.* Whate'er you think, good words, I think, were best.

*Sal.* Our griefs, and not our manners, reason now.

*Bast.* But there is little reason in your grief;  
 Therefore 'twere reason you had manners now.

*Pem.* Sir, sir, impatience hath his privilege.

*Bast.* 'Tis true,—to hurt his master, no man else.

*Sal.* This is the prison:—what is he lies here?

[Seeing Arthur.

*Pem.* O death, made proud with pure and princely beauty!  
 The earth had not a hole to hide this deed.

*Sal.* Murder, as hating what himself hath done,  
 Doth lay it open to urge on revenge.

*Big.* Or, when he doom'd this beauty to a grave,  
Found it too precious-princely for a grave.

*Sal.* Sir Richard, what think you? Have you beheld,  
Or have you read or heard? or could you think?  
Or do you almost think, although you see,  
That you do see? could thought, without this object,  
Form such another? This is the very top,  
The height, the crest, or crest unto the crest,  
Of murder's arms: this is the bloodiest shame,  
The wildest savagery, the vilest stroke,  
That ever wall-ey'd wrath or staring rage  
Presented to the tears of soft remorse.

*Pem.* All murders past do stand excus'd in this:  
And this, so sole and so unmatched,  
Shall give a holiness, a purity,  
To the yet unbegotten sin of times;  
And prove a deadly bloodshed but a jest,  
Exempl'd by this heinous spectacle.

*Bast.* It is a damnèd and a bloody work;  
The graceless action of a heavy hand,—  
If that it be the work of any hand.

*Sal.* If that it be the work of any hand?—  
We had a kind of light what would ensue:  
It is the shameful work of Hubert's hand;  
The practice and the purpose of the king:—  
From whose obedience I forbid my soul,  
Kneeling before this ruin of sweet life,  
And breathing to his breathless excellence  
The incense of a vow, a holy vow,  
Never to taste the pleasures of the world,  
Never to be infected with delight,  
Nor conversant with ease and idleness,  
Till I have set a glory to this hand,<sup>(43)</sup>  
By giving it the worship of revenge.

*Pem.* } Our souls religiously confirm thy words.  
*Big.* }

*Enter HUBERT.*

*Hub.* Lords, I am hot with haste in seeking you:  
Arthur doth live; the king hath sent for you.

*Sal.* O, he is bold, and blushes not at death :—  
Avaunt, thou hateful villain, get thee gone !

*Hub.* I am no villain.

*Sal.* Must I rob the law ?

[*Drawing his sword.*]

*Bast.* Your sword is bright, sir ; put it up again.

*Sal.* Not till I sheathe it in a murderer's skin.

*Hub.* Stand back, Lord Salisbury,—stand back, I say ;  
By heaven, I think my sword's as sharp as yours :  
I would not have you, lord, forget yourself,  
Nor tempt the danger of my true defence ;  
Lest I, by marking of your rage, forget  
Your worth, your greatness, and nobility.

*Big.* Out, dunghill ! dar'st thou brave a nobleman ?

*Hub.* Not for my life : but yet I dare defend  
My innocent life against an emperor.

*Sal.* Thou art a murderer.

*Hub.* Do not prove me so ;  
Yet I am none : whose tongue soe'er speaks false,  
Not truly speaks ; who speaks not truly, lies.

*Pem.* Cut him to pieces.

*Bast.* Keep the peace, I say.

*Sal.* Stand by, or I shall gall you, Falconbridge.

*Bast.* Thou wert better gall the devil, Salisbury :  
If thou but frown on me, or stir thy foot,  
Or teach thy hasty spleen to do me shame,  
I'll strike thee dead. Put up thy sword betime ;  
Or I'll so maul you and your toasting-iron,  
That you shall think the devil is come from hell.

*Big.* What wilt thou do, renownèd Falconbridge ?  
Second a villain and a murderer ?

*Hub.* Lord Bigot, I am none.

*Big.* Who kill'd this prince ?

*Hub.* 'Tis not an hour since I left him well :  
I honour'd him, I lov'd him ; and will weep  
My date of life out for his sweet life's loss.

*Sal.* Trust not those cunning waters of his eyes,  
For villany is not without such rheum ;  
And he, long traded in it, makes it seem

Like rivers of remorse and innocency.  
 Away with me, all you whose souls abhor  
 The ~~uncleanly savours~~ of a slaughter-house ;  
 For I am stifled with this smell of sin.

*Big.* Away toward Bury, to the Dauphin there !

*Pem.* There, tell the king, he may inquire us out.

[*Exeunt Lords.*]

*Bast.* Here's a good world !—Knew you of this fair work ?  
 Beyond the infinite and boundless reach  
 Of mercy, if thou didst this deed of death,  
 Art thou damn'd, Hubert.

*Hub.* Do but hear me, sir :—

*Bast.* Ha ! I'll tell thee what ;  
 Thou'rt damn'd as black—nay, nothing is so black ;  
 Thou art more deep damn'd than Prince Lucifer :  
 There is not yet so ugly a fiend of hell  
 As thou shalt be, if thou didst kill this child.

*Hub.* Upon my soul,—

*Bast.* If thou didst but consent  
 To this most cruel act, do but despair ;  
 And if thou want'st a cord, the smallest thread  
 That ever spider twisted from her womb  
 Will serve to strangle thee ; a rush will be a beam  
 To hang thee on ; or wouldst thou drown thyself,  
 Put but a little water in a spoon,  
 And it shall be as all the ocean,  
 Enough to stifle such a villain up.  
 I do suspect thee very grievously.

*Hub.* If I in act, consent, or sin of thought,  
 Be guilty of the stealing that sweet breath  
 Which was embounded in this beauteous clay,  
 Let hell want pains enough to torture me !  
 I left him well.

*Bast.* Go, bear him in thine arms.—  
 I am amaz'd, methinks ; and lose my way  
 Among the thorns and dangers of this world.—  
 How easy dost thou take all England up !  
 From forth this morsel of dead royalty,  
 The life, the right, and truth of all this realm

Is fled to heaven; and England now is left  
 To tug and scramble, and to part by the teeth  
 The unow'd interest of proud-swelling state.  
 Now for the bare-pick'd bone of majesty  
 Doth doggèd war bristle his angry crest,  
 And snarleth in the gentle eyes of peace:  
 Now powers from home and discontents at home  
 Meet in one line; and vast confusion waits,  
 As doth a raven on a sick-fallen beast,  
 The imminent decay of wrested pomp.  
 Now happy he whose cloak and cincture can  
 Hold out this tempest.—Bear away that child,  
 And follow me with speed: I'll to the king:  
 A thousand businesses are brief in hand,  
 And heaven itself doth frown upon the land.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT V.

SCENE I. *Northampton. A room in the palace.*

*Enter* King JOHN, PANDULPH *with the crown, and Attendants.*

*K. John.* Thus have I yielded up into your hand  
 The circle of my glory.

*Pand.*

Take again

[*Giving King John the crown.*]

From this my hand, as holding of the pope,  
 Your sovereign greatness and authority.

*K. John.* Now keep your holy word: go meet the French;  
 And from his holiness use all your power  
 To stop their marches 'fore we are inflam'd.  
 Our discontented counties do revolt;  
 Our people quarrel with obedience;  
 Swearing allegiance and the love of soul  
 To stranger blood, to foreign royalty.  
 This inundation of mistemper'd humour  
 Rests by you only to be qualified:

Then pause not; for the present time's so sick,  
That present medicine must be minister'd,  
Or overthrow incurable ensues.

*Pand.* It was my breath that blew this tempest up,  
Upon your stubborn usage of the pope:  
But since you are a gentle convertite,  
My tongue shall hush again this storm of war,  
And make fair weather in your blustering land.  
On this Ascension-day, remember well,  
Upon your oath of service to the pope,  
Go I to make the French lay down their arms. [Exit.]

*K. John.* Is this Ascension-day? Did not the prophet  
Say, that before Ascension-day at noon  
My crown I should give off? Even so I have:  
I did suppose it should be on constraint;  
But, heaven be thank'd, it is but voluntary.

*Enter the Bastard.*

*Bast.* All Kent hath yielded; nothing there holds out  
But Dover Castle: London hath receiv'd,  
Like a kind host, the Dauphin and his powers:  
Your nobles will not hear you, but are gone  
To offer service to your enemy;  
And wild amazement hurries up and down  
The little number of your doubtful friends.

*K. John.* Would not my lords return to me again,  
After they heard young Arthur was alive?

*Bast.* They found him dead, and cast into the streets;  
An empty casket, where the jewel of life  
By some damn'd hand was robb'd and ta'en away.

*K. John.* That villain Hubert told me he did live.

*Bast.* So, on my soul, he did, for aught he knew.  
But wherefore do you droop? why look you sad?  
Be great in act, as you have been in thought;  
Let not the world see fear and sad distrust  
Govern the motion of a kingly eye:  
Be stirring as the time; be fire with fire;  
Threaten the threatener, and outface the brow  
Of bragging horror: so shall inferior eyes,



That borrow their behaviours from the great,  
 Grow great by your example, and put on  
 The dauntless spirit of resolution.  
 Away, and glister like the god of war,  
 When he intendeth to become the field :  
 Show boldness and aspiring confidence.  
 What, shall they seek the lion in his den,  
 And fright him there ? and make him tremble there ?  
 O, let it not be said !—Forage,<sup>(44)</sup> and run  
 To meet displeasure further from the doors,  
 And grapple with him ere he come so nigh.

*K. John.* The legate of the pope hath been with me,  
 And I have made a happy peace with him ;  
 And he hath promis'd to dismiss the powers  
 Led by the Dauphin.

*Bast.* O inglorious league !  
 Shall we, upon the footing of our land,  
 Send fair-play orders,<sup>(45)</sup> and make compromise,  
 Insinuation, parley, and base truce,  
 To arms invasive ? shall a beardless boy,  
 A cocker'd silken wanton, brave our fields,  
 And flesh his spirit in a warlike soil,  
 Mocking the air with colours idly spread,  
 And find no check ? Let us, my liege, to arms :  
 Perchance the cardinal cannot make your peace ;  
 Or if he do, let it at least be said,  
 They saw we had a purpose of defence.

*K. John.* Have thou the ordering of this present time.

*Bast.* Away, then, with good courage ! yet, I know,  
 Our party may well meet a prouder foe. [Exeunt.]

---

SCENE II. *Near St. Edmund's-Bury. The French camp.*

*Enter, in arms, LOUIS, SALISBURY, MELUN, PEMBROKE, BIGOT,  
 and Soldiers.*

*Lou.* My Lord Melun, let this be copied out,  
 And keep it safe for our remembrance :

Return the precedent to these lords again ;  
 That, having our fair order written down,  
 Both they and we, perusing o'er these notes,  
 May know wherefore we took the sacrament,  
 And keep our faiths firm and inviolable.

*Sal.* Upon our sides it never shall be broken.  
 And, noble Dauphin, albeit we swear  
 A voluntary zeal and unurg'd faith  
 To your proceedings ; yet, believe me, prince,  
 I am not glad that such a sore of time  
 Should seek a plaster by contemn'd revolt,  
 And heal the inveterate canker of one wound  
 By making many. O, it grieves my soul,  
 That I must draw this metal from my side  
 To be a widow-maker ! O, and there  
 Where honourable rescue and defence  
 Cries out upon the name of Salisbury !  
 But such is the infection of the time,  
 That, for the health and physic of our right,  
 We cannot deal but with the very hand  
 Of stern injustice and confusèd wrong.—  
 And is 't not pity, O my grievèd friends !  
 That we, the sons and children of this isle,  
 Were born to see so sad an hour as this ;  
 Wherein we step after a stranger-march  
 Upon her gentle bosom, and fill up  
 Her enemies' ranks (I must withdraw and weep  
 Upon the spot<sup>(46)</sup> of this enforcèd cause),  
 To grace the gentry of a land remote,  
 And follow unacquainted colours here ?  
 What, here ?—O nation, that thou couldst remove !  
 That Neptune's arms, who clippeth thee about,  
 Would bear thee from the knowledge of thyself,  
 And grapple<sup>(47)</sup> thee unto a pagan shore ;  
 Where these two Christian armies might combine  
 The blood of malice in a vein of league,  
 And not to-spend it so unneighbourly !

*Lou.* A noble temper dost thou show in this ;  
 And great affections wrestling in thy bosom

Do make an earthquake of nobility.  
O, what a noble combat hast thou fought  
Between compulsion and a brave respect!  
Let me wipe off this honourable dew,  
That silverly doth progress on thy cheeks:  
My heart hath melted at a lady's tears,  
Being an ordinary inundation;  
But this effusion of such manly drops,  
This shower, blown up by tempest of the soul,  
Startles mine eyes, and makes me more amaz'd  
Than had I seen the vaulty top of heaven  
Figur'd quite o'er with burning meteors.  
Lift up thy brow, renownèd Salisbury,  
And with a great heart heave away this storm:  
Commend these waters to those baby eyes  
That never saw the giant world enrag'd;  
Nor met with fortune other than at feasts,  
Full warm of blood, of mirth, of gossiping.  
Come, come; for thou shalt thrust thy hand as deep  
Into the purse of rich prosperity  
As Louis himself:—so, nobles, shall you all,  
That knit your sinews to the strength of mine.—  
And even there, methinks, an angel spake:  
Look, where the holy legate comes apace,  
To give us warrant from the hand of heaven,  
And on our actions set the name of right  
With holy breath.

*Enter PANDULPH.*

*Pand.* Hail, noble prince of France!  
The next is this,—King John hath reconcil'd  
Himself to Rome; his spirit is come in,  
That so stood out against the holy church,  
The great metropolis and see of Rome:  
Therefore thy threatening colours now wind up;  
And tame the savage spirit of wild war,  
That, like a lion foster'd-up at hand,  
It may lie gently at the foot of peace,

And be no further harmful than in show.

*Lou.* Your grace shall pardon me, I will not back :  
 I am too high-born to be propertied,  
 To be a secondary at control,  
 Or useful serving-man, and instrument,  
 To any sovereign state throughout the world.  
 Your breath first kindled the dead coal of wars  
 Between this chástis'd kingdom and myself,  
 And brought in matter that should feed this fire ;  
 And now 'tis far too huge to be blown out  
 With that same weak wind which enkindled it.  
 You taught me how to know the face of right,  
 Acquainted me with interest to this land,  
 Yea, thrust this enterprise into my heart ;  
 And come ye now to tell me John hath made  
 His peace with Rome ? What is that peace to me ?  
 I, by the honour of my marriage-bed,  
 After young Arthur, claim this land for mine ;  
 And, now it is half conquer'd, must I back  
 Because that John hath made his peace with Rome ?  
 Am I Rome's slave ? What penny hath Rome borne,  
 What men provided, what munition sent,  
 To underprop this action ? Is't not I  
 That undergo this charge ? who else but I,  
 And such as to my claim are liable,  
 Sweat in this business and maintain this war ?  
 Have I not heard these islanders shout out,  
*Vive le roi !* as I have bank'd their towns ?  
 Have I not here the best cards for the game,  
 To win this easy match play'd for a crown ?  
 And shall I now give o'er the yielded set ?  
 No, no,<sup>(48)</sup> on my soul, it never shall be said.

*Pand.* You look but on the outside of this work.

*Lou.* Outside or inside, I will not return  
 Till my attempt so much be glorified  
 As to my ample hope was promisèd  
 Before I drew this gallant head of war,  
 And cull'd these fiery spirits from the world,

To outlook conquest, and to win renown  
 Even in the jaws of danger and of death.— [*Trumpet sounds.*]  
 What lusty trumpet thus doth summon us ?

*Enter the Bastard.*

*Bast.* According to the fair-play of the world,  
 Let me have audience ; I am sent to speak :—  
 My holy lord of Milan, from the king  
 I come, to learn how you have dealt for him ;  
 And, as you answer, I do know the scope  
 And warrant limited unto my tongue.

*Pand.* The Dauphin is too wilful-opposite,  
 And will not temporize with my entreaties ;  
 He flatly says he'll not lay down his arms.

*Bast.* By all the blood that ever fury breath'd,  
 The youth says well.—Now hear our English king ;  
 For thus his royalty doth speak in me.  
 He is prepar'd ; and reason too he should :  
 This apish and unmannerly approach,  
 This harness'd masque and unadvisèd revel,  
 This unhair'd<sup>(49)</sup> sauciness and boyish troops,  
 The king doth smile at ; and is well prepar'd  
 To whip this dwarfish war, these pigmy arms,  
 From out the circle of his territories.  
 That hand which had the strength, even at your door,  
 To cudgel you, and make you take the hatch ;  
 To dive, like buckets, in concealèd wells ;  
 To crouch in litter of your stable planks ;  
 To lie, like pawns, lock'd up in chests and trunks ;  
 To hug with swine ; to seek sweet safety out  
 In vaults and prisons ; and to thrill and shake  
 Even at the crying<sup>(50)</sup> of your nation's crow,  
 Thinking his<sup>(51)</sup> voice an armèd Englishman ;—  
 Shall that victorious hand be feebled here,  
 That in your chambers gave you chastisement ?  
 No : know the gallant monarch is in arms ;  
 And like an eagle o'er his aery towers,  
 To souse annoyance that comes near his nest.—  
 And you degenerate, you ingrate revolts,

You bloody Neroes, ripping up the womb  
 Of your dear mother England, blush for shame;  
 For your own ladies and pale-visag'd maids,  
 Like Amazons, come tripping after drums,—  
 Their thimbles into armèd gauntlets chang'd,<sup>(52)</sup>  
 Their needles to lances, and their gentle hearts  
 To fierce and bloody inclination.

*Lou.* There end thy brave, and turn thy face in peace;  
 We grant thou canst outscold us: fare thee well;  
 We hold our time too precious to be spent  
 With such a brabblor.

*Pand.* Give me leave to speak.

*Bast.* No, I will speak.

*Lou.* We will attend to neither.—  
 Strike up the drums; and let the tongue of war  
 Plead for our interest and our being here.

*Bast.* Indeed, your drums, being beaten, will cry out;  
 And so shall you, being beaten: do but start  
 An echo with the clamour of thy drum,  
 And even at hand a drum is ready brac'd  
 That shall reverberate all as loud as thine;  
 Sound but another, and another shall,  
 As loud as thine, rattle the welkin's ear,  
 And mock the deep-mouth'd thunder: for at hand  
 (Not trusting to this halting legate here,  
 Whom he hath us'd rather for sport than need,  
 Is warlike John; and in his forehead sits  
 A bare-ribb'd death, whose office is this day  
 To feast upon whole thousands of the French.

*Lou.* Strike up our drums, to find this danger out.

*Bast.* And thou shalt find it, Dauphin, do not doubt.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE III. *The same. A field of battle.*

*Alarums. Enter King JOHN and HUBERT.*

*K. John.* How goes the day with us? O, tell me, Hubert.

*Hub.* Badly, I fear. How fares your majesty?

*K. John.* This fever, that hath troubled me so long,  
Lies heavy on me ;—O, my heart is sick !

*www.littool.com.cn*

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord, your valiant kinsman, Falconbridge,  
Desires your majesty to leave the field,  
And send him word by me which way you go.

*K. John.* Tell him, toward Swinstead, to the abbey there.

*Mess.* Be of good comfort ; for the great supply,  
That was expected by the Dauphin here,  
Are wreck'd three nights ago on Goodwin Sands.  
This news was brought to Richard but even now :  
The French fight coldly, and retire themselves.

*K. John.* Ay me ! this tyrant fever burns me up,  
And will not let me welcome this good news.—  
Set on toward Swinstead : to my litter straight ;  
Weakness possesseth me, and I am faint.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE IV. *The same. Another part of the same.*

*Enter SALISBURY, PEMBROKE, and BIGOT.*

*Sal.* I did not think the king so stor'd with friends.

*Pem.* Up once again ; put spirit in the French :  
If they miscarry, we miscarry too.

*Sal.* That misbegotten devil, Falconbridge,  
In spite of spite, alone upholds the day.

*Pem.* They say King John sore-sick hath left the field.

*Enter MELUN wounded, and led by Soldiers.*

*Mel.* Lead me to the revolts of England here.

*Sal.* When we were happy we had other names.

*Pem.* It is the Count Melun.

*Sal.* Wounded to death.

*Mel.* Fly, noble English, you are bought and sold ;  
Unthread the rude eye of rebellion,  
And welcome home again discarded faith.  
Seek out King John, and fall before his feet ;  
For if the French be lords of this loud day,

He means to recompense the pains you take  
 By cutting off your heads: thus hath he sworn,  
 And I with him, and many more with me,  
 Upon the altar at Saint Edmund's-Bury;  
 Even on that altar where we swore to you  
 Dear amity and everlasting love.

*Sal.* May this be possible? may this be true?

*Mel.* Have I not hideous death within my view,  
 Retaining but a quantity of life,  
 Which bleeds away, even as a form of wax  
 Resolveth from his figure 'gainst the fire?  
 What in the world should make me now deceive,  
 Since I must lose the use of all deceit?  
 Why should I, then, be false, since it is true  
 That I must die here, and live hence by truth?  
 I say again, if Louis do win the day,  
 He is forsworn, if e'er those eyes of yours  
 Behold another day break in the east:  
 But even this night,—whose black contagious breath  
 Already smokes about the burning crest  
 Of the old, feeble, and day-wearied sun,—  
 Even this ill night, your breathing shall expire,  
 Paying the fine of rated treachery,  
 Even with a treacherous fine of all your lives,  
 If Louis by your assistance win the day.  
 Commend me to one Hubert, with your king:  
 The love of him,—and this respect besides,  
 For that my grandsire was an Englishman,—  
 Awakes my conscience to confess all this.  
 In lieu whereof, I pray you, bear me hence  
 From forth the noise and rumour of the field;  
 Where I may think the remnant of my thoughts  
 In peace, and part this body and my soul  
 With contemplation and devout desires.

*Sal.* We do believe thee:—and beshrew my soul  
 But I do love the favour and the form  
 Of this most fair occasion, by the which  
 We will untread the steps of damnèd flight;  
 And, like a bated and retirèd flood,



Leaving our rankness and irregular course,  
 Stoop low within those bounds we have o'erlook'd,  
 And calmly run on in obedience,  
 Even to our ocean, to our great King John.—  
 My arm shall give thee help to bear thee hence;  
 For I do see the cruel pangs of death  
 Right<sup>(53)</sup> in thine eye.—Away, my friends! New flight;  
 And happy newness, that intends old right.

[*Exeunt, leading off Melun.*]

---

SCENE V. *The same. The French camp.*

*Enter LOUIS and his Train.*

*Lou.* The sun of heaven methought was loth to set,  
 But stay'd, and made the western welkin blush,  
 When the English measur'd<sup>(54)</sup> backward their own ground,  
 In faint retire. O, bravely came we off,  
 When with a volley of our needless shot,  
 After such bloody toil, we bid good night;  
 And wound our tattering<sup>(55)</sup> colours clearly up,  
 Last in the field, and almost lords of it!

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* Where is my prince, the Dauphin?

*Lou.* Here:—what news?

*Mess.* The Count Melun is slain; the English lords,  
 By his persuasion, are again fallen off;  
 And your supply, which you have wish'd so long,  
 Are cast away and sunk on Goodwin Sands.

*Lou.* Ah, foul shrewd news!—beshrew thy very heart!—  
 I did not think to be so sad to-night  
 As this hath made me.—Who was he that said  
 King John did fly an hour or two before  
 The stumbling night did part our weary powers?

*Mess.* Whoever spoke it, it is true, my lord.

*Lou.* Well; keep good quarter and good care to-night:  
 The day shall not be up so soon as I,  
 To try the fair adventure of to-morrow.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VI. *An open place in the neighbourhood of Swinstead Abbey.*

*Enter, severally, the Bastard and HUBERT.*

*Hub.* Who's there? speak, ho! speak quickly, or I shoot.

*Bast.* A friend.—What art thou?

*Hub.* Of the part of England.

*Bast.* Whither dost thou go?

*Hub.* What's that to thee? why may not I demand  
Of thine affairs, as well as thou of mine?

*Bast.* Hubert I think?

*Hub.* Thou hast a perfect thought:  
I will, upon all hazards, well believe  
Thou art my friend, that know'st my tongue so well.  
Who art thou?

*Bast.* Who thou wilt: an if thou please,  
Thou mayst befriend me so much as to think  
I come one way of the Plantagenets.

*Hub.* Unkind remembrance! thou and eyeless<sup>(56)</sup> night  
Have done me shame:—brave soldier, pardon me,  
That any accent breaking from thy tongue  
Should scape the true acquaintance of mine ear.

*Bast.* Come, come; sans compliment, what news abroad?

*Hub.* Why, here walk I, in the black brow of night,  
To find you out.

*Bast.* Brief, then; and what's the news?

*Hub.* O, my sweet sir, news fitting to the night,—  
Black, fearful, comfortless, and horrible.

*Bast.* Show me the very wound of this ill news:  
I am no woman, I'll not swoon at it.

*Hub.* The king, I fear, is poison'd by a monk:  
I left him almost speechless; and broke out  
To acquaint you with this evil, that you might  
The better arm you to the sudden time,  
Than if you had at leisure known of this.

*Bast.* How did he take it? who did taste to him?

*Hub.* A monk, I tell you; a resolvèd villain,  
Whose bowels suddenly burst out: the king  
Yet speaks, and peradventure may recover.

*Bast.* Who didst thou leave to tend his majesty?

*Hub.* Why, know you not? the lords are all come back,  
And brought Prince Henry in their company;  
At whose request the king hath pardon'd them,  
And they are all about his majesty.

*Bast.* Withhold thine indignation, mighty heaven,  
And tempt us not to bear above our power!—  
I'll tell thee, Hubert, half my power this night,  
Passing these flats, are taken by the tide,—  
These Lincoln washes have devour'd them;  
Myself, well-mounted, hardly have escap'd.  
Away, before! conduct me to the king;  
I doubt he will be dead or e'er I come.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VII. *The orchard of Swinstead Abbey.*

*Enter* PRINCE HENRY, SALISBURY, and BIGOT.

*P. Hen.* It is too late: the life of all his blood  
Is touch'd corruptibly; and his pure brain  
(Which some suppose the soul's frail dwelling-house)  
Doth, by the idle comments that it makes,  
Foretell the ending of mortality.

*Enter* PEMBROKE.

*Pem.* His highness yet doth speak; and holds belief,  
That, being brought into the open air,  
It would allay the burning quality  
Of that fell poison which assaileth him.

*P. Hen.* Let him be brought into the orchard here.—  
Doth he still rage? [Exit Bigot.]

*Pem.* He is more patient  
Than when you left him; even now he sung.

*P. Hen.* O vanity of sickness! fierce extremes  
In their continuance will not feel themselves.  
Death, having prey'd upon the outward parts,  
Leaves them invisible;<sup>(37)</sup> and his siege is now  
Against the mind, the which he pricks and wounds

With many legions of strange fantasies,  
 Which, in their throng and press to that last hold,  
 Confound themselves.—Tis strange that death should sing.—  
 I am the cygnet to this pale faint swan,  
 Who chants a doleful hymn to his own death,  
 And from the organ-pipe of frailty sings  
 His soul and body to their lasting rest.

*Sal.* Be of good comfort, prince; for you are born  
 To set a form upon that indigest  
 Which he hath left so shapeless and so rude.

*Re-enter BIGOT, with Attendants carrying King JOHN in a chair.*

*K. John.* Ay, marry, now my soul hath elbow-room;  
 It would not out at windows nor at doors.  
 There is so hot a summer in my bosom,  
 That all my bowels crumble up to dust:  
 I am a scribbled form, drawn with a pen  
 Upon a parchment; and against this fire  
 Do I shrink up.

*P. Hen.* How fares your majesty?

*K. John.* Poison'd,—ill fare;—dead, forsook, cast off:  
 And none of you will bid the winter come,  
 To thrust his icy fingers in my maw;  
 Nor let my kingdom's rivers take their course  
 Through my burn'd bosom; nor entreat the north  
 To make his bleak winds kiss my parchèd lips,  
 And comfort me with cold:—I do not ask you much,  
 I beg cold comfort; and you are so strait,  
 And so ingrateful, you deny me that.

*P. Hen.* O that there were some virtue in my tears,  
 That might relieve you!

*K. John.* The salt in them is hot.—  
 Within me is a hell; and there the poison  
 Is, as a fiend, confin'd to tyrannize  
 On unreprieveable condemnèd blood.

*Enter the Bastard.*

*Bast.* O, I am scalded with my violent motion,  
 And spleen of speed to see your majesty!

*K. John.* O cousin, thou art come to set mine eye :  
 The tackle of my heart is crack'd and burn'd ;  
 And all the shrouds, wherewith my life should sail,  
 Are turnèd to one thread, one little hair :  
 My heart hath one poor string to stay it by,  
 Which holds but till thy news be utterèd ;  
 And then all this thou see'st is but a clod,  
 And model<sup>(56)</sup> of confounded royalty.

*Bast.* The Dauphin is preparing hitherward,  
 Where heaven he knows how we shall answer him ;  
 For in a night the best part of my power,  
 As I upon advantage did remove,  
 Were in the washes all unwarily  
 Devourèd by the unexpected flood. *[King John dies.]*

*Sal.* You breathe these dead news in as dead an ear.—  
 My liege! my lord!—but now a king,—now thus.

*P. Hen.* Even so must I run on, and even so stop.  
 What surety of the world, what hope, what stay,  
 When this was now a king, and now is clay ?

*Bast.* Art thou gone so ? I do but stay behind  
 To do the office for thee of revenge,  
 And then my soul shall wait on thee to heaven,  
 As it on earth hath been thy servant still.—  
 Now, now, you stars that move in your right spheres,  
 Where be your powers ? show now your mended faiths ;  
 And instantly return with me again,  
 To push destruction and perpetual shame  
 Out of the weak door of our fainting land.  
 Straight let us seek, or straight we shall be sought ;  
 The Dauphin rages at our very heels.

*Sal.* It seems you know not, then, so much as we :  
 The Cardinal Pandulph is within at rest,  
 Who half an hour since came from the Dauphin,  
 And brings from him such offers of our peace  
 As we with honour and respect may take,  
 With purpose presently to leave this war.

*Bast.* He will the rather do it when he sees  
 Ourselves well sinewèd to our defence.

*Sal.* Nay, it is in a manner done already ;

For many carriages he hath dispatch'd  
 To the sea-side, and put his cause and quarrel  
 To the disposing of the cardinal :  
 With whom yourself, myself, and other lords,  
 If you think meet, this afternoon will post  
 To consummate this business happily.

*Bast.* Let it be so :—and you, my noble prince,  
 With other princes that may best be spar'd,  
 Shall wait upon your father's funeral.

*P. Hen.* At Worcester must his body be interr'd ;  
 For so he will'd it.

*Bast.* Thither shall it, then :  
 And happily may your sweet self put on  
 The lineal state and glory of the land !  
 To whom, with all submission, on my knee,  
 I do bequeath my faithful services  
 And true subjection everlastingly.

*Sal.* And the like tender of our love we make,  
 To rest without a spot for evermore.

*P. Hen.* I have a kind soul that would give you thanks,  
 And knows not how to do it but with tears.

*Bast.* O, let us pay the time but needful woe,  
 Since it hath been beforehand with our griefs.—  
 This England never did, nor never shall,  
 Lie at the proud foot of a conqueror,  
 But when it first did help to wound itself.  
 Now these her princes are come home again,  
 Come the three corners of the world in arms,  
 And we shall shock them : naught shall make us rue,  
 If England to itself do rest but true. [*Exeunt.*

P. 185. (1) *Why, what a madcap hath heaven lent us here!*"

Mr. W. N. Lettson informs me that the late Mr. Sydney Walker would read " — sent us here!"—very unnecessarily, I apprehend.

P. 186. (2) *With that half-face would he have all my land."*

Theobald's correction.—The folio has "With half that face," &c. (which Mr. Collier retains:—see my *Remarks on Mr. Collier's and Mr. Knight's eds. of Shakespeare*, p. 87, and my *Few Notes*, &c. p. 83).

P. 187. (3) *but arise more great,—  
Arise Sir Richard and Plantagenet."*

The folio has "but rise more great," &c.

P. 189. (4) *Sir Robert could do well: marry, to confess,  
Could not get me; Sir Robert could not do it,"* &c.

The folio has "Could get me sir Robert could not do it," &c. The usual modern reading is "Could he get me? Sir Robert," &c. But there is no mark of interrogation in the old copy; and it seems better to insert, with Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, "not."

P. 190. (5) *Thou art the issue of my dear offence,"* &c.

The folio has "That art the," &c. (The words "thou" and "that,"—being often written "þ" and "ȝ,"—were not unfrequently confounded.)

P. 191. (6) *But with a heart full of unstainèd love,"* &c.

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads " — unstrained love," &c.;—against which plausible alteration Mr. Knight (*Spec. of the Stratford Shakspeare*, p. 2) has adduced from *Pericles*, act i. sc. 1, "my unspotted fire of love." Compare, too, a passage towards the close of the present play, p. 256,—

*And the like tender of our love we make,  
To rest without a spot for evermore."*

P. 194. (7) *England was Geffrey's right,  
And this is Geffrey's."*

Mason would read "And his is Geffrey's" (i. e. whatever was Geffrey's is now his (*Arthur's*)).

P. 195. (9)

"Aust. *What cracker is this same that deafs our ears  
With this abundance of superfluous breath?*  
K. Phi. *Louis, determine what we shall do straight.*  
Lou. *Women and fools, break off,*" &c.

The folio has;

"Aust. *What cracker is this same that deafes our eares  
With this abundance of superfluous breath?*  
King Lewis, *determine what we shall doe strait.*  
Lew. *Women & fooles, breaks off,*" &c.:-

and the late Mr. Sydney Walker (*Shakespeare's Versification*, &c. p. 4), after remarking that in our poet "*Lewis* [*Louis*] is always a monosyllable," declares that Mr. Knight has here "properly restored" the reading of the folio, —the punctuation altered to "*King,—Lewis, determine,*" &c. But, since Mr. Walker wrote, Mr. Knight has agreed with the more recent editors that the word "*King*" is the prefix to the third line:—nor are reasons wanting for considering it as such. In the first place, the folio prefixes "*King*" to the three earliest speeches of Philip in this scene. Secondly, if Austria were here addressing Philip, he would not term him simply "*King,*" but "*King Philip,*" as he afterwards does, p. 213,—

"*King Philip*, listen to the cardinal."

"Do so, *King Philip*; hang no more in doubt."

Thirdly, if Austria had called on *Philip and Louis* to determine what was to be done, we can hardly suppose that the Dauphin would take upon himself to speak before his father had uttered a word.—Theobald left Austria in possession of the third line, altering it to "*King Philip, determine what we shall do straight;*" and prefixed "*K. Philip*" to the next speech,—the commencement of which, however, is more suited to the young and impetuous Dauphin than to his father.

P. 195. (9)

"*Anjou,*" &c.

The folio has "*Angiers,*" &c.

P. 196. (10)

"*Of this oppressed boy: this is thy eldest son's son,*" &c.

Ritson and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector would shorten the line thus,—

"*Of this oppressed boy, thy eld'st son's son,*" &c.

(We at least must not read "oppress'd;" compare, in the next page, "In the relief of this *oppressed* child," &c.)

P. 197. (11)

"*All preparation for a bloody siege  
And merciless proceeding by these French  
Confronts your city's eyes,*" &c.

The folio has "*Comfort yours Citties eies,*" &c. (the *s* appended to the second



of these words belonging, it would seem, to the preceding misprinted one). Rowe gave "Confront;" Capell "Confronts:?"—"preparation," Mr. Knight observes, "is here the nominative,"

P. 198. (13)

"But if you fondly pass our proffer'd offer," &c.

Mr. W. N. Lettsom informs me that the late Mr. Sydney Walker proposed to read "— proffer'd love," &c.

P. 198. (13)

"'Tis not the roundure of your old-fac'd walls," &c.

Here the spelling of the folio is "rounder:?" but in our author's 21st *Sonnnet* we have

"and all things rare  
That heaven's air in this huge roundure hems."

(Fr. *roundeur*.)

P. 200. (14)

"First Cit. *Heralds*," &c.

To this and to the subsequent speeches of the same person the folio prefixes "Hubert;"—which Mr. Knight chooses to retain. "Possibly," as Mr. Collier remarks *ad l.*, "the actor of the part of Hubert also personated the Citizen, and this may have led to the insertion of his name in the Ms." That the *doubling of parts* was formerly not unusual, we have evidence in the early eds. of various old plays.

P. 200. (14)

"Say, shall the current of our right run on?"

*A peaceful progress to the ocean.*"

So the second folio.—The first has "— rome on?" (a misprint, I presume, for "runne," which is the spelling of the folio in act iii. sc. 4, act v. sc. 1,—or perhaps for "ronne," since the Ms. might have had that spelling.—In defence of "roam," Malone inappositely quotes from *The Tempest*, "the wandering brooks;" and Mr. Knight strangely calls the reading of the second folio "a fancied improvement." Steevens well observes; "The King would rather describe his right as *running on* in a *direct* than in an *irregular* course, such as would be implied by the word *roam*."—Compare a later passage of this play, p. 251;

"And calmly *run on* in obedience,  
Even to our ocean, to our great King John."

P. 201. (16)

"And till it be undoubted, we do lock  
Our former scruple in our strong-barr'd gates;

*King'd of our fear, until our fears, resolv'd,  
Be by some certain king purg'd and depos'd."*

The folio has "*Kings of our fears*," &c.:—which is retained by Mr. Collier, according to whom "the meaning of the Citizens is, that they will be ruled by their fear, admitting no other monarch, until," &c.,—a meaning which it is quite impossible to elicit from the words.—Mr. Knight prints "*Kings, of our fear*," &c., making "*Kings*" a vocative, addressed to John and Philip: he says, "The citizens reply, *on account of our fear, or through our fear, or by our fear, we hold our former scruple, kings*,"—an explanation with which it seems odd that he should have been satisfied.—I adopt Tyrwhitt's reading: compare *Henry V.* act ii. sc. 4, "For, my good liege, she [i. e. England] is so idly *king'd*," &c. The citizens, as Mason remarks, "must suppose their fears to be kings before they could depose them."

P. 202. (17)

*"That daughter there of Spain, the Lady Blanch,  
Is niece to England."*

The folio has "*Is neere to England*:"—but, since we find at p. 192, "With her her *niece, the Lady Blanch of Spain*," at p. 204, "Give with our *niece* a dowry large enough," &c., and at p. 205, "What say you, my *niece*?"—in which passages the spelling of the folio is "*neece*,"—I make no doubt that Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector is right in regarding the "*neere*" of the present passage as a misprint for "*neece*."—Mr. Knight patronizes the old reading: "there is," he says, "a dramatic propriety in making a humble citizen speak indefinitely of the relationship." *Spec. of the Stratford Shakspeare*, p. 4. On the contrary, I think it quite natural that the Citizen should speak with precision on so important an affair as the proposed alliance, and describe the lady as "*daughter of Spain*" and "*niece to England*." (Lest some over-subtle critic should object to this very slight alteration, on the ground that the folio gives "*neece*" with a capital letter and "*neere*" without one, I may observe that, as a matter of course, the compositor would not use a capital letter for a word which he had erroneously supposed to be an adjective.)

P. 204. (18)

*"Anjou," &c.*

The folio has "*Angiers*," &c.

P. 205. (19)

*"for I am well assur'd  
That I did so when I was first assur'd."*

The emendation made here by the late Mr. Sydney Walker (and communicated to me by Mr. W. N. Lettsom), "*— when I was first affied*," is quite uncalled-for:—the second "*assur'd*" means—affianced, contracted; and the repetition of the word is in Shakespeare's manner.

P. 207. (20)

*"Hath drawn him from his own determin'd aid," &c.*

Mason would read "— *determin'd aim*," &c.;—and so Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector.

www.libtool.com.cn

P. 209. (21)

"I will instruct my sorrows to be proud;  
For grief is proud, and makes his owner stout."

So Hanmer.—The folio has "— *and makes his owner stoope*:" which Malone is at no little pains to defend.

P. 213. (22)

"the devil tempts thee here  
In likeness of a new-uptrimmèd bride."

The folio has "— *a new untrimmed Bride*."—In support of the correction "*uptrimmed*" (which I was the first to propose,—see *Notes and Queries*, vol. vi. p. 6, and my *Few Notes*, &c. p. 87), it is perhaps unnecessary to cite the following line from another play of Shakespeare, where a *bride* is spoken of;

"Go, waken Juliet; go, and trim her up."  
*Romeo and Juliet*, act iv. sc. 4.

P. 214. (23) "A chafed lion by the mortal paw," &c.

The folio has "*A cased lion*," &c.,—which could only mean "a lion stripped of his skin, flayed:" so in *All's well that ends well*, "We'll make you some sport with the fox, ere we *case* him," act iii. sc. 6; and in Beaumont and Fletcher's *Scornful Lady*,

"then have you *cas'd*,  
And hung up i' the warren."

Act v. sc. 1.—

The alteration, "*A chased lion*," &c. is obviously wrong: nor is "*A caged lion*," &c. much better; for, as Mr. Knight *ad l.* remarks, "the paw of a confined lion is often held with impunity."—The right reading is undoubtedly "*A chafed lion*," &c.:—in the following passage of Beaumont and Fletcher's *Philaster*, where the 4to of 1620 has "*Chaf'd*," the other eds. have "*Chast*," and (let it be particularly observed) "*Cast*;"

"And what there is of vengeance in a *lion*  
*Chaf'd* among dogs or robb'd of his dear young," &c.

Act v. sc. 3.

Moreover, in our author's *Henry VIII.* we find,

"so looks the *chafed* lion  
Upon the daring huntsman that has gall'd him," &c.

Act iii. sc. 2.

and in Fletcher's *Loyal Subject*,

"— he frets like a *chaf'd lion*."

Act v. sc. 3.

P. 215. (24)

*"For that which thou hast sworn to do amiss  
Is not amiss when it is truly done."*

For "*not amiss*" Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes "*but amiss*,"—an alteration which also occurred to Mr. W. N. Lettsom: and it is probably the true reading; but see the notes of Ritson and Malone *ad l.*

P. 215. (25)

*"the truth thou art unsure  
To swear, swears only not to be forsworn."*

The usual modern reading is "*— swear only not,*" &c.: but it may be dangerous to meddle with so obscure a passage.

P. 217. (26)

*"nothing but blood,—  
The blood, and dearest-valu'd blood of France."*

I learn from Mr. W. N. Lettsom that the late Mr. Sidney Walker proposed to read "*The best and dearest-valu'd,*" &c.

P. 217. (27)

*"Some airy devil hovers in the sky,  
And pours down mischief."*

Theobald, "by Mr. Warburton's direction," substituted "*Some fiery devil,*" &c.,—an alteration which Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector also makes.—But Henderson gives an extract from Nash's *Pierce Pennilesse his Supplication, &c.*, which is alone sufficient to determine that the old reading is right.

P. 218. (28)

*"Of hoarding abbots; imprison'd angels  
Set at liberty: the fat ribs of peace," &c.*

This passage has been variously amended by the critics,—by none, perhaps, so well as by the late Mr. Sidney Walker, who, as Mr. W. N. Lettsom informs me, made the following transposition;—

*"Of hoarding abbots; set at liberty  
Imprison'd angels: the fat ribs of peace," &c.*

P. 218. (29)

*"But I will fit it with some better time."*

So Pope.—The folio has "*— better tune.*"

P. 219. (30)

*"if the midnight bell  
Did, with his iron tongue and brazen mouth,  
Sound one into the drowsy ear of night," &c.*

The folio has "*Sound on into the drowzie race of night,*" &c. But here (as in many other passages) "*on*" is merely the old spelling of "*one*," and that "*race*" is a misprint for "*eare*" (which used almost always to have the final

e,—as in the folio in the next scene, “Vexing the dull ears of a drowsie man”), I had felt confident long before Mr. Collier *ad l.* suggested the latter reading,—which, it now appears, was also that of his Ms. Corrector. On the supposed contradiction in “the midnight bell sounding one,” see my *Few Notes*, &c. p. 88.

P. 219. (21)

“Which else runs tickling up and down the veins,” &c.

For “tickling” Mr. Collier’s Ms. Corrector substitutes “tingling.”

P. 220. (22) “A whole armado of convicted sail,” &c.

Here “convicted” is explained to mean—overpowered.—Pope printed “collected.”—Mason would read “convented;” and so Mr. Collier’s Ms. Corrector. In my *Remarks on Mr. Collier’s and Mr. Knight’s eds. of Shakespeare*, p. 93, I queried “did Shakespeare write ‘convected’ (from the Latin *convectus*)?”—Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 88) proposes “connected.”

P. 223. (23)

“And bitter shame hath spoil’d the sweet world’s taste,  
That it yields naught but shame and bitterness.”

Mr. W. N. Lettsom tells me that the late Mr. Sydney Walker conjectured “— gall and bitterness:” but if Mr. Walker objected to “shame” because that word occurs in the first line, why did he not also object to “bitterness” on account of the preceding “bitter?” The fact is, repetitions of this kind were admired in Shakespeare’s days.

P. 225. (24) “Strong reasons make strong actions.”

So the sec. folio.—The first folio has “— strange actions.”

P. 230. (25) “And more, more strong (when lesser is my fear),  
I shall indue you with.”

So Tyrwhitt.—The folio has “— then lesser is my feare,” &c.

P. 230. (26)

“Why, then, your fears (which, as they say, attend  
The steps of wrong) should move you to mew up,” &c.

Here Theobald made “then” and “should” change places; and so Mr. Collier’s Ms. Corrector. The old reading is defended on the supposition that the question is elliptically expressed,—“Why then is it that your fears should move you,” &c.

P. 232. (37) "Where is my mother's care," &c.

The late Mr. Sydney Walker (as Mr. W. N. Lettsom informs me) thought that here Shakespeare wrote "—— my mother's ear:"—I cannot agree with him.

P. 235. (38)

"I had a mighty cause

To wish him dead, but thou hadst none to kill him.

Hub. No had, my lord! why, did you not provoke me?"

I subjoin from *Notes and Queries* (vol. vii. p. 521) the three first of the various parallel passages by which Mr. Arrowsmith has proved beyond all possibility of doubt that here "No had" is the genuine reading:—

"Fort. Oh, had I such a hat, then were I braue.

Wheres he that made it?

Sold.

Dead, and the whole world'

Yeelds not a workman that can frame the like.

Fort. No does?"

Dekker's *Old Fortunatus*, 1600, sig. D 2.

"John. I am an elde fellowe of fifty wynter and more,

And yet in all my lyfe I knewe not this before.

Parson. No dyd, why sayest thou so? upon thyselfe thou lyeest,  
Thou haste euer knowen the sacramento to be the body of Christ."

John Bon and Mast Person.

"Chedsey. Christ said, 'Take, eat, this is my body;' and not 'Take ye, eat ye.'

Philpot. No did, master doctor? Be not these the words of Christ, 'Accipite, manducate'? And do not these words, in the plural number, signify, 'Take ye, eat ye;' and not 'Take thou, eat thou,' as you would suppose?"

Foxe's *Acts and Monuments*, vol. vii. p. 637, Catley's ed.

P. 235. (39)

"How oft the sight of means to do ill deeds

Make ill deeds done!"

The folio has "*Make deeds ill done.*"—With Mr. Knight and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, I have made a transposition, which is obviously necessary, not so much because, as Mr. Knight says, the old reading "might apply to good deeds unskilfully performed," as because in such passages the order of the words which are emphatically repeated is rarely, if ever, changed.—Here the more recent editors alter "*Make*" to "*Makes*:" but see note on *Love's Labour's lost*, vol. ii. p. 169. (Earlier in the present play, p. 215, we have had an example of the same phraseology,

"The peril of our curses light on thee," &c.)

P. 235. (40)

"But thou didst understand me by my signs,

And didst in signs again parley with sin."

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector alters "*parley with sin*" to "*parley with sign*;"

and Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 91) calls the alteration "specious,"—which I cannot think it is. What!—

"understand me by my signs,  
And didst in signs again parley with sign"!

P. 237. (41)

*"Whose private with me of the Dauphin's love," &c.*

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "*Whose private* missive of the," &c., i. e., as explained by Mr. Collier,—Whose private written communication, &c.: but the old text is doubtless right,—"*private*" meaning the oral communication with which the Dauphin had intrusted Melun: see Mr. Singer's *Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 92; and Pope's note *ad l.*

P. 237. (42) "*We will not line his thin bestainèd cloak  
With our pure honours.*"

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector alters "*thin bestainèd*" to "*sin-bestainèd*,"—which must be regarded as nothing more than a very ingenious attempt to introduce—what Shakespeare never dreamed of here—a compound epithet. Indeed, that "*thin*" is the genuine reading, we have evidence in the context. "The king's cloak (that is, his authority) was *thin*, because not lined and strengthened with the power and honours of his nobles." *Blackwood's Magazine* for Sept. 1853, p. 306: see also Mr. Knight's *Spec. of the Stratford Shakspeare*, p. 10. (In recommending to the public the new lection "*sin-bestainèd*," Mr. Collier makes a remark which is calculated to deceive those who are not familiar with the typographical peculiarities of the early editions:—"the folios," he says, "place a hyphen between 'thin' and 'bestainèd,' as if to lead us to the discovery of the error." But though it be true that the folio has "*thin-bestainèd*," it is equally certain that the Ms. Corrector's alteration does not receive the slightest support from the words being so hyphenated; for the folio exhibits numerous passages in which, contrary to modern usage, the hyphen is employed: e. g., elsewhere in the present play;

"who hath read or heard

Of any *kindred-action* like to this?"

Act iii. sc. 4.

"The *mis-plac'd-John* should entertaine an hour," &c.

*Ibid.*

"A *cockred-silken* wanton braue our fields," &c.

Act v. sc. 1.

in the *Tempest*;

"I will rend an Oake

And *peg-thee* in his knotty entrailes," &c.

Act i. sc. 2.

"Her, and her *blind-Boyes* scandal'd company," &c.

Act iv. sc. 1.

"This *Ayris-charme* is for," &c.

Act v. sc. 1.

in *The Winter's Tale*;

"the face to sweeten  
Of the whole *dunghy-earth*."

Act ii. sc. 1.

"whom you know  
Of *stuff'd-sufficiency*." *Ibid.*

"which in their pideness shares  
With great *creating-Nature*."

Act iv. sc. 3.

in *Henry IV., Part First*;

"And hid his *crispe-head* in the hollow banke," &c.

Act i. sc. 3.

"none of these mad *Mustachio-purple-hw'd-Maltwormes*," &c.

Act ii. sc. 1.

in *Julius Cæsar*;

"*Low-crooked-curtsies*, and base Spaniell fawning."

Act iii. sc. 1.)

P. 238. (43) "Till I have set a glory to this hand,  
By giving it the worship of revenge."

Farmer (not, as frequently stated, Pope) conjectured "— a *glory to this head*" [i. e. the head of Arthur]; and so reads Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector,— misaled by the words "*glory*" and "*worship*."

"The old reading means—'till I have famed and renowned my own hand by giving it the honour of revenge for so foul a deed.'" TOLLER.

"In the next act [p. 246] we have the following lines;

'I will not return  
Till my attempt so much be glorified  
As to my ample hope was promised.'

The following passage in *Troilus and Cressida* [act iv. sc. 1] is decisive in support of the old reading;

'Jove, let Æneas live,  
If to my sword his fate be not the glory,  
A thousand complete courses of the sun!'

MALONE.

I may add that a passage of *The Odyssey* (Book xxiv. v. 478),—

Ὁ δὲ γὰρ δὴ τούτων μὲν ἐβούλευσας νόον αὐτῆ;  
Ὡς ἦτοι κελύους Ὀδυσσεὺς ἀποτίσσειν ἐλθέειν.

stands thus in Chapman's translation,—

"Hast not thou decreed  
That Ithacus should come, and give his deed  
The glory of revenge on these and theirs?"

p. 374, ed. folio.



P. 243. (44) "Forage, and run," &c.

See Johnson's note *ad l.*—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "Courage, and run," &c. [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

P. 243. (45) "Send fair-play orders," &c.

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes speciously "Send fair-play offers," &c.

P. 244. (46) " (I must withdraw and weep  
Upon the spot of this enforced cause)."

Here "spot" is explained "stain or disgrace."—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "Upon the thought," &c.—Qy. "Upon the spur," &c.?

P. 244. (47) "And grapple thee," &c.

Pope's correction.—The folio has "And cripple thee," &c.

P. 246. (48) "No, no, on my soul, it never shall be said."

Mr. W. N. Lettsom observes to me,—“Read ‘No, on my soul,’ &c.; for, even putting the metrical question aside, Shakespeare, I think, would never have repeated the negative before an asseveration.”

P. 247. (49) "This unhair'd sauciness and boyish troops," &c.

The folio has "This vn-heard saucinesse," &c.,—"un-heard" being merely the old spelling of "unhair'd" (see my *Remarks on Mr. Collier's and Mr. Knight's eds. of Shakespeare*, p. 95; also my *Few Notes*, &c. p. 90,—where the reading of Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, "— sauciness of boyish troops," &c., is shown to be very improbable).

P. 247. (50) "Even at the crying of your nation's crow," &c.

If the alteration of Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, "Even at the crowing of your nation's cock," &c.—be, as Mr. Knight terms it, "a decided improvement" (*Spec. of the Stratford Shakespeare*, p. 13), it is not obtained without considerable violence to the text.

P. 247. (51) "Thinking his voice," &c.

The folio has "Thinking this voyce," &c.—which Mr. Collier and Mr. Knight retain,—wrongly, I believe. The misprint of "this" for "his" is frequent: so, earlier in the present play, p. 227, the folio has "And quench this ferie indignation," &c.

P. 248. (52) "Their thimbles into armed gauntlets chang'd," &c.

The folio has "— change," &c.;—an error which I had corrected long be-

fore I was aware that Mr. W. N. Lettsom had set the passage right. (Further on, the folio has by mistake "measure" for "measur'd:" see note (24).)

www.libtool.com.cn

P. 251. (23) "For I do see the cruel pangs of death  
Right in thine eye."

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "Bright in *thine* eye;"—and while Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 94) pronounces the alteration to be "plausible, but not necessary," Mr. Knight (*Spec. of the Stratford Shakspeare*, p. 13) thinks that it "ought to be introduced in every edition." For my own part, I am convinced that it is utterly wrong; and, in confirmation of my opinion, I could cite the authority of an eminent living physician. Mr. Collier tells us that "Bright" is to be understood "in reference to the remarkable brilliancy of the eyes of many persons just before death:" but if that lighting up of the eye ever occurs, it is only when comparative tranquillity precedes dissolution,—not during "the pangs of death;" and most assuredly it is never to be witnessed in those persons who, like Melun, are dying of wounds—of *exhaustion from loss of blood*,—in which case, the eye, immediately before death, becomes glazed and lustreless.

P. 251. (24) "When the English measur'd backward," &c.

The folio has "When English measure backward," &c.

P. 251. (25) "And wound our tattering colours," &c.

The folio has "— our tott'ring colours," &c.,—where "tott'ring" is nothing more than the old spelling of "tatt'ring."—Pope printed "— our tatter'd colours," &c.; and so Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads: but, as Malone remarks, "the active and passive participles are employed by Shakespeare very indiscriminately." (Mr. Singer, *Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 94, insists that here "'tott'ring' is the poet's word, and signifies *wavering, shaking*." But compare a passage of *Henry IV., First Part*, act iv. sc. 2, which stands thus in the folio,—"that I had a hundred and fiftie totter'd Prodigalls," &c.: and see Ford's *Works*, ii. 372,—where, on the line "Though I die in totters," Gifford (who is obliged to retain that spelling for the sake of the rhyme) observes, "i. e. *tatters*. So the word was usually written by our old dramatists.")

P. 252. (26) "thou and eyeless night," &c.

The folio has "thou, & endles night," &c.—I adopt Theobald's reading; which is also that of Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector. (The propriety of the alteration is, I think, sufficiently established by the notes of Steevens and Malone *ad l.*)

P. 253. (27) "Death, having prey'd upon the outward parts,  
Leaves them invisible; and his siege is now," &c.

Malone says that "'invisible' is here used adverbially;" and adds that "our

poet, in his *Venus and Adonis*, calls Death 'invisible commander.'—Pope (and Theobald) gave "*Leaves them; invisible his siege is now,*" &c.—Hanmer printed "*Leaves them insensible; his siege is now,*" &c.—Steevens conjectured "*Leaves them invincible,*" &c.—The Rev. J. Mitford (*Gent. Magazine* for August 1844, p. 133) reads, with a transposition, "*Leaves them; and his invisible siege is now,*" &c.—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes "*Leaves them unvisited,*" &c.,—which is next to nonsense.

P. 255. (24) "And model of confounded royalty."

I may notice that here (as also in *All's well that ends well*, act iv. sc. 3) the folio has "module:" but in all other passages, it has "model." Malone observes; "*Module and model* were, in our author's time, only different modes of spelling the same word." (In the *Dictionary* of my learned friend Dr. Richardson, the spelling *module* is not recognized.)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

**KING RICHARD THE SECOND.**

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

—◆—  
KING RICHARD the Second.

EDMUND OF LANGLEY, Duke of York, }  
JOHN OF GAUNT, Duke of Lancaster, } uncles to the King.

HENRY, surnamed Bolingbroke, Duke of Hereford, son to John  
of Gaunt; afterwards King Henry IV.

DUKE OF AUMERLE, son to the Duke of York.

THOMAS MOWBRAY, Duke of Norfolk.

DUKE OF SURREY.

EARL OF SALISBURY.

EARL BERKLEY.

BUSHY, }  
BAGOT, } creatures to King Richard.  
GREEN, }

EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND.

HENRY PERCY, his son.

LORD ROSS.

LORD WILLOUGHBY.

LORD FITZWATER.

Bishop of Carlisle.

Abbot of Westminster.

Lord Marshal.

SIR PIERCE of Exton.

SIR STEPHEN SCROOP.

Captain of a band of Welshmen.

Queen to King Richard.

DUCHESS OF GLOSTER.

DUCHESS OF YORK.

Lady attending on the Queen.

Lords, Heralds, Officers, Soldiers, two Gardeners, Keeper, Messenger,  
Groom, and other Attendants.

SCENE—*dispersedly in England and Wales.*

## KING RICHARD II.

---

---

### ACT I.

SCENE I. *London. A room in the palace.*

*Enter* King RICHARD, *attended*; JOHN of Gaunt, *and other Nobles.*

*K. Rich.* Old John of Gaunt, time-honour'd Lancaster,  
Hast thou, according to thy oath and band,  
Brought hither Henry Hereford thy bold son,  
Here to make good the boisterous late appeal,  
Which then our leisure would not let us hear,  
Against the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray?

*Gaunt.* I have, my liege.

*K. Rich.* Tell me, moreover, hast thou sounded him,  
If he appeal the duke on ancient malice;  
Or worthily, as a good subject should,  
On some known ground of treachery in him?

*Gaunt.* As near as I could sift him on that argument,—  
On some apparent danger seen in him  
Aim'd at your highness,—no inveterate malice.

*K. Rich.* Then call them to our presence: face to face,  
And frowning brow to brow, ourselves will hear  
The accuser and the accusèd freely speak:—

*[Exeunt some Attendants.]*

High-stomach'd are they both, and full of ire,  
In rage deaf as the sea, hasty as fire.

*Re-enter Attendants, with BOLINGBROKE and NORFOLK.*

*Boling.* Many<sup>(1)</sup> years of happy days befall  
My gracious sovereign, my most loving liege!

*Nor.* Each day still better other's happiness;  
 Until the heavens, envying earth's good hap,  
 Add an immortal title to your crown!

*K. Rich.* We thank you both: yet one but flatters us,  
 As well appeareth by the cause you come;  
 Namely, to appeal each other of high treason.—  
 Cousin of Hereford, what dost thou object  
 Against the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray?

*Boling.* First (heaven be the record to my speech!),  
 In the devotion of a subject's love,  
 Tendering the precious safety of my prince,  
 And free from other misbegotten hate,  
 Come I appelland to this princely presence.—  
 Now, Thomas Mowbray, do I turn to thee,  
 And mark my greeting well; for what I speak  
 My body shall make good upon this earth,  
 Or my divine soul answer it in heaven.  
 Thou art a traitor and a miscreant,  
 Too good to be so, and too bad to live,—  
 Since the more fair and crystal is the sky,  
 The uglier seem the clouds that in it fly.  
 Once more, the more to aggravate the note,  
 With a foul traitor's name stuff I thy throat;  
 And wish (so please my sovereign), ere I move,  
 What my tongue speaks, my right-drawn sword may prove.

*Nor.* Let not my cold words here accuse my zeal:  
 'Tis not the trial of a woman's war,  
 The bitter clamour of two eager tongues,  
 Can arbitrate this cause betwixt us twain;  
 The blood is hot that must be cool'd for this:  
 Yet can I not of such tame patience boast  
 As to be hush'd, and naught at all to say:  
 First, the fair reverence of your highness curbs me  
 From giving reins and spurs to my free speech;  
 Which else would post until it had return'd  
 These terms of treason doubled down his throat.  
 Setting aside his high blood's royalty,  
 And let him be no kinsman to my liege,  
 I do defy him, and I spit at him;



Call him a slanderous coward and a villain :  
 Which to maintain, I would allow him odds ;  
 And meet him, were I tied to run a-foot  
 Even to the frozen ridges of the Alps,  
 Or any other ground inhabitable,  
 Wherever Englishman durst set his foot.  
 Meantime let this defend my loyalty,—  
 By all my hopes, most falsely doth he lie.

*Boling.* Pale trembling coward, there I throw my gage,  
 Disclaiming here the kindred of the king ;  
 And lay aside my high blood's royalty,  
 Which fear, not reverence, makes thee to except.  
 If guilty dread hath left thee so much strength  
 As to take up mine honour's pawn, then stoop :  
 By that and all the rites of knighthood else,  
 Will I make good against thee, arm to arm,  
 What I have spoke, or thou canst worse devise.

*Nor.* I take it up ; and by that sword I swear,  
 Which gently laid my knighthood on my shoulder,  
 I'll answer thee in any fair degree,  
 Or chivalrous design of knightly trial :  
 And when I mount, alive may I not light,  
 If I be traitor or unjustly fight !

*K. Rich.* What doth our cousin lay to Mowbray's charge ?  
 It must be great that can inherit us  
 So much as of a thought of ill in him.

*Boling.* Look, what I speak, my life shall prove it true ;—  
 That Mowbray hath receiv'd eight thousand nobles  
 In name of lendings for your highness' soldiers,  
 The which he hath detain'd for lewd employments,  
 Like a false traitor and injurious villain.  
 Besides, I say, and will in battle prove,—  
 Or here, or elsewhere to the furthest verge  
 That ever was survey'd by English eye,—  
 That all the treasons for these eighteen years  
 Complotted and contrivèd in this land  
 Fetch'd from false Mowbray their first head and spring.  
 Further, I say,—and further will maintain  
 Upon his bad life to make all this good,—

That he did plot the Duke of Gloster's death,  
 Suggest his soon-believing adversaries,  
 And consequently, like a traitor-coward,  
 Sluic'd out his innocent soul through streams of blood :  
 Which blood, like sacrificing Abel's, cries,  
 Even from the tongueless caverns of the earth,  
 To me for justice and rough chastisement ;  
 And, by the glorious worth of my descent,  
 This arm shall do it, or this life be spent.

*K. Rich.* How high a pitch his resolution soars !—  
 Thomas of Norfolk, what say'st thou to this ?

*Nor.* O, let my sovereign turn away his face,  
 And bid his ears a little while be deaf,  
 Till I have told this slander of his blood,  
 How God and good men hate so foul a liar !

*K. Rich.* Mowbray, impartial are our eyes and ears :  
 Were he my brother, nay, my kingdom's heir  
 (As he is but my father's brother's son),  
 Now, by my sceptre's awe, I make a vow,  
 Such neighbour-nearness to our sacred blood  
 Should nothing privilege him, nor partialize  
 The unstooping firmness of my upright soul :  
 He is our subject, Mowbray, so art thou ;  
 Free speech and fearless I to thee allow.

*Nor.* Then, Bolingbroke, as low as to thy heart,  
 Through the false passage of thy throat, thou liest !  
 Three parts of that receipt I had for Calais  
 Disburs'd I duly to his highness' soldiers ;  
 The other part reserv'd I by consent,  
 For that my sovereign liege was in my debt  
 Upon remainder of a dear account,  
 Since last I went to France to fetch his queen :  
 Now swallow down that lie.—For Gloster's death,—  
 I slew him not ; but, to mine own disgrace,  
 Neglected my sworn duty in that case.—  
 For you, my noble Lord of Lancaster,  
 The honourable father to my foe,  
 Once did I lay an ambush for your life,  
 A trespass that doth vex my grievèd soul :

But, ere I last receiv'd the sacrament,  
 I did confess it; and exactly begg'd  
 Your grace's pardon, and I hope I had it.  
 This is my fault: as for the rest appeal'd,  
 It issues from the rancour of a villain,  
 A recreant and most degenerate traitor:  
 Which in myself I boldly will defend;  
 And interchangeably hurl down my gage  
 Upon this overweening traitor's foot,  
 To prove myself a loyal gentleman  
 Even in the best blood chamber'd in his bosom.  
 In haste whereof, most heartily I pray  
 Your highness to assign our trial-day.

*K. Rich.* Wrath-kindled gentlemen, be rul'd by me;  
 Let's purge this choler without letting blood:  
 This we prescribe, though no physician;  
 Deep malice makes too deep incision:  
 Forget, forgive; conclude and be agreed;  
 Our doctors say this is no month to bleed.—  
 Good uncle, let this end where it begun;  
 We'll calm the Duke of Norfolk, you your son.

*Gaunt.* To be a make-peace shall become my age:—  
 Throw down, my son, the Duke of Norfolk's gage.

*K. Rich.* And, Norfolk, throw down his.

*Gaunt.* When, Harry? when?  
 Obedience bids I should not bid again.

*K. Rich.* Norfolk, throw down; we bid; there is no boot.

*Nor.* Myself I throw, dread sovereign, at thy foot.

My life thou shalt command, but not my shame:  
 The one my duty owes; but my fair name  
 (Despite of death, that lives upon my grave),  
 To dark dishonour's use thou shalt not have.  
 I am disgrac'd, impeach'd, and baffled here;  
 Pierc'd to the soul with slander's venom'd spear,  
 The which no balm can cure but his heart-blood  
 Which breath'd this poison.

*K. Rich.* Rage must be withstood:—  
 Give me his gage:—lions make leopards tame.

*Nor.* Yea, but not change his spots: take but my shame,

And I resign my gage. My dear dear lord,  
 The purest treasure mortal times afford,  
 Is spotless reputation; that away,  
 Men are but gilded loam or painted clay.  
 A jewel in a ten-times-barr'd-up chest  
 Is a bold spirit in a loyal breast.  
 Mine honour is my life; both grow in one;  
 Take honour from me, and my life is done:  
 Then, dear my liege, mine honour let me try;  
 In that I live, and for that will I die.

*K. Rich.* Cousin, throw down your gage; do you begin.

*Boling.* O, God defend my soul from such foul sin!

Shall I seem crest-fallen in my father's sight?  
 Or with pale beggar-fear impeach my height  
 Before this outdar'd dastard? Ere my tongue  
 Shall wound mine honour with such feeble wrong,  
 Or sound so base a parle, my teeth shall tear  
 The slavish motive of recanting fear,  
 And spit it bleeding in his high disgrace,  
 Where shame doth harbour, even in Mowbray's face.

[*Exit Gaunt.*]

*K. Rich.* We were not born to sue, but to command;—  
 Which since we cannot do to make you friends,  
 Be ready, as your lives shall answer it,  
 At Coventry, upon Saint Lambert's day:  
 There shall your swords and lances arbitrate  
 The swelling difference of your settled hate:  
 Since we can not atone you, we shall see  
 Justice design the victor's chivalry.—  
 Lord marshal, command our officers-at-arms  
 Be ready to direct these home-alarms.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE II. *The same. A room in the Duke of Lancaster's palace.*

*Enter GAUNT and Duchess of Gloster.*

*Gaunt.* Alas, the part I had in Gloster's blood  
 Doth more solicit me than your exclams,

To stir against the butchers of his life !  
 But since correction lieth in those hands  
 Which made the fault that we cannot correct,  
 Put we our quarrel to the will of heaven ;  
 Who, when they see (\*) the hours ripe on earth,  
 Will rain hot vengeance on offenders' heads.

*Duch.* Finds brotherhood in thee no sharper spur ?  
 Hath love in thy old blood no living fire ?  
 Edward's seven sons, whereof thyself art one,  
 Were as seven vials of his sacred blood,  
 Or seven fair branches springing from one root :  
 Some of those seven are dried by nature's course,  
 Some of those branches by the Destinies cut ;  
 But Thomas, my dear lord, my life, my Gloster,  
 One vial full of Edward's sacred blood,  
 One flourishing branch of his most royal root,  
 Is crack'd, and all the precious liquor spilt,  
 Is hack'd down, and his summer-leaves all faded,  
 By envy's hand and murder's bloody axe.  
 Ah, Gaunt, his blood was thine ! that bed, that womb,  
 That mettle, that self-mould, that fashion'd thee,  
 Made him a man ; and though thou liv'st and breath'st,  
 Yet art thou slain in him : thou dost consent  
 In some large measure to thy father's death,  
 In that thou seest thy wretched brother die,  
 Who was the model of thy father's life.  
 Call it not patience, Gaunt,—it is despair :  
 In suffering thus thy brother to be slaughter'd,  
 Thou show'st the naked pathway to thy life,  
 Teaching stern murder how to butcher thee :  
 That which in mean men we entitle patience,  
 Is pale cold cowardice in noble breasts.  
 What shall I say ? to safeguard thine own life,  
 The best way is to venge my Gloster's death.

*Gaunt.* God's is the quarrel ; for God's substitute,  
 His deputy anointed in his sight,  
 Hath caus'd his death : the which if wrongfully,  
 Let heaven revenge ; for I may never lift  
 An angry arm against his minister.

*Duch.* Where, then, alas, may I complain myself ?

*Gaunt.* To God, the widow's champion and defence.

*Duch.* Why, then, I will. Farewell, old Gaunt.

Thou go'st to Coventry, there to behold  
 Our cousin Hereford and fell Mowbray fight :  
 O, sit my husband's wrongs on Hereford's spear,  
 That it may enter butcher Mowbray's breast !  
 Or, if misfortune miss the first career,  
 Be Mowbray's sins so heavy in his bosom,  
 That they may break his foaming courser's back,  
 And throw the rider headlong in the lists,  
 A caitiff recreant to my cousin Hereford !  
 Farewell, old Gaunt : thy sometimes brother's wife  
 With her companion grief must end her life.

*Gaunt.* Sister, farewell ; I must to Coventry :  
 As much good stay with thee as go with me !

*Duch.* Yet one word more :—grief boundeth where it  
 falls,

Not with the empty hollowness, but weight :  
 I take my leave before I have begun ;  
 For sorrow ends not when it seemeth done.  
 Commend me to my brother, Edmund York.  
 Lo, this is all :—nay, yet depart not so ;  
 Though this be all, do not so quickly go ;  
 I shall remember more. Bid him—O, what ?—  
 With all good speed at Plashy visit me.  
 Alack, and what shall good old York there see,  
 But empty lodgings and unfurnish'd walls,  
 Unpeopled offices, untrodden stones ?  
 And what hear there for welcome, but my groans ?  
 Therefore commend me ; let him not come there,  
 To seek out sorrow that dwells every where.  
 Desolate, desolate, will I hence and die :  
 The last leave of thee takes my weeping eye.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *Gosford Green, near Coventry.*[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Lists set out, and a throne; heralds, &c. attending. Enter the Lord Marshal and AUMERLE.*

*Mar.* My Lord Aumerle, is Harry Hereford arm'd?

*Aum.* Yea, at all points; and longs to enter in.

*Mar.* The Duke of Norfolk, sprightly and bold,  
Stays but the summons of the appellant's trumpet.

*Aum.* Why, then, the champions are prepar'd, and stay  
For nothing but his majesty's approach.

*Flourish of trumpets. Enter King RICHARD, who takes his seat on his throne; GAUNT, BUSHY, BAGOT, GREEN, and others, who take their places. A trumpet is sounded, and answered by another trumpet within. Then enter NORFOLK in armour, preceded by a Herald.*

*K. Rich.* Marshal, demand of yonder champion  
The cause of his arrival here in arms:  
Ask him his name; and orderly proceed  
To swear him in the justice of his cause.

*Mar.* In God's name and the king's, say who thou art,  
And why thou com'st thus knightly clad in arms;  
Against what man thou com'st, and what thy quarrel:  
Speak truly, on thy knighthood and thine oath;  
As so defend thee heaven and thy valour!

*Nor.* My name is Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk;  
Who hither come engagèd by my oath  
(Which God defend a knight should violate!),  
Both to defend my loyalty and truth  
To God, my king, and his succeeding issue,  
Against the Duke of Hereford that appeals me;  
And, by the grace of God and this mine arm,  
To prove him, in defending of myself,  
A traitor to my God, my king, and me:  
And as I truly fight, defend me heaven!

*Trumpet sounds. Enter BOLINGBROKE in armour, preceded by a Herald.*

*K. Rich.* Marshal, ask yonder knight in arms,

Both who he is, and why he cometh hither  
 Thus plated in habiliments of war ;  
 And formally, according to our law,  
 Depose him in the justice of his cause.

*Mar.* What is thy name? and wherefore com'st thou  
 hither,  
 Before King Richard in his royal lists?  
 Against whom comest thou? and what's thy quarrel?  
 Speak like a true knight, so defend thee heaven!

*Boling.* Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,  
 Am I; who ready here do stand in arms,  
 To prove, by God's grace and my body's valour,  
 In lists, on Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk,  
 That he's a traitor, foul and dangerous,  
 To God of heaven, King Richard, and to me;  
 And as I truly fight, defend me heaven!

*Mar.* On pain of death, no person be so bold  
 Or daring-hardy as to touch the lists,  
 Except the marshal and such officers  
 Appointed to direct these fair designs.

*Boling.* Lord marshal, let me kiss my sovereign's  
 hand,  
 And bow my knee before his majesty:  
 For Mowbray and myself are like two men  
 That vow a long and weary pilgrimage;  
 Then let us take a ceremonious leave  
 And loving farewell of our several friends.

*Mar.* The appellant in all duty greets your highness,  
 And craves to kiss your hand and take his leave.

*K. Rich.* We will descend and fold him in our arms.—  
 Cousin of Hereford, as thy cause is right,  
 So be thy fortune in this royal fight!  
 Farewell, my blood; which if to-day thou shed,  
 Lament we may, but not revenge thee dead.

*Boling.* O, let no noble eye profane a tear  
 For me, if I be gor'd with Mowbray's spear:  
 As confident as is the falcon's flight  
 Against a bird, do I with Mowbray fight.—  
 My loving lord, I take my leave of you;—



Of you, my noble cousin, Lord Aumerle ;  
 Not sick, although I have to do with death,  
 But lusty, young, and cheerly drawing breath.—  
 Lo, as at English feasts, so I regret  
 The daintiest last, to make the end more sweet :  
 O thou, the earthly author of my blood,—  
 Whose youthful spirit, in me regenerate,  
 Doth with a twofold vigour lift me up  
 To reach at victory above my head,—  
 Add proof unto mine armour with thy prayers ;  
 And with thy blessings steel my lance's point,  
 That it may enter Mowbray's waxen coat,  
 And furbish new the name of John o' Gaunt,  
 Even in the lusty 'haviour of his son.

*Gaunt.* God in thy good cause make thee prosperous !  
 Be swift like lightning in the execution ;  
 And let thy blows, doubly redoubled,  
 Fall like amazing thunder on the casque  
 Of thy advérse pernicious enemy :  
 Rouse up thy youthful blood, be valiant and live.

*Boling.* Mine innocency and Saint George to thrive !

*Nor.* However God or fortune cast my lot,  
 There lives or dies, true to King Richard's throne,  
 A loyal, just, and upright gentleman :  
 Never did captive with a freer heart  
 Cast off his chains of bondage, and embrace  
 His golden uncontroll'd enfranchisement,  
 More than my dancing soul doth celebrate  
 This feast of battle with mine adversary.—  
 Most mighty liege,—and my companion peers,—  
 Take from my mouth the wish of happy years :  
 As gentle and as jocund as to jest  
 Go I to fight : truth hath a quiet breast.

*K. Rich.* Farewell, my lord : securely I espy  
 Virtue with valour couchèd in thine eye.—  
 Order the trial, marshal, and begin.

*Mar.* Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,  
 Receive thy lance ; and God defend the right !

*Boling.* Strong as a tower in hope, I cry amen.

*Mar.* Go bear this lance [*to an Officer*] to Thomas, Duke  
of Norfolk.

*First Her.* Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,  
Stands here for God, his sovereign, and himself,  
On pain to be found false and recreant,  
To prove the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray,  
A traitor to his God, his king, and him ;  
And dares him to set forward to the fight.

*Sec. Her.* Here standeth Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk,  
On pain to be found false and recreant,  
Both to defend himself, and to approve  
Henry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,  
To God, his sovereign, and to him disloyal ;  
Courageously, and with a free desire,  
Attending but the signal to begin.

*Mar.* Sound, trumpets ; and set forward, combatants.

[*A charge sounded.*]

Stay, the king hath thrown his warder down.

*K. Rich.* Let them lay by their helmets and their spears,  
And both return back to their chairs again :—  
Withdraw with us :—and let the trumpets sound  
While we return these dukes what we decree.—

[*A long flourish.*]

Draw near,

[*To the combatants.*]

And list what with our council we have done.  
For that our kingdom's earth should not be soil'd  
With that dear blood which it hath fosterèd ;  
And for our eyes do hate the dire aspect  
Of civil wounds plough'd up with neighbours' swords ;  
And for we think the eagle-wingèd pride  
Of sky-aspiring and ambitious thoughts,  
With rival-hating envy, set on you  
To wake our peace, which in our country's cradle  
Draws the sweet infant breath of gentle sleep ;  
Which so rous'd up with boisterous untun'd drums,  
With harsh-resounding trumpets' dreadful bray,

And grating shock of wrathful iron arms,  
 Might from our quiet confines fright fair peace,  
 And make us wade even in our kindred's blood;—  
 Therefore, we banish you our territories:—  
 You, cousin Hereford, upon pain of life,  
 Till twice five summers have enrich'd our fields  
 Shall not regret our fair dominions,  
 But tread the stranger paths of banishment.

*Boling.* Your will be done: this must my comfort  
 be,—

That sun that warms you here shall shine on me;  
 And those his golden beams to you here lent  
 Shall point on me and gild my banishment.

*K. Rich.* Norfolk, for thee remains a heavier doom,  
 Which I with some unwillingness pronounce:  
 The sly-slow<sup>(3)</sup> hours shall not determinate  
 The dateless limit of thy dear exile;—  
 The hopeless word of—never to return  
 Breathe I against thee, upon pain of life.

*Nor.* A heavy sentence, my most sovereign liege,  
 And all unlook'd-for from your highness' mouth:  
 A dearer merit, not so deep a main  
 As to be cast forth in the common air,  
 Have I deservèd at your highness' hands.  
 The language I have learn'd these forty years,  
 My native English, now I must forego:  
 And now my tongue's use is to me no more  
 Than an unstringèd viol or a harp;  
 Or like a cunning instrument cas'd up,  
 Or, being open, put into his hands  
 That knows no touch to tune the harmony:  
 Within my mouth you have engaol'd my tongue,  
 Doubly portecullis'd with my teeth and lips;  
 And dull, unfeeling, barren ignorance  
 Is made my gaoler to attend on me.  
 I am too old to fawn upon a nurse,  
 Too far in years to be a pupil now:  
 What is thy sentence, then, but speechless death,  
 Which robs my tongue from breathing native breath?

*K. Rich.* It boots thee not to be compassionate :  
After our sentence plaining comes too late.

*Nor.* Then thus I turn me from my country's light,  
To dwell in solemn shades of endless night. [Retiring.]

*K. Rich.* Return again, and take an oath with thee.  
Lay on our royal sword your banish'd hands ;  
Swear by the duty that you owe to God  
(Our part therein we banish with yourselves),  
To keep the oath that we administer :—  
You never shall (so help you truth and God !)  
Embrace each other's love in banishment ;  
Nor never look upon each other's face ;  
Nor never write, regreet, nor reconcile  
This lowering tempest of your home-bred hate ;  
Nor never by advisèd purpose meet  
To plot, contrive, or complot any ill  
'Gainst us, our state, our subjects, or our land.

*Boling.* I swear.

*Nor.* And I, to keep all this.

*Boling.* Norfolk, so far as to mine enemy ;—  
By this time, had the king permitted us,  
One of our souls had wander'd in the air,  
Banish'd this frail sepulchre of our flesh,  
As now our flesh is banish'd from this land :  
Confess thy treasons, ere thou fly the realm ;  
Since thou hast far to go, bear not along  
The clogging burden of a guilty soul.

*Nor.* No, Bolingbroke : if ever I were traitor,  
My name be blotted from the book of life,  
And I from heaven banish'd, as from hence !  
But what thou art, God, thou, and I do know ;  
And all too soon, I fear, the king shall rue.—  
Farewell, my liege.—Now no way can I stray :  
Save back to England, all the world's my way. [Exit.]

*K. Rich.* Uncle, even in the glasses of thine eyes  
I see thy grievèd heart : thy sad aspèct  
Hath from the number of his banish'd years  
Pluck'd four away.—[To Boling.] Six frozen winters spent,  
Return with welcome home from banishment.

*Boling.* How long a time lies in one little word!  
Four lagging winters and four wanton springs  
End in a word: such is the breath of kings.

*Gaunt.* I thank my liege, that in regard of me  
He shortens four years of my son's exile:  
But little vantage shall I reap thereby;  
For, ere the six years that he hath to spend  
Can change their moons and bring their times about,  
My oil-dried lamp and time-bewasted light  
Shall be extinct with age and endless night;  
My inch of taper will be burnt and done,  
And blindfold death not let me see my son.

*K. Rich.* Why, uncle, thou hast many years to live.

*Gaunt.* But not a minute, king, that thou canst give:  
Shorten my days thou canst with sullen sorrow,  
And pluck nights from me, but not lend a morrow;  
Thou canst help time to furrow me with age,  
But stop no wrinkle in his pilgrimage;  
Thy word is current with him for my death,  
But dead, thy kingdom cannot buy my breath.

*K. Rich.* Thy son is banish'd upon good advice,  
Whereto thy tongue a party-verdict gave:  
Why at our justice seem'st thou, then, to lower?

*Gaunt.* Things sweet to taste prove in digestion sour.  
You urg'd me as a judge; but I had rather  
You would have bid me argue like a father.  
O, had it been a stranger, not my child,  
To smooth his fault I should have been more mild:  
A partial slander sought I to avoid,  
And in the sentence my own life destroy'd.  
Alas, I look'd when some of you should say,  
I was too strict to make mine own away;  
But you gave leave to my unwilling tongue  
Against my will to do myself this wrong.

*K. Rich.* Cousin, farewell;—and, uncle, bid him so:  
Six years we banish him, and he shall go.

[*Flourish.* *Exeunt King Richard and train.*]

*Aum.* Cousin, farewell: what presence must not know,  
From where you do remain let paper show.

*Mar.* My lord, no leave take I; for I will ride,  
As far as land will let me, by your side.

*Gaunt.* O, to what purpose dost thou hoard thy words,  
That thou return'st no greeting to thy friends?

*Boling.* I have too few to take my leave of you,  
When the tongue's office should be prodigal  
To breathe the abundant dolour of the heart.

*Gaunt.* Thy grief is but thy absence for a time.

*Boling.* Joy absent, grief is present for that time.

*Gaunt.* What is six winters? they are quickly gone.

*Boling.* To men in joy; but grief makes one hour ten.

*Gaunt.* Call it a travel that thou tak'st for pleasure.

*Boling.* My heart will sigh when I miscall it so,  
Which finds it an enforced pilgrimage.

*Gaunt.* The sullen passage of thy weary steps  
Esteem a foil, wherein thou art to set  
The precious jewel of thy home-return.

*Boling.* Nay, rather, every tedious stride I make  
Will but remember me, what a deal of world  
I wander from the jewels that I love.  
Must I not serve a long apprenticeship  
To foreign passages; and in the end,  
Having my freedom, boast of nothing else  
But that I was a journeyman to grief?

*Gaunt.* All places that the eye of heaven visits  
Are to a wise man ports and happy havens.  
Teach thy necessity to reason thus;  
There is no virtue like necessity.  
Think not the king did banish thee,  
But thou the king: woe doth the heavier sit,  
Where it perceives it is but faintly borne.  
Go say, I sent thee forth to purchase honour,  
And not, the king exil'd thee; or suppose  
Devouring pestilence hangs in our air,  
And thou art flying to a fresher clime:  
Look, what thy soul holds dear, imagine it  
To lie that way thou go'st, not whence thou com'st:  
Suppose the singing-birds musicians,  
The grass whereon thou tread'st the presence strew'd,

The flowers fair ladies, and thy steps no more  
Than a delightful measure or a dance;  
For gnarling sorrow hath less power to bite  
The man that mocks at it and sets it light.

*Boling.* O, who can hold a fire in his hand  
By thinking on the frosty Caucasus?  
Or cloy the hungry edge of appetite  
By bare imagination of a feast?  
Or wallow naked in December snow  
By thinking on fantastic summer's heat?  
O, no! the apprehension of the good  
Gives but the greater feeling to the worse:  
Fell sorrow's tooth doth never rankle more  
Than when it bites, but lanceth not the sore.

*Gaunt.* Come, come, my son, I'll bring thee on thy way:  
Had I thy youth and cause, I would not stay.

*Boling.* Then, England's ground, farewell; sweet soil,  
adieu;  
My mother, and my nurse, that bears me yet!  
Where'er I wander, boast of this I can,—  
Though banish'd, yet a trueborn Englishman. [Exeunt.

---

SCENE IV. *The court.*

*Enter King RICHARD, BAGOT, and GREEN; AUMERLE following.*

*K. Rich.* We did observe.—Cousin Aumerle,  
How far brought you high Hereford on his way?

*Aum.* I brought high Hereford, if you call him so,  
But to the next highway, and there I left him.

*K. Rich.* And say, what store of parting tears were shed?

*Aum.* Faith, none for me; except the north-east wind,  
Which then blew bitterly against our faces,  
Awak'd the sleeping rheum, and so by chance  
Did grace our hollow parting with a tear.

*K. Rich.* What said our cousin when you parted with him?

*Aum.* "Farewell:"

And, for my heart disdain'd that my tongue  
Should so profane the word, that taught me craft

To counterfeit oppression of such grief,  
 That words seem'd buried in my sorrow's grave.  
 Marry, would the word "farewell" have lengthen'd hours,  
 And added years to his short banishment,  
 He should have had a volume of farewells;  
 But since it would not, he had none of me.

*K. Rich.* He is our cousin, cousin; but 'tis doubt,  
 When time shall call him home from banishment,  
 Whether our kinsman come to see his friends.  
 Ourselves, and Bushy, Bagot here, and Green,  
 Observ'd his courtship to the common people;  
 How he did seem to dive into their hearts  
 With humble and familiar courtesy;  
 What reverence he did throw away on slaves;  
 Wooing poor craftsmen with the craft of smiles,  
 And patient underbearing of his fortune,  
 As 'twere to banish their affects with him.  
 Off goes his bonnet to an oyster-wench;  
 A brace of draymen bid God speed him well,  
 And had the tribute of his supple knee,  
 With "Thanks, my countrymen, my loving friends;"  
 As were our England in reversion his,  
 And he our subjects' next degree in hope.

*Green.* Well, he is gone; and with him go these thoughts.  
 Now for the rebels which stand out in Ireland,—  
 Expedient manage must be made, my liege,  
 Ere further leisure yield them further means  
 For their advantage and your highness' loss.

*K. Rich.* We will ourselves in person to this war:  
 And, for our coffers,—with too great a court  
 And liberal largess,—are grown somewhat light,  
 We are enforc'd to farm our royal realm;  
 The revenue whereof shall furnish us  
 For our affairs in hand. If that come short,  
 Our substitutes at home shall have blank charters;  
 Whereto, when they shall know what men are rich,  
 They shall subscribe them for large sums of gold,  
 And send them after to supply our wants;  
 For we will make for Ireland presently.



*Enter BUSHY.*

Bushy, what news? [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Bushy.* Old John of Gaunt is grievous sick, my lord,  
Suddenly taken; and hath sent post-haste  
To entreat your majesty to visit him.

*K. Rich.* Where lies he?

*Bushy.* At Ely-house.

*K. Rich.* Now put it, God, in his physician's mind  
To help him to his grave immediately!  
The lining of his coffers shall make coats  
To deck our soldiers for these Irish wars.—  
Come, gentlemen, let's all go visit him:  
Pray God we may make haste, and come too late! [*Exeunt.*]

## ACT II.

SCENE I. *London. A room in Ely-house.*

GAUNT *on a couch; the Duke of York and others standing by him.*

*Gaunt.* Will the king come, that I may breathe my last  
In wholesome counsel to his unstaied youth?

*York.* Vex not yourself, nor strive not with your breath;  
For all in vain comes counsel to his ear.

*Gaunt.* O, but they say the tongues of dying men  
Enforce attention like deep harmony:  
Where words are scarce, they are seldom spent in vain;  
For they breathe truth that breathe their words in pain.  
He that no more must say is listen'd more

Than they whom youth and ease have taught to glose;  
More are men's ends mark'd than their lives before:

The setting sun, and music at the close,  
As the last taste of sweets, is sweetest last,  
Writ in remembrance more than things long past:  
Though Richard my life's counsel would not hear,  
My death's sad tale may yet undeaf his ear.

*York.* No ; it is stopp'd with other flattering sounds,  
 As, praises of his state : then there are found  
 Lascivious metres, to whose venom-sound  
 The open ear of youth doth always listen ;  
 Report of fashions in proud Italy,  
 Whose manners still our tardy-apish nation  
 Limp after, in base imitation.  
 Where doth the world thrust forth a vanity  
 (So it be new, there's no respect how vile),  
 That is not quickly buzz'd into his ears ?  
 Then all too late comes counsel to be heard,  
 Where will doth mutiny with wit's regard.  
 Direct not him, whose way himself will choose :  
 'Tis breath thou lack'st, and that breath wilt thou lose.

*Gaunt.* Methinks I am a prophet new inspir'd,  
 And thus, expiring, do foretell of him :  
 His rash fierce blaze of riot cannot last,  
 For violent fires soon burn out themselves ;  
 Small showers last long, but sudden storms are short ;  
 He tires betimes that spurs too fast betimes ;  
 With eager feeding food doth choke the feeder :  
 Light vanity, insatiate cormorant,  
 Consuming means, soon preys upon itself.  
 This royal throne of kings, this scepter'd isle,  
 This earth of majesty, this seat of Mars,  
 This other Eden, demi-paradise ;  
 This fortress built by Nature for herself  
 Against infection (4) and the hand of war ;  
 This happy breed of men, this little world ;  
 This precious stone set in the silver sea,  
 Which serves it in the office of a wall,  
 Or as a moat defensive to a house,  
 Against the envy of less happier lands ;  
 This blessèd plot, this earth, this realm, this England,  
 This nurse, this teeming womb of royal kings,  
 Fear'd by their breed, and famous by their birth,  
 Renownèd for their deeds as far from home  
 (For Christian service and true chivalry)  
 As is the sepulchre in stubborn Jewry

Of the world's ransom, blessèd Mary's Son ;—  
 This land of such dear souls, this dear dear land,  
 Dear for her reputation through the world,  
 Is now leas'd out (I die pronouncing it),  
 Like to a tenement or pelting farm :  
 England, bound in with the triumphant sea,  
 Whose rocky shore beats back the envious siege  
 Of watery Neptune, is now bound in with shame,  
 With inky blots, and rotten parchment bonds :  
 That England, that was wont to conquer others,  
 Hath made a shameful conquest of itself.  
 Ah, would the scandal vanish with my life,  
 How happy then were my ensuing death !

*Enter King RICHARD and Queen, AUMERLE, BUSHY, GREEN, BAGOT,  
 ROSS, and WILLOUGHBY.*

*York.* The king is come : deal mildly with his youth ;  
 For young hot colts being rag'd<sup>(5)</sup> do rage the more.

*Queen.* How fares our noble uncle, Lancaster ?

*K. Rich.* What comfort, man ? how is't with aged Gaunt ?

*Gaunt.* O, how that name befits my composition !

Old Gaunt, indeed ; and gaunt in being old :  
 Within me grief hath kept a tedious fast ;  
 And who abstains from meat, that is not gaunt ?  
 For sleeping England long time have I watch'd ;  
 Watching breeds leanness, leanness is all gaunt :  
 The pleasure that some fathers feed upon,  
 Is my strict fast,—I mean, my children's looks ;  
 And therein fasting, hast thou made me gaunt :  
 Gaunt am I for the grave, gaunt as a grave,  
 Whose hollow womb inherits naught but bones.

*K. Rich.* Can sick men play so nicely with their names ?

*Gaunt.* No, misery makes sport to mock itself :  
 Since thou dost seek to kill my name in me,  
 I mock my name, great king, to flatter thee.

*K. Rich.* Should dying men flatter with those that live ?

*Gaunt.* No, no, men living flatter those that die.

*K. Rich.* Thou, now a-dying, say'st thou flatter'st me.

*Gaunt.* O, no ! thou diest, though I the sicker be.

*K. Rich.* I am in health, I breathe, and see thee ill.

*Gaunt.* Now, He that made me knows I see thee ill;  
 Ill in myself to see, and in thee seeing ill.  
 Thy death-bed is no lesser than the land  
 Wherein thou liest in reputation sick ;  
 And thou, too careless patient as thou art,  
 Committ'st thy anointed body to the cure  
 Of those physicians that first wounded thee :  
 A thousand flatterers sit within thy crown,  
 Whose compass is no bigger than thy head ;  
 And yet, incagèd in so small a verge,  
 The waste is no whit lesser than thy land.  
 O, had thy grandsire, with a prophet's eye,  
 Seen how his son's son should destroy his sons,  
 From forth thy reach he would have laid thy shame,  
 Deposing thee before thou wert possess'd,  
 Which art possess'd now to depose thyself.  
 Why, cousin, wert thou regent of the world,  
 It were a shame to let this land by lease ;  
 But for thy world enjoying but this land,  
 Is it not more than shame to shame it so ?  
 Landlord of England art thou now, not king :  
 Thy state of law is bonds slave to the law ;  
 And—

*K. Rich.* And thou a lunatic lean-witted fool,  
 Presuming on an ague's privilege,  
 Dar'st with thy frozen admonition  
 Make pale our cheek, chasing the royal blood  
 With fury from his native residence.  
 Now, by my seat's right royal majesty,  
 Wert thou not brother to great Edward's son,  
 This tongue that runs so roundly in thy head  
 Should run thy head from thy unreverend shoulders.

*Gaunt.* O, spare me not, my brother Edward's son,  
 For that I was his father Edward's son ;—  
 That blood already, like the pelican,  
 Hast thou tapp'd out, and drunkenly carous'd :  
 My brother Gloster, plain well-meaning soul,  
 (Whom fair befall in heaven 'mongst happy souls !)

May be a precedent and witness good  
 That thou respect'st not spilling Edward's blood :  
 Join with the present sickness that I have ;  
 And thy unkindness be like crookèd age,  
 To crop at once a too-long wither'd flower.  
 Live in thy shame, but die not shame with thee !—  
 These words hereafter thy tormentors be !—  
 Convey me to my bed, then to my grave :  
 Love they to live that love and honour have.

[*Exit, borne out by his Attendants.*]

*K. Rich.* And let them die that age and sullens have ;  
 For both hast thou, and both become the grave.

*York.* I do beseech your majesty, impute his words  
 To wayward sickliness and age in him :  
 He loves you, on my life, and holds you dear  
 As Harry Duke of Hereford, were he here.

*K. Rich.* Right, you say true : as Hereford's love, so his ;  
 As theirs, so mine ; and all be as it is.

*Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.*

*North.* My liege, old Gaunt commends him to your ma-  
 jesty.

*K. Rich.* What says he ?

*North.* Nay, nothing ; all is said :  
 His tongue is now a stringless instrument ;  
 Words, life, and all, old Lancaster hath spent.

*York.* Be York the next that must be bankrupt so !  
 Though death be poor, it ends a mortal woe.

*K. Rich.* The ripest fruit first falls, and so doth he ;  
 His time is spent, our pilgrimage must be :  
 So much for that.—Now for our Irish wars :  
 We must supplant those rough rug-headed kerns,  
 Which live like venom, where no venom else,  
 But only they, hath privilege to live.  
 And for these great affairs do ask some charge,  
 Towards our assistance we do seize to us  
 The plate, coin, revenues, and movables,  
 Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd.

*York.* How long shall I be patient ? ah, how long

Shall tender duty make me suffer wrong ?  
 Not Gloster's death, nor Hereford's banishment,  
 Not Gaunt's rebukes, nor England's private wrongs,  
 Nor the prevention of poor Bolingbroke  
 About his marriage, nor my own disgrace,  
 Have ever made me sour my patient cheek,  
 Or bend one wrinkle on my sovereign's face.  
 I am the last of noble Edward's sons,  
 Of whom thy father, Prince of Wales, was first :  
 In war was never lion rag'd more fierce,  
 In peace was never gentle lamb more mild,  
 Than was that young and princely gentleman.  
 His face thou hast, for even so look'd he,  
 Accomplish'd with the number of thy hours ;  
 But when he frown'd, it was against the French,  
 And not against his friends : his noble hand  
 Did win what he did spend, and spent not that  
 Which his triumphant father's hand had won :  
 His hands were guilty of no kindred's blood,  
 But bloody with the enemies of his kin.  
 O Richard ! York is too far gone with grief,  
 Or else he never would compare between.

*K. Rich.* Why, uncle, what's the matter ?

*York.*

O my liege,

Pardon me, if you please ; if not, I, pleas'd  
 Not to be pardon'd, am content withal.  
 Seek you to seize, and gripe into your hands,  
 The royalties and rights of banish'd Hereford ?  
 Is not Gaunt dead ? and doth not Hereford live ?  
 Was not Gaunt just ? and is not Harry true ?  
 Did not the one deserve to have an heir ?  
 Is not his heir a well-deserving son ?  
 Take Hereford's rights away, and take from time  
 His charters and his customary rights ;  
 Let not to-morrow, then, ensue to-day ;  
 Be not thyself,—for how art thou a king  
 But by fair sequence and succession ?  
 Now, afore God (God forbid I say true !)  
 If you do wrongfully seize Hereford's rights,

Call in the letters-patents that he hath  
 By his attorneys-general to sue  
 His livery, and deny his offer'd homage,  
 You pluck a thousand dangers on your head,  
 You lose a thousand well-disposèd hearts,  
 And prick my tender patience to those thoughts  
 Which honour and allegiance cannot think.

*K. Rich.* Think what you will, we seize into our hands  
 His plate, his goods, his money, and his lands.

*York.* I'll not be by the while : my liege, farewell :  
 What will ensue hereof, there's none can tell ;  
 But by bad courses may be understood  
 That their events can never fall out good. [Exit.

*K. Rich.* Go, Bushy, to the Earl of Wiltshire straight :  
 Bid him repair to us to Ely-house  
 To see this business. To-morrow next  
 We will for Ireland ; and 'tis time, I trow :  
 And we create, in absence of ourself,  
 Our uncle York lord governor of England ;  
 For he is just, and always lov'd us well.—  
 Come on, our queen : to-morrow must we part ;  
 Be merry, for our time of stay is short.

[*Flourish.* *Exeunt King, Queen, Aumerle,*  
*Bushy, Green, and Bagot.*

*North.* Well, lords, the Duke of Lancaster is dead.

*Ross.* And living too ; for now his son is duke.

*Willo.* Barely in title, not in revenue.

*North.* Richly in both, if justice had her right.

*Ross.* My heart is great ; but it must break with silence,  
 Ere 't be disburden'd with a liberal tongue.

*North.* Nay, speak thy mind ; and let him ne'er speak more  
 That speaks thy words again to do thee harm !

*Willo.* Tends that thou wouldst speak to the Duke of  
 Hereford ?

If it be so, out with it boldly, man ;  
 Quick is mine ear to hear of good towards him.

*Ross.* No good at all, that I can do for him ;  
 Unless you call it good to pity him,  
 Bereft and gelded of his patrimony.

*North.* Now, afore God, 'tis shame such wrongs are borne  
 In him a royal prince and many more  
 Of noble blood in this declining land.  
 The king is not himself, but basely led  
 By flatterers; and what they will inform,  
 Merely in hate, 'gainst any of us all,  
 That will the king severely prosecute  
 'Gainst us, our lives,<sup>(6)</sup> our children, and our heirs.

*Ross.* The commons hath he pill'd with grievous taxes,  
 And quite lost their hearts: the nobles hath he fin'd  
 For ancient quarrels, and quite lost their hearts.

*Willo.* And daily new exactions are devis'd,—  
 As blanks, benevolences, and I wot not what:  
 But what, o' God's name, doth become of this?

*North.* Wars have not wasted it, for warr'd he hath not,  
 But basely yielded upon compromise  
 That which his ancestors achiev'd with blows:  
 More hath he spent in peace than they in wars.

*Ross.* The Earl of Wiltshire hath the realm in farm.

*Willo.* The king's grown bankrupt, like a broken man.

*North.* Reproach and dissolution hangeth over him.

*Ross.* He hath not money for these Irish wars,  
 His burdenous taxations notwithstanding,  
 But by the robbing of the banish'd duke.

*North.* His noble kinsman:—most degenerate king!  
 But, lords, we hear this fearful tempest sing,  
 Yet seek no shelter to avoid the storm;  
 We see the wind sit sore upon our sails,  
 And yet we strike not, but securely perish.

*Ross.* We see the very wreck that we must suffer;  
 And unavoided is the danger now,  
 For suffering so the causes of our wreck.

*North.* Not so; even through the hollow eyes of death  
 I spy life peering; but I dare not say  
 How near the tidings of our comfort is.

*Willo.* Nay, let us share thy thoughts, as thou dost  
 ours.

*Ross.* Be confident to speak, Northumberland:  
 We three are but thyself; and, speaking so,



Thy words are but as (?) thoughts; therefore, be bold.

*North.* Then thus:—I have from Port le Blanc, a bay  
In Brittany, receiv'd intelligence  
That Harry Duke of Hereford, Renald Lord Cobham,<sup>(8)</sup>  
That late broke from the Duke of Exeter,  
His brother, Archbishop late of Canterbury,  
Sir Thomas Erpingham, Sir John Ramston,  
Sir John Norbery, Sir Robert Waterton, and Francis Quoint,—  
All these well furnish'd by the Duke of Bretagne,  
With eight tall ships, three thousand men of war,  
Are making hither with all due expedience,  
And shortly mean to touch our northern shore:  
Perhaps they had ere this, but that they stay  
The first departing of the king for Ireland.  
If, then, we shall shake off our slavish yoke,  
Imp out our drooping country's broken wing,  
Redeem from broking pawn the blemish'd crown,  
Wipe off the dust that hides our sceptre's gilt,  
And make high majesty look like itself,  
Away with me in post to Ravenspurgh;  
But if you faint, as fearing to do so,  
Stay and be secret, and myself will go.

*Ross.* To horse, to horse! urge doubts to them that fear.

*Will.* Hold out my horse, and I will first be there.

[*Exeunt.*

---

SCENE II. *The same. A room in the palace.*

*Enter Queen, BUSHY, and BAGOT.*

*Bushy.* Madam, your majesty is too much sad:  
You promis'd, when you parted with the king,  
To lay aside life-harming heaviness,  
And entertain a cheerful disposition.

*Queen.* To please the king, I did; to please myself,  
I cannot do it; yet I know no cause  
Why I should welcome such a guest as grief,  
Save bidding farewell to so sweet a guest

As my sweet Richard: yet, again, methinks  
 Some unborn sorrow, ripe in fortune's womb,  
 Is coming towards me; and my inward soul  
 With nothing trembles: at some thing it grieves,  
 More than with parting from my lord the king.

*Bushy.* Each substance of a grief hath twenty shadows,  
 Which show like grief itself, but are not so;  
 For sorrow's eye, glazed with blinding tears,  
 Divides one thing entire to many objects;  
 Like perspectives, which rightly gaz'd upon,  
 Show nothing but confusion,—ey'd awry,  
 Distinguish form: so your sweet majesty,  
 Looking awry upon your lord's departure,  
 Finds shapes of grief, more than himself, to wail;  
 Which, look'd on as it is, is naught but shadows  
 Of what it is not. Then, thrice-gracious queen,  
 More than your lord's departure weep not,—more's not seen;  
 Or if it be, 'tis with false sorrow's eye,  
 Which for things true weeps things imaginary.

*Queen.* It may be so; but yet my inward soul  
 Persuades me it is otherwise: howe'er it be,  
 I cannot but be sad; so heavy sad,  
 As,—though, on<sup>(9)</sup> thinking, on no thought I think,—  
 Makes me with heavy nothing faint and shrink.

*Bushy.* 'Tis nothing but conceit, my gracious lady.

*Queen.* 'Tis nothing less: conceit is still deriv'd  
 From some forefather grief; mine is not so,  
 For nothing hath begot my something grief;  
 Or something hath the nothing that I grieve:  
 'Tis in reversion that I do possess;  
 But what it is, that is not yet known; what  
 I cannot name; 'tis nameless woe, I wot.

*Enter GREEN.*

*Green.* God save your majesty!—and well met, gentlemen:—

I hope the king is not yet shipp'd for Ireland.

*Queen.* Why hop'st thou so? 'tis better hope he is;  
 For his designs crave haste, his haste good hope:

Then wherefore dost thou hope he is not shipp'd ?

*Green.* That he, our hope, might have retir'd his power,  
And driven into despair an enemy's hope,  
Who strongly hath set footing in this land :  
The banish'd Bolingbroke repeals himself,  
And with uplifted arms is safe arriv'd  
At Ravenspurg.

*Queen.* Now God in heaven forbid !

*Green.* O madam, 'tis too true : and that is worse,  
The Lord Northumberland, his son young Henry Percy,  
The Lords of Ross, Beaumont, and Willoughby,  
With all their powerful friends, are fled to him.

*Bushy.* Why have you not proclaim'd Northumberland,  
And all the rest of the revolted faction,  
Traitors ?

*Green.* We have : whereupon the Earl of Worcester  
Hath broke his staff, resign'd his stewardship,  
And all the household servants fled with him  
To Bolingbroke.

*Queen.* So, Green, thou art the midwife to my woe,  
And Bolingbroke my sorrow's dismal heir :  
Now hath my soul brought forth her prodigy ;  
And I, a gasping new-deliver'd mother,  
Have woe to woe, sorrow to sorrow join'd.

*Bushy.* Despair not, madam.

*Queen.* Who shall hinder me ?

I will despair, and be at enmity  
With cozening hope,—he is a flatterer,  
A parasite, a keeper-back of death,  
Who gently would dissolve the bands of life,  
Which false hope lingers in extremity.

*Green.* Here comes the Duke of York.

*Queen.* With signs of war about his aged neck :  
O, full of careful business are his looks !

*Enter YORK.*

Uncle, for God's sake, speak comfortable words.

*York.* Should I do so, I should belie my thoughts :  
Comfort's in heaven ; and we are on the earth,

Where nothing lives but crosses, care, and grief.  
 Your husband, he is gone to save far off,  
 Whilst others come to make him lose at home :  
 Here am I left to underprop his land,  
 Who, weak with age, cannot support myself :  
 Now comes the sick hour that his surfeit made ;  
 Now shall he try his friends that flatter'd him.

*Enter a Servant.*

*Serv.* My lord, your son was gone before I came.

*York.* He was ?—Why, so !—go all which way it will !—  
 The nobles they are fled, the commons they are cold,  
 And will, I fear, revolt on Hereford's side.—  
 Sirrah, get thee to Plashy, to my sister Gloster ;  
 Bid her send me presently a thousand pound :—  
 Hold, take my ring.

*Serv.* My lord, I had forgot to tell your lordship,  
 To-day, as I came by, I callèd there ;—  
 But I shall grieve you to report the rest.

*York.* What is 't, knave ?

*Serv.* An hour before I came, the duchess died.

*York.* God for his mercy ! what a tide of woes  
 Comes rushing on this woeful land at once !  
 I know not what to do :—I would to God  
 (So my untruth had not provok'd him to it),  
 The king had cut off my head with my brother's.—  
 What, are there no posts dispatch'd for Ireland ?—  
 How shall we do for money for these wars ?—  
 Come, sister,—cousin, I would say,—pray, pardon me.—  
 Go, fellow [*to the Servant*], get thee home, provide some  
 carts,

And bring away the armour that is there. [*Exit Servant.*]  
 Gentlemen,<sup>(10)</sup> will you go muster men ? If I know  
 How or which way to order these affairs,  
 Thus thrust disorderly into my hands,  
 Never believe me. Both are my kinsmen :—  
 The one is my sovereign, whom both my oath  
 And duty bids defend ; the other, again,  
 Is my kinsman, whom the king hath wrong'd,

Whom conscience and my kindred bids to right.  
 Well, somewhat we must do.—Come, cousin, I'll  
 Dispose of you.—Gentlemen, go, muster up your men,  
 And meet me presently at Berkley-castle.  
 I should to Plashy too ;—  
 But time will not permit :—all is uneven,  
 And every thing is left at six and seven.

[*Exeunt York and Queen.*]

*Bushy.* The wind sits fair for news to go to Ireland,  
 But none returns. For us to levy power  
 Proportionable to the enemy  
 Is all impossible.

*Green.* Besides, our nearness to the king in love  
 Is near the hate of those love not the king.

*Bagot.* And that's the wavering commons : for their love  
 Lies in their purses ; and whoso empties them,  
 By so much fills their hearts with deadly hate.

*Bushy.* Wherein the king stands generally condemn'd.

*Bagot.* If judgment lie in them, then so do we,  
 Because we ever have been near the king.

*Green.* Well,  
 I will for refuge straight to Bristol-castle :  
 The Earl of Wiltshire is already there.

*Bushy.* Thither will I with you ; for little office  
 The hateful commons will<sup>(11)</sup> perform for us,  
 Except like curs to tear us all to pieces.—  
 Will you go along with us ?

*Bagot.* No ;  
 I will to Ireland to his majesty.  
 Farewell : if heart's presages be not vain,  
 We three here part that ne'er shall meet again.

*Bushy.* That's as York thrives to beat back Bolingbroke.

*Green.* Alas, poor duke ! the task he undertakes  
 Is numbering sands, and drinking oceans dry :  
 Where one on his side fights, thousands will fly.  
 Farewell at once,—for once, for all, and ever.

*Bushy.* Well, we may meet again.

*Bagot.*

I fear me, never.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *The wilds in Glostershire.*

*Enter BOLINGBROKE and NORTHUMBERLAND, with Forces.*

*Boling.* How far is it, my lord, to Berkley now ?

*North.* Believe me, noble lord,

I am a stranger here in Glostershire :

These high wild hills and rough uneven ways  
Draw our miles, and make them wearisome ;  
And yet your fair discourse hath been as sugar,  
Making the hard way sweet and délectable.

But I bethink me what a weary way  
From Ravenspurg to Cotswold will be found  
In Ross and Willoughby, wanting your company,  
Which, I protest, hath very much beguil'd  
The tediousness and process of my travel :  
But theirs is sweeten'd with the hope to have  
The present benefit which I possess ;  
And hope to joy is little less in joy  
Than hope enjoy'd : by this the weary lords  
Shall make their way seem short ; as mine hath done  
By sight of what I have, your noble company.

*Boling.* Of much less value is my company  
Than your good words.—But who comes here ?

*North.* It is my son, young Harry Percy,  
Sent from my brother Worcester, whencesoever.

*Enter PERCY.*

Harry, how fares your uncle ?

*Percy.* I had thought, my lord, to have learn'd his health  
of you.

*North.* Why, is he not with the queen ?

*Percy.* No, my good lord ; he hath forsook the court,  
Broken his staff of office, and dispers'd  
The household of the king.

*North.* What was his reason ?  
He was not so resolv'd when last we spake together.

*Percy.* Because your lordship was proclaimèd traitor.  
But he, my lord, is gone to Ravenspurg,  
To offer service to the Duke of Hereford ;

And sent me over by Berkley, to discover  
 What power the Duke of York had levied there ;  
 Then with direction to repair to Ravenspurgh.

*North.* Have you forgot the Duke of Hereford, boy ?

*Percy.* No, my good lord ; for that is not forgot  
 Which ne'er I did remember : to my knowledge,  
 I never in my life did look on him.

*North.* Then learn to know him now ; this is the duke.

*Percy.* My gracious lord, I tender you my service,  
 Such as it is, being tender, raw, and young ;  
 Which elder days shall ripen, and confirm  
 To more approvèd service and desert.

*Boling.* I thank thee, gentle Percy ; and be sure  
 I count myself in nothing else so happy  
 As in a soul remembering my good friends ;  
 And, as my fortune ripens with thy love,  
 It shall be still thy true love's recompense :  
 My heart this covenant makes, my hand thus seals it.

*North.* How far is it to Berkley ? and what stir  
 Keeps good old York there with his men of war ?

*Percy.* There stands the castle, by yond tuft of trees,  
 Mann'd with three hundred men, as I have heard ;  
 And in it are the Lords of York, Berkley, and Seymour,—  
 None else of name and noble estimate.

*North.* Here come the Lords of Ross and Willoughby,  
 Bloody with spurring, fiery-red with haste.

*Enter ROSS and WILLOUGHBY.*

*Boling.* Welcome, my lords. I wot your love pursues  
 A banish'd traitor : all my treasury  
 Is yet but unfelt thanks, which, more enrich'd,  
 Shall be your love and labour's recompense.

*Ross.* Your presence makes us rich, most noble lord.

*Will.* And far surmounts our labour to attain it.

*Boling.* Evermore thanks, the exchequer of the poor ;  
 Which, till my infant fortune comes to years,  
 Stands for my bounty.—But who comes here ?

*North.* It is my Lord of Berkley, as I guess.

*Enter BERKLEY.*

*Berk.* My Lord of Hereford, my message is to you.

*Boling.* My lord, my answer is—to Lancaster ;  
And I am come to seek that name in England ;  
And I must find that title in your tongue,  
Before I make reply to aught you say.

*Berk.* Mistake me not, my lord ; 'tis not my meaning  
To raze one title of your honour out :—  
To you, my lord, I come (what lord you will),  
From the most gracious regent of this land,  
The Duke of York, to know what pricks you on  
To take advantage of the absent time,  
And fright our native peace with self-born arms.

*Boling.* I shall not need transport my words by you ;  
Here comes his grace in person.

*Enter YORK attended.*

My noble uncle ! [*Kneels.*]

*York.* Show me thy humble heart, and not thy knee,  
Whose duty is deceivable and false.

*Boling.* My gracious uncle !—

*York.* Tut, tut !

Grace me no grace, nor uncle me no uncle :  
I am no traitor's uncle ; and that word " grace "  
In an ungracious mouth is but profane.  
Why have those banish'd and forbidden legs  
Dar'd once to touch a dust of England's ground ?  
But, then, more why,—why have they dar'd to march  
So many miles upon her peaceful bosom,  
Frighting her pale-fac'd villages with war  
And ostentation of despisèd arms ?  
Com'st thou because the anointed king is hence ?  
Why, foolish boy, the king is left behind,  
And in my loyal bosom lies his power.  
Were I but now the lord of such hot youth  
As when brave Gaunt thy father, and myself,  
Rescu'd the Black Prince, that young Mars of men,



From forth the ranks of many thousand French,  
 O, then, how quickly should this arm of mine,  
 Now prisoner to the palsy, chastise thee,  
 And minister correction to thy fault!

*Boling.* My gracious uncle, let me know my fault ;  
 On what condition stands it and wherein ?

*York.* Even in condition of the worst degree,—  
 In gross rebellion and detested treason :  
 Thou art a banish'd man ; and here art come  
 Before the expiration of thy time,  
 In braving arms against thy sovereign.

*Boling.* As I was banish'd, I was banish'd Hereford ;  
 But as I come, I come for Lancaster.  
 And, noble uncle, I beseech your grace  
 Look on my wrongs with an indifferent eye :  
 You are my father, for methinks in you  
 I see old Gaunt alive ; O, then, my father,  
 Will you permit that I shall stand condemn'd  
 A wandering vagabond ; my rights and royalties  
 Pluck'd from my arms perforce, and given away  
 To upstart unthrifths ? Wherefore was I born ?  
 If that my cousin king be King of England,  
 It must be granted I am Duke of Lancaster.  
 You have a son, Aumerle, my noble kinsman ;  
 Had you first died, and he been thus trod down,  
 He should have found his uncle Gaunt a father,  
 To rouse his wrongs, and chase them to the bay.  
 I am denied to sue my livery here,  
 And yet my letters-patents give me leave :  
 My father's goods are all distrain'd and sold ;  
 And these and all are all amiss employ'd.  
 What would you have me do ? I am a subject,  
 And challenge law : attorneys are denied me ;  
 And therefore personally I lay my claim  
 To my inheritance of free descent.

*North.* The noble duke hath been too much abus'd.

*Ross.* It stands your grace upon to do him right.

*Will.* Base men by his endowments are made great.

*York.* My lords of England, let me tell you this :—

I have had feeling of my cousin's wrongs,  
 And labour'd all I could to do him right;  
 But in this kind to come, in braving arms,  
 Be his own carver, and cut out his way,  
 To find out right with wrong,—it may not be;  
 And you that do abet him in this kind  
 Cherish rebellion and are rebels all.

*North.* The noble duke hath sworn his coming is  
 But for his own; and for the right of that  
 We all have strongly sworn to give him aid;  
 And let him ne'er see joy that breaks that oath!

*York.* Well, well, I see the issue of these arms;—  
 I cannot mend it, I must needs confess,  
 Because my power is weak and all ill left:  
 But if I could, by him that gave me life,  
 I would attach you all, and make you stoop  
 Unto the sovereign mercy of the king;  
 But since I cannot, be it known to you  
 I do remain as neuter. So, fare you well;—  
 Unless you please to enter in the castle,  
 And there repose you for this night.

*Boling.* An offer, uncle, that we will accept:  
 But we must win your grace to go with us  
 To Bristol-castle, which they say is held  
 By Bushy, Bagot, and their complices,  
 The caterpillars of the commonwealth,  
 Which I have sworn to weed and pluck away.

*York.* It may be I will go with you:—but yet I'll pause;  
 For I am loth to break our country's laws.  
 Nor friends nor foes, to me welcome you are:  
 Things past redress are now with me past care. [Exeunt.]

---

SCENE IV. *A camp in Wales.*

*Enter SALISBURY and a Captain.*

*Cap.* My Lord of Salisbury, we have stay'd ten days,  
 And hardly kept our countrymen together, .

And yet we hear no tidings from the king ;  
Therefore we will disperse ourselves : farewell.

*Sal.* Stay yet another day, thou trusty Welshman :  
The king reposes all his confidence in thee.

*Cap.* 'Tis thought the king is dead ; we will not stay.  
The bay-trees in our country all are wither'd,  
And meteors fright the fixèd stars of heaven ;  
The pale-fac'd moon looks bloody on the earth,  
And lean-look'd prophets whisper fearful change ;  
Rich men look sad, and ruffians dance and leap,—  
The one in fear to lose what they enjoy,  
The other to enjoy by rage and war :  
These signs forerun the death or fall of kings.—  
Farewell : our countrymen are gone and fled,  
As well assur'd Richard their king is dead.

[*Exit.*

*Sal.* Ah, Richard, with the eyes of heavy mind,  
I see thy glory, like a shooting star,  
Fall to the base earth from the firmament !  
The sun sets weeping in the lowly west,  
Witnessing storms to come, woe, and unrest :  
Thy friends are fled, to wait upon thy foes ;  
And crossly to thy good all fortune goes.

[*Exit.*

---

## ACT III.

### SCENE I. BOLINGBROKE'S camp at Bristol.

*Enter* BOLINGBROKE, YORK, NORTHUMBERLAND, PERCY, WILLOUGHBY,  
ROSS : Officers *behind, with* BUSHY and GREEN, prisoners.

*Boling.* Bring forth these men.—

Bushy and Green, I will not vex your souls  
(Since presently your souls must part your bodies)  
With too much urging your pernicious lives,  
For 'twere no charity ; yet, to wash your blood  
From off my hands, here, in the view of men,

I will unfold some causes of your deaths.  
 You have misled a prince, a royal king,  
 A happy gentleman in blood and lineaments,  
 By you unhappied and disfigur'd clean :  
 You have in manner with your sinful hours  
 Made a divorce betwixt his queen and him ;  
 Broke the possession of a royal bed,  
 And stain'd the beauty of a fair queen's cheeks  
 With tears drawn from her eyes by your foul wrongs.  
 Myself,—a prince by fortune of my birth,  
 Near to the king in blood, and near in love  
 Till you did make him misinterpret me,—  
 Have stoop'd my neck under your injuries,  
 And sigh'd my English breath in foreign clouds,  
 Eating the bitter bread of banishment ;  
 Whilst you have fed upon my signories,  
 Dispark'd my parks, and fell'd my forest-woods,  
 From mine own windows torn my household coat,  
 Raz'd out my impress, leaving me no sign,  
 Save men's opinions and my living blood,  
 To show the world I am a gentleman.  
 This and much more, much more than twice all this,  
 Condemns you to the death.—See them deliver'd over  
 To execution and the hand of death.

*Bushy.* More welcome is the stroke of death to me  
 Than Bolingbroke to England.—Lords, farewell.

*Green.* My comfort is, that heaven will take our souls,  
 And plague injustice with the pains of hell.

*Boling.* My Lord Northumberland, see them dispatch'd.

[*Exeunt Northumberland and others, with prisoners.*]

Uncle, you say the queen is at your house ;  
 For God's sake, fairly let her be entreated :  
 Tell her I send to her my kind commends ;  
 Take special care my greetings be deliver'd.

*York.* A gentleman of mine I have dispatch'd  
 With letters of your love to her at large.

*Boling.* Thanks, gentle uncle.—Come, lords, away,  
 To fight with Glendower and his complices :  
 Awhile to work, and after holiday.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *The coast of Wales. A castle in view.*

*Flourish ; drums and trumpets. Enter King RICHARD, the Bishop of Carlisle, AUMERLE, and Soldiers.*

*K. Rich.* Barkloughly-castle call they this at hand ?

*Aum.* Yea, my lord. How brooks your grace the air,  
After your late tossing on the breaking seas ?

*K. Rich.* Needs must I like it well : I weep for joy  
To stand upon my kingdom once again.—  
Dear earth, I do salute thee with my hand,  
Though rebels wound thee with their horses' hoofs :  
As a long-parted mother with her child  
Plays fondly with her tears and smiles in meeting,  
So, weeping-smiling, greet I thee, my earth,  
And do thee favour with my royal hands.  
Feed not thy sovereign's foe, my gentle earth,  
Nor with thy sweets comfort his ravenous sense ;  
But let thy spiders, that suck up thy venom,  
And heavy-gaited toads, lie in their way,  
Doing annoyance to the treacherous feet  
Which with usurping steps do trample thee :  
Yield stinging-nettles to mine enemies ;  
And when they from thy bosom pluck a flower,  
Guard it, I pray thee, with a lurking adder,  
Whose double tongue may with a mortal touch  
Throw death upon thy sovereign's enemies.—  
Mock not my senseless conjuration, lords :  
This earth shall have a feeling, and these stones  
Prove armèd soldiers, ere her native king  
Shall falter under foul rebellion's arms.

*Car.* Fear not, my lord : that Power that made you  
king

Hath power to keep you king in spite of all.  
The means that heaven yields must be embrac'd,  
And not neglected ; else, if heaven would,  
And we will not, heaven's offer we refuse,  
The proffer'd means of succour and redress.

*Aum.* He means, my lord, that we are too remiss ;

Whilst Bolingbroke, through our security,  
Grows strong and great in substance and in friends.

*K. Rich.* Discomfortable cousin! know'st thou not  
That when the searching eye of heaven is hid  
Behind the globe, that<sup>(12)</sup> lights the lower world,  
Then thieves and robbers range abroad unseen,  
In murders and in outrage, boldly<sup>(13)</sup> here;  
But when, from under this terrestrial ball,  
He fires the proud tops of the eastern pines,  
And darts his light through every guilty hole,  
Then murders, treasons, and detested sins,  
The cloak of night being pluck'd from off their backs,  
Stand bare and naked, trembling at themselves?  
So when this thief, this traitor, Bolingbroke,—  
Who all this while hath revell'd in the night,  
Whilst we were wandering with the Antipodes,—  
Shall see us rising in our throne, the east,  
His treasons will sit blushing in his face,  
Not able to endure the sight of day,  
But self-affrighted tremble at his sin.  
Not all the water in the rough rude sea  
Can wash the balm from an anointed king;  
The breath of worldly men cannot depose  
The deputy elected by the Lord:  
For every man that Bolingbroke hath press'd  
To lift shrewd steel against our golden crown,  
God for his Richard hath in heavenly pay  
A glorious angel: then, if angels fight,  
Weak men must fall; for heaven still guards the right.

*Enter SALISBURY.*

Welcome, my lord: how far off lies your power?

*Sal.* Nor near nor further off, my gracious lord,  
Than this weak arm: discomfort guides my tongue,  
And bids me speak of nothing but despair.  
One day too late, I fear, my noble lord,  
Hath clouded all thy happy days on earth:  
O, call back yesterday, bid time return,  
And thou shalt have twelve thousand fighting men!

To-day, to-day, unhappy day, too late,  
 O'erthrows thy joys, friends, fortune, and thy state ;  
 For all the Welshmen, hearing thou wert dead,  
 Are gone to Bolingbroke, dispers'd, and fled.

*Aum.* Comfort, my liege : why looks your grace so pale ?

*K. Rich.* But now the blood of twenty thousand men

Did triumph in my face, and they are fled ;

And, till so much blood thither come again,

Have I not reason to look pale and dead ?

All souls that will be safe fly from my side ;

For time hath set a blot upon my pride.

*Aum.* Comfort, my liege ; remember who you are.

*K. Rich.* I had forgot myself : am I not king ?

Awake, thou sluggard majesty ! thou sleepest.

Is not the king's name forty thousand names ?

Arm, arm, my name ! a puny subject strikes

At thy great glory.—Look not to the ground,

Ye favourites of a king : are we not high ?

High be our thoughts : I know my uncle York

Hath power enough to serve our turn.—But who comes here ?

*Enter SCROOP.*

*Scroop.* More health and happiness betide my liege  
 Than can my care-tun'd tongue deliver him !

*K. Rich.* Mine ear is open and my heart prepar'd :

The worst is worldly loss thou canst unfold.

Say, is my kingdom lost ? why, 'twas my care ;

And what loss is it to be rid of care ?

Strives Bolingbroke to be as great as we ?

Greater he shall not be ; if he serve God,

We'll serve him too, and be his fellow so :

Revolt our subjects ? that we cannot mend ;

They break their faith to God, as well as us :

Cry woe, destruction, ruin, loss, decay ;

The worst is death, and death will have his day.

*Scroop.* Glad am I that your highness is so arm'd  
 To bear the tidings of calamity.

Like an unseasonable stormy day,

Which makes the silver rivers drown their shores,

As if the world were all dissolv'd to tears ;  
 So high above his limits swells the rage  
 Of Bolingbroke, covering your fearful land  
 With hard bright steel, and hearts harder than steel.  
 White-beards have arm'd their thin and hairless scalps  
 Against thy majesty ; and boys, with women's voices,  
 Strive to speak big, and clap their female<sup>(14)</sup> joints  
 In stiff unwieldy arms against thy crown :  
 Thy very beadsmen learn to bend their bows  
 Of double-fatal yew against thy state ;  
 Yea, distaff-women manage rusty bills  
 Against thy seat : both young and old rebel,  
 And all goes worse than I have power to tell.

*K. Rich.* Too well, too well thou tell'st a tale so ill.  
 Where is the Earl of Wiltshire ? where is Bagot ?  
 What is become of Bushy ? where is Green ?  
 That they have let the dangerous enemy  
 Measure our confines with such peaceful steps ?  
 If we prevail, their heads shall pay for it :  
 I warrant they have made peace with Bolingbroke.

*Scroop.* Peace have they made with him, indeed, my lord.

*K. Rich.* O villains, vipers, damn'd without redemption !  
 Dogs, easily won to fawn on any man !  
 Snakes, in my heart-blood warm'd, that sting my heart !  
 Three Judases, each one thrice worse than Judas !  
 Would they make peace ? terrible hell make war  
 Upon their spotted souls for this offence !

*Scroop.* Sweet love, I see, changing his property,  
 Turns to the sourest and most deadly hate :—  
 Again uncurse their souls ; their peace is made  
 With heads, and not with hands : those whom you curse  
 Have felt the worst of death's destroying wound,  
 And lie full low, grav'd in the hollow ground.

*Aum.* Is Bushy, Green, and the Earl of Wiltshire dead ?

*Scroop.* Yea, all of them at Bristol lost their heads.

*Aum.* Where is the duke my father with his power ?

*K. Rich.* No matter where ;—of comfort no man speak :  
 Let's talk of graves, of worms, and epitaphs ;  
 Make dust our paper, and with rainy eyes



Write sorrow on the bosom of the earth.  
Let's choose executors, and talk of wills :  
And yet not so,—for what can we bequeath,  
Save our deposèd bodies to the ground ?  
Our lands, our lives, and all are Bolingbroke's,  
And nothing can we call our own but death,  
And that small model of the barren earth  
Which serves as paste and cover to our bones.  
For God's sake, let us sit upon the ground,  
And tell sad stories of the death of kings :—  
How some have been depos'd ; some slain in war ;  
Some haunted by the ghosts they have depos'd ;  
Some poison'd by their wives ; some sleeping kill'd ;  
All murder'd :—for within the hollow crown  
That rounds the mortal temples of a king  
Keeps Death his court ; and there the antic sits,  
Scoffing his state, and grinning at his pomp ;  
Allowing him a breath, a little scene,  
To monarchize, be fear'd, and kill with looks ;  
Infusing him with self and vain conceit,—  
As if this flesh, which walls about our life,  
Were brass impregnable ; and humour'd thus,  
Comes at the last, and with a little pin  
Bores through his castle-wall, and—farewell king !  
Cover your heads, and mock not flesh and blood  
With solemn reverence ; throw away respect,  
Tradition, form, and ceremonious duty ;  
For you have but mistook me all this while :  
I live with bread like you, feel want, taste grief,  
Need friends :—subjected thus,  
How can you say to me, I am a king ?

*Car.* My lord, wise men ne'er sit and wail their woes,  
But presently prevent the ways to wail.  
To fear the foe, since fear oppresseth strength,  
Gives, in your weakness, strength unto your foe,  
And so your follies fight against yourself.  
Fear, and be slain ; no worse can come to fight :  
And fight and die is death destroying death ;  
Where fearing dying pays death servile breath.

*Aum.* My father hath a power; inquire of him;  
And learn to make a body of a limb.

*K. Rich.* Thou chid'st me well:—proud Bolingbroke, I  
come

To change blows with thee for our day of doom.

This ague-fit of fear is over-blown;

An easy task it is to win our own.—

Say, Scroop, where lies our uncle with his power?

Speak sweetly, man, although thy looks be sour.

*Scroop.* Men judge by the complexion of the sky

The state and inclination of the day:

So may you by my dull and heavy eye,

My tongue hath but a heavier tale to say.

I play the torturer, by small and small

To lengthen out the worst that must be spoken:—

Your uncle York is join'd with Bolingbroke;

And all your northern castles yielded up,

And all your southern gentlemen in arms

Upon his party.

*K. Rich.* Thou hast said enough.—

Beshrew thee, cousin, which didst lead me forth [*To Aumerle.*

Of that sweet way I was in to despair!

What say you now? what comfort have we now?

By heaven, I'll hate him everlastingly

That bids me be of comfort any more.

Go to Flint-castle: there I'll pine away;

A king, woe's slave, shall kingly woe obey.

That power I have, discharge; and let them go

To ear the land that hath some hope to grow,

For I have none:—let no man speak again

To alter this, for counsel is but vain.

*Aum.* My liege, one word.

*K. Rich.*

He does me double wrong

That wounds me with the flatteries of his tongue.

Discharge my followers: let them hence away,

From Richard's night to Bolingbroke's fair day. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III. *Wales. Before Flint-castle.*[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Enter, with drum and colours, BOLINGBROKE and forces ; YORK, NORTHUMBERLAND, and others.*

*Boling.* So that by this intelligence we learn  
The Welshmen are dispers'd ; and Salisbury  
Is gone to meet the king, who lately landed  
With some few private friends upon this coast.

*North.* The news is very fair and good, my lord :  
Richard not far from hence hath hid his head.

*York.* It would beseem the Lord Northumberland  
To say, King Richard :—alack the heavy day  
When such a sacred king should hide his head !

*North.* Your grace mistakes ; only to be brief,  
Left I his title out.

*York.* The time hath been,  
Would you have been so brief with him, he would  
Have been so brief with you, to shorten you,  
For taking so the head, your whole head's length.

*Boling.* Mistake not, uncle, further than you should.

*York.* Take not, good cousin, further than you should,  
Lest you mistake : the heavens are o'er our heads.

*Boling.* I know it, uncle ; and oppose not myself  
Against their will.—But who comes here ?<sup>(15)</sup>

*Enter PERCY.*

Welcome, Harry : what, will not this castle yield ?

*Percy.* The castle royally is mann'd, my lord,  
Against thy entrance.

*Boling.* Royally !

Why, it contains no king ?

*Percy.* Yes, my good lord,  
It doth contain a king ; King Richard lies  
Within the limits of yond lime and stone :  
And with him are the Lord Aumerle, Lord Salisbury,  
Sir Stephen Scroop ; besides a clergyman  
Of holy reverence, who I cannot learn.

*North.* O, belike it is the Bishop of Carlisle.

*Boling.* Noble lord,

[*To North.*

Go to the rude ribs of that ancient castle ;  
Through brazen trumpet send the breath of parle  
Into his ruin'd ears, and thus deliver :—

Harry Bolingbroke

On both his knees doth kiss King Richard's hand,  
And sends allegiance and true faith of heart  
To his most royal person ; hither come  
Even at his feet to lay my arms and power,  
Provided that, my banishment repeal'd,  
And lands restor'd again, be freely granted :  
If not, I'll use the advantage of my power,  
And lay the summer's dust with showers of blood  
Rain'd from the wounds of slaughter'd Englishmen :  
The which, how far off from the mind of Bolingbroke  
It is, such crimson tempest should bedrench  
The fresh green lap of fair King Richard's land,  
My stooping duty tenderly shall show.  
Go, signify as much, while here we march  
Upon the grassy carpet of this plain.—

[*Northumberland advances to the castle with a trumpet.*

Let's march without the noise of threatening drum,  
That from the castle's tatter'd<sup>(16)</sup> battlements  
Our fair appointments may be well perus'd.  
Methinks King Richard and myself should meet  
With no less terror than the elements  
Of fire and water, when their thundering shock  
At meeting tears the cloudy cheeks of heaven.  
Be he the fire, I'll be the yielding water :  
The rage be his, while on the earth I rain  
My waters,—on the earth, and not on him.  
March on, and mark King Richard how he looks.

*A parle sounded, and answered by another trumpet within. Flourish. Enter, on the walls, King RICHARD, the Bishop of Carlisle, AUMERLE, SCROOP, and SALISBURY.*

See, see,<sup>(17)</sup> King Richard doth himself appear,  
As doth the blushing discontented sun  
From out the fiery portal of the east,

When he perceives the envious clouds are bent  
To dim his glory, and to stain the track  
Of his bright passage to the occident.

*York.* Yet looks he like a king: behold, his eye,  
As bright as is the eagle's, lightens forth  
Controlling majesty:—alack, alack, for woe,  
That any harm<sup>(18)</sup> should stain so fair a show!

*K. Rich.* We are amaz'd; and thus long have we stood  
To watch the fearful bending of thy knee,

[*To Northumberland.*

Because we thought ourself thy lawful king:  
And if we be, how dare thy joints forget  
To pay their awful duty to our presence?  
If we be not, show us the hand of God  
That hath dismiss'd us from our stewardship;  
For well we know, no hand of blood and bone  
Can gripe the sacred handle of our sceptre,  
Unless he do profane, steal, or usurp.  
And though you think that all, as you have done,  
Have torn their souls by turning them from us,  
And we are barren and bereft of friends;  
Yet know,—my master, God omnipotent,  
Is mustering in his clouds, on our behalf,  
Armies of pestilence; and they shall strike  
Your children yet unborn and unbegot,  
That lift your vassal hands against my head,  
And threat the glory of my precious crown.  
Tell Bolingbroke (for yond methinks he is),  
That every stride he makes upon my land  
Is dangerous treason: he is come to ope  
The purple testament of bleeding war;  
But ere the crown he looks for live in peace,  
Ten thousand bloody crowns of mothers' sons  
Shall ill become the flower of England's face,  
Change the complexion of her maid-pale peace  
To scarlet indignation, and bedew  
Her pastures' grass with faithful English blood.

*North.* The king of heaven forbid our lord the king  
Should so with civil and uncivil arms

Be rush'd upon! Thy thrice-noble cousin  
 Harry Bolingbroke doth humbly kiss thy hand;  
 And by the honourable tomb he swears,  
 That stands upon your royal grandsire's bones,  
 And by the royalties of both your bloods  
 (Currents that spring from one most gracious head),  
 And by the buried hand of warlike Gaunt,  
 And by the worth and honour of himself,  
 Comprising all that may be sworn or said,—  
 His coming hither hath no further scope  
 Than for his lineal royalties, and to beg  
 Enfranchisement immediate on his knees:  
 Which on thy royal party granted once,  
 His glittering arms he will commend to rust,  
 His barbèd steeds to stables, and his heart  
 To faithful service of your majesty.  
 This swears he, as he is a prince, is just;  
 And, as I am a gentleman, I credit him.

*K. Rich.* Northumberland, say thus the king returns:—  
 His noble cousin is right welcome hither;  
 And all the number of his fair demands  
 Shall be accomplish'd without contradiction:  
 With all the gracious utterance thou hast  
 Speak to his gentle hearing kind commends.—  
 We do debase ourself, cousin, do we not,      [*To Aumerle.*]  
 To look so poorly, and to speak so fair?  
 Shall we call back Northumberland, and send  
 Defiance to the traitor, and so die?

*Aum.* No, good my lord; let's fight with gentle words  
 Till time lend friends, and friends their helpful swords.

*K. Rich.* O God, O God! that e'er this tongue of mine,  
 That laid the sentence of dread banishment  
 On yond proud man, should take it off again  
 With words of sooth! O that I were as great  
 As is my grief, or lesser than my name!  
 Or that I could forget what I have been!  
 Or not remember what I must be now!  
 Swell'st thou, proud heart? I'll give thee scope to beat,  
 Since foes have scope to beat both thee and me.

*Aum.* Northumberland comes back from Bolingbroke.

*K. Rich.* What must the king do now? must he submit?

The king shall do it: must he be depos'd?  
 The king shall be contented: must he lose  
 The name of king? o' God's name, let it go:  
 I'll give my jewels for a set of beads,  
 My gorgeous palace for a hermitage,  
 My gay apparel for an alms-man's gown,  
 My figur'd goblets for a dish of wood,  
 My sceptre for a palmer's walking-staff,  
 My subjects for a pair of carvèd saints,  
 And my large kingdom for a little grave,  
 A little little grave, an obscure grave;—  
 Or I'll be buried in the king's highway,  
 Some way of common trade, where subjects' feet  
 May hourly trample on their sovereign's head;  
 For on my heart they tread now whilst I live;  
 And buried once, why not upon my head?—  
 Aumerle, thou weep'st,—my tender-hearted cousin!—  
 We'll make foul weather with despisèd tears;  
 Our sighs and they shall lodge the summer corn,  
 And make a dearth in this revolting land.  
 Or shall we play the wantons with our woes,  
 And make some pretty match with shedding tears?  
 As thus;—to drop them still upon one place,  
 Till they have fretted us a pair of graves  
 Within the earth; and, therein laid,—there lies  
 Two kinsmen digg'd their graves with weeping eyes.  
 Would not this ill do well?—Well, well, I see  
 I talk but idly, and you mock at me.—  
 Most mighty prince, my Lord Northumberland,  
 What says King Bolingbroke? will his majesty  
 Give Richard leave to live till Richard die?  
 You make a leg, and Bolingbroke says ay.

*North.* My lord, in the base court he doth attend  
 To speak with you;—may it please you to come down.

*K. Rich.* Down, down I come; like glistering Phaeton,

Wanting the manage of unruly jades.  
 In the base court? Base court, where kings grow base,  
 To come at traitors' calls, and do them grace.  
 In the base court? Come down? Down, court! down, king!  
 For night-owls shriek where mounting larks should sing.  
[*Exeunt above.*]

*Boling.* What says his majesty?

*North.* Sorrow and grief of heart  
 Makes him speak fondly, like a frantic man:  
 Yet he is come.

*Enter King RICHARD attended, below.*

*Boling.* Stand all apart,  
 And show fair duty to his majesty.—  
 My gracious lord,— [*Kneeling.*]

*K. Rich.* Fair cousin, you debase your princely knee  
 To make the base earth proud with kissing it:  
 Me rather had my heart might feel your love  
 Than my unpleas'd eye see your courtesy.  
 Up, cousin, up;—your heart is up, I know,  
 Thus high at least [*touching his own head*], although your  
 knee be low.

*Boling.* My gracious lord, I come but for mine own.

*K. Rich.* Your own is yours, and I am yours, and all.

*Boling.* So far be mine, my most redoubted lord,  
 As my true service shall deserve your love.

*K. Rich.* Well you deserve:—they well deserve to have,  
 That know the strong'st and surest way to get.—  
 Uncle, give me your hand: nay, dry your eyes;  
 Tears show their love, but want their remedies.—  
 Cousin, I am too young to be your father,  
 Though you are old enough to be my heir.  
 What you will have, I'll give, and willing too;  
 For do we must what force will have us do.—  
 Set on towards London:—cousin, is it so?

*Boling.* Yea, my good lord.

*K. Rich.*

Then I must not say no.

[*Flourish. Exeunt.*]



SCENE IV. *Langley. The Duke of York's garden.*

*Enter the Queen and two Ladies.*

*Queen.* What sport shall we devise here in this garden,  
To drive away the heavy thought of care ?

*First Lady.* Madam, we'll play at bowls.

*Queen.* 'Twill make me think the world is full of rubs,  
And that my fortune runs against the bias.

*First Lady.* Madam, we'll dance.

*Queen.* My legs can keep no measure in delight,  
When my poor heart no measure keeps in grief :  
Therefore, no dancing, girl ; some other sport.

*First Lady.* Madam, we'll tell tales.

*Queen.* Of sorrow or of joy ? <sup>(19)</sup>

*First Lady.* Of either, madam.

*Queen.* Of neither, girl :

For if of joy, being altogether wanting,  
It doth remember me the more of sorrow ;  
Or if of grief, being altogether had,  
It adds more sorrow to my want of joy :  
For what I have, I need not to repeat ;  
And what I want, it boots not to complain.

*First Lady.* Madam, I'll sing.

*Queen.* 'Tis well that thou hast cause ;  
But thou shouldst please me better, wouldst thou weep.

*First Lady.* I could weep, madam, would it do you good.

*Queen.* And I could weep, <sup>(20)</sup> would weeping do me good,  
And never borrow any tear of thee.—

But stay, here come the gardeners :  
Let 's step into the shadow of these trees.  
My wretchedness unto a row of pins,  
They'll talk of state ; for every one doth so  
Against a change : woe is forerun with woe.

[*Queen and Ladies retire.*

*Enter a Gardener and two Servants.*

*Gard.* Go, bind thou up yond dangling apricocks,  
Which, like unruly children, make their sire  
Stoop with oppression of their prodigal weight :

Give some supportance to the bending twigs.—  
 Go thou, and like an executioner,  
 Cut off the heads of too-fast-growing sprays,  
 That look too lofty in our commonwealth :  
 All must be even in our government.—  
 You thus employ'd, I will go root away  
 The noisome weeds, that without profit suck  
 The soil's fertility from wholesome flowers.

*First Serv.* Why should we, in the compass of a pale,  
 Keep law and form and due proportion,  
 Showing, as in a model, our firm estate,  
 When our sea-wallèd garden, the whole land,  
 Is full of weeds ; her fairest flowers chok'd up,  
 Her fruit-trees all unprun'd, her hedges ruin'd,  
 Her knots disorder'd, and her wholesome herbs  
 Swarming with caterpillars ?

*Gard.* Hold thy peace :—  
 He that hath suffer'd this disorder'd spring  
 Hath now himself met with the fall of leaf :  
 The weeds that his broad-spreading leaves did shelter,  
 That seem'd in eating him to hold him up,  
 Are pluck'd up root and all by Bolingbroke,—  
 I mean the Earl of Wiltshire, Bushy, Green.

*First Serv.* What, are they dead ?

*Gard.* They are ; and Bolingbroke  
 Hath seiz'd the wasteful king.—Oh ! what pity is it  
 That he had not so trimm'd and dress'd his land  
 As we this garden ! We<sup>(<sup>st</sup>)</sup> at time of year  
 Do wound the bark, the skin of our fruit-trees,  
 Lest, being over-proud in sap and blood,  
 With too much riches it confound itself :  
 Had he done so to great and growing men,  
 They might have liv'd to bear, and he to taste  
 Their fruits of duty. Superfluous branches  
 We lop away, that bearing boughs may live :  
 Had he done so, himself had borne the crown,  
 Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down.

*First Serv.* What, think you, then, the king shall be de-  
 pos'd ?

*Gard.* Depress'd he is already ; and depos'd  
'Tis doubt he will be : letters came last night  
To a dear friend of the good Duke of York's,  
That tell black tidings.

*Queen.* O, I am press'd to death through want of speak-  
ing!—

'Thou,<sup>(22)</sup> old Adam's likeness [*coming forward with ladies*],  
set to dress this garden,

How dares thy harsh-rude tongue sound these displeasing news?  
What Eve, what serpent, hath suggested thee  
To make a second fall of cursèd man ?  
Why dost thou say King Richard is depos'd ?  
Dar'st thou, thou little better thing than earth,  
Divine his downfall ? Say, where, when, and how,  
Cam'st thou by this ill tidings ? speak, thou wretch.

*Gard.* Pardon me, madam : little joy have I  
To breathe these news ; yet what I say is true.  
King Richard, he is in the mighty hold  
Of Bolingbroke : their fortunes both are weigh'd :  
In your lord's scale is nothing but himself,  
And some few vanities that make him light ;  
But in the balance of great Bolingbroke,  
Besides himself, are all the English peers,  
And with that odds he weighs King Richard down.  
Post you to London, and you'll find it so ;  
I speak no more than every one doth know.

*Queen.* Nimble mischance, that art so light of foot,  
Doth not thy embassy belong to me,  
And am I last that knows it ? O, thou think'st  
To serve me last, that I may longest keep  
Thy sorrow in my breast.—Come, ladies, go,  
To meet at London London's king in woe.—  
What, was I born to this, that my sad look  
Should grace the triumph of great Bolingbroke ?  
Gardener, for telling me these news of woe,  
I would the plants thou graft'st may never grow.

[*Exeunt Queen and Ladies.*]

*Gard.* Poor queen ! so that thy state might be no worse,  
I would my skill were subject to thy curse.—

Here did she fall a tear; here, in this place,  
 I'll set a bank of rue, sour herb of grace:  
 Rue, even for ruth, here shortly shall be seen,  
 In the remembrance of a weeping queen.

[*Exeunt.*]

---



---

## ACT IV.

### SCENE I. *London. Westminster Hall.*

*The Lords spiritual on the right side of the throne; the Lords temporal on the left; the Commons below. Enter BOLINGBROKE, AUMERLE, SURREY, NORTHUMBERLAND, PERCY, FITZWATER, another Lord, the Bishop of Carlisle, the Abbot of Westminster, and Attendants. Officers behind, with BAGOT.*

*Boling.* Call forth Bagot.—

Now, Bagot, freely speak thy mind;  
 What thou dost know of noble Gloster's death;  
 Who wrought it with the king, and who perform'd  
 The bloody office of his timeless end.

*Bagot.* Then set before my face the Lord Aumerle.

*Boling.* Cousin, stand forth, and look upon that man.

*Bagot.* My Lord Aumerle, I know your daring tongue  
 Scorns to unsay what once it hath deliver'd.  
 In that dead time when Gloster's death was plotted,  
 I heard you say,—“Is not my arm of length,  
 That reacheth from the restful English court  
 As far as Calais, to my uncle's head?”  
 Amongst much other talk, that very time,  
 I heard you say that you had rather refuse  
 The offer of an hundred thousand crowns  
 Than Bolingbroke's return to England;  
 Adding withal, how blest this land would be  
 In this your cousin's death.

*Aum.* Princes, and noble lords,  
 What answer shall I make to this base man?  
 Shall I so much dishonour my fair stars,  
 On equal terms to give him chastisement?

Either I must, or have mine honour soil'd  
 With the attainder of his slanderous lips.—  
 There is my gage, the manual seal of death,  
 That marks thee out for hell: I say, thou liest,  
 And will maintain what thou hast said is false  
 In thy heart-blood, though being all too base  
 To stain the temper of my knightly sword.

*Boling.* Bagot, forbear; thou shalt not take it up.

*Aum.* Excepting one, I would he were the best  
 In all this presence that hath mov'd me so.

*Fitz.* If that thy valour stand on sympathy,  
 There is my gage, Aumerle, in gage to thine:  
 By that fair sun that shows me where thou stand'st,  
 I heard thee say, and vauntingly thou spak'st it,  
 That thou wert cause of noble Gloster's death.  
 If thou deny'st it twenty times, thou liest;  
 And I will turn thy falsehood to thy heart,  
 Where it was forgèd, with my rapier's point.

*Aum.* Thou dar'st not, coward, live to see that day.

*Fitz.* Now, by my soul, I would it were this hour.

*Aum.* Fitzwater, thou art damn'd to hell for this.

*Percy.* Aumerle, thou liest; his honour is as true  
 In this appeal as thou art all unjust;  
 And that thou art so, there I throw my gage,  
 To prove it on thee to the extremest point  
 Of mortal breathing: seize it, if thou dar'st.

*Aum.* And if I do not, may my hands rot off,  
 And never brandish more revengeful steel  
 Over the glittering helmet of my foe!

*Lord.* I task<sup>(23)</sup> the earth to the like, forsworn Aumerle;  
 And spur thee on with full as many lies  
 As may be holla'd in thy treacherous ear  
 From sun to sun: there is my honour's pawn;  
 Engage it to the trial, if thou dar'st.

*Aum.* Who sets me else? by heaven, I'll throw at all:  
 I have a thousand spirits in one breast,  
 To answer twenty thousand such as you.

*Surrey.* My Lord Fitzwater, I do remember well  
 The very time Aumerle and you did talk.

*Fitz.* 'Tis very true: you were in presence then;  
 And you can witness with me this is true.  
*Surrey.* As false, by heaven, as heaven itself is true.

*Fitz.* Surrey, thou liest.

*Surrey.* Dishonourable boy!

That lie shall lie so heavy on my sword,  
 That it shall render vengeance and revenge  
 Till thou the lie-giver and that lie do lie  
 In earth as quiet as thy father's skull:  
 In proof whereof, there is mine honour's pawn;  
 Engage it to the trial, if thou dar'st.

*Fitz.* How fondly dost thou spur a forward horse!  
 If I dare eat, or drink, or breathe, or live,  
 I dare meet Surrey in a wilderness,  
 And spit upon him, whilst I say he lies,  
 And lies, and lies: there is my bond of faith,  
 To tie thee to my strong correction.—  
 As I intend to thrive in this new world,  
 Aumerle is guilty of my true appeal:  
 Besides, I heard the banish'd Norfolk say,  
 That thou, Aumerle, didst send two of thy men  
 To execute the noble duke at Calais.

*Aum.* Some honest Christian trust me with a gage,  
 That Norfolk lies: here do I throw down this,  
 If he may be repeal'd, to try his honour.

*Boling.* These differences shall all rest under gage,  
 Till Norfolk be repeal'd: repeal'd he shall be,  
 And, though mine enemy, restor'd again  
 To all his lands and signories: when he's return'd,  
 Against Aumerle we will enforce his trial.

*Car.* That honourable day shall ne'er be seen.  
 Many a time hath banish'd Norfolk fought  
 For Jesu Christ in glorious Christian field,  
 Streaming the ensign of the Christian cross  
 Against black pagans, Turks, and Saracens;  
 And toil'd with works of war, retir'd himself  
 To Italy; and there, at Venice, gave  
 His body to that pleasant country's earth,  
 And his pure soul unto his captain Christ,

Under whose colours he had fought so long.

*Boling.* Why, bishop, is Norfolk dead?

*Car.* As surely as I live, my lord.

*Boling.* Sweet peace conduct his sweet soul to the bosom  
Of good old Abraham!—Lords appellants,  
Your differences shall all rest under gage  
Till we assign you to your days of trial.

*Enter YORK, attended.*

*York.* Great Duke of Lancaster, I come to thee  
From plume-pluck'd Richard; who with willing soul  
Adopts thee heir, and his high sceptre yields  
To the possession of thy royal hand:  
Ascend his throne, descending now from him,—  
And long live Henry, of that name the fourth!

*Boling.* In God's name, I'll ascend the regal throne.

*Car.* Marry, God forbid!—

Worst in this royal presence may I speak,  
Yet best beseeming me to speak the truth.  
Would God that any in this noble presence  
Were enough noble to be upright judge  
Of noble Richard! then true nobless would  
Learn him forbearance from so foul a wrong.  
What subject can give sentence on his king?  
And who sits here that is not Richard's subject?  
Thieves are not judg'd but they are by to hear,  
Although apparent guilt be seen in them;  
And shall the figure of God's majesty,  
His captain, steward, deputy elect,  
Anointed, crownèd, planted many years,  
Be judg'd by subject and inferior breath,  
And he himself not present? O, forfend it, God,  
That, in a Christian climate, souls refin'd  
Should show so heinous, black, obscene a deed!  
I speak to subjects, and a subject speaks,  
Stirr'd up by God, thus boldly for his king.  
My Lord of Hereford here, whom you call king,  
Is a foul traitor to proud Hereford's king;  
And if you crown him, let me prophesy,—

The blood of English shall manure the ground,  
 And future ages groan for this foul act ;  
 Peace shall go sleep with Turks and infidels,  
 And in this seat of peace tumultuous wars  
 Shall kin with kin and kind with kind confound ;  
 Disorder, horror, fear, and mutiny,  
 Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd  
 The field of Golgotha and dead men's skulls.  
 O, if you raise this house against this house,  
 It will the woofullest division prove  
 That ever fell upon this cursèd earth.  
 Prevent,<sup>(\*)</sup> resist it, let it not be so,  
 Lest child, child's children, cry against you woe !

*North.* Well have you argu'd, sir ; and, for your pains,  
 Of capital treason we arrest you here.—  
 My Lord of Westminster, be it your charge  
 To keep him safely till his day of trial.—  
 May it please you, lords, to grant the commons' suit.

*Boling.* Fetch hither Richard, that in common view  
 He may surrender ; so we shall proceed  
 Without suspicion.

*York.* I will be his conduct. [Exit.]

*Boling.* Lords, you that here are under our arrest,  
 Procure your sureties for your days of answer.—  
 Little are we beholding to your love, [To Carlisle.]  
 And little look'd for at your helping hands.

*Re-enter YORK, with King RICHARD, and Officers bearing the crown, &c.*

*K. Rich.* Alack, why am I sent for to a king,  
 Before I have shook off the regal thoughts  
 Wherewith I reign'd ? I hardly yet have learn'd  
 To insinuate, flatter, bow, and bend my limbs :  
 Give sorrow leave awhile to tutor me  
 To this submission. Yet I well remember  
 The favours of these men : were they not mine ?  
 Did they not sometime cry, all hail ! to me ?  
 So Judas did to Christ : but he, in twelve,  
 Found truth in all but one ; I, in twelve thousand, none.



God save the king!—Will no man say amen?  
 Am I both priest and clerk? well then, amen.  
 God save the king! although I be not he;  
 And yet, amen, if heaven do think him me.—  
 To do what service am I sent for hither?

*York.* To do that office of thine own good will  
 Which tirèd majesty did make thee offer,—  
 The resignation of thy state and crown  
 To Henry Bolingbroke.

*K. Rich.* Give me the crown.—Here, cousin, seize the  
 crown;

On this side my hand, and on that side yours.<sup>(25)</sup>  
 Now is this golden crown like a deep well  
 That owes two buckets, filling one another;  
 The emptier ever dancing in the air,  
 The other down, unseen, and full of water:  
 That bucket down and full of tears am I,  
 Drinking my griefs, whilst you mount up on high.

*Boling.* I thought you had been willing to resign.

*K. Rich.* My crown I am; but still my griefs are mine:  
 You may my glories and my state depose,  
 But not my griefs; still am I king of those.

*Boling.* Part of your cares you give me with your crown.

*K. Rich.* Your cares set up do not pluck my cares down.  
 My care is, loss of care, by old care done;  
 Your care is, gain of care, by new care won:  
 The cares I give, I have, though given away;  
 They tend the crown, yet still with me they stay.

*Boling.* Are you contented to resign the crown?

*K. Rich.* Ay, no;—no, ay; for I must nothing be;  
 Therefore no no, for I resign to thee.

Now mark me, how I will undo myself:—  
 I give this heavy weight from off my head,  
 And this unwieldy sceptre from my hand,  
 The pride of kingly sway from out my heart;  
 With mine own tears I wash away my balm,  
 With mine own hands I give away my crown,  
 With mine own tongue deny my sacred state,  
 With mine own breath release all duty's rites:

All pomp and majesty I do forswear ;  
 My manors, rents, revenues I forego ;  
 My acts, decrees, and statutes I deny :  
 God pardon all oaths that are broke to me !  
 God keep all vows unbroke that swear to thee !  
 Make me, that nothing have, with nothing griev'd,  
 And thou with all pleas'd, that hast all achiev'd !  
 Long mayst thou live in Richard's seat to sit,  
 And soon lie Richard in an earthy pit !  
 God save King Henry, unking'd Richard says,  
 And send him many years of sunshine days !—  
 What more remains ?

*North.*

No more, but that you read

[*Offering a paper.*]

These accusations, and these grievous crimes  
 Committed by your person and your followers  
 Against the state and profit of this land ;  
 That, by confessing them, the souls of men  
 May deem that you are worthily depos'd.

*K. Rich.* Must I do so ? and must I ravel out  
 My weav'd-up follies ? Gentle Northumberland,  
 If thy offences were upon record,  
 Would it not shame thee in so fair a troop  
 To read a lecture of them ? If thou wouldst,  
 There shouldst thou find one heinous article,—  
 Containing the deposing of a king,  
 And cracking the strong warrant of an oath,—  
 Mark'd with a blot, damn'd in the book of heaven :—  
 Nay, all of you that stand and look upon,  
 Whilst that my wretchedness doth bait myself,—  
 Though some of you, with Pilate, wash your hands,  
 Showing an outward pity ; yet you Pilates  
 Have here deliver'd me to my sour cross,  
 And water cannot wash away your sin.

*North.* My lord, dispatch ; read o'er these articles.

*K. Rich.* Mine eyes are full of tears, I cannot see :  
 And yet salt water blinds them not so much  
 But they can see a sort of traitors here.  
 Nay, if I turn mine eyes upon myself,

I find myself a traitor with the rest ;  
 For I have given here my soul's consent  
 To undeck the pompous body of a king ;  
 Made glory base, and sovereignty a slave,  
 Proud majesty a subject, state a peasant.

*North.* My lord,—

*K. Rich.* No lord of thine, thou haught insulting man,  
 Nor no man's lord ; I have no name, no title,—  
 No, not that name was given me at the font,—  
 But 'tis usurp'd :—alack the heavy day,  
 That I have worn so many winters out,  
 And know not now what name to call myself !  
 O that I were a mockery-king of snow,  
 Standing before the sun of Bolingbroke,  
 To melt myself away in water-drops !—  
 Good king,—great king,—(and yet not greatly good,)  
 An if my word be sterling yet in England,  
 Let it command a mirror hither straight,  
 That it may show me what a face I have,  
 Since it is bankrupt of his majesty.

*Boling.* Go some of you and fetch a looking-glass.

[*Exit an Attendant.*]

*North.* Read o'er this paper while the glass doth come.

*K. Rich.* Fiend, thou torment'st me ere I come to hell !

*Boling.* Urge it no more, my Lord Northumberland.

*North.* The commons will not, then, be satisfied.

*K. Rich.* They shall be satisfied : I'll read enough,  
 When I do see the very book indeed  
 Where all my sins are writ, and that's myself.

*Re-enter Attendant with a glass.*

Give me the glass, and therein will I read.—  
 No deeper wrinkles yet ? hath sorrow struck  
 So many blows upon this face of mine,  
 And made no deeper wounds ?—O flattering glass,  
 Like to my followers in prosperity,  
 Thou dost beguile me ! Was this face the face  
 That every day under his household roof  
 Did keep ten thousand men ? was this the face

That, like the sun, did make beholders wink ?  
 Was this the face that fac'd so many follies,  
 And was at last out-fac'd by Bolingbroke ?  
 A brittle glory shineth in this face :  
 As brittle as the glass is the face ;

[*Dashes the glass against the ground.*]

For there it is, crack'd in a hundred shivers.—  
 Mark, silent king, the moral of this sport,—  
 How soon my sorrow hath destroy'd my face.

*Boling.* The shadow of your sorrow hath destroy'd  
 The shadow of your face.

*K. Rich.* Say that again.  
 The shadow of my sorrow ? ha ! let's see :—  
 'Tis very true, my grief lies all within ;  
 And these external manners of laments  
 Are merely shadows to the unseen grief,  
 That swells with silence in the tortur'd soul ;  
 There lies the substance : and I thank thee, king,  
 For thy great bounty, that not only giv'st  
 Me cause to wail, but teachest me the way  
 How to lament the cause. I'll beg one boon,  
 And then be gone and trouble you no more.  
 Shall I obtain it ?

*Boling.* Name it, fair cousin.

*K. Rich.* Fair cousin ! I am greater than a king :  
 For when I was a king, my flatterers  
 Were then but subjects ; being now a subject,  
 I have a king here to my flatterer.  
 Being so great, I have no need to beg.

*Boling.* Yet ask.

*K. Rich.* And shall I have ?

*Boling.* You shall.

*K. Rich.* Then give me leave to go.

*Boling.* Whither ?

*K. Rich.* Whither you will, so I were from your sights.

*Boling.* Go, some of you convey him to the Tower.

*K. Rich.* O, good ! convey ?—conveyers are you all,  
 That rise thus nimbly by a true king's fall.

[*Exeunt King Richard, some Lords, and a Guard.*]

*Boling.* On Wednesday next we solemnly set down  
Our coronation: lords, prepare yourselves.

*[Exeunt all except the Bishop of Carlisle, the  
Abbot of Westminster, and Aumerle.]*

*Abbot.* A woeful pageant have we here beheld.

*Car.* The woe's to come; the children yet unborn  
Shall feel this day as sharp to them as thorn.

*Aum.* You holy clergymen, is there no plot  
To rid the realm of this pernicious blot?

*Abbot.* Before I freely speak my mind herein,  
You shall not only take the sacrament  
To bury mine intents, but also to effect  
Whatever I shall happen to devise.

I see your brows are full of discontent,  
Your hearts of sorrow, and your eyes of tears:  
Come home with me to supper; I will lay  
A plot shall show us all a merry day.

*[Exeunt.]*

## ACT V.

SCENE I. *London. A street leading to the Tower.*

*Enter Queen and Ladies.*

*Queen.* This way the king will come; this is the way  
To Julius Cæsar's ill-erected tower,  
To whose flint bosom my condemnèd lord  
Is doom'd a prisoner by proud Bolingbroke:  
Here let us rest, if this rebellious earth  
Have any resting for her true king's queen.—  
But soft, but see, or rather do not see,  
My fair rose wither: yet look up, behold,  
That you in pity may dissolve to dew,  
And wash him fresh again with true-love tears.

*Enter King RICHARD and Guards.*

Ah, thou, the model where old Troy did stand,  
Thou map of honour, thou King Richard's tomb,

And not King Richard; thou most beauteous inn,  
 Why should hard-favour'd grief be lodg'd in thee,  
 When triumph is become an alehouse guest?

*K. Rich.* Join not with grief, fair woman, do not so,  
 To make my end too sudden: learn, good soul,  
 To think our former state a happy dream;  
 From which awak'd, the truth of what we are  
 Shows us but this: I am sworn brother, sweet,  
 To grim Necessity; and he and I  
 Will keep a league till death. Hie thee to France,  
 And cloister thee in some religious house:  
 Our holy lives must win a new world's crown,  
 Which our profane hours here have stricken down.

*Queen.* What, is my Richard both in shape and mind  
 Transform'd and weaken'd? hath Bolingbroke<sup>(26)</sup> depos'd  
 Thine intellect? hath he been in thy heart?  
 The lion dying thrusteth forth his paw,  
 And wounds the earth, if nothing else, with rage  
 To be o'erpower'd; and wilt thou, pupil-like,  
 Take thy correction mildly, kiss the rod,  
 And fawn on rage with base humility,  
 Which art a lion and a king of beasts?

*K. Rich.* A king of beasts, indeed; if aught but beasts,  
 I had been still a happy king of men.  
 Good sometime queen, prepare thee hence for France:  
 Think I am dead; and that even here thou tak'st,  
 As from my death-bed, my last living leave.  
 In winter's tedious nights sit by the fire  
 With good old folks, and let them tell thee tales  
 Of woeful ages long ago betid;  
 And ere thou bid good night, to quit their grief  
 Tell thou the lamentable tale of me,  
 And send the hearers weeping to their beds:  
 For why the senseless brands will sympathize  
 The heavy accent of thy moving tongue,  
 And in compassion weep the fire out;  
 And some will mourn in ashes, some coal-black,  
 For the deposing of a rightful king.

*Enter NORTHUMBERLAND attended.*

*North.* My lord, the mind of Bolingbroke is chang'd ;  
You must to Pomfret, not unto the Tower.—  
And, madam, there is order ta'en for you ;  
With all swift speed you must away to France.

*K. Rich.* Northumberland, thou ladder wherewithal  
The mounting Bolingbroke ascends my throne,  
The time shall not be many hours of age  
More than it is, ere foul sin gathering head  
Shall break into corruption : thou shalt think,  
Though he divide the realm, and give thee half,  
It is too little, helping him to all ;  
And<sup>(\*)</sup> he shall think, that thou, which know'st the way  
To plant unrightful kings, wilt know again,  
Being ne'er so little urg'd, another way  
To pluck him headlong from the usurpèd throne.  
The love of wicked friends converts to fear ;  
That fear to hate ; and hate turns one or both  
To worthy danger and deservèd death.

*North.* My guilt be on my head, and there an end.  
Take leave, and part ; for you must part forthwith.

*K. Rich.* Doubly divorc'd !—Bad men, ye violate  
A twofold marriage,—'twixt my crown and me,  
And then betwixt me and my married wife.—  
Let me unkiss the oath 'twixt thee and me ;  
And yet not so, for with a kiss 'twas made.—  
Part us, Northumberland ; I towards the north,  
Where shivering cold and sickness pines the clime ;  
My wife to France,—from whence, set forth in pomp,  
She came adornèd hither like sweet May,  
Sent back like Hallowmas or short'st of day.

*Queen.* And must we be divided ? must we part ?

*K. Rich.* Ay, hand from hand, my love, and heart from  
heart.

*Queen.* Banish us both, and send the king with me.

*North.* That were some love, but little policy.

*Queen.* Then whither he goes, thither let me go.

*K. Rich.* So two, together weeping, make one woe.

Weep thou for me in France, I for thee here ;  
 Better far off than near, be ne'er the near.  
 Go, count thy way with sighs ; I, mine with groans.

*Queen.* So longest way shall have the longest moans.

*K. Rich.* Twice for one step I'll groan, the way being  
 short,

And piece the way out with a heavy heart.  
 Come, come, in wooing sorrow let's be brief,  
 Since, wedding it, there is such length in grief :  
 One kiss shall stop our mouths, and dumbly part ;  
 Thus give I mine, and thus take I thy heart. [*They kiss.*]

*Queen.* Give me mine own again ; 'twere no good part  
 To take on me to keep and kill thy heart. [*They kiss again.*]  
 So, now I have mine own again, be gone,  
 That I may strive to kill it with a groan.

*K. Rich.* We make woe wanton with this fond delay :  
 Once more, adieu ; the rest let sorrow say. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *The same. A room in the Duke of York's palace.*

*Enter YORK and his Duchess.*

*Duch.* My lord, you told me you would tell the rest,  
 When weeping made you break the story off  
 Of our two cousins coming into London.

*York.* Where did I leave ?

*Duch.* At that sad stop, my lord,  
 Where rude misgovern'd hands from windows' tops  
 Threw dust and rubbish on King Richard's head.

*York.* Then, as I said, the duke, great Bolingbroke,—  
 Mounted upon a hot and fiery steed,  
 Which his aspiring rider seem'd to know,—  
 With slow but stately pace kept on his course,  
 While all tongues cried " God save thee, Bolingbroke !"  
 You would have thought the very windows spake,  
 So many greedy looks of young and old  
 Through casements darted their desiring eyes  
 Upon his visage ; and that all the walls  
 With painted imagery had said at once,



“ Jesu preserve thee ! welcome, Bolingbroke ! ”  
 Whilst he, from one side to the other turning,  
 Bareheaded, lower than his proud steed's neck,  
 Bespake them thus,—“ I thank you, countrymen : ”  
 And thus still doing, thus he pass'd along.

*Duch.* Alas, poor Richard ! where rode he the whilst ?

*York.* As in a theatre, the eyes of men,  
 After a well-grac'd actor leaves the stage,  
 Are idly bent on him that enters next,  
 Thinking his prattle to be tedious ;  
 Even so, or with much more contempt, men's eyes  
 Did scowl on Richard ; no man cried, “ God save him ! ”  
 No joyful tongue gave him his welcome home :  
 But dust was thrown upon his sacred head ;  
 Which with such gentle sorrow he shook off,—  
 His face still combating with tears and smiles,  
 The badges of his grief and patience,—  
 That had not God, for some strong purpose, steel'd  
 The hearts of men, they must perforce have melted,  
 And barbarism itself have pitied him.  
 But heaven hath a hand in these events,  
 To whose high will we bound our calm contents.  
 To Bolingbroke are we sworn subjects now,  
 Whose state and honour I for aye allow.

*Duch.* Here comes my son Aumerle.

*York.* Aumerle that was ;

But that is lost for being Richard's friend,  
 And, madam, you must call him Rutland now :  
 I am in parliament pledge for his truth  
 And lasting fealty to the new-made king.

*Enter AUMERLE.*

*Duch.* Welcome, my son : who are the violets now  
 That strew the green lap of the new-come spring ?

*Aum.* Madam, I know not, nor I greatly care not :  
 God knows I had as lief be none as one.

*York.* Well, bear you well in this new spring of time,  
 Lest you be cropp'd before you come to prime.  
 What news from Oxford ? hold those justs and triumphs ?

*Aum.* For aught I know, my lord, they do.

*York.* You will be there, I know.

*Aum.* If God prevent it<sup>(28)</sup> not, I purpose so.

*York.* What seal is that that hangs without thy bosom?  
Yea, look'st thou pale? let me see the writing.

*Aum.* My lord, 'tis nothing.

*York.* No matter, then, who sees it:  
I will be satisfied; let me see the writing.

*Aum.* I do beseech your grace to pardon me:  
It is a matter of small consequence,  
Which for some reasons I would not have seen.

*York.* Which for some reasons, sir, I mean to see.  
I fear, I fear,—

*Duch.* What should you fear?  
'Tis nothing but some bond that he is enter'd into<sup>(29)</sup>  
For gay apparel against the triumph-day.

*York.* Bound to himself! what doth he with a bond  
That he is bound to? Wife, thou art a fool.—  
Boy, let me see the writing.

*Aum.* I do beseech you, pardon me; I may not show it.

*York.* I will be satisfied; let me see it, I say.

[*Snatches it, and reads.*]

Treason! foul treason!—Villain! traitor! slave!

*Duch.* What's the matter, my lord?

*York.* Ho! who's within there?

*Enter a Servant.*

Saddle my horse.—

God for his mercy, what treachery is here!

*Duch.* Why, what is 't, my lord?

*York.* Give me my boots, I say; saddle my horse.—  
Now, by mine honour, by my life, my troth,  
I will appeach the villain.

[*Exit Servant.*]

*Duch.* What's the matter?

*York.* Peace, foolish woman.

*Duch.* I will not peace.—What is the matter, son?

*Aum.* Good mother, be content; it is no more  
Than my poor life must answer.

*Duch.* Thy life answer!

*York.* Bring me my boots :—I will unto the king.

*Re-enter Servant with boots.*

*Duch.* Strike him, Aumerle.—Poor boy, thou art amaz'd.—

Hence, villain! never more come in my sight.

[*To the Servant.*]

*York.* Give me my boots, I say.

*Duch.* Why, York, what wilt thou do?

Wilt thou not hide the trespass of thine own?  
Have we more sons? or are we like to have?  
Is not my teeming date drunk up with time?  
And wilt thou pluck my fair son from mine age,  
And rob me of a happy mother's name?  
Is he not like thee? is he not thine own?

*York.* Thou fond mad woman,  
Wilt thou conceal this dark conspiracy?  
A dozen of them here have ta'en the sacrament,  
And interchangeably set down their hands,  
To kill the king at Oxford.

*Duch.* He shall be none;  
We'll keep him here: then what is that to him?

*York.* Away, fond woman! were he twenty times my son,  
I would appeach him.

*Duch.* Hadst thou groan'd for him  
As I have done, thou wouldst be more pitiful.  
But now I know thy mind; thou dost suspect  
That I have been disloyal to thy bed,  
And that he is a bastard, not thy son:  
Sweet York, sweet husband, be not of that mind:  
He is as like thee as a man may be,  
Not like to me, nor any of my kin,  
And yet I love him.

*York.* Make way, unruly woman! [*Exit.*]

*Duch.* After, Aumerle! mount thee upon his horse;  
Spur post, and get before him to the king,  
And beg thy pardon ere he do accuse thee.  
I'll not be long behind; though I be old,  
I doubt not but to ride as fast as York:

And never will I rise up from the ground  
Till Bolingbroke have pardon'd thee. Away, be gone!

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *Windsor. A room in the castle.*

*Enter BOLINGBROKE as King, PERCY, and other Lords.*

*Boling.* Can no man tell of my unthrifty son?  
'Tis full three months since I did see him last:—  
If any plague hang over us, 'tis he.  
I would to God, my lords, he might be found:  
Inquire at London, 'mongst the taverns there,  
For there, they say, he daily doth frequent,  
With unrestrainèd loose companions,—  
Even such, they say, as stand in narrow lanes,  
And beat our watch, and rob our passengers;  
Which<sup>(30)</sup> he, young wanton and effeminate boy,  
Takes on the point of honour to support  
So dissolute a crew.

*Percy.* My lord, some two days since I saw the prince,  
And told him of these triumphs held at Oxford.

*Boling.* And what said the gallant?

*Percy.* His answer was,—he would unto the stews,  
And from the common'st creature pluck a glove,  
And wear it as a favour; and with that  
He would unhorse the lustiest challenger.

*Boling.* As dissolute as desperate; yet through both  
I see some sparks of better hope,<sup>(31)</sup>  
Which elder days may happily bring forth.—  
But who comes here?

*Enter AUMERLE, hastily.*

*Aum.* Where is the king?

*Boling.* What means  
Our cousin, that he stares and looks so wildly?

*Aum.* God save your grace! I do beseech your majesty,  
To have some conference with your grace alone.

*Boling.* Withdraw yourselves, and leave us here alone.

[*Exeunt Percy and Lords.*]

What is the matter with our cousin now ?

*Aum.* For ever may my knees grow to the earth,  
www.libtool.com.cn [*Kneels.*]

My tongue cleave to my roof within my mouth,  
 Unless a pardon ere I rise or speak.

*Boling.* Intended or committed was this fault ?  
 If on the first, how heinous e'er it be,  
 To win thy after-love I pardon thee.

*Aum.* Then give me leave that I may turn the key,  
 That no man enter till my tale be done.

*Boling.* Have thy desire. [*Aumerle locks the door.*]

*York* [*within*]. My liege, beware ; look to thyself ;  
 Thou hast a traitor in thy presence there.

*Boling.* Villain, I'll make thee safe. [*Drawing.*]

*Aum.* Stay thy revengeful hand ; thou hast no cause to  
 fear.

*York* [*within*]. Open the door, secure, foolhardy king :  
 Shall I, for love, speak treason to thy face ?  
 Open the door, or I will break it open.

[*Bolingbroke unlocks the door, and afterwards locks it again.*]

*Enter YORK.*

*Boling.* What is the matter, uncle ? speak ;  
 Recover breath ; tell us how near is danger,  
 That we may arm us to encounter it.

*York.* Peruse this writing here, and thou shalt know  
 The treason that my haste forbids me show.

*Aum.* Remember, as thou read'st, thy promise pass'd :  
 I do repent me ; read not my name there ;  
 My heart is not confederate with my hand.

*York.* It was, villain, ere thy hand did set it down.—  
 I tore it from the traitor's bosom, king ;  
 Fear, and not love, begets his penitence :  
 Forget to pity him, lest thy pity prove  
 A serpent that will sting thee to the heart.

*Boling.* O heinous, strong, and bold conspiracy !—  
 O loyal father of a treacherous son !  
 Thou sheer, immaculate, and silver fountain,  
 From whence this stream through muddy passages

Hath held his current, and defil'd himself !  
 Thy overflow of good converts to bad ;  
 And thy abundant goodness shall excuse  
 This deadly blot in thy digressing son.

*York.* So shall my virtue be his vice's bawd ;  
 And he shall spend mine honour with his shame,  
 As thriftless sons their scraping fathers' gold.  
 Mine honour lives when his dishonour dies,  
 Or my sham'd life in his dishonour lies :  
 Thou kill'st me in his life ; giving him breath,  
 The traitor lives, the true man's put to death.

*Duch.* [*within.*] What ho, my liege ! for God's sake, let  
 me in.

*Boling.* What shrill-voic'd suppliant makes this eager cry ?

*Duch.* A woman, and thine aunt, great king ; 'tis I.  
 Speak with me, pity me, open the door :  
 A beggar begs that never begg'd before.

*Boling.* Our scene is alter'd from a serious thing,  
 And now chang'd to "The Beggar and the King."—  
 My dangerous cousin, let your mother in :  
 I know she's come to pray for your foul sin.

[*Aumerle unlocks the door.*]

*York.* If thou do pardon, whosoever pray,  
 More sins, for this forgiveness, prosper may.  
 This fester'd joint cut off, the rest rests sound ;  
 This let alone will all the rest confound.

*Enter Duchess.*

*Duch.* O king, believe not this hard-hearted man !  
 Love loving not itself, none other can.

*York.* Thou frantic woman, what dost thou make here ?  
 Shall thy old dug's once more a traitor rear ?

*Duch.* Sweet York, be patient.—Hear me, gentle liege.

[*Kneels.*]

*Boling.* Rise up, good aunt.

*Duch.* Not yet, I thee beseech :  
 For ever will I walk upon my knees,  
 And never see day that the happy sees,  
 Till thou give joy ; until thou bid me joy,

By pardoning Rutland, my transgressing boy.

*Aun.* Unto my mother's prayers I bend my knee. [*Kneels.*

*York.* Against them both my true joints bended be.

[*Kneels.*

Ill mayst thou thrive, if thou grant any grace!

*Duch.* Pleads he in earnest? look upon his face;

His eyes do drop no tears, his prayers are in jest;

His words come from his mouth, ours from our breast:

He prays but faintly, and would be denied;

We pray with heart and soul, and all beside:

His weary joints would gladly rise, I know;

Our knees shall kneel till to the ground they grow:

His prayers are full of false hypocrisy;

Ours of true zeal and deep integrity.

Our prayers do out-pray his; then let them have

That mercy which true prayers ought to have.

*Boling.* Good aunt, stand up.

*Duch.* Nay, do not say "stand up;"

But "pardon" first, and afterwards "stand up."

An if I were thy nurse, thy tongue to teach,

"Pardon" should be the first word of thy speech.

I never long'd to hear a word till now;

Say "pardon," king; let pity teach thee how:

The word is short, but not so short as sweet;

No word like "pardon" for kings' mouths so meet.

*York.* Speak it in French, king; say, *pardonnez moi.*

*Duch.* Dost thou teach pardon pardon to destroy?

Ah, my sour husband, my hard-hearted lord,

That sett'st the word itself against the word!—

Speak "pardon" as 'tis current in our land;

The chopping French we do not understand.

Thine eye begins to speak, set thy tongue there:

Or in thy piteous heart plant thou thine ear;

That hearing how our complaints and prayers do pierce,

Pity may move thee "pardon" to rehearse.

*Boling.* Good aunt, stand up.

*Duch.* I do not sue to stand;

Pardon is all the suit I have in hand.

*Boling.* I pardon him, as God shall pardon me.

*Duch.* O happy vantage of a kneeling knee!  
Yet am I sick for fear: speak it again;  
Twice saying "pardon" doth not pardon twain,  
But makes one pardon strong.

*Boling.* With all my heart  
I pardon him.<sup>(32)</sup>

*Duch.* A god on earth thou art.

*Boling.* But for our trusty brother-in-law, and the abbot,  
With all the rest of that consorted crew,  
Destruction straight shall dog them at the heels.—  
Good uncle, help to order several powers  
To Oxford, or where'er these traitors are:  
They shall not live within this world, I swear,  
But I will have them, if I once know where.  
Uncle, farewell:—and, cousin mine,<sup>(33)</sup> adieu:  
Your mother well hath pray'd, and prove you true.

*Duch.* Come, my old son:—I pray God make thee new.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV. *Another room in the same.*

*Enter* SIR PIERCE of EXTON *and a Servant.*

*Exton.* Didst thou not mark the king, what words he  
spake,—  
"Have I no friend will rid me of this living fear?"  
Was it not so?

*Serv.* Those were his very words.

*Exton.* "Have I no friend?" quoth he: he spake it  
twice,  
And urg'd it twice together,—did he not?

*Serv.* He did.

*Exton.* And speaking it, he wistly look'd on me;  
As who should say,—I would thou wert the man  
That would divorce this terror from my heart,—  
Meaning the king at Pomfret. Come, let's go:  
I am the king's friend, and will rid his foe.

[*Exeunt.*]



SCENE V. *Pomfret. The dungeon of the castle.**Enter King RICHARD.*

*K. Rich.* I have been studying how I may compare  
This prison where I live unto the world :  
And, for because the world is populous,  
And here is not a creature but myself,  
I cannot do it ;—yet I'll hammer 't out.  
My brain I'll prove the female to my soul,  
My soul the father : and these two beget  
A generation of still-breeding thoughts,  
And these same thoughts people this little world ;  
In humours like the people of this world,  
For no thought is contented. The better sort,—  
As thoughts of things divine,—are intermix'd  
With scruples, and do set the word itself  
Against the word :  
As thus, " Come, little ones ;" and then again,  
" It is as hard to come as for a camel  
To thread the postern of a needle's eye."  
Thoughts tending to ambition, they do plot  
Unlikely wonders : how these vain weak nails  
May tear a passage through the flinty ribs  
Of this hard world, my ragged prison-walls ;  
And, for they cannot, die in their own pride.  
Thoughts tending to content flatter themselves  
That they are not the first of fortune's slaves,  
Nor shall not be the last ; like silly beggars,  
Who, sitting in the stocks, refuge their shame,  
That many have, and others must sit there ;  
And in this thought they find a kind of ease,  
Bearing their own misfortune on the back  
Of such as have before endur'd the like.  
Thus play I, in one person, many people,  
And none contented : sometimes am I king ;  
Then treason makes me wish myself a beggar,  
And so I am : then crushing penury

Persuades me I was better when a king ;  
 Then am I king'd again : and by and by  
 Think that I am unking'd by Bolingbroke,  
 And straight am nothing :—but whate'er I am,  
 Nor I, nor any man that but man is,  
 With nothing shall be pleas'd, till he be eas'd  
 With being nothing.—Music do I hear ?  
 Ha, ha ! keep time :—how sour sweet music is,  
 When time is broke and no proportion kept !  
 So is it in the music of men's lives.  
 And here have I the daintiness of ear  
 To check time broke in a disorder'd string ;  
 But, for the concord of my state and time,  
 Had not an ear to hear my true time broke.  
 I wasted time, and now doth time waste me ;  
 For now hath time made me his numbering clock :  
 My thoughts are minutes ; and, with sighs, they jar  
 Their watches on unto mine eyes, the outward watch,  
 Whereto my finger, like a dial's point,  
 Is pointing still, in cleansing them from tears.  
 Now, sir,<sup>(34)</sup> the sound that tells what hour it is,  
 Are clamorous groans, that strike upon my heart,  
 Which is the bell : so sighs and tears and groans  
 Show minutes, times, and hours :—but my time  
 Runs posting on in Bolingbroke's proud joy,  
 While I stand fooling here, his Jack o' the clock.  
 This music mads me ; let it sound no more ;  
 For though it have help madmen to their wits,  
 In me it seems it will make wise men mad.  
 Yet, blessing on his heart that gives it me !  
 For 'tis a sign of love ; and love to Richard  
 Is a strange brooch in this all-hating world.

[*Music.*]

*Enter Groom.*

*Groom.* Hail, royal prince !

*K. Rich.*

Thanks, noble peer ;

The cheapest of us is ten groats too dear.

What art thou ? and how com'st thou hither,<sup>(35)</sup>

Where no man never comes, but that sad dog  
That brings me food to make misfortune live?

*Groom.* I was a poor groom of thy stable, king,  
When thou wert king; who, travelling towards York,  
With much ado at length have gotten leave  
To look upon my sometimes royal master's face.  
O, how it yearn'd my heart, when I beheld,  
In London streets, that coronation-day,  
When Bolingbroke rode on roan Barbary,—  
That horse that thou so often hast bestrid,  
That horse that I so carefully have dress'd!

*K. Rich.* Rode he on Barbary? Tell me, gentle friend,  
How went he under him?

*Groom.* So proudly as if he disdain'd the ground.<sup>(36)</sup>

*K. Rich.* So proud that Bolingbroke was on his back!  
That jade hath eat bread from my royal hand;  
This hand hath made him proud with clapping him.  
Would he not stumble? would he not fall down  
(Since pride must have a fall), and break the neck  
Of that proud man that did usurp his back?  
Forgiveness, horse! why do I rail on thee,  
Since thou, created to be aw'd by man,  
Wast born to bear? I was not made a horse;  
And yet I bear a burden like an ass,  
Spur-gall'd and tir'd by jauncing Bolingbroke.

*Enter Keeper, with a dish.*

*Keep.* Fellow, give place; here is no longer stay.

[*To the Groom.*

*K. Rich.* If thou love me, 'tis time thou wert away.

*Groom.* What my tongue dares not, that my heart shall  
say. [Exit.

*Keep.* My lord, will't please you to fall to?

*K. Rich.* Taste of it first, as thou art wont to do.

*Keep.* My lord, I dare not. Sir Pierce of Exton,  
Who lately came from the king, commands the contrary.<sup>(37)</sup>

*K. Rich.* The devil take Henry of Lancaster and thee!  
Patience is stale, and I am weary of it. [*Beats the Keeper.*

*Keep.* Help, help, help!

*Enter* SIR PIERCE OF EXTON *and* Servants, *armed.*

*K. Rich.* How now! what means death in this rude assault?  
 www.libgen.org

Villain, thine own hand yields thy death's instrument.

[*Snatching a weapon, and killing a Servant.*

Go thou, and fill another room in hell.

[*He kills another Servant. Then Exton strikes him down.*

That hand shall burn in never-quenching fire

That staggers thus my person.—Exton, thy fierce hand

Hath with the king's blood stain'd the king's own land.

Mount, mount, my soul! thy seat is up on high;

Whilst my gross flesh sinks downward, here to die. [*Dies.*

*Exton.* As full of valour as of royal blood:

Both have I spilt;—O, would the deed were good!

For now the devil, that told me I did well,

Says that this deed is chronicled in hell.

This dead king to the living king I'll bear:—

Take hence the rest, and give them burial here. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI. *Windsor. A room in the castle.*

*Flourish. Enter* BOLINGBROKE *as* King, YORK, Lords, *and* Attendants.

*Boling.* Kind uncle York, the latest news we hear  
 Is that the rebels have consum'd with fire  
 Our town of Cicester in Glostershire;  
 But whether they be ta'en or slain we hear not.

. *Enter* NORTHUMBERLAND.

Welcome, my lord: what is the news?

*North.* First, to thy sacred state wish I all happiness.  
 The next news is, I have to London sent  
 The heads of Salisbury, Spencer, Blunt, and Kent:  
 The manner of their taking may appear  
 At large discoursèd in this paper here. [*Presenting a paper.*

*Boling.* We thank thee, gentle Percy, for thy pains;  
 And to thy worth will add right worthy gains.

*Enter FITZWATER.*

*Fitz.* My lord, I have from Oxford sent to London  
The heads of Brocas and Sir Bennet Seely,  
Two of the dangerous consorted traitors  
That sought at Oxford thy dire overthrow.

*Boling.* Thy pains, Fitzwater, shall not be forgot ;  
Right noble is thy merit, well I wot.

*Enter PERCY, with the Bishop of Carlisle.*

*Percy.* The grand conspirator, Abbot of Westminster,  
With clog of conscience and sour melancholy,  
Hath yielded up his body to the grave ;  
But here is Carlisle living, to abide  
Thy kingly doom and sentence of his pride.

*Boling.* Carlisle, this is your doom :—  
Choose out some secret place, some reverend room,  
More than thou hast, and with it joy thy life ;  
So, as thou liv'st in peace, die free from strife :  
For though mine enemy thou hast ever been,  
High sparks of honour in thee have I seen.

*Enter Sir PIERCE of EXTON, with Attendants bearing a coffin.*

*Exton.* Great king, within this coffin I present  
Thy buried fear : herein all breathless lies  
The mightiest of thy greatest enemies,  
Richard of Bourdeaux, by me hither brought.

*Boling.* Exton, I thank thee not ; for thou hast wrought  
A deed of slander, with thy fatal hand,  
Upon my head and all this famous land.

*Exton.* From your own mouth, my lord, did I this deed.

*Boling.* They love not poison that do poison need,  
Nor do I thee : though I did wish him dead,  
I hate the murderer, love him murderèd.  
The guilt of conscience take thou for thy labour,  
But neither my good word nor princely favour :  
With Cain go wander through the shade of night,  
And never show thy head by day nor light.—  
Lords, I protest, my soul is full of woe,

That blood should sprinkle me to make me grow :  
Come, mourn with me for that I do lament,  
And put on sullen black incontinent :  
I'll make a voyage to the Holy Land,  
To wash this blood off from my guilty hand :—  
March sadly after ; grace my mournings here,  
In weeping after this untimely bier.

[*Exeunt.*]

P. 273. (1) "Many years of happy days befall," &c.

That this line (like some others in the present play) has been mutilated by the transcriber or the printer is hardly to be doubted.—Pope gave "May many years," &c.—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "Full many years," &c.

P. 279. (2) "to the will of heaven;  
Who, when they see," &c.

Here Pope altered "they see" to "it sees," and Steevens to "he sees."—But the old reading is retained (and rightly, I think) by Rowe, Capell, and Mr. Collier,—the last of whom observes, "Gaunt uses 'heaven' as a plural."

P. 285. (3) "The sly-slow hours," &c.

Pope printed "The fly-slow hours," &c. "In Chapman's version of the second book of Homer's *Odyssey*, we have;

'— and those *sly hours*  
That still surprise at length.'

It is remarkable that Pope, in the fourth book of his *Essay on Man*, v. 226, has employed the epithet which, in the present instance, he has rejected;

'All *sly slow* things, with circumspective eyes.'

See Warton's edit. of Pope's *Works*, vol. iii. p. 145." STEEVENS.

P. 292. (4) "Against infection," &c.

In *England's Parnassus*, 1600, this passage is quoted with the misprint "in-testation," &c.: hence Farmer suggested that the true reading was "infestation" (i. e. infestation); which Malone adopted.

P. 293. (5) "For young hot colts being rag'd do rage the more."

Ritson conjectures "— being rein'd," &c.; and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads (badly enough) "being urg'd," &c.

P. 298. (6) "'Gainst us, our lives, our children, and our heirs."

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes "'Gainst us, our wives, our children," &c. To Mr. Singer's remark (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, &c. p. 98) that the alteration "is plausible, but not necessary," I may add that it is strongly opposed, if not absolutely forbidden, by a passage in *Henry V.* act i. sc. 2,—

"That owe yourselves, your lives, and services  
To this imperial throne."

P. 299. (7) "*Be confident to speak, Northumberland:  
We three are but thyself; and, speaking so,  
Thy words are but as thoughts; therefore, be bold.*"

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "*Thy words are but our thoughts,*" &c.—A writer in *Blackwood's Magazine* for Sept. 1853, p. 306, thus defends the old text: "Ross's argument with Northumberland to speak was not merely because his words were as *their* thoughts. That was no doubt true; but the point of his persuasion lay in the consideration that Northumberland's words would be *as good as not spoken*. 'We three are but yourself, and, in these circumstances, your words are but *as* thoughts—that is, you are as safe in uttering them as if you uttered them not, inasmuch as you will be merely speaking to yourself.'"

P. 299. (8)  
"*That Harry Duke of Hereford, Renald Lord Cobham,  
That late broke from the Duke of Exeter,*" &c.

Here it is plain that an intermediate line has dropped out. Malone inserted,—

"The son of Richard Earl of Arundel,  
*That late,*" &c.

and see the passages cited from Holinshed in his note *ad l.*

P. 300. (9)  
"*As,—though, on thinking, on no thought I think,*" &c.

The more recent editors read, with Johnson, "*As,—though, in thinking, on no,*" &c.,—an alteration hardly necessary.—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector gives "*As,—though, unthinking, on no,*" &c.,—which is manifestly wrong. (I once suspected that the proper punctuation of the line might be,—"*As,—though, on thinking on, no thought I think,*" &c.)

P. 302. (10)  
"*Gentlemen, will you go muster men? If I know  
How or which way to order these affairs,  
Thus thrust disorderly into my hands,  
Never believe me,*" &c.

"Reader, if I know how or which way to order this speech of York, thus thrust disorderly into my hands, never believe me." I have ventured only on one slight transposition,—the old copies having "*Thus disorderly thrust,*" &c.—Here, according to Mr. Collier, "Shakespeare obviously intended the measure to be irregular and hurried, the better to accord with York's state of mind." Surely not:—the irregularity of the measure is entirely owing to the carelessness of the transcriber or printer.

P. 303. (11) "*The hateful commons will perform for us.*"  
The old copies have "Will the hatefull commons *performe* for vs."





his own conduct and to disculp the king's." (If I were to venture on any alteration, I should prefer giving, "See, see," &c. to Percy: compare his last speech in the preceding page.)

P. 319. (18)

"*That any harm should stain so fair a show.*"

This is altered both by Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector and by Mr. Singer's to "*That any storm should,*" &c.: and so, perhaps, Shakespeare wrote.

P. 323. (18)

"*Of sorrow or of joy?*"

The old copies have "— *or of griefe?*"

P. 323. (20)

"*And I could weep, would weeping do me good,*" &c.

The old copies have "*And I could sing, would,*" &c.

P. 324. (21)

"*We at time of year*

*Do wound the bark,*" &c.

The old copies omit "*We.*" ("*Do wound the bark,*" &c.—is the reading of the 4tos:—and what can Mr. Collier mean, when, recommending the alterations made here by the Ms. Corrector, he says that "*Malone thrust in do to supply the defect of the measure?*")

P. 325. (22)

"*Thou, old Adam's likeness* [coming forward with ladies], *set to dress this garden,*

*How dares thy harsh-rude tongue sound these displeasing news?"*

This was cut down by Pope to,—

"*Thou Adam's likeness, set to dress this garden,*

*How dares thy tongue sound this displeasing news?"*—

In the second line, for the sake of consistency, I have altered "*this displeasing news*" to "*these displeasing news;*"—all the 4tos and the folio having, in the next speech, "*To breath these newes,*" and the 4to of 1597, in the second speech after, "*these news of woe.*"

P. 327. (23)

"*I tusk the earth to the like,*" &c.

So the first 4to.—The later 4tos, "*I take the earth,*" &c. (This and the seven next lines are omitted in the folio.)—The true reading here is far from certain.

P. 330. (24) " *Prevent, resist it, let it not be so,  
Lest child, child's children, cry against you woe!*"

The old copies have " *Present it, resist it,*" &c.

P. 331. (26)

" *Give me the crown.—Here, cousin, seize the crown;  
On this side my hand, and on that side yours.*"

"The quarto 1608, where this scene first appeared, reads,—

'Seize the crown.  
Here, cousin, on this side my hand, and on that side yours.'

The folio,—

'Give me the crown. Here, cousin, seize the crown;  
Here, cousin, on this side my hand, on that side thine.'

It is evident that in the original copy, the words, 'Here, cousin, seize the crown,' were erroneously printed—'Seize the crown. Here, cousin;' but these words being properly arranged, all the rest of the first copy is right." MAL-  
LOWE.

P. 336. (28)

" *What, is my Richard both in shape and mind  
Transform'd and weaken'd? hath Bolingbroke depos'd  
Thine intellect? hath he been in thy heart?*"

That the author intended these lines to be so regulated, is proved by some other passages of the play;—

"Harry Bolingbroke doth humbly kiss thy hand." p. 320.

"What says King Bolingbroke? will his majesty," &c. p. 321.

P. 337. (27)

" *And he shall think, that thou, which know'st the way,*" &c.

I may notice that Mr. Collier's attempt to rectify the metre, without adopting the modern addition "And,"—

"He shall think, that thou, which knowest the way," &c.

leaves the line just as unmetrical as in the old copies.

P. 340. (26) " *If God prevent it not, I purpose so.*"

The "it" is not in the old copies (from which either that word or "me" has evidently dropped out).

P. 340. (29)

" *'Tis nothing but some bond that he is enter'd into,*" &c.

Mr. Collier says that here his Ms. Corrector makes "an improvement in the measure of a line, which *has been given corruptly everywhere*," viz.—

*"'Tis nothing but some bond he's enter'd into," &c.*

But Mr. Collier might have found the same "improvement" in the editions of Pope, Theobald, and Hanmer,—those earlier editors allowing themselves such liberties with the text as their successors dare not take, even in passages which are most probably corrupted.

P. 342. (20)

*"Which he, young wanton and effeminate boy," &c.*

Pope printed "While *he, young*," &c.;—and his reading has become the established one: but our old writers sometimes use the relative "*which*" so ungrammatically, that any alteration here is very questionable.

P. 342. (21) *"I see some sparks of better hope," &c.*

A mutilated line.—The usual modern reading is,—

*"I see some sparkles of a better hope," &c.*

(which, says Mr. Knight, "is certainly an improvement; and one of the quartos has '*sparkles* of better hope:'"—nay, three of the 4to's have that lection; which, however, Mr. Collier pronounces to be "an error," adding that "the folio returns to '*sparks*,'" and that "Bolingbroke afterwards (p. 351) speaks of '*sparks* of honour.'")

P. 346. (22) *"But makes one pardon strong.*

Boling.	<i>With all my heart</i>
<i>I pardon him.</i>	
Duch.	<i>A god on earth thou art."</i>

The old copies have "I pardon him with all my heart" (which Mr. Collier retains,—though a couplet was obviously intended here).

P. 346. (23)

*"Uncle, farewell:—and, cousin mine, adieu:  
Your mother well hath pray'd, and prove you true."*

The old copies have "—*and cosin adieu*," a word being evidently wanting (for though our old dramatists occasionally make the first line of a couplet shorter than the second, they never leave it deficient in merely a single syllable)—I have inserted, with Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, "*mine*,"—which is far better than Theobald's "*too*."

P. 348. (24) *"Now, sir, the sound," &c.*

Mr. Collier, in his note *ad l.*, having asked "what has '*sir*' to do in the line, and whom is Richard addressing?"—I showed that similar improprieties in

soliloquy are not unusual with our author and with other old dramatists: see *Remarks on Mr. Collier's and Mr. Knight's eds. of Shakespeare*, p. 102. To the instances which I have cited there the following may be added: in Fletcher's *Woman's Prize, or the Tamer Tamed*, Petruccio says, *while solus*,

" 'Tis hard dealing,  
Very hard dealing, gentlemen, strange dealing !"

Act iii. sc. 2.

and in his *Wild-Goose Chase*, Pinac says, *while alone*,

" You talk of travels ; here's a curious country !"

Act ii. sc. 2.

(Mr. Collier's *Ms. Corrector*, it appears, was also perplexed by "*sir*," and substituted a word which does away with all meaning in the passage ;—

" Now, *for* the sound that tells what hour it is,  
Are clamorous groans, that strike upon my heart,  
Which is the bell.")

P. 348. (36)

"*What art thou ? and how com'st thou hither,*" &c.

If the more recent editors thought that by printing (with the 4to) "*comest*," they restored the line to measure, they were sadly mistaken.—Something has dropped out.

P. 349. (36) "*So proudly as if he disdain'd the ground.*"

The folio has "— *he had disdain'd the ground :*" and probably (considering the "*So proud*" in the next line) the true reading is,—

"*So proud as if he had disdain'd the ground.*"

P. 349. (37)

"*Sir Pierce of Exton,  
Who lately came from the king, commands the contrary.*"

Qy. "*Who late came,*" &c.? (The usual modern arrangement is to make "*who*" the last word of the first line.)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

**THE FIRST PART OF  
KING HENRY THE FOURTH.**

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.



KING HENRY the Fourth.

HENRY, Prince of Wales,

PRINCE JOHN of Lancaster,

} sons to the King.

EARL OF WESTMORELAND.

SIR WALTER BLUNT.

THOMAS PERCY, Earl of Worcester.

HENRY PERCY, Earl of Northumberland.

HENRY PERCY, surnamed HOTSPUR, his son.

EDMUND MORTIMER, Earl of March.

SCROOP, Archbishop of York.

ARCHIBALD, Earl of Douglas.

OWEN GLENDOWER.

SIR RICHARD VERNON.

SIR JOHN FALSTAFF.

SIR MICHAEL, a friend to the Archbishop of York.

POINTZ.

GADSHILL.

PETO.

BARDOLPH.

LADY PERCY, wife to Hotspur, and sister to Mortimer.

LADY MORTIMER, daughter to Glendower, and wife to Mortimer.

MISTRESS QUICKLY, hostess of a tavern in Eastcheap.

Lords, Officers, Sheriff, Vintner, Chamberlain, Drawers, two Carriers,  
Travellers, and Attendants.

SCENE—*England.*



THE FIRST PART OF  
KING HENRY IV.

---

---

ACT I.

SCENE I. *London. A room in the palace.*

*Enter* King HENRY, WESTMORELAND, Sir WALTER BLUNT,  
*and others.*

*K. Hen.* So shaken as we are, so wan with care,  
Find we a time for frighted peace to pant,  
And breathe short-winded accents of new broils  
To be commenc'd in strands<sup>(1)</sup> afar remote.  
No more the thirsty entrance of this soil  
Shall daub her lips with her own children's blood ;  
No more shall trenching war channel her fields,  
Nor bruise her flowerets with the armèd hoofs  
Of hostile paces : those opposèd eyes,  
Which, like the meteors of a troubled heaven,  
All of one nature, of one substance bred,  
Did lately meet in the intestine shock  
And furious close of civil butchery,  
Shall now, in mutual well-beseeming ranks,  
March all one way, and be no more oppos'd  
Against acquaintance, kindred, and allies :  
The edge of war, like an ill-sheathèd knife,  
No more shall cut his master. Therefore, friends,  
As far as to the sepulchre of Christ  
(Whose soldier now, under whose blessèd cross  
We are impressèd and engag'd to fight,  
Forthwith a power of English shall we levy ;

Whose arms were moulded in their mothers' womb  
 To chase these pagans in those holy fields  
 Over whose acres walk'd those blessèd feet  
 Which fourteen hundred years ago were nail'd  
 For our advantage on the bitter cross.  
 But this our purpose is a twelvemonth old,  
 And bootless 'tis to tell you we will go:  
 Therefore we meet not now.—Then let me hear  
 Of you, my gentle cousin Westmoreland,  
 What yesternight our council did decree  
 In forwarding this dear expedience.

*West.* My liege, this haste was hot in question,  
 And many limits of the charge set down  
 But yesternight: when, all athwart, there came  
 A post from Wales loaden with heavy news;  
 Whose worst was,—that the noble Mortimer,  
 Leading the men of Herefordshire to fight  
 Against the irregular and wild Glendower,  
 Was by the rude hands of that Welshman taken,  
 A thousand of his people butcherèd;  
 Upon whose dead corpse<sup>(?)</sup> there was such misuse,  
 Such beastly, shameless transformation,  
 By those Welshwomen done, as may not be  
 Without much shame re-told or spoken of.

*K. Hen.* It seems, then, that the tidings of this broil  
 Brake off our business for the Holy Land.

*West.* This, match'd with other, did, my gracious lord;  
 For more uneven and unwelcome news  
 Came from the north, and thus it did import:  
 On Holy-rood day, the gallant Hotspur there,  
 Young Harry Percy, and brave Archibald,  
 That ever-valiant and approvèd Scot,  
 At Holmedon met,  
 Where they did spend a sad and bloody hour;  
 As by discharge of their artillery,  
 And shape of likelihood, the news was told;  
 For he that brought them, in the very heat  
 And pride of their contention did take horse,  
 Uncertain of the issue any way.

*K. Hen.* Here is a dear and true-industrious friend,  
 Sir Walter Blunt, new lighted from his horse,  
 Stain'd with the variation of each soil  
 Betwixt that Holmedon and this seat of ours;  
 And he hath brought us smooth and welcome news.  
 The Earl of Douglas is discomfited:  
 Ten thousand bold Scots, two-and-twenty knights,  
 Balk'd in their own blood, did Sir Walter see  
 On Holmedon's plains: of prisoners, Hotspur took  
 Mordake, Earl of Fife and eldest son  
 To beaten Douglas; and the Earls of Athol,  
 Of Murray, Angus, and Menteith:  
 And is not this an honourable spoil?  
 A gallant prize? ha, cousin, is it not?

*West.* In faith,<sup>(3)</sup>

It is a conquest for a prince to boast of.

*K. Hen.* Yea, there thou mak'st me sad, and mak'st me  
 sin

In envy that my Lord Northumberland  
 Should be the father to so blest a son,—  
 A son who is the theme of honour's tongue;  
 Amongst a grove, the very straightest plant;  
 Who is sweet Fortune's minion and her pride:  
 Whilst I, by looking on the praise of him,  
 See riot and dishonour stain the brow  
 Of my young Harry. O that it could be prov'd  
 That some night-tripping fairy had exchang'd  
 In cradle-clothes our children where they lay,  
 And call'd mine Percy, his Plantagenet!  
 Then would I have his Harry, and he mine:  
 But let him from my thoughts.—What think you, coz,  
 Of this young Percy's pride? the prisoners,  
 Which he in this adventure hath surpris'd,  
 To his own use he keeps; and sends me word,  
 I shall have none but Mordake Earl of Fife.

*West.* This is his uncle's teaching, this is Worcester,  
 Malevolent to you in all aspécts;  
 Which makes him prune himself, and bristle up  
 The crest of youth against your dignity.

*K. Hen.* But I have sent for him to answer this;  
 And for this cause awhile we must neglect  
 Our holy purpose to Jerusalem.  
 Cousin, on Wednesday next our council we  
 Will hold at Windsor,—so inform the lords:  
 But come yourself with speed to us again;  
 For more is to be said and to be done  
 Than out of anger can be utterèd.

*West.* I will, my liege.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *The same. Another room in the palace.*

*Enter Prince HENRY and FALSTAFF.*

*Fal.* Now, Hal, what time of day is it, lad?

*P. Hen.* Thou art so fat-witted, with drinking of old sack, and unbuttoning thee after supper, and sleeping upon benches after noon, that thou hast forgotten to demand that truly which thou wouldst truly know. What a devil hast thou to do with the time of the day? unless hours were cups of sack, and minutes capons, and clocks the tongues of bawds, and dials the signs of leaping-houses, and the blessed sun himself a fair hot wench in flame-coloured taffeta,—I see no reason why thou shouldst be so superfluous to demand the time of the day.

*Fal.* Indeed, you come near me now, Hal; for we that take purses go by the moon and the seven stars, and not by Phœbus,—he, “that wandering knight so fair.” And, I prithee, sweet wag, when thou art king,—as, God save thy grace, (majesty I should say, for grace thou wilt have none),—

*P. Hen.* What, none?

*Fal.* No, by my troth,—not so much as will serve to be prologue to an egg and butter.

*P. Hen.* Well, how then? come, roundly, roundly.

*Fal.* Marry, then, sweet wag, when thou art king, let not us that are squires of the night’s body be called thieves of the day’s beauty: let us be Diana’s foresters, gentlemen of the shade, minions of the moon; and let men say we be men

of good government, being governed, as the sea is, by our noble and chaste mistress the moon, under whose countenance we steal.

*P. Hen.* Thou sayest well, and it holds well too; for the fortune of us that are the moon's men doth ebb and flow like the sea, being governed, as the sea is, by the moon. As, for proof, now: a purse of gold most resolutely snatched on Monday night, and most dissolutely spent on Tuesday morning; got with swearing "lay by," and spent with crying "bring in;" now in as low an ebb as the foot of the ladder, and by and by in as high a flow as the ridge of the gallows.

*Fal.* By the Lord, thou sayest true, lad. And is not my hostess of the tavern a most sweet wench?

*P. Hen.* As the honey of Hybla, my old lad of the castle. And is not a buff jerkin a most sweet robe of durance?

*Fal.* How now, how now, mad wag! what, in thy quips and thy quiddities? what a plague have I to do with a buff jerkin?

*P. Hen.* Why, what a pox have I to do with my hostess of the tavern?

*Fal.* Well, thou hast called her to a reckoning many a time and oft.

*P. Hen.* Did I ever call for thee to pay thy part?

*Fal.* No; I'll give thee thy due, thou hast paid all there.

*P. Hen.* Yea, and elsewhere, so far as my coin would stretch; and where it would not, I have used my credit.

*Fal.* Yea, and so used it, that, were it not here apparent that thou art heir-apparent,—but, I prithee, sweet wag, shall there be gallows standing in England when thou art king? and resolution thus fobbed as it is with the rusty curb of old father antic the law? Do not thou, when thou art king,<sup>(4)</sup> hang a thief.

*P. Hen.* No; thou shalt.

*Fal.* Shall I? O rare! By the Lord, I'll be a brave judge,

*P. Hen.* Thou judgest false already: I mean, thou shalt have the hanging of the thieves, and so become a rare hangman.

*Fal.* Well, Hal, well; and in some sort it jumps with my humour as well as waiting in the court, I can tell you.

*P. Hen.* For obtaining of suits?

*Fal.* Yea, for obtaining of suits, whereof the hangman hath no lean wardrobe. 'Sblood, I am as melancholy as a gib-cat or a lugged bear.

*P. Hen.* Or an old lion, or a lover's lute.

*Fal.* Yea, or the drone of a Lincolnshire bagpipe.

*P. Hen.* What sayest thou to a hare, or the melancholy of Moor-ditch?

*Fal.* Thou hast the most unsavoury similes, and art, indeed, the most comparative, rascaldest,—sweet young prince,—but, Hal, I prithee, trouble me no more with vanity. I would to God thou and I knew where a commodity of good names were to be bought. An old lord of the council rated me the other day in the street about you, sir,—but I marked him not; and yet he talked very wisely,—but I regarded him not; and yet he talked wisely, and in the street too.

*P. Hen.* Thou didst well; for wisdom cries out in the streets, and no man regards it.

*Fal.* O, thou hast damnable iteration, and art, indeed, able to corrupt a saint. Thou hast done much harm upon me, Hal,—God forgive thee for it! Before I knew thee, Hal, I knew nothing; and now am I, if a man should speak truly, little better than one of the wicked. I must give over this life, and I will give it over; by the Lord, an I do not, I am a villain: I'll be damned for never a king's son in Christendom.

*P. Hen.* Where shall we take a purse to-morrow, Jack?

*Fal.* Where thou wilt, lad, I'll make one; an I do not, call me villain, and baffle me.

*P. Hen.* I see a good amendment of life in thee,—from praying to purse-taking.

*Enter POINTZ at a distance.*

*Fal.* Why, Hal, 'tis my vocation, Hal; 'tis no sin for a man to labour in his vocation.—Pointz! (°)—Now shall we know if Gadshill have set a match.—O, if men were to be saved by merit, what hole in hell were hot enough for him? This is the most omnipotent villain that ever cried "stand" to a true man.

*P. Hen.* Good morrow, Ned.

*Poin.* Good morrow, sweet Hal.—What says Monsieur Remorse? what says Sir John Sack-and-sugar? Jack, how agrees the devil and thee about thy soul, that thou soldest him on Good-friday last for a cup of Madeira and a cold capon's leg?

*P. Hen.* Sir John stands to his word,—the devil shall have his bargain; for he was never yet a breaker of proverbs,—he will give the devil his due.

*Poin.* Then art thou damned for keeping thy word with the devil.

*P. Hen.* Else he had been damned for cozening the devil.

*Poin.* But, my lads, my lads, to-morrow morning, by four o'clock, early at Gadshill! there are pilgrims going to Canterbury with rich offerings, and traders riding to London with fat purses: I have visards for you all, you have horses for yourselves: Gadshill lies to-night in Rochester: I have bespoke supper to-morrow night in Eastcheap: we may do it as secure as sleep. If you will go, I will stuff your purses full of crowns; if you will not, tarry at home and be hanged.

*Fal.* Hear ye, Yedward; if I tarry at home and go not, I'll hang you for going.

*Poin.* You will, chops?

*Fal.* Hal, wilt thou make one?

*P. Hen.* Who, I rob? I a thief? not I, by my faith.

*Fal.* There's neither honesty, manhood, nor good fellowship in thee, nor thou camest not of the blood royal, if thou darest not stand for ten shillings.

*P. Hen.* Well, then, once in my days I'll be a madcap.

*Fal.* Why, that's well said.

*P. Hen.* Well, come what will, I'll tarry at home.

*Fal.* By the Lord, I'll be a traitor, then, when thou art king.

*P. Hen.* I care not.

*Poin.* Sir John, I prithee, leave the prince and me alone: I will lay him down such reasons for this adventure, that he shall go.

*Fal.* Well, God give thee the spirit of persuasion, and him the ears of profiting, that what thou speakest may move, and what he hears may be believed, that the true prince may

(for recreation-sake) prove a false thief; for the poor abuses of the time want countenance. Farewell: you shall find me in Eastcheap.

*P. Hen.* Farewell, thou<sup>(6)</sup> latter spring! farewell, All-hallown summer! [*Exit Falstaff.*]

*Poin.* Now, my good sweet honey-lord, ride with us to-morrow: I have a jest to execute that I cannot manage alone. Falstaff, Bardolph, Peto,<sup>(7)</sup> and Gadshill, shall rob those men that we have already waylaid; yourself and I will not be there; and when they have the booty, if you and I do not rob them, cut this head from my shoulders.

*P. Hen.* But how shall we part with them in setting forth?

*Poin.* Why, we will set forth before or after them, and appoint them a place of meeting, wherein it is at our pleasure to fail; and then will they adventure upon the exploit themselves; which they shall have no sooner achieved, but we'll set upon them.

*P. Hen.* Ay, but 'tis like that they will know us by our horses, by our habits, and by every other appointment, to be ourselves.

*Poin.* Tut! our horses they shall not see,—I'll tie them in the wood; our visards we will change, after we leave them; and, sirrah, I have cases of buckram for the nonce, to im-mask our noted outward garments.

*P. Hen.* But I doubt they will be too hard for us.

*Poin.* Well, for two of them, I know them to be as true-bred cowards as ever turned back; and for the third, if he fight longer than he sees reason, I'll forswear arms. The virtue of this jest will be, the incomprehensible lies that this same fat rogue will tell us when we meet at supper: how thirty, at least, he fought with; what wards, what blows, what extremities he endured; and in the reproof of this lies the jest.

*P. Hen.* Well, I'll go with thee: provide us all things necessary, and meet me to-morrow night<sup>(8)</sup> in Eastcheap; there I'll sup. Farewell.

*Poin.* Farewell, my lord.

[*Exit.*]

*P. Hen.* I know you all, and will awhile uphold  
The unyok'd humour of your idleness:



Yet herein will I imitate the sun,  
 Who doth permit the base contagious clouds  
 To smother up his beauty from the world,  
 That, when he please again to be himself,  
 Being wanted, he may be more wonder'd at,  
 By breaking through the foul and ugly mists  
 Of vapours that did seem to strangle him.  
 If all the year were playing holidays,  
 To sport would be as tedious as to work ;  
 But when they seldom come, they wish'd-for come,  
 And nothing pleaseth but rare accidents.  
 So, when this loose behaviour I throw off,  
 And pay the debt I never promisèd,  
 By how much better than my word I am,  
 By so much shall I falsify men's hopes ;  
 And, like bright metal on a sullen ground,  
 My reformation, glittering o'er my fault,  
 Shall show more goodly and attract more eyes  
 Than that which hath no foil to set it off.  
 I'll so offend, to make offence a skill ;  
 Redeeming time, when men think least I will.

[*Exit.*

---

SCENE III. *The same. Another room in the palace.*

*Enter* King HENRY, NORTHUMBERLAND, WORCESTER, HOTSPUR,  
 Sir WALTER BLUNT, *and others.*

*K. Hen.* My blood hath been too cold and temperate,  
 Unapt to stir at these indignities,  
 And you have found me ; for accordingly  
 You tread upon my patience : but be sure  
 I will from henceforth rather be myself,  
 Mighty and to be fear'd, than my condition ;  
 Which hath been smooth as oil, soft as young down,  
 And therefore lost that title of respect  
 Which the proud soul ne'er pays but to the proud.

*Wor.* Our house, my sovereign liege, little deserves  
 The scourge of greatness to be usèd on it ;

And that same greatness too which our own hands  
Have help to make so portly.

*North.* My lord,—

*K. Hen.* Worcester, get thee gone; for I do see  
Danger and disobedience in thine eye:  
O, sir, your presence is too bold and peremptory,  
And majesty might never yet endure  
The moody frontier of a servant brow.  
You have good leave to leave us: when we need  
Your use and counsel, we shall send for you. [*Exit Worcester.*]  
You were about to speak. [*To North.*]

*North.*

Yea, my good lord.

Those prisoners in your highness' name demanded,  
Which Harry Percy here at Holmedon took,  
Were, as he says, not with such strength denied  
As is deliver'd to your majesty:  
Either envy, therefore, or misprision  
Is guilty of this fault, and not my son.

*Hot.* My liege, I did deny no prisoners.

But I remember, when the fight was done,  
When I was dry with rage and extreme toil,  
Breathless and faint, leaning upon my sword,  
Came there a certain lord, neat, and<sup>(9)</sup> trimly dress'd,  
Fresh as a bridegroom; and his chin new reap'd  
Show'd like a stubble-land at harvest-home;  
He was perfumèd like a milliner;  
And 'twixt his finger and his thumb he held  
A pouncet-box, which ever and anon  
He gave his nose, and took 't away again;—  
Who therewith angry, when it next came there,  
Took it in snuff:—and still he smil'd and talk'd;  
And as the soldiers bore dead bodies by,  
He call'd them untaught knaves, unmannerly,  
To bring a slovenly unhandsome corse  
Betwixt the wind and his nobility.  
With many holiday and lady terms  
He question'd me; among the rest, demanded  
My prisoners in your majesty's behalf.  
I, then all smarting with my wounds being cold,

To be so pester'd with a popinjay,  
Out of my grief and my impatience,  
Answer'd neglectingly, I know not what,—  
He should, or he should not;—for he made me mad  
To see him shine so brisk, and smell so sweet,  
And talk so like a waiting-gentlewoman  
Of guns and drums and wounds,—God save the mark!—  
And telling me the sovereign'st thing on earth  
Was parmaceti for an inward bruise;  
And that it was great pity, so it was,  
This villanous salt-petre should be digg'd  
Out of the bowels of the harmless earth,  
Which many a good tall fellow had destroy'd  
So cowardly; and but for these vile guns,  
He would himself have been a soldier.  
This bald unjointed chat of his, my lord,  
I answer'd indirectly, as I said;  
And I beseech you, let not his report  
Come current for an accusation  
Betwixt my love and your high majesty.

*Blunt.* The circumstance consider'd, good my lord,  
Whate'er Lord Harry Percy then had said  
To such a person, and in such a place,  
At such a time, with all the rest re-told,  
May reasonably die, and never rise  
To do him wrong, or any way impeach  
What then he said, so he unsay it now.

*K. Hen.* Why, yet he doth deny his prisoners,  
But with proviso and exception,—  
That we at our own charge shall ransom straight  
His brother-in-law, the foolish Mortimer;  
Who, on my soul, hath wilfully betray'd  
The lives of those that he did lead to fight  
Against the great magician, damn'd Glendower,  
Whose daughter, as we hear, that Earl of March  
Hath lately married. Shall our coffers, then,  
Be emptied to redeem a traitor home?  
Shall we buy treason? and indent with fears,  
When they have lost and forfeited themselves?

No, on the barren mountains let him starve ;  
 For I shall never hold that man my friend  
 Whose tongue shall ask me for one penny cost  
 To ransom home revolted Mortimer.

*Hot.* Revolted Mortimer !

He never did fall off, my sovereign liege,  
 But by the chance of war :—to prove that true  
 Needs no more but one tongue for all those wounds,  
 Those mouthèd wounds, which valiantly he took,  
 When on the gentle Severn's sedgy bank,  
 In single opposition, hand to hand,  
 He did confound the best part of an hour  
 In changing hardiment with great Glendower :  
 Three times they breath'd, and three times did they drink,  
 Upon agreement, of swift Severn's flood ;  
 Who then, affrighted with their bloody looks,  
 Ran fearfully among the trembling reeds,  
 And hid his crisp head in the hollow bank  
 Blood-stainèd with these valiant combatants.  
 Never did base and rotten policy  
 Colour her working with such deadly wounds ;  
 Nor never could the noble Mortimer  
 Receive so many, and all willingly :  
 Then let him not be slander'd with revolt.

*K. Hen.* Thou dost belie him, Percy, thou dost belie him ;  
 He never did encounter with Glendower :  
 I tell thee,  
 He durst as well have met the devil alone  
 As Owen Glendower for an enemy.  
 Art thou not asham'd ? But, sirrah, henceforth  
 Let me not hear you speak of Mortimer :  
 Send me your prisoners with the speediest means,  
 Or you shall hear in such a kind from me  
 As will displease you.—My Lord Northumberland,  
 We license your departure with your son.—  
 Send us your prisoners, or you'll hear of it.

[*Exeunt King Henry, Blunt, and train.*]

*Hot.* And if the devil come and roar for them,  
 I will not send them :—I will after straight,

And tell him so ; for I will ease my heart,  
Albeit I make a hazard of my head.

*North.* What, drunk with choler? stay, and pause awhile:  
Here comes your uncle.

*Re-enter WORCESTER.*

*Hot.* Speak of Mortimer!

Zounds, I will speak of him ; and let my soul  
Want mercy, if I do not join with him :  
Yea, on his part I'll empty all these veins,  
And shed my dear blood drop by drop i' the dust,  
But I will lift the down-trod Mortimer  
As high i' the air as this unthankful king,  
As this ingrate and canker'd Bolingbroke.

*North.* Brother, the king hath made your nephew mad.

[*To Worcester.*]

*Wor.* Who struck this heat up after I was gone?

*Hot.* He will, forsooth, have all my prisoners ;  
And when I urg'd the ransom once again  
Of my wife's brother, then his cheek look'd pale,  
And on my face he turn'd an eye of death,  
Trembling even at the name of Mortimer.

*Wor.* I cannot blame him : was he not proclaim'd  
By Richard that dead is the next of blood?

*North.* He was ; I heard the proclamation :  
And then it was when the unhappy king  
(Whose wrongs in us God pardon!) did set forth  
Upon his Irish expedition ;  
From whence he intercepted did return  
To be depos'd, and shortly murder'd.

*Wor.* And for whose death we in the world's wide mouth  
Live scandaliz'd and foully spoken of.

*Hot.* But, soft, I pray you ; did King Richard then  
Proclaim my brother Edmund Mortimer  
Heir to the crown ?

*North.* He did ; myself did hear it.

*Hot.* Nay, then I cannot blame his cousin king,  
That wish'd him on the barren mountains starve.  
But shall it be, that you, that set the crown

Upon the head of this forgetful man,  
 And for his sake wear the detested blot  
 Of murderous subornation,—shall it be,  
 That you a world of curses undergo,  
 Being the agents, or base second means,  
 The cords, the ladder, or the hangman rather?—  
 O, pardon me, that I descend so low,  
 To show the line and the predicament  
 Wherein you range under this subtle king;—  
 Shall it, for shame, be spoken in these days,  
 Or fill up chronicles in time to come,  
 That men of your nobility and power  
 Did gage them both in an unjust behalf,—  
 As both of you, God pardon it! have done,—  
 To put down Richard, that sweet lovely rose,  
 And plant this thorn, this canker, Bolingbroke?  
 And shall it, in more shame, be further spoken,  
 That you are fool'd, discarded, and shook off  
 By him for whom these shames ye underwent?  
 No; yet time serves, wherein you may redeem  
 Your banish'd honours, and restore yourselves  
 Into the good thoughts of the world again;  
 Revenge the jeering and disdain'd contempt  
 Of this proud king, who studies day and night  
 To answer all the debt he owes to you  
 Even with the bloody payment of your deaths:  
 Therefore, I say,—

*Wor.*

Peace, cousin, say no more:

And now I will unclasp a secret book,  
 And to your quick-conceiving discontents  
 I'll read you matter deep and dangerous;  
 As full of peril and adventurous spirit  
 As to o'er-walk a current roaring loud  
 On the unsteadfast footing of a spear.

*Hot.* If he fall in, good night!—or sink or swim:—  
 Send danger from the east unto the west,  
 So honour cross it from the north to south,  
 And let them grapple:—O, the blood more stirs  
 To rouse a lion than to start a hare!

*North.* Imagination of some great exploit  
Drives him beyond the bounds of patience.

*Hot.* By heaven, methinks it were an easy leap,  
To pluck bright honour from the pale-fac'd moon ;  
Or dive into the bottom of the deep,  
Where fathom-line could never touch the ground,  
And pluck up drownèd honour by the locks ;  
So he that doth redeem her thence might wear  
Without corrival all her dignities :  
But out upon this half-fac'd fellowship !

*Wor.* He apprehends a world of figures here,  
But not the form of what he should attend.—  
Good cousin, give me audience for awhile.

*Hot.* I cry you mercy.

*Wor.* Those same noble Scots  
That are your prisoners,—

*Hot.* I'll keep them all ;  
By heaven, he shall not have a Scot of them ;  
No, if a Scot would save his soul, he shall not :  
I'll keep them, by this hand.

*Wor.* You start away,  
And lend no ear unto my purposes.—  
Those prisoners you shall keep.

*Hot.* Nay, I will ; that's flat :—  
He said he would not ransom Mortimer ;  
Forbad my tongue to speak of Mortimer ;  
But I will find him when he lies asleep,  
And in his ear I'll holla " Mortimer !"  
Nay,  
I'll have a starling shall be taught to speak  
Nothing but " Mortimer," and give it him,  
To keep his anger still in motion.

*Wor.* Hear you, cousin ; a word.

*Hot.* All studies here I solemnly defy,  
Save how to gall and pinch this Bolingbroke :  
And that same sword-and-buckler Prince of Wales,—  
But that I think his father loves him not,  
And would be glad he met with some mischance,  
I would have him poison'd with a pot of ale.

*Wor.* Farewell, kinsman : I will talk to you  
When you are better temper'd to attend.

*North.* Why, what a wasp-tongue and impatient fool  
Art thou to break into this woman's mood,  
Tying thine ear to no tongue but thine own !

*Hot.* Why, look you, I am whipp'd and scourg'd with rods,  
Nettled, and stung with pismires, when I hear  
Of this vile politician, Bolingbroke.

In Richard's time,—what do ye call the place?—  
A plague upon't—it is in Glostershire;—  
'Twas where the madcap duke his uncle kept,—  
His uncle York;—where I first bow'd my knee  
Unto this king of smiles, this Bolingbroke,  
When you and he came back from Ravenspurge.

*North.* At Berkley-castle.

*Hot.* You say true:—

Why, what a candy deal of courtesy  
This fawning greyhound then did proffer me !  
Look, “when his infant fortune came to age,”  
And, “gentle Harry Percy,” and, “kind cousin,”—  
O, the devil take such cozeners!—God forgive me!—  
Good uncle, tell your tale; for I have done.

*Wor.* Nay, if you have not, to't again;  
We'll stay your leisure.

*Hot.* I have done, i' faith.

*Wor.* Then once more to your Scottish prisoners.  
Deliver them up without their ransom straight,  
And make the Douglas' son your only mean  
For powers in Scotland; which, for divers reasons  
Which I shall send you written, be assur'd,  
Will easily be granted.—You, my lord, [*To Northumberland.*]  
Your son in Scotland being thus employ'd,  
Shall secretly into the bosom creep  
Of that same noble prelate, well below'd,  
The archbishop.

*Hot.* Of York, is't not?

*Wor.* True; who bears hard  
His brother's death at Bristol, the Lord Scroop.  
I speak not this in estimation,



As what I think might be, but what I know  
Is ruminated, plotted, and set down,  
And only stays but to behold the face  
Of that occasion that shall bring it on.

*Hot.* I smell it: upon my life, it will do well.

*North.* Before the game's a-foot, thou still lett'st slip.

*Hot.* Why, it cannot choose but be a noble plot:—  
And then the power of Scotland and of York,—  
To join with Mortimer, ha?

*Wor.* And so they shall.

*Hot.* In faith, it is exceedingly well aim'd.

*Wor.* And 'tis no little reason bids us speed,  
To save our heads by raising of a head;  
For, bear ourselves as even as we can,  
The king will always think him in our debt,  
And think we think ourselves unsatisfied,  
Till he hath found a time to pay us home:  
And see already how he doth begin  
To make us strangers to his looks of love.

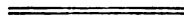
*Hot.* He does, he does: we'll be reveng'd on him.

*Wor.* Cousin, farewell:—no further go in this  
Than I by letters shall direct your course.  
When time is ripe (which will be suddenly),  
I'll steal to Glendower and Lord Mortimer;  
Where you and Douglas, and our powers at once  
(As I will fashion it), shall happily meet,  
To bear our fortunes in our own strong arms,  
Which now we hold at much uncertainty.

*North.* Farewell, good brother: we shall thrive, I trust.

*Hot.* Uncle, adieu:—O, let the hours be short,  
Till fields and blows and groans applaud our sport!

[*Exeunt.*]



www.libtool.com.cn ACT II.

SCENE I. *Rochester. An inn-yard.*

*Enter a Carrier with a lantern in his hand.*

*First Car.* Heigh-ho! an't be not four by the day, I'll be hanged: Charles' wain is over the new chimney, and yet our horse not packed.—What, ostler!

*Ost.* [*within.*] Anon, anon.

*First Car.* I prithee, Tom, beat Cut's saddle, put a few flocks in the point; the poor jade is wrung in the withers out of all cress.

*Enter another Carrier.*

*Sec. Car.* Peas and beans are as dank here as a dog, and that is the next way to give poor jades the bots: this house is turned upside down since Robin ostler died.

*First Car.* Poor fellow! never joyed since the price of oats rose; it was the death of him.

*Sec. Car.* I think this be the most villanous house in all London road for fleas: I am stung like a tench.

*First Car.* Like a tench! by the mass, there is ne'er a king in Christendom could be better bit than I have been since the first cock.

*Sec. Car.* Why, they will allow us ne'er a jorden, and then we leak in your chimney; and your chamber-lie breeds fleas like a loach.

*First Car.* What, ostler! come away and be hanged; come away.

*Sec. Car.* I have a gammon of bacon and two races of ginger, to be delivered as far as Charing-cross.

*First Car.* 'Odsbody, the turkeys in my pannier are quite starved.—What, ostler!—A plague on thee! hast thou never an eye in thy head? canst not hear? An 'twere not as good a deed as drink, to break the pate of thee, I am a very villain.—Come, and be hanged:—hast no faith in thee?

*Enter GADSHILL.*

*Gads.* Good morrow, carriers. What's o'clock?

*First Car.* I think it be two o'clock.

*Gads.* I prithee, lend me thy lantern, to see my gelding in the stable. [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*First Car.* Nay, soft, I pray ye; I know a trick worth two of that, i' faith.

*Gads.* I prithee, lend me thine.

*Sec. Car.* Ay, when? canst tell?—Lend me thy lantern, quoth a?—marry, I'll see thee hanged first.

*Gads.* Sirrah carrier, what time do you mean to come to London?

*Sec. Car.* Time enough to go to bed with a candle, I warrant thee.—Come, neighbour Mugs, we'll call up the gentlemen: they will along with company, for they have great charge. *[Exeunt Carriers.]*

*Gads.* What, ho! chamberlain!

*Cham.* *[within.]* At hand, quoth pick-purse.

*Gads.* That's even as fair as—at hand, quoth the chamberlain; for thou variest no more from picking of purses than giving direction doth from labouring; thou layest the plot how.

*Enter Chamberlain.*

*Cham.* Good morrow, Master Gadshill. It holds current that I told you yesternight:—there's a franklin in the wild of Kent hath brought three hundred marks with him in gold: I heard him tell it to one of his company last night at supper; a kind of auditor; one that hath abundance of charge too, God knows what. They are up already, and call for eggs and butter: they will away presently.

*Gads.* Sirrah, if they meet not with Saint Nicholas' clerks, I'll give thee this neck.

*Cham.* No, I'll none of it: I prithee, keep that for the hangman; for I know thou worshippest Saint Nicholas as truly as a man of falsehood may.

*Gads.* What talkest thou to me of the hangman? if I hang, I'll make a fat pair of gallows; for if I hang, old Sir John hangs with me, and thou knowest he's no starveling. Tut! there are other Trojans that thou dreamest not of, the which, for sport-sake, are content to do the profession some grace; that would, if matters should be looked into, for their

own credit-sake, make all whole. I am joined with no foot land-rakers, no long-staff sixpenny strikers, none of these mad mustachio purple-hued malt-worms; but with nobility and tranquillity, burgomasters and great oneyers, such as can hold in, such as will strike sooner than speak, and speak sooner than drink, and drink sooner than pray: and yet I lie; for they pray continually to their saint, the commonwealth; or, rather, not pray to her, but prey on her,—for they ride up and down on her, and make her their boots.

*Cham.* What, the commonwealth their boots? will she hold out water in foul way?

*Gads.* She will, she will; justice hath liquored her. We steal as in a castle, cock-sure; we have the receipt of fern-seed,—we walk invisible.

*Cham.* Nay, by my faith, I think you are more beholding to the night than to fern-seed for your walking invisible.

*Gads.* Give me thy hand: thou shalt have a share in our purchase, as I am a true man.

*Cham.* Nay, rather let me have it, as you are a false thief.

*Gads.* Go to; *homo* is a common name to all men. Bid the ostler bring my gelding out of the stable. Farewell, ye muddy knave. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The road by Gadshill.*

*Enter* Prince HENRY, POINTZ, BARDOLPH, and PETO.

*Poin.* Come, shelter, shelter: I have removed Falstaff's horse, and he frets like a gummed velvet.

*P. Hen.* Stand close. [*They retire.*

*Enter* FALSTAFF.

*Fal.* Pointz! Pointz, and be hanged! Pointz!

*P. Hen.* [*coming forward.*] Peace, ye fat-kidneyed rascal! what a brawling dost thou keep!

*Fal.* Where's Pointz, Hal?

*P. Hen.* He is walked up to the top of the hill: I'll go seek him. [*Retires.*

*Fal.* I am accursed to rob in that thief's company: the

rascal hath removed my horse, and tied him I know not where. If I travel but four foot by the squire further a-foot, I shall break my wind. Well, I doubt not but to die a fair death for all this, if I scape hanging for killing that rogue. I have forsworn his company hourly any time this two-and-twenty year, and yet I am bewitched with the rogue's company. If the rascal have not given me medicines to make me love him, I'll be hanged; it could not be else; I have drunk medicines.—Pointz!—Hal!—a plague upon you both!—Bardolph!—Peto!—I'll starve, ere I'll rob a foot further. An 'twere not as good a deed as drink, to turn true man, and leave these rogues, I am the veriest varlet that ever chewed with a tooth. Eight yards of uneven ground is threescore and ten miles a-foot with me; and the stony-hearted villains know it well enough: a plague upon't, when thieves cannot be true one to another! [*They whistle.*] Whew!—A plague upon you all! Give me my horse, you rogues; give me my horse, and be hanged.

*P. Hen.* [*coming forward.*] Peace, ye fat-guts! lie down; lay thine ear close to the ground, and list if thou canst hear the tread of travellers.

*Fal.* Have you any levers to lift me up again, being down? 'Sblood, I'll not bear mine own flesh so far a-foot again for all the coin in thy father's exchequer. What a plague mean ye to colt me thus?

*P. Hen.* Thou liest; thou art not colted, thou art uncolted.

*Fal.* I prithee, good Prince Hal, help me to my horse, good king's son.

*P. Hen.* Out, you rogue! shall I be your ostler?

*Fal.* Go, hang thyself in thine own heir-apparent garters! If I be ta'en, I'll peach for this. An I have not ballads made on you all, and sung to filthy tunes, let a cup of sack be my poison:—when a jest is so forward, and a-foot too!—I hate it.

• *Enter GADSHILL.*

*Gads.* Stand.

*Fal.* So I do, against my will.

*Pointz.* O, 'tis our setter: I know his voice.<sup>(10)</sup>

[*Coming forward with Bardolph and Peto.*]

*Bard.* What news?

*Gads.* Case ye, case ye; on with your visards: there's money of the king's coming down the hill; 'tis going to the king's exchequer.

*Fal.* You lie, you rogue; tis going to the king's tavern.

*Gads.* There's enough to make us all.

*Fal.* To be hanged.

*P. Hen.* Sirs, you four shall front them in the narrow lane; Ned Pointz and I will walk lower: if they scape from your encounter, then they light on us.

*Peto.* How many be there of them?

*Gads.* Some eight or ten.

*Fal.* Zounds, will they not rob us?

*P. Hen.* What, a coward, Sir John Paunch?

*Fal.* Indeed, I am not John of Gaunt, your grandfather; but yet no coward, Hal.

*P. Hen.* Well, we leave that to the proof.

*Pointz.* Sirrah Jack, thy horse stands behind the hedge: when thou needest him, there thou shalt find him. Farewell, and stand fast.

*Fal.* Now cannot I strike him, if I should be hanged.

*P. Hen.* [*aside to Pointz.*] Ned, where are our disguises?

*Pointz.* Here, hard by: stand close.

[*Exeunt P. Henry and Pointz.*]

*Fal.* Now, my masters, happy man be his dole, say I: every man to his business.

*Enter Travellers.*

*First Trav.* Come, neighbour: the boy shall lead our horses down the hill; we'll walk a-foot awhile, and ease our legs.

*Fal., Gads., &c.* Stand!

*Travellers.* Jesu bless us!

*Fal.* Strike; down with them; cut the villains' throats:—ah, whoreson caterpillars! bacon-fed knaves! they hate us youth:—down with them; fleece them.

*Travellers.* O, we are undone, both we and ours for ever!

*Fal.* Hang ye, gorbellied knaves, are ye undone? No, ye fat chuffs; I would your store were here! On, bacons, on!

What, ye knaves! young men must live. You are grand-jurors, are ye? we'll jure ye, i' faith.

[*Exeunt Fal., Gads., &c. driving the Travellers out.*

*Re-enter Prince HENRY and POINTZ, in buckram suits.*

*P. Hen.* The thieves have bound the true men. Now could thou and I rob the thieves, and go merrily to London, it would be argument for a week, laughter for a month, and a good jest for ever.

*Poin.* Stand close; I hear them coming. [*They retire.*

*Re-enter FALSTAFF, GADSHILL, BARDOLPH, and PETO.*

*Fal.* Come, my masters, let us share, and then to horse before day. An the Prince and Pointz be not two arrant cowards, there's no equity stirring: there's no more valour in that Pointz than in a wild-duck.

[*As they are sharing, the Prince and Pointz set upon them.*

*P. Hen.* Your money!

*Poin.* Villains!

[*Gadshill, Bardolph, and Peto run away; and Falstaff, after a blow or two, runs away too, leaving the booty behind.*

*P. Hen.* Got with much ease. Now merrily to horse: The thieves are scatter'd, and possess'd with fear So strongly that they dare not meet each other; Each takes his fellow for an officer. Away, good Ned. Falstaff sweats to death, And lards the lean earth as he walks along: Were't not for laughing, I should pity him.

*Poin.* How the rogue roar'd! [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III. *Warkworth. A room in the Castle.*

*Enter HOTSPUR, reading a letter.*

*Hot.* "— But, for mine own part, my lord, I could be well contented to be there, in respect of the love I bear your house."— He could be contented,—why is he not, then? In respect of the love he bears our house:—he shows in this, he loves his

own barn better than he loves our house. Let me see some more. "The purpose you undertake is dangerous :"—why, that's certain: 'tis dangerous to take a cold, to sleep, to drink; but I tell you, my lord fool, out of this nettle, danger, we pluck this flower, safety. "The purpose you undertake is dangerous; the friends you have named uncertain; the time itself unsorted; and your whole plot too light for the counterpoise of so great an opposition."—Say you so, say you so? I say unto you again, you are a shallow, cowardly hind, and you lie. What a lack-brain is this! By the Lord, our plot is a good plot as ever was laid; our friends true and constant: a good plot, good friends, and full of expectation; an excellent plot, very good friends. What a frosty-spirited rogue is this! Why, my Lord of York commends the plot and the general course of the action. Zounds, an I were now by this rascal, I could brain him with his lady's fan. Is there not my father, my uncle, and myself? Lord Edmund Mortimer, my Lord of York, and Owen Glendower? is there not, besides, the Douglas? have I not all their letters to meet me in arms by the ninth of the next month? and are they not some of them set forward already? What a pagan rascal is this! an infidel! Ha! you shall see now, in very sincerity of fear and cold heart, will he to the king, and lay open all our proceedings. O, I could divide myself, and go to buffets, for moving such a dish of skimmed milk with so honourable an action! Hang him! let him tell the king: we are prepared. I will set forward to-night.

*Enter Lady PERCY.*

How now, Kate! I must leave you within these two hours.

*Lady.* O, my good lord, why are you thus alone?  
 For what offence have I this fortnight been  
 A banish'd woman from my Harry's bed?  
 Tell me, sweet lord, what is 't that takes from thee  
 Thy stomach, pleasure, and thy golden sleep?  
 Why dost thou bend thine eyes upon the earth,  
 And start so often when thou sitt'st alone?  
 Why hast thou lost the fresh blood in thy cheeks;  
 And given my treasures and my rights of thee  
 To thick-ey'd musing and curs'd melancholy?



In thy faint slumbers I by thee have watch'd,  
 And heard thee murmur tales of iron wars;  
 Speak terms of manage to thy bounding steed;  
 Cry, "Courage! to the field!"—and thou hast talk'd  
 Of sallies and retires, of trenches, tents,  
 Of palisadoes, frontiers, parapets,  
 Of basilisks, of cannon, culverin,  
 Of prisoners' ransom, and of soldiers slain,  
 And all the 'currents of a heady fight.  
 Thy spirit within thee hath been so at war,  
 And thus hath so bestirr'd thee in thy sleep,  
 That beads of sweat have stood upon thy brow,  
 Like bubbles in a late-disturbèd stream;  
 And in thy face strange motions have appear'd,  
 Such as we see when men restrain their breath  
 On some great sudden hest. O, what portents are these?  
 Some heavy business hath my lord in hand,  
 And I must know it, else he loves me not.

*Hot.* What, ho!

*Enter a Servant.*

Is Gilliams with the packet gone?

*Serv.* He is, my lord, an hour ago.

*Hot.* Hath Butler brought those horses from the sheriff?

*Serv.* One horse, my lord, he brought even now.

*Hot.* What horse? a roan, a crop-ear, is it not?

*Serv.* It is, my lord.

*Hot.* That roan shall be my throne.

Well, I will back him straight: O *esperance!*—

Bid Butler lead him forth into the park. [*Exit Servant.*]

*Lady.* But hear you, my lord.

*Hot.* What say'st thou, my lady?

*Lady.* What is it carries you away?

*Hot.* Why, my horse, my love,—my horse.

*Lady.* Out, you mad-headed ape!

A weasel hath not such a deal of spleen

As you are toss'd with. In faith,

I'll know your business, Harry,—that I will.

I fear my brother Mortimer doth stir

About his title, and hath sent for you  
To line his enterprize : but if you go,—

*Hot.* So far a-foot, I shall be weary, love.

*Lady.* Come, come, you paraquito, answer me  
Directly unto this question that I ask :  
In faith, I'll break thy little finger, Harry,  
An if thou wilt not tell me all things true.

*Hot.* Away,

Away, you trifler!—Love?—I love thee not,  
I care not for thee, Kate : this is no world  
To tilt with mammets and to tilt with lips :  
We must have bloody noses and crack'd crowns,  
And pass them current too.—Gods me, my horse !—  
What say'st thou, Kate ? what wouldst thou have with me ?

*Lady.* Do you not love me ? do you not, indeed ?  
Well, do not, then ; for since you love me not,  
I will not love myself. Do you not love me ?  
Nay, tell me if you speak in jest or no.

*Hot.* Come, wilt thou see me ride ?  
And when I am o' horseback, I will swear  
I love thee infinitely. But hark you, Kate ;  
I must not have you henceforth question me  
Whither I go, nor reason whereabout :  
Whither I must, I must ; and, to conclude,  
This evening must I leave you, gentle Kate.  
I know you wise ; but yet no further wise  
Than Harry Percy's wife : constant you are ;  
But yet a woman : and for secrecy,  
No lady closer ; for I well believe  
Thou wilt not utter what thou dost not know,—  
And so far will I trust thee, gentle Kate.

*Lady.* How ! so far ?

*Hot.* Not an inch further. But hark you, Kate :  
Whither I go, thither shall you go too ;  
To-day will I set forth, to-morrow you.—  
Will this content you, Kate ?

*Lady.*

It must of force. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV. *Eastcheap. A room in the Boar's-Head Tavern.*

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Enter* Prince HENRY.

*P. Hen.* Ned, prithee, come out of that fat room, and lend me thy hand to laugh a little.

*Enter* POINZ.

*Poin.* Where hast been, Hal?

*P. Hen.* With three or four loggerheads amongst three or fourscore hogsheds. I have sounded the very base-string of humility. Sirrah, I am sworn brother to a leash of drawers; and can call them all by their Christian names, as,—Tom, Dick, and Francis. They take it already upon their salvation, that though I be but Prince of Wales, yet I am the king of courtesy; and tell me flatly I am no proud Jack, like Falstaff, but a Corinthian, a lad of mettle, a good boy (by the Lord, so they call me), and when I am king of England, I shall command all the good lads in Eastcheap. They call drinking deep, dying scarlet; and when you breathe in your watering, they cry “hem!” and bid you play it off. To conclude, I am so good a proficient in one quarter of an hour, that I can drink with any tinker in his own language during my life. I tell thee, Ned, thou hast lost much honour, that thou wert not with me in this action. But, sweet Ned,—to sweeten which name of Ned, I give thee this pennyworth of sugar, clapped even now into my hand by an under-skinker, one that never spake other English in his life than, “Eight shillings and sixpence,” and “You are welcome,” with this shrill addition, “Anon, anon, sir! Score a pint of bastard in the Half-moon,” or so:—but, Ned, to drive away the time till Falstaff come, I prithee, do thou stand in some by-room, while I question my puny drawer to what end he gave me the sugar; and do thou never leave calling “Francis,” that his tale to me may be nothing but “anon.” Step aside, and I’ll show thee a precedent.

[*Exit* Poinz.]

*Poin.* [*within.*] Francis!

*P. Hen.* Thou art perfect.

*Poin.* [*within.*] Francis!

*Enter FRANCIS.*

*www.libtool.com.cn*  
*Fran.* Anon, anon, sir.—Look down into the Pomegranate, Ralph.

*P. Hen.* Come hither, Francis.

*Fran.* My lord?

*P. Hen.* How long hast thou to serve, Francis?

*Fran.* Forsooth, five years, and as much as to,—

*Poin.* [*within.*] Francis!

*Fran.* Anon, anon, sir.

*P. Hen.* Five years! by'r lady, a long lease for the clinking of pewter. But, Francis, darest thou be so valiant as to play the coward with thy indenture and show it a fair pair of heels and run from it?

*Fran.* O Lord, sir, I'll be sworn upon all the books in England, I could find in my heart,—

*Poin.* [*within.*] Francis!

*Fran.* Anon, anon, sir.

*P. Hen.* How old art thou, Francis?

*Fran.* Let me see,—about Michaelmas next I shall be,—

*Poin.* [*within.*] Francis!

*Fran.* Anon, sir.—Pray you, stay a little, my lord.

*P. Hen.* Nay, but hark you, Francis: for the sugar thou gavest me,—'twas a pennyworth, was't not?—

*Fran.* O Lord, sir, I would it had been two!

*P. Hen.* I will give thee for it a thousand pound: ask me when thou wilt, and thou shalt have it.

*Poin.* [*within.*] Francis!

*Fran.* Anon, anon.

*P. Hen.* Anon, Francis? No, Francis; but to-morrow, Francis; or, Francis, on Thursday; or, indeed, Francis, when thou wilt. But, Francis,—

*Fran.* My lord?

*P. Hen.* Wilt thou rob this leathern-jerkin, crystal-button, nott-pated, agate-ring, puke-stocking, caddis-garter, smooth-tongue, Spanish-pouch,—

*Fran.* O Lord, sir, who do you mean?

*P. Hen.* Why, then, your brown bastard is your only

drink; for, look you, Francis, your white canvas doublet will sully: in Barbary, sir, it cannot come to so much.

*Fran.* What, sir?

*Poin.* [*within.*] Francis!

*P. Hen.* Away, you rogue! dost thou not hear them call? [*Here they both call him; Francis stands amazed, not knowing which way to go.*]

*Enter Vintner.*

*Vint.* What, standest thou still, and hearest such a calling? Look to the guests within. [*Exit Francis.*] My lord, old Sir John, with half-a-dozen more, are at the door: shall I let them in?

*P. Hen.* Let them alone awhile, and then open the door. [*Exit Vintner.*] Pointz!

*Re-enter POINTZ.*

*Poin.* Anon, anon, sir.

*P. Hen.* Sirrah, Falstaff and the rest of the thieves are at the door: shall we be merry?

*Poin.* As merry as crickets, my lad. But hark ye; what cunning match have you made with this jest of the drawer? come, what's the issue?

*P. Hen.* I am now of all humours that have showed themselves humours since the old days of goodman Adam to the pupil-age of this present twelve o'clock at midnight.—What's o'clock, Francis?

*Fran.* [*within.*] Anon, anon, sir.

*P. Hen.* That ever this fellow should have fewer words than a parrot, and yet the son of a woman! His industry is up-stairs and down-stairs; his eloquence the parcel of a reckoning. I am not yet of Percy's mind, the Hotspur of the north; he that kills me some six or seven dozen of Scots at a breakfast, washes his hands, and says to his wife, "Fie upon this quiet life! I want work." "O my sweet Harry," says she, "how many hast thou killed to-day?" "Give my roan horse a drench," says he; and answers, "Some fourteen," an hour after,—"a trifle, a trifle." I prithee, call in Falstaff: I'll play Percy, and that damned brawn shall play

Dame Mortimer his wife. "Rivo," says the drunkard. Call in ribs, call in tallow.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Enter FALSTAFF, GADSHILL, BARDOLPH, and PETO; followed by FRANCIS with wine.*

*Poin.* Welcome, Jack: where hast thou been?

*Fal.* A plague of all cowards, I say, and a vengeance too! marry, and amen!—Give me a cup of sack, boy.—Ere I lead this life long, I'll sew nether-stocks, and mend them and foot them too. A plague of all cowards!—Give me a cup of sack, rogue.—Is there no virtue extant? [*He drinks.*]

*P. Hen.* Didst thou never see Titan kiss a dish of butter? pitiful-hearted Titan, that melted at the sweet tale of the sun!<sup>(1)</sup> if thou didst, then behold that compound.

*Fal.* You rogue, here's lime in this sack too: there is nothing but roguery to be found in villanous man: yet a coward is worse than a cup of sack with lime in it,—a villanous coward.—Go thy ways, old Jack; die when thou wilt, if manhood, good manhood, be not forgot upon the face of the earth, then am I a shotten herring. There live not three good men unhang'd in England; and one of them is fat, and grows old: God help the while! a bad world, I say. I would I were a weaver; I could sing psalms or any thing. A plague of all cowards, I say still.

*P. Hen.* How now, wool-sack! what mutter you?

*Fal.* A king's son! If I do not beat thee out of thy kingdom with a dagger of lath, and drive all thy subjects afore thee like a flock of wild-geese, I'll never wear hair on my face more. You Prince of Wales!

*P. Hen.* Why, you whoreson round man, what's the matter?

*Fal.* Are you not a coward? answer me to that:—and Pointz there?

*Poin.* Zounds, ye fat paunch, an ye call me coward, I'll stab thee.

*Fal.* I call thee coward! I'll see thee damned ere I call thee coward: but I would give a thousand pound, I could run as fast as thou canst. You are straight enough in the shoulders,—you care not who sees your back: call you that

backing of your friends? A plague upon such backing! give me them that will face me.—Give me a cup of sack:—I am a rogue, if I drunk to-day.

*P. Hen.* O villain! thy lips are scarce wiped since thou drunkenst last.

*Fal.* All's one for that. A plague of all cowards, still say I. [*He drinks.*]

*P. Hen.* What's the matter?

*Fal.* What's the matter! there be four of us here have ta'en a thousand pound this day morning.

*P. Hen.* Where is it, Jack? where is it?

*Fal.* Where is it! taken from us it is: a hundred upon poor four of us.

*P. Hen.* What, a hundred, man?

*Fal.* I am a rogue, if I were not at half-sword with a dozen of them two hours together. I have scaped by miracle. I am eight times thrust through the doublet, four through the hose; my buckler cut through and through; my sword hacked like a hand-saw,—*ecce signum!* I never dealt better since I was a man: all would not do. A plague of all cowards!—Let them speak: if they speak more or less than truth, they are villains and the sons of darkness.

*P. Hen.* Speak, sirs; how was it?

*Gads.*<sup>(12)</sup> We four set upon some dozen,—

*Fal.* Sixteen at least, my lord.

*Gads.* And bound them.

*Peto.* No, no, they were not bound.

*Fal.* You rogue, they were bound, every man of them; or I am a Jew else, an Ebrew Jew.

*Gads.* As we were sharing, some six or seven fresh men set upon us,—

*Fal.* And unbound the rest, and then come<sup>(13)</sup> in the other.

*P. Hen.* What, fought ye with them all?

*Fal.* All! I know not what ye call all; but if I fought not with fifty of them, I am a bunch of radish: if there were not two or three and fifty upon poor old Jack, then am I no two-legged creature.

*P. Hen.* Pray God you have not murdered some of them.

*Fal.* Nay, that's past praying for: I have peppered two

of them; two I am sure I have paid,—two rogues in buckram suits. I tell thee what, Hal,—if I tell thee a lie, spit in my face, call me horse! Thou knowest my old ward;—here I lay, and thus I bore my point. Four rogues in buckram let drive at me,—

*P. Hen.* What, four? thou saidst but two even now.

*Fal.* Four, Hal; I told thee four.

*Poin.* Ay, ay, he said four.

*Fal.* These four came all a-front, and mainly thrust at me. I made me no more ado but took all their seven points in my target, thus.

*P. Hen.* Seven? why, there were but four even now.

*Fal.* In buckram.<sup>(14)</sup>

*Poin.* Ay, four, in buckram suits.

*Fal.* Seven, by these hilts, or I am a villain else.

*P. Hen.* Prithee, let him alone; we shall have more anon.

*Fal.* Dost thou hear me, Hal?

*P. Hen.* Ay, and mark thee too, Jack.

*Fal.* Do so, for it is worth the listening to. These nine in buckram that I told thee of,—

*P. Hen.* So, two more already.

*Fal.* Their points being broken,—

*Poin.* Down fell their hose.

*Fal.* Began to give me ground: but I followed me close, came in foot and hand; and with a thought seven of the eleven I paid.

*P. Hen.* O monstrous! eleven buckram men grown out of two!

*Fal.* But, as the devil would have it, three misbegotten knaves in Kendal green came at my back and let drive at me;—for it was so dark, Hal, that thou couldst not see thy hand.

*P. Hen.* These lies are like the father that begets them,—gross as a mountain, open, palpable. Why, thou clay-brained guts, thou nott-pated fool, thou whoreson, obscene, greasy tallow-keech,—<sup>(15)</sup>

*Fal.* What, art thou mad? art thou mad? is not the truth the truth?

*P. Hen.* Why, how couldst thou know these men in



Kendal green, when it was so dark thou couldst not see thy hand? come, tell us your reason: what sayest thou to this?

*Poin.* Come, your reason, Jack,—your reason.

*Fal.* What, upon compulsion? No; were I at the strap-pado, or all the racks in the world, I would not tell you on compulsion. Give you a reason on compulsion! if reasons were as plenty as blackberries, I would give no man a reason upon compulsion, I.

*P. Hen.* I'll be no longer guilty of this sin; this sanguine coward, this bed-presser, this horse'-back-breaker, this huge hill of flesh,—

*Fal.* Away, you starveling, you elf-skin, you dried neat's-tongue, bull's-pizzle, you stock-fish,—O for breath to utter what is like thee!—you tailor's-yard, you sheath, you bow-case, you vile standing-tuck,—

*P. Hen.* Well, breathe awhile, and then to it again: and when thou hast tired thyself in base comparisons, hear me speak but this.

*Poin.* Mark, Jack.

*P. Hen.* We two saw you four set on four; you<sup>(16)</sup> bound them, and were masters of their wealth.—Mark now, how a plain tale shall put you down.—Then did we two set on you four; and, with a word, out-faced you from your prize, and have it; yea, and can show it you here in the house:—and, Falstaff, you carried your guts away as nimbly, with as quick dexterity, and roared for mercy, and still ran and roared, as ever I heard bull-calf. What a slave art thou, to hack thy sword as thou hast done, and then say it was in fight! What trick, what device, what starting-hole, canst thou now find out to hide thee from this open and apparent shame?

*Poin.* Come, let's hear, Jack; what trick hast thou now?

*Fal.* By the Lord, I knew ye as well as he that made ye. Why, hear ye, my masters: was it for me to kill the heir-apparent? should I turn upon the true prince? why, thou knowest I am as valiant as Hercules: but beware instinct; the lion will not touch the true prince. Instinct is a great

matter; I was a coward on instinct. I shall think the better of myself and thee during my life; I for a valiant lion, and thou for a true prince. But, by the Lord, lads, I am glad you have the money.—Hostess, clap to the doors [*to Hostess within*]:—watch to-night, pray to-morrow.—Gallants, lads, boys, hearts of gold, all the titles of good fellowship come to you! What, shall we be merry? shall we have a play extempore?

*P. Hen.* Content;—and the argument shall be thy running away.

*Fal.* Ah, no more of that, Hal, an thou lovest me!

*Enter Hostess.*

*Host.* O Jesu, my lord the prince,—

*P. Hen.* How now, my lady the hostess! what sayest thou to me?

*Host.* Marry, my lord, there is a nobleman of the court at door would speak with you: he says he comes from your father.

*P. Hen.* Give him as much as will make him a royal man, and send him back again to my mother.

*Fal.* What manner of man is he?

*Host.* An old man.

*Fal.* What doth gravity out of his bed at midnight?—Shall I give him his answer?

*P. Hen.* Prithee, do, Jack.

*Fal.* Faith, and I'll send him packing. [*Exit.*]

*P. Hen.* Now, sirs:—by'r lady, you fought fair;—so did you, Peto;—so did you, Bardolph: you are lions too, you ran away upon instinct, you will not touch the true prince; no,—fie!

*Bard.* Faith, I ran when I saw others run.

*P. Hen.* Faith, tell me now in earnest, how came Falstaff's sword so hacked?

*Peto.* Why, he hacked it with his dagger; and said he would swear truth out of England, but he would make you believe it was done in fight; and persuaded us to do the like.

*Bard.* Yea, and to tickle our noses with spear-grass to make them bleed; and then to beslobber our garments with

it, and swear it was the blood of true men. I did that I did not this seven year before,—I blushed to hear his monstrous devices. [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*P. Hen.* O villain, thou stolest a cup of sack eighteen years ago, and wert taken with the manner, and ever since thou hast blushed extempore. Thou hadst fire and sword on thy side, and yet thou rankest away : what instinct hadst thou for it ?

*Bard.* My lord, do you see these meteors ? do you behold these exhalations ?

*P. Hen.* I do.

*Bard.* What think you they portend ?

*P. Hen.* Hot livers and cold purses.

*Bard.* Cholera, my lord, if rightly taken.

*P. Hen.* No, if rightly taken, halter.—Here comes lean Jack, here comes bare-bone.

*Re-enter FALSTAFF.*

How now, my sweet creature of bombast ! How long is 't ago, Jack, since thou sawest thine own knee ?

*Fal.* My own knee ! when I was about thy years, Hal, I was not an eagle's talon<sup>(17)</sup> in the waist ; I could have crept into any alderman's thumb-ring : a plague of sighing and grief ! it blows a man up like a bladder.—There's villanous news abroad : here was Sir John Bracy from your father ; you must to the court in the morning. That same mad fellow of the north, Percy ; and he of Wales, that gave Amaimon the bastinado, and made Lucifer cuckold, and swore the devil his true liegeman upon the cross of a Welsh hook,—what, a plague, call you him ?—

*Poin.* O,<sup>(18)</sup> Glendower.

*Fal.* Owen, Owen,—the same ; and his son-in-law Mortimer ; and old Northumberland ; and that sprightly Scot of Scots, Douglas, that runs o' horseback up a hill perpendicular,—

*P. Hen.* He that rides at high speed and with his pistol kills a sparrow flying.

*Fal.* You have hit it.

*P. Hen.* So did he never the sparrow.

*Fal.* Well, that rascal hath good mettle in him; he will not run.

*P. Hen.* Why, what a rascal art thou, then, to praise him so for running?

*Fal.* O' horseback, ye cuckoo; but a-foot he will not budge a foot.

*P. Hen.* Yes, Jack, upon instinct.

*Fal.* I grant ye, upon instinct.—Well, he is there too, and one Mordake, and a thousand blue-caps more: Worcester is stolen away to-night; thy father's beard is turned white with the news: you may buy land now as cheap as stinking mackerel.

*P. Hen.* Why, then, it is like, if there come a hot June, and this civil buffeting hold, we shall buy maidenheads as they buy hob-nails, by the hundreds.

*Fal.* By the mass, lad, thou sayest true; it is like we shall have good trading that way.—But tell me, Hal, art thou not horribly afeard? thou being heir-apparent, could the world pick thee out three such enemies again as that fiend Douglas, that spirit Percy, and that devil Glendower? art thou not horribly afraid? doth not thy blood thrill at it?

*P. Hen.* Not a whit, i' faith; I lack some of thy instinct.

*Fal.* Well, thou wilt be horribly chid to-morrow when thou comest to thy father: if thou love me, practise an answer.

*P. Hen.* Do thou stand for my father, and examine me upon the particulars of my life.

*Fal.* Shall I? content:—this chair shall be my state, this dagger my sceptre, and this cushion my crown.

*P. Hen.* Thy state is taken for a joint-stool, thy golden sceptre for a leaden dagger, and thy precious rich crown for a pitiful bald crown!

*Fal.* Well, an the fire of grace be not quite out of thee, now shalt thou be moved.—Give me a cup of sack to make mine eyes look red, that it may be thought I have wept; for I must speak in passion, and I will do it in King Cambyses' vein.

*P. Hen.* Well, here is my leg.

*Fal.* And here is my speech.—Stand aside, nobility.

*Host.* O Jesu, this is excellent sport, i' faith!

*Fal.* Weep not, sweet queen; for trickling tears are vain.

*Host.* O, the father, how he holds his countenance!

*Fal.* For God's sake, lords, convey my tristful<sup>(19)</sup> queen; For tears do stop the flood-gates of her eyes.

*Host.* O Jesu, he doth it as like one of these harlotry players as ever I see!

*Fal.* Peace, good pint-pot; peace, good tickle-brain.—Harry, I do not only marvel where thou spendest thy time, but also how thou art accompanied: for though the camomile, the more it is trodden on, the faster it grows, yet youth, the more it is wasted, the sooner it wears. That thou art my son, I have partly thy mother's word, partly my own opinion; but chiefly a villanous trick of thine eye, and a foolish hanging of thy nether lip, that doth warrant me. If, then, thou be son to me, here lies the point;—why, being son to me, art thou so pointed at? Shall the blessed sun of heaven prove a micher, and eat blackberries? a question not to be asked. Shall the son of England prove a thief, and take purses? a question to be asked. There is a thing, Harry, which thou hast often heard of, and it is known to many in our land by the name of pitch: this pitch, as ancient writers do report, doth defile; so doth the company thou keepest: for, Harry, now I do not speak to thee in drink, but in tears; not in pleasure, but in passion; not in words only, but in woes also:—and yet there is a virtuous man whom I have often noted in thy company, but I know not his name.

*P. Hen.* What manner of man, an it like your majesty?

*Fal.* A goodly portly man, i' faith, and a corpulent; of a cheerful look, a pleasing eye, and a most noble carriage; and, as I think, his age some fifty, or, by'r lady, inclining to threescore; and now I remember me, his name is Falstaff: if that man should be lewdly given, he deceiveth me; for, Harry, I see virtue in his looks. If, then, the tree may be known by the fruit, as the fruit by the tree, then, peremptorily I speak it, there is virtue in that Falstaff: him keep with, the rest banish. And tell me now, thou naughty varlet, tell me, where hast thou been this month?

*P. Hen.* Dost thou speak like a king? Do thou stand for me, and I'll play my father.

*Fal.* Depose me? if thou dost it half so gravely, so majestically, both in word and matter, hang me up by the heels for a rabbit-sucker or a poulter's hare.

*P. Hen.* Well, here I am set.

*Fal.* And here I stand:—judge, my masters.

*P. Hen.* Now, Harry, whence come you?

*Fal.* My noble lord, from Eastcheap.

*P. Hen.* The complaints I hear of thee are grievous.

*Fal.* 'Sblood, my lord, they are false:—nay, I'll tickle ye for a young prince, i' faith.

*P. Hen.* Swearst thou, ungracious boy? henceforth ne'er look on me. Thou art violently carried away from grace: there is a devil haunts thee, in the likeness of a fat old man,—a tun of man is thy companion. Why dost thou converse with that trunk of humours, that bolting-hutch of beastliness, that swollen parcel of dropsies, that huge bombard of sack, that stuffed cloak-bag of guts, that roasted Manningtree ox with the pudding in his belly, that reverend vice, that grey iniquity, that father ruffian, that vanity in years? Wherein is he good, but to taste sack and drink it? wherein neat and cleanly, but to carve a capon and eat it? wherein cunning, but in craft? wherein crafty, but in villany? wherein villanous, but in all things? wherein worthy, but in nothing?

*Fal.* I would your grace would take me with you: whom means your grace?

*P. Hen.* That villanous abominable misleader of youth, Falstaff, that old white-bearded Satan.

*Fal.* My lord, the man I know.

*P. Hen.* I know thou dost.

*Fal.* But to say I know more harm in him than in myself, were to say more than I know. That he is old (the more the pity), his white hairs do witness it; but that he is (saving your reverence) a whoremaster, that I utterly deny. If sack and sugar be a fault, God help the wicked! if to be old and merry be a sin, then many an old host that I know is damned: if to be fat be to be hated, then Pharaoh's lean kine are to be loved. No, my good lord; banish Peto, ban-

ish Bardolph, banish Pointz: but, for sweet Jack Falstaff, kind Jack Falstaff, true Jack Falstaff, valiant Jack Falstaff, and therefore more valiant, being, as he is, old Jack Falstaff, banish not him thy Harry's company, banish not him thy Harry's company:—banish plump Jack, and banish all the world.

*P. Hen.* I do, I will. [*A knocking heard.*  
[*Exeunt Hostess, Francis, and Bardolph.*

*Re-enter BARDOLPH, running.*

*Bard.* O, my lord, my lord! the sheriff with a most monstrous watch is at the door.

*Fal.* Out, you rogue!—Play out the play: I have much to say in the behalf of that Falstaff.

*Re-enter Hostess, hastily.*

*Host.* O Jesu, my lord, my lord,—

*P. Hen.* Heigh, heigh! the devil rides upon a fiddle-stick: what's the matter?

*Host.* The sheriff and all the watch are at the door: they are come to search the house. Shall I let them in?

*Fal.* Dost thou hear, Hal? never call a true piece of gold a counterfeit: thou art essentially mad,<sup>(20)</sup> without seeming so.

*P. Hen.* And thou a natural coward, without instinct.

*Fal.* I deny your *major*: if you will deny the sheriff, so; if not, let him enter: if I become not a cart as well as another man, a plague on my bringing up! I hope I shall as soon be strangled with a halter as another.

*P. Hen.* Go, hide thee behind the arras:—the rest walk up above. Now, my masters, for a true face and good conscience.

*Fal.* Both which I have had; but their date is out, and therefore I'll hide me.

[*Exeunt all except the Prince and Pointz.*<sup>(21)</sup>

*P. Hen.* Call in the sheriff.

*Enter Sheriff and Carrier.*

Now, master sheriff, what is your will with me?

*Sher.* First, pardon me, my lord. A hue and cry  
Hath follow'd certain men unto this house.

*P. Hen.* What men?

*Sher.* One of them is well known, my gracious lord,—  
A gross fat man.

*Car.* As fat as butter.

*P. Hen.* The man, I do assure you, is not here ;  
For I myself at this time have employ'd him.  
And, sheriff, I will engage my word to thee,  
That I will, by to-morrow dinner-time,  
Send him to answer thee, or any man,  
For any thing he shall be charg'd withal :  
And so, let me entreat you leave the house.

*Sher.* I will, my lord. There are two gentlemen  
Have in this robbery lost three hundred marks.

*P. Hen.* It may be so : if he have robb'd these men,  
He shall be answerable ; and so, farewell.

*Sher.* Good night, my noble lord.

*P. Hen.* I think it is good morrow, is it not ?

*Sher.* Indeed, my lord, I think it be two o' clock.

[*Exeunt Sheriff and Carrier.*]

*P. Hen.* This oily rascal is known as well as Paul's. Go,  
call him forth.

*Poin.* Falstaff!—fast asleep behind the arras, and snorting  
like a horse.

*P. Hen.* Hark, how hard he fetches breath. Search his  
pockets. [*Poinz searches.*] What hast thou found ?

*Poin.* Nothing but papers, my lord.

*P. Hen.* Let's see what they be : read them.

*Poin.* [*reads*] "Item, A capon, . . . . 2s. 2d.  
Item, Sauce, . . . . 4d.  
Item, Sack, two gallons, . . . 5s. 8d.  
Item, Anchovies and sack after supper, 2s. 6d.  
Item, Bread, . . . . ob."

*P. Hen.* O monstrous! but one half-pennyworth of bread  
to this intolerable deal of sack!—What there is else, keep  
close; we'll read it at more advantage: there let him sleep  
till day. I'll to the court in the morning. We must all to  
the wars, and thy place shall be honourable. I'll procure this



fat rogue a charge of foot; and I know his death will be a march of twelve-score. The money shall be paid back again with advantage. Be with me betimes in the morning; and so, good morrow, Pointz.

*Poin.* Good morrow, good my lord. [Exeunt.]

### ACT III.

SCENE I. *Bangor. A room in the Archdeacon's house.*

*Enter* HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, MORTIMER, and GLENDOWER.

*Mort.* These promises are fair, the parties sure,  
And our induction full of prosperous hope.

*Hot.* Lord Mortimer,—and cousin Glendower,—  
Will you sit down?—

And uncle Worcester:—a plague upon it!  
I have forgot the map.

*Glend.* No, here it is.

Sit, cousin Percy; sit, good cousin Hotspur,—  
For by that name as oft as Lancaster  
Doth speak of you, his cheek looks pale, and with  
A rising sigh he wisheth you in heaven.

*Hot.* And you in hell, as often<sup>(22)</sup> as he hears  
Owen Glendower spoke of.

*Glend.* I cannot blame him: at my nativity  
The front of heaven was full of fiery shapes,  
Of burning cressets; and at my birth  
The frame and huge foundation of the earth  
Shak'd like a coward.

*Hot.* Why, so it would have done  
At the same season, if your mother's cat  
Had but kitten'd, though yourself had ne'er been born.

*Glend.* I say the earth did shake when I was born.

*Hot.* And I say the earth was not of my mind,  
If you suppose as fearing you it shook.

*Glend.* The heavens were all on fire, the earth did trem-  
ble.

*Hot.* O, then the earth shook to see the heavens on fire,  
 And not in fear of your nativity.  
 Diseasèd nature oftentimes breaks forth  
 In strange eruptions; oft the teeming earth  
 Is with a kind of colic pinch'd and vex'd  
 By the imprisoning of unruly wind  
 Within her womb; which, for enlargement striving,  
 Shakes the old beldame earth, and topples down  
 Steeples and moss-grown towers. At your birth,  
 Our grandam earth, having this distemperature,  
 In passion shook.

*Glend.* Cousin, of many men  
 I do not bear these crossings. Give me leave  
 To tell you once again, that at my birth  
 The front of heaven was full of fiery shapes;  
 The goats ran from the mountains, and the herds  
 Were strangely clamorous to the frighted fields.  
 These signs have mark'd me extraordinary;  
 And all the courses of my life do show  
 I am not in the roll of common men.  
 Where is he living,—clipp'd in with the sea  
 That chides the banks of England, Scotland, Wales,—  
 Which calls me pupil, or hath read to me?  
 And bring him out that is but woman's son  
 Can trace me in the tedious ways of art,  
 And hold me pace in deep experiments.

*Hot.* I think there is no man speaks better Welsh.—  
 I'll to dinner.

*Mort.* Peace, cousin Percy; you will make him mad.

*Glend.* I can call spirits from the vasty deep.

*Hot.* Why, so can I, or so can any man;  
 But will they come when you do call for them?

*Glend.* Why, I can teach thee, cousin, to command  
 The devil.

*Hot.* And I can teach thee, coz, to shame the devil  
 By telling truth: tell truth, and shame the devil.—  
 If thou have power to raise him, bring him hither,  
 And I'll be sworn I have power to shame him hence.  
 O, while you live, tell truth, and shame the devil!

*Mort.* Come, come,  
No more of this unprofitable chat.

*Glend.* Three times hath Henry Bolingbroke made head  
Against my power; thrice from the banks of Wye  
And sandy-bottom'd Severn have I sent him  
Bootless home and weather-beaten back.

*Hot.* Home without boots, and in foul weather too!  
How scapes he agues, in the devil's name?

*Glend.* Come, here's the map: shall we divide our right  
According to our threefold order ta'en?

*Mort.* The archdeacon hath divided it  
Into three limits very equally:—  
England, from Trent and Severn hitherto,  
By south and east is to my part assign'd:  
All westward, Wales beyond the Severn shore,  
And all the fertile land within that bound,  
To Owen Glendower:—and, dear coz, to you  
The remnant northward, lying off from Trent.  
And our indentures tripartite are drawn;  
Which being sealèd interchangeably  
(A business that this night may execute),  
To-morrow, cousin Percy, you, and I,  
And my good Lord of Worcester, will set forth  
To meet your father and the Scottish power,  
As is appointed us, at Shrewsbury.  
My father Glendower is not ready yet,  
Nor shall we need his help these fourteen days:—  
Within that space [*to Glend.*] you may have drawn together  
Your tenants, friends, and neighbouring gentlemen.

*Glend.* A shorter time shall send me to you, lords:  
And in my conduct shall your ladies come;  
From whom you now must steal, and take no leave,  
For there will be a world of water shed  
Upon the parting of your wives and you.

*Hot.* Methinks my moiety, north from Burton here,  
In quantity equals not one of yours:  
See how this river comes me cranking in,  
And cuts me from the best of all my land  
A huge half-moon, a monstrous cantle out.

I'll have the current in this place damm'd up ;  
 And here the smug and silver Trent shall run  
 In a new channel, fair and evenly :  
 It shall not wind with such a deep indent,  
 To rob me of so rich a bottom here.

*Glend.* Not wind ? it shall, it must ; you see it doth.

*Mort.* Yea,

But mark how he bears his course, and runs me up  
 With like advantage on the other side ;  
 Gelding the opposèd continent as much  
 As on the other side it takes from you.

*Wor.* Yea, but a little charge will trench him here,  
 And on this north side win this cape of land ;  
 And then he runs straight and even.

*Hot.* I'll have it so : a little charge will do it.

*Glend.* I will not have it alter'd.

*Hot.*

Will not you ?

*Glend.* No, nor you shall not.

*Hot.*

Who shall say me nay ?

*Glend.* Why, that will I.

*Hot.*

Let me not understand you, then ;

Speak it in Welsh.

*Glend.* I can speak English, lord, as well as you ;  
 For I was train'd up in the English court ;  
 Where, being but young, I framèd to the harp  
 Many an English ditty, lovèly well,  
 And gave the tongue a helpful ornament,—  
 A virtue that was never seen in you.

*Hot.* Marry,

And I am glad of it with all my heart :  
 I had rather be a kitten, and cry mew,  
 Than one of these same metre ballad-mongers ;  
 I had rather hear a brazen canstick turn'd,  
 Or a dry wheel grate on the axle-tree ;  
 And that would set my teeth nothing on edge,  
 Nothing so much as mincing poetry :—  
 'Tis like the forc'd gait of a shuffling nag.

*Glend.* Come, you shall have Trent turn'd.

*Hot.* I do not care : I'll give thrice so much land

To any well-deserving friend ;  
 But in the way of bargain, mark ye me,  
 I'll cavil on the ninth part of a hair:  
 Are the indentures drawn ? shall we be gone ?

*Glend.* The moon shines fair ; you may away by night :  
 I'll<sup>(23)</sup> haste the writer, and withal  
 Break with your wives of your departure hence :  
 I am afraid my daughter will run mad,  
 So much she doteth on her Mortimer. [Exit.

*Mort.* Fie, cousin Percy ! how you cross my father !

*Hot.* I cannot choose : sometime he angers me  
 With telling me of the moldwarp and the ant,  
 Of the dreamer Merlin and his prophecies,  
 And of a dragon and a finless fish,  
 A clip-wing'd griffin and a moulted raven,  
 A couching lion and a ramping cat,  
 And such a deal of skimble-skamble stuff  
 As puts me from my faith. I tell you what,—  
 He held me last night at least nine hours  
 In reckoning up the several devils' names  
 That were his lackeys : I cried "hum," and "well, go to,"  
 But mark'd him not a word. O, he's as tedious  
 As a tir'd horse, a railing wife ;<sup>(24)</sup>  
 Worse than a smoky house :—I had rather live  
 With cheese and garlic in a windmill, far,  
 Than feed on cates and have him talk to me  
 In any summer-house in Christendom.

*Mort.* In faith, he is a worthy gentleman ;  
 Exceedingly well-read, and profited  
 In strange concealments ; valiant as a lion,  
 And wondrous affable, and as bountiful  
 As mines of India. Shall I tell you, cousin ?  
 He holds your temper in a high respect,  
 And curbs himself even of his natural scope  
 When you do cross his humour ; faith, he does :  
 I warrant you, that man is not alive  
 Might so have tempted him as you have done,  
 Without the taste of danger and reproof :

But do not use it oft, let me entreat you.

*Wor.* In faith, my lord, you are too wilful-blame; <sup>(35)</sup>  
 And since your coming hither have done enough  
 To put him quite beside his patience.  
 You must needs learn, lord, to amend this fault :  
 Though sometimes it show greatness, courage, blood  
 (And that's the dearest grace it renders you),  
 Yet oftentimes it doth present harsh rage,  
 Defect of manners, want of government,  
 Pride, haughtiness, opinion, and disdain :  
 The least of which haunting a nobleman  
 Loseth men's hearts, and leaves behind a stain  
 Upon the beauty of all parts besides,  
 Beguiling them of commendation.

*Hot.* Well, I am school'd : good manners be your speed !  
 Here come our wives, and let us take our leave.

*Re-enter GLENDOWER, with Lady MORTIMER and Lady PERCY.*

*Mort.* This is the deadly spite that angers me,—  
 My wife can speak no English, I no Welsh.

*Glend.* My daughter weeps : she will not part with you ;  
 She'll be a soldier too, she'll to the wars.

*Mort.* Good father, tell her that she and my aunt Percy  
 Shall follow in your conduct speedily.

[*Glendower speaks to Lady Mortimer in Welsh,  
 and she answers him in the same.*]

*Glend.* She's desperate here ; a peevish self-will'd har-  
 lotry,

One that no persuasion can do good upon.

[*Lady Mortimer speaks to Mortimer in Welsh.*]

*Mort.* I understand thy looks : that pretty Welsh  
 Which thou pour'st down from these welling <sup>(36)</sup> heavens  
 I am too perfect in ; and, but for shame,  
 In such a parley should I answer thee.

[*Lady Mortimer speaks to him again.*]

I understand thy kisses, and thou mine,  
 And that's a feeling disputation :  
 But I will never be a truant, love,

Till I have learn'd thy language ; for thy tongue  
 Makes Welsh as sweet as ditties highly penn'd,  
 Sung by a fair queen in a summer's bower,  
 With ravishing division, to her lute.

*Glend.* Nay, if you melt, then will she run mad.

[*Lady Mortimer speaks to Mortimer again.*]

*Mort.* O, I am ignorance itself in this !

*Glend.* She bids you on the wanton rushes lay you down,<sup>(*st*)</sup>

And rest your gentle head upon her lap,  
 And she will sing the song that pleaseth you,  
 And on your eyelids crown the god of sleep,  
 Charming your blood with pleasing heaviness ;  
 Making such difference betwixt wake and sleep,  
 As is the difference betwixt day and night,  
 The hour before the heavenly-harness'd team  
 Begins his golden progress in the east.

*Mort.* With all my heart I'll sit and hear her sing :  
 By that time will our book, I think, be drawn.

*Glend.* Do so ;

And those musicians that shall play to you  
 Hang in the air a thousand leagues from hence ;  
 And straight they shall be here : sit, and attend.

*Hot.* Come, Kate, thou art perfect in lying down : come,  
 quick, quick, that I may lay my head in thy lap.

*Lady P.* Go, ye giddy goose.

[*The music plays.*]

*Hot.* Now I perceive the devil understands Welsh ;  
 And 'tis no marvel he's so humorous.  
 By'r lady, he's a good musician.

*Lady P.* Then should you be nothing but musical ; for  
 you are altogether governed by humours. Lie still, ye thief,  
 and hear the lady sing in Welsh.

*Hot.* I had rather hear Lady, my brach, howl in Irish.

*Lady P.* Wouldst thou have thy head broken ?

*Hot.* No.

*Lady P.* Then be still.

*Hot.* Neither ; 'tis a woman's fault.

*Lady P.* Now God help thee !

*Hot.* To the Welsh lady's bed.

*Lady P.* What's that?

*Hot.* Peace! she sings.

*[A Welsh song sung by Lady Mortimer.]*

*Hot.* Come, Kate, I'll have your song too.

*Lady P.* Not mine, in good sooth.

*Hot.* Not yours, in good sooth! 'Heart, you swear like a comfit-maker's wife! "Not you, in good sooth;" and "as true as I live;" and "as God shall mend me;" and "as sure as day:"

And giv'st such sarcenet surety for thy oaths,  
As if thou never walk'dst further than Finsbury.  
Swear me, Kate, like a lady as thou art,  
A good mouth-filling oath; and leave "in sooth,"  
And such protest of pepper-gingerbread,  
To velvet-guards and Sunday-citizens.  
Come, sing.

*Lady P.* I will not sing.

*Hot.* 'Tis the next way to turn tailor, or be red-breast teacher. An the indentures be drawn, I'll away within these two hours; and so, come in when ye will. [*Exit.*]

*Glend.* Come, come, Lord Mortimer; you are as slow  
As hot Lord Percy is on fire to go.  
By this our book is drawn; we will but seal,  
And then to horse immediately.

*Mort.* With all my heart. [*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE II. *London. A room in the palace.*

*Enter King HENRY, Prince HENRY, and Lords.*

*K. Hen.* Lords, give us leave; the Prince of Wales and I  
Must have some private conference: but be near at hand,  
For we shall presently have need of you. [*Exeunt Lords.*]  
I know not whether God will have it so,  
For some displeasing service I have done,  
That, in his secret doom, out of my blood  
He'll breed revengement and a scourge for me;  
But thou dost, in thy passages of life,



Make me believe that thou art only mark'd  
 For the hot vengeance and the rod of heaven  
 To punish my mistreadings. Tell me else,  
 Could such inordinate and low desires,  
 Such poor, such bare, such lewd, such mean attempts,  
 Such barren pleasures, rude society,  
 As thou art match'd withal and grafted to,  
 Accompany the greatness of thy blood,  
 And hold their level with thy princely heart ?

*P. Hen.* So please your majesty, I would I could  
 Quit all offences with as clear excuse  
 As well as I am doubtless I can purge  
 Myself of many I am charg'd withal :  
 Yet such extenuation let me beg,  
 As, in reproof of many tales devis'd,—  
 Which oft the ear of greatness needs must hear,—  
 By smiling pick-thanks and base newsmongers,  
 I may, for some things true, wherein my youth  
 Hath faulty wander'd and irregular,  
 Find pardon on my true submission.

*K. Hen.* God pardon thee!—yet let me wonder, Harry,  
 At thy affections, which do hold a wing  
 Quite from the flight of all thy ancestors.  
 Thy place in council thou hast rudely lost,  
 Which by thy younger brother is supplied ;  
 And art almost an alien to the hearts  
 Of all the court and princes of my blood :  
 The hope and expectation of thy time  
 Is ruin'd ; and the soul of every man  
 Prophetically does forethink thy fall.<sup>(38)</sup>  
 Had I so lavish of my presence been,  
 So common-hackney'd in the eyes of men,  
 So stale and cheap to vulgar company,—  
 Opinion, that did help me to the crown,  
 Had still kept loyal to possession,  
 And left me in reputeless banishment,  
 A fellow of no mark nor likelihood.  
 By being seldom seen, I could not stir  
 But, like a comet, I was wonder'd at ;

That men would tell their children, "This is he;"  
Others would say, "Where, which is Bolingbroke?"  
And then I stole all courtesy from heaven,  
And dress'd myself in such humility  
That I did pluck allegiance from men's hearts,  
Loud shouts and salutations from their mouths,  
Even in the presence of the crownèd king.  
Thus did I keep my person fresh and new;  
My presence, like a robe pontifical,  
Ne'er seen but wonder'd at: and so my state,  
Seldom but sumptuous, showèd like a feast,  
And won by rareness such solemnity.  
The skipping king, he ambled up and down  
With shallow jesters and rash bavin wits,  
Soon kindled and soon burn'd; carded his state;  
Mingled his royalty with carping fools;  
Had his great name profanèd with their scorns;  
And gave his countenance, against his name,  
To laugh at gibing boys, and stand the push  
Of every beardless vain comparative;  
Grew a companion to the common streets,  
Enfeoff'd himself to popularity;  
That, being daily swallow'd by men's eyes,  
They surfeited with honey, and began  
To loathe the taste of sweetness, whereof a little  
More than a little is by much too much.  
So, when he had occasion to be seen,  
He was but as the cuckoo is in June,  
Heard, not regarded,—seen, but with such eyes  
As, sick and blunted with community,  
Afford no extraordinary gaze,  
Such as is bent on sun-like majesty  
When it shines seldom in admiring eyes;  
But rather drowz'd, and hung their eyelids down,  
Slept in his face, and render'd such aspèct  
As cloudy men use to their adversaries,  
Being with his presence glutted, gorg'd, and full.  
And in that very line, Harry, stand'st thou;  
For thou hast lost thy princely privilege

With vile participation : not an eye  
 But is a-weary of thy common sight,  
 Save mine, which hath desir'd to see thee more ;  
 Which now doth that I would not have it do,—  
 Make blind itself with foolish tenderness.

*P. Hen.* I shall hereafter, my thrice-gracious lord,  
 Be more myself.

*K. Hen.* For all the world,  
 As thou art to this hour, was Richard then  
 When I from France set foot at Ravenspurgh ;  
 And even as I was then is Percy now.  
 Now, by my sceptre, and my soul to boot,  
 He hath more worthy interest to the state  
 Than thou, the shadow of succession ;  
 For, of no right, nor colour like to right,  
 He doth fill fields with harness in the realm ;  
 Turns head against the lion's armèd jaws ;  
 And, being no more in debt to years than thou,  
 Leads ancient lords and reverend bishops on  
 To bloody battles and to bruising arms.  
 What never-dying honour hath he got  
 Against renownèd Douglas ! whose high deeds,  
 Whose hot incursions, and great name in arms,  
 Holds from all soldiers chief majority  
 And military title capital  
 Through all the kingdoms that acknowledge Christ :  
 Thrice hath this Hotspur Mars in swathing-clothes,  
 This infant warrior, in his enterprizes  
 Discomfited great Douglas ; ta'en him once,  
 Enlargèd him, and made a friend of him,  
 To fill the mouth of deep defiance up,  
 And shake the peace and safety of our throne.  
 And what say you to this ? Percy, Northumberland,  
 The Archbishop's grace of York, Douglas, Mortimer,  
 Capitulate against us, and are up.  
 But wherefore do I tell these news to thee ?  
 Why, Harry, do I tell thee of my foes,  
 Which art my near'st and dearest enemy ?

Thou that art like enough,—through vassal fear,  
 Base inclination, and the start of spleen,—  
 To fight against me under Percy's pay,  
 To dog his heels, and court'sy at his frowns,  
 To show how much thou art degenerate.

*P. Hen.* Do not think so; you shall not find it so:  
 And God forgive them that so much have sway'd  
 Your majesty's good thoughts away from me!  
 I will redeem all this on Percy's head,  
 And, in the closing of some glorious day,  
 Be bold to tell you that I am your son;  
 When I will wear a garment all of blood,  
 And stain my favours in a bloody mask,  
 Which, wash'd away, shall scour my shame with it:  
 And that shall be the day, whene'er it lights,  
 That this same child of honour and renown,  
 This gallant Hotspur, this all-praisèd knight,  
 And your unthought-of Harry, chance to meet.  
 For every honour sitting on his helm,  
 Would they were multitudes, and on my head  
 My shames redoubled! for the time will come,  
 That I shall make this northern youth exchange  
 His glorious deeds for my indignities.  
 Percy is but my factor, good my lord,  
 To engross up glorious deeds on my behalf;  
 And I will call him to so strict account,  
 That he shall render every glory up,  
 Yea, even the slightest worship of his time,  
 Or I will tear the reckoning from his heart.  
 This, in the name of God, I promise here:  
 The which if he be pleas'd I shall perform,  
 I do beseech your majesty, may salve  
 The long-grown wounds of my intemperance:  
 If not, the end of life cancels all bands;  
 And I will die a hundred thousand deaths  
 Ere break the smallest parcel of this vow.

*K. Hen.* A hundred thousand rebels die in this:—  
 Thou shalt have charge and sovereign trust herein.

*Enter Sir WALTER BLUNT.*

How now, good Blunt! thy looks are full of speed.

*Blunt.* So hath the business that I come to speak of.  
Lord Mortimer of Scotland hath sent word  
That Douglas and the English rebels met  
The eleventh of this month at Shrewsbury:  
A mighty and a fearful head they are,  
If promises be kept on every hand,  
As ever offer'd foul play in a state.

*K. Hen.* The Earl of Westmoreland set forth to-day;  
With him my son, Lord John of Lancaster;  
For this advertisement is five days old:—  
On Wednesday next, Harry, you shall set forward;  
On Thursday we ourselves will march:  
Our meeting is Bridgenorth: and, Harry, you  
Shall march through Glostershire; by which account,  
Our business valuèd, some twelve days hence  
Our general forces at Bridgenorth shall meet.  
Our hands are full of business: let's away;  
Advantage feeds him fat, while men delay. [*Exeunt.*

---

SCENE III. *Eastcheap. A room in the Boar's-Head Tavern.*

*Enter FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.*

*Fal.* Bardolph, am I not fallen away vilely since this last action? do I not bate? do I not dwindle? Why, my skin hangs about me like an old lady's loose gown; I am withered like an old apple-john. Well, I'll repent, and that suddenly, while I am in some liking; I shall be out of heart shortly, and then I shall have no strength to repent. An I have not forgotten what the inside of a church is made of, I am a peppercorn, a brewer's horse: the inside of a church! Company, villanous company, hath been the spoil of me.

*Bard.* Sir John, you are so fretful, you cannot live long.

*Fal.* Why, there is it:—come, sing me a bawdy song; make me merry. I was as virtuously given as a gentleman

need to be; virtuous enough; swore little; diced not above seven times a week; went to a bawdy-house not above once in a quarter—of an hour; paid money that I borrowed—three or four times; lived well, and in good compass: and now I live out of all order, out of all compass.

*Bard.* Why, you are so fat, Sir John, that you must needs be out of all compass,—out of all reasonable compass, Sir John.

*Fal.* Do thou amend thy face, and I'll amend my life: thou art our admiral, thou bearest the lantern in the poop, —but 'tis in the nose of thee; thou art the Knight of the Burning Lamp.

*Bard.* Why, Sir John, my face does you no harm.

*Fal.* No, I'll be sworn; I make as good use of it as many a man doth of a Death's-head or a *memento mori*: I never see thy face but I think upon hell-fire, and Dives that lived in purple; for there he is in his robes, burning, burning. If thou wert any way given to virtue, I would swear by thy face; my oath should be, "By this fire, that's God's angel:" but thou art altogether given over; and wert indeed, but for the light in thy face, the son of utter darkness. When thou rannest up Gadshill in the night to catch my horse, if I did not think thou hadst been an *ignis fatuus* or a ball of wild-fire, there's no purchase in money. O, thou art a perpetual triumph, an everlasting bonfire-light! Thou hast saved me a thousand marks in links and torches, walking with thee in the night betwixt tavern and tavern: but the sack that thou hast drunk me would have bought me lights as good cheap at the dearest chandler's in Europe. I have maintained that salamander of yours with fire any time this two-and-thirty years; God reward me for it!

*Bard.* 'Sblood, I would my face were in your belly!

*Fal.* God-a-mercy! so should I be sure to be heart-burned.

*Enter Hostess.*

How now, Dame Partlet the hen! have you inquired yet who picked my pocket?

*Host.* Why, Sir John, what do you think, Sir John? do

you think I keep thieves in my house? I have searched, I have inquired, so has my husband, man by man, boy by boy, servant by servant: ~~while the~~ ~~of a~~ ~~hair~~ was never lost in my house before.

*Fal.* Ye lie, hostess: Bardolph was shaved, and lost many a hair; and I'll be sworn my pocket was picked. Go to, you are a woman, go.

*Host.* Who, I? no; I defy thee: God's light, I was never called so in mine own house before.

*Fal.* Go to, I know you well enough.

*Host.* No, Sir John; you do not know me, Sir John. I know you, Sir John: you owe me money, Sir John; and now you pick a quarrel to beguile me of it: I bought you a dozen of shirts to your back.

*Fal.* Dowlas, filthy dowlas: I have given them away to bakers' wives, and they have made bolters of them.

*Host.* Now, as I am a true woman, holland of eight shillings an ell. You owe money here besides, Sir John, for your diet and by-drinkings, and money lent you, four-and-twenty pound.

*Fal.* He had his part of it; let him pay.

*Host.* He? alas, he is poor; he hath nothing.

*Fal.* How! poor? look upon his face; what call you rich? let them coin his nose, let them coin his cheeks: I'll not pay a denier. What, will you make a younker of me? shall I not take mine ease in mine inn, but I shall have my pocket picked? I have lost a seal-ring of my grandfather's worth forty mark.

*Host.* O Jesu, I have heard the prince tell him, I know not how oft, that that ring was copper!

*Fal.* How! the prince is a Jack, a sneak-cup: 'sblood, an he were here, I would cudgel him like a dog, if he would say so.

*Enter Prince HENRY and POINTZ, marching. FALSTAFF meets the Prince, playing on his truncheon like a fife.*

How now, lad! is the wind in that door, i' faith? must we all march?

*Bard.* Yea, two and two, Newgate-fashion.

*Host.* My lord, I pray you, hear me.

*P. Hen.* What sayest thou, Mistress Quickly? How does thy husband? I love him well; he is an honest man.

*Host.* Good my lord; hear me.

*Fal.* Prithee, let her alone, and list to me.

*P. Hen.* What sayest thou, Jack?

*Fal.* The other night I fell asleep here behind the arras, and had my pocket picked: this house is turned bawdy-house; they pick pockets.

*P. Hen.* What didst thou lose, Jack?

*Fal.* Wilt thou believe me, Hal? three or four bonds of forty pound a-piece, and a seal-ring of my grandfather's.

*P. Hen.* A trifle, some eight-penny matter.

*Host.* So I told him, my lord; and I said I heard your grace say so: and, my lord, he speaks most vilely of you, like a foul-mouthed man as he is; and said he would cudgel you.

*P. Hen.* What! he did not?

*Host.* There's neither faith, truth, nor womanhood in me else.

*Fal.* There's no more faith in thee than in a stewed prune; nor no more truth in thee than in a drawn fox; and for womanhood, Maid Marian may be the deputy's wife of the ward to thee. Go, you thing, go.

*Host.* Say, what thing? what thing?

*Fal.* What thing! why, a thing to thank God on.

*Host.* I am no thing to thank God on, I would thou shouldst know it; I am an honest man's wife: and, setting thy knighthood aside, thou art a knave to call me so.

*Fal.* Setting thy womanhood aside, thou art a beast to say otherwise.

*Host.* Say, what beast, thou knave, thou?

*Fal.* What beast! why, an otter.

*P. Hen.* An otter, Sir John! why an otter?

*Fal.* Why, she's neither fish nor flesh; a man knows not where to have her.

*Host.* Thou art an unjust man in saying so: thou or any man knows where to have me, thou knave, thou!

*P. Hen.* Thou sayest true, hostess; and he slanders thee most grossly.



*Host.* So he doth you, my lord; and said this other day you ought him a thousand pound.

*P. Hen.* Sirrah, do I owe you a thousand pound?

*Fal.* A thousand pound, Hal! a million: thy love is worth a million: thou owest me thy love.

*Host.* Nay, my lord, he called you Jack, and said he would cudgel you.

*Fal.* Did I, Bardolph?

*Bard.* Indeed, Sir John, you said so.

*Fal.* Yea,—if he said my ring was copper.

*P. Hen.* I say 'tis copper: darest thou be as good as thy word now?

*Fal.* Why, Hal, thou knowest, as thou art but man, I dare: but as thou art prince, I fear thee, as I fear the roaring of the lion's whelp.

*P. Hen.* And why not as the lion?

*Fal.* The king himself is to be feared as the lion: dost thou think I'll fear thee as I fear thy father? nay, an I do, I pray God my girdle break.

*P. Hen.* O, if it should, how would thy guts fall about thy knees! But, sirrah, there's no room for faith, truth, nor honesty, in this bosom of thine,—it is all filled up with guts and midriff. Charge an honest woman with picking thy pocket! why, thou whoreson, impudent, embossed rascal, if there were any thing in thy pocket but tavern-reckonings, memorandums of bawdy-houses, and one poor penny-worth of sugar-candy to make thee long-winded,—if thy pocket were enriched with any other injuries but these, I am a villain: and yet you will stand to it; you will not pocket-up wrong: art thou not ashamed?

*Fal.* Dost thou hear, Hal? thou knowest in the state of innocency Adam fell; and what should poor Jack Falstaff do in the days of villany? Thou seest I have more flesh than another man; and therefore more frailty. You confess, then, you picked my pocket?

*P. Hen.* It appears so by the story.

*Fal.* Hostess, I forgive thee: go, make ready breakfast; love thy husband, look to thy servants, cherish thy guests: thou shalt find me tractable to any honest reason: thou seest

I am pacified.—Still?—Nay, prithee, be gone. [*Exit Hostess.*] Now, Hal, to the news at court: for the robbery, lad,—how is that answered?

*P. Hen.* O, my sweet beef, I must still be good angel to thee:—the money is paid back again.

*Fal.* O, I do not like that paying back; 'tis a double labour.

*P. Hen.* I am good friends with my father, and may do any thing.

*Fal.* Rob me the exchequer the first thing thou doest, and do it with unwashed hands too.

*Bard.* Do, my lord.

*P. Hen.* I have procured thee, Jack, a charge of foot.

*Fal.* I would it had been of horse. Where shall I find one that can steal well? O for a fine thief, of the age of two-and-twenty or thereabouts! I am heinously unprovided. Well, God be thanked for these rebels,—they offend none but the virtuous: I laud them, I praise them.

*P. Hen.* Bardolph,—

*Bard.* My lord?

*P. Hen.* Go bear this letter to Lord John of Lancaster, To my brother John; this to my Lord of Westmoreland.

[*Exit Bardolph.*]

Go, Pointz,<sup>(29)</sup> to horse, to horse; for thou and I Have thirty miles to ride yet ere dinner-time.

[*Exit Pointz.*]

Jack, meet me to-morrow in the Temple-hall

At two o'clock in the afternoon:

There shalt thou know thy charge; and there receive Money and order for their furniture.

The land is burning; Percy stands on high;

And either they or we must lower lie.

[*Exit.*]

*Fal.* Rare words! brave world!—Hostess, my breakfast; come:—

O, I could wish this tavern were my drum!

[*Exit.*]

www.librius.com.cn  
ACT IV.

SCENE I. *The Rebel Camp near Shrewsbury.*

*Enter HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, and DOUGLAS.*

*Hot.* Well said, my noble Scot: if speaking truth  
In this fine age were not thought flattery,  
Such attribution should the Douglas have,  
As not a soldier of this season's stamp  
Should go so general current through the world.  
By heaven, I cannot flatter; I defy  
The tongues of soothers; but a braver place  
In my heart's love hath no man than yourself:  
Nay, task me to my word; approve me, lord.

*Doug.* Thou art the king of honour:  
No man so potent breathes upon the ground  
But I will beard him.

*Hot.* Do so, and 'tis well.—

*Enter a Messenger with letters.*

What letters hast thou there?—I can but thank you.

*Mess.* These letters come from your father,—

*Hot.* Letters from him! why comes he not himself?

*Mess.* He cannot come, my lord; he is grievous sick.

*Hot.* Zounds! how has he the leisure to be sick  
In such a justling time? Who leads his power?  
Under whose government come they along?

*Mess.* His letters bear his mind, not I, my lord.<sup>(30)</sup>

*Wor.* I prithee, tell me, doth he keep his bed?

*Mess.* He did, my lord, four days ere I set forth;  
And at the time of my departure thence  
He was much fear'd by his physicians.

*Wor.* I would the state of time had first been whole  
Ere he by sickness had been visited:  
His health was never better worth than now.

*Hot.* Sick now! droop now! this sickness doth infect  
The very life-blood of our enterprise;  
'Tis catching hither, even to our camp.—

He writes me here, that inward sickness,—  
 And that his friends by deputation could not  
 So soon be drawn; nor did he think it meet  
 To lay so dangerous and dear a trust  
 On any soul remov'd, but on his own.  
 Yet doth he give us bold advertisement,  
 That with our small conjunction we should on,  
 To see how fortune is dispos'd to us;  
 For, as he writes, there is no quailing now,  
 Because the king is certainly possess'd  
 Of all our purposes. What say you to it?

*Wor.* Your father's sickness is a maim to us.

*Hot.* A perilous gash, a very limb lopp'd off:—  
 And yet, in faith, it is not; his present want  
 Seems more than we shall find it:—were it good  
 To set the exact wealth of all our states  
 All at one cast? to set so rich a main  
 On the nice hazard of one doubtful hour?  
 It were not good; for therein should we read<sup>(31)</sup>  
 The very bottom and the soul of hope,  
 The very list, the very utmost bound  
 Of all our fortunes.

*Doug.* Faith, and so we should;  
 Where now remains a sweet reversion:  
 We may boldly spend upon the hope of what  
 Is to come in:  
 A comfort of retirement lives in this.

*Hot.* A rendezvous, a home to fly unto,  
 If that the devil and mischance look big  
 Upon the maidenhead of our affairs.

*Wor.* But yet I would your father had been here.  
 The quality and hair of our attempt  
 Brooks no division: it will be thought  
 By some, that know not why he is away,  
 That wisdom, loyalty, and mere dislike  
 Of our proceedings, kept the earl from hence:  
 And think how such an apprehension  
 May turn the tide of fearful faction,  
 And breed a kind of question in our cause;

For well you know we of the offering side  
 Must keep aloof from strict arbitrement,  
 And stop all sight-holes, every loop from whence  
 The eye of reason may pry in upon us :  
 This absence of your father's draws a curtain,  
 That shows the ignorant a kind of fear  
 Before not dreamt of.

*Hot.* You strain too far.

I, rather, of his absence make this use :—  
 It lends a lustre and more great opinion,  
 A larger dare to our great enterprise,  
 Than if the earl were here ; for men must think,  
 If we, without his help, can make a head  
 To push against the kingdom, with his help  
 We shall o'erturn it topsy-turvy down.—  
 Yet all goes well, yet all our joints are whole.

*Doug.* As heart can think : there is not such a word  
 Spoke of in Scotland as this term of fear.

*Enter Sir RICHARD VERNON.*

*Hot.* My cousin Vernon ! welcome, by my soul.

*Ver.* Pray God my news be worth a welcome, lord.  
 The Earl of Westmoreland, seven thousand strong,  
 Is marching hitherwards ; with him Prince John.

*Hot.* No harm :—what more ?

*Ver.* And further, I have learn'd,  
 The king himself in person is set forth,  
 Or hitherwards intended speedily,  
 With strong and mighty preparation.

*Hot.* He shall be welcome too. Where is his son,  
 The nimble-footed madcap Prince of Wales,  
 And his comrades, that daff'd the world aside,  
 And bid it pass ?

*Ver.* All furnish'd, all in arms ;  
 All plum'd like estridges that wing<sup>(39)</sup> the wind ;  
 Bated like eagles having lately bath'd ;  
 Glittering in golden coats, like images ;  
 As full of spirit as the month of May,

And gorgeous as the sun at midsummer ;  
 Wanton as youthful goats, wild as young bulls.  
 I saw young Harry,—with his beaver on,  
 His cuisses on his thighs, gallantly arm'd,—  
 Rise from the ground like feather'd Mercury,  
 And vaulted with such ease into his seat,  
 As if an angel dropp'd down from the clouds,  
 To turn and wind a fiery Pegasus,  
 And witch the world with noble horsemanship.

*Hot.* No more, no more : worse than the sun in March,  
 This praise doth nourish agues. Let them come ;  
 They come like sacrifices in their trim,  
 And to the fire-ey'd maid of smoky war,  
 All hot and bleeding, will we offer them :  
 The mailèd Mars shall on his altar sit  
 Up to the ears in blood. I am on fire  
 To hear this rich reprisal is so nigh,  
 And yet not ours.—Come, let me taste my horse,  
 Who is to bear me, like a thunderbolt,  
 Against the bosom of the Prince of Wales :  
 Harry to Harry shall, hot horse to horse,  
 Meet, and ne'er part till one drop down a corse.—  
 O that Glendower were come !

*Ver.* There is more news :

I learn'd in Worcester, as I rode along,  
 He cannot draw his power this fourteen days.

*Doug.* That's the worst tidings that I hear of yet.

*Wor.* Ay, by my faith, that bears a frosty sound.

*Hot.* What may the king's whole battle reach unto ?

*Ver.* To thirty thousand.

*Hot.* Forty let it be :

My father and Glendower being both away,  
 The powers of us may serve so great a day.  
 Come, let us take<sup>(33)</sup> a muster speedily :  
 Doomsday is near ; die all, die merrily.

*Doug.* Talk not of dying : I am out of fear  
 Of death or death's hand for this one half-year.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *A public road near Coventry.*[www.libtpool.com.cn](http://www.libtpool.com.cn)*Enter FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.*

*Fal.* Bardolph, get thee before to Coventry; fill me a bottle of sack: our soldiers shall march through; we'll to Sutton-Cop-hill<sup>(34)</sup> to-night.

*Bard.* Will you give me money, captain?

*Fal.* Lay out, lay out.

*Bard.* This bottle makes an angel.

*Fal.* An if it do, take it for thy labour; and if it make twenty, take them all; I'll answer the coinage. Bid my lieutenant Peto meet me at the town's end.

*Bard.* I will, captain: farewell.

[*Exit.*]

*Fal.* If I be not ashamed of my soldiers, I am a soused gurnet. I have misused the king's press damnably. I have got, in exchange of a hundred and fifty soldiers, three hundred and odd pounds. I press me none but good householders, yeomen's sons; inquire me out contracted bachelors, such as had been asked twice on the bans; such a commodity of warm slaves, as had as lief hear the devil as a drum; such as fear the report of a caliver worse than a struck fowl or a hurt wild-duck. I pressed me none but such toasts-and-butter, with hearts in their bellies no bigger than pins'-heads, and they have bought out their services; and now my whole charge consists of ancients, corporals, lieutenants, gentlemen of companies, slaves as ragged as Lazarus in the painted cloth, where the glutton's dogs licked his sores; and such as, indeed, were never soldiers, but discarded unjust serving-men, younger sons to younger brothers, revolted tapsters, and ostlers trade-fallen; the cankers of a calm world and a long peace; ten times more dishonourable ragged than an old faced ancient: and such have I, to fill up the rooms of them that have bought out their services, that you would think that I had a hundred and fifty tattered prodigals lately come from swine-keeping, from eating draff and husks. A mad fellow met me on the way, and told me I had unloaded all the gibbets, and pressed the dead bodies. No eye hath seen such scarecrows. I'll not march through Coventry with

them, that's flat:—nay, and the villains march wide betwixt the legs, as if they had gyves on; for, indeed, I had the most of them out of prison. There's but (<sup>35</sup>) a shirt and a half in all my company; and the half-shirt is two napkins tacked together and thrown over the shoulders like a herald's coat without sleeves; and the shirt, to say the truth, stolen from my host at Saint Alban's, or the red-nose inn-keeper of Daventry. But that's all one; they'll find linen enough on every hedge.

*Enter Prince HENRY and WESTMORELAND.*

*P. Hen.* How now, blown Jack! how now, quilt!

*Fal.* What, Hal! how now, mad wag! what a devil dost thou in Warwickshire?—My good Lord of Westmoreland, I cry you mercy: I thought your honour had already been at Shrewsbury.

*West.* Faith, Sir John, 'tis more than time that I were there, and you too; but my powers are there already. The king, I can tell you, looks for us all: we must away all night.

*Fal.* Tut, never fear me: I am as vigilant as a cat to steal cream.

*P. Hen.* I think, to steal cream, indeed; for thy theft hath already made thee butter. But tell me, Jack, whose fellows are these that come after?

*Fal.* Mine, Hal, mine.

*P. Hen.* I did never see such pitiful rascals.

*Fal.* Tut, tut; good enough to toss; food for powder, food for powder; they'll fill a pit as well as better: tush, man, mortal men, mortal men.

*West.* Ay, but, Sir John, methinks they are exceeding poor and bare,—too beggarly.

*Fal.* Faith, for their poverty, I know not where they had that; and for their bareness, I am sure they never learned that of me.

*P. Hen.* No, I'll be sworn; unless you call three fingers on the ribs bare. But, sirrah, make haste: Percy is already in the field.

*Fal.* What, is the king encamped?

*West.* He is, Sir John: I fear we shall stay too long.

*Fal.* Well,



To the latter end of a fray and the beginning of a feast  
Fits a dull fighter and a keen guest.

[*Exeunt.*

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

SCENE III. *The Rebel Camp near Shrewsbury.*

*Enter* HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, DOUGLAS, *and* VERNON.

*Hot.* We'll fight with him to-night.

*Wor.* It may not be.

*Doug.* You give him, then, advantage.

*Ver.* Not a whit.

*Hot.* Why say you so? looks he not for supply?

*Ver.* So do we.

*Hot.* His is certain, ours is doubtful.

*Wor.* Good cousin, be advis'd; stir not to-night.

*Ver.* Do not, my lord.

*Doug.* You do not counsel well:

You speak it out of fear and cold heart.

*Ver.* Do me no slander, Douglas: by my life

(And I dare well maintain it with my life),

If well-respected honour bid me on,

I hold as little counsel with weak fear

As you, my lord, or any Scot that this day lives:—<sup>(36)</sup>

Let it be seen to-morrow in the battle

Which of us fears.

*Doug.* Yea, or to-night.

*Ver.* Content.

*Hot.* To-night, say I.

*Ver.* Come, come, it may not be. I wonder much,

Being men of such great leading as you are,

That you foresee not what impediments

Drag back our expedition: certain horse

Of my cousin Vernon's are not yet come up:

Your uncle Worcester's horse came but to-day;

And now their pride and mettle is asleep,

Their courage with hard labour tame and dull,

That not a horse is half the half of himself.

*Hot.* So are the horses of the enemy

In general, journey-bated and brought low :  
The better part of ours are full of rest.

*Wor.* The number of the king exceedeth ours :  
For God's sake, cousin, stay till all come in.

[*The trumpet sounds a parley.*]

*Enter Sir WALTER BLUNT.*

*Blunt.* I come with gracious offers from the king,  
If you vouchsafe me hearing and respect.

*Hot.* Welcome, Sir Walter Blunt ; and would to God  
You were of our determination !  
Some of us love you well ; and even those some  
Envy your great deservings and good name,  
Because you are not of our quality,  
But stand against us like an enemy.

*Blunt.* And God defend but still I should stand so,  
So long as out of limit and true rule  
You stand against anointed majesty !  
But, to my charge.—The king hath sent to know  
The nature of your griefs ; and whereupon  
You conjure from the breast of civil peace  
Such bold hostility, teaching his duteous land  
Audacious cruelty. If that the king  
Have any way your good deserts forgot,—  
Which he confesseth to be manifold,—  
He bids you name your griefs ; and with all speed  
You shall have your desires with interest,  
And pardon absolute for yourself, and these  
Herein misled by your suggestion.

*Hot.* The king is kind ; and well we know the king  
Knows at what time to promise, when to pay.  
My father and my uncle and myself  
Did give him that same royalty he wears ;  
And when he was not six-and-twenty strong,  
Sick in the world's regard, wretched and low,  
A poor unminded outlaw sneaking home,  
My father gave him welcome to the shore ;  
And when he heard him swear, and vow to God,  
He came but to be Duke of Lancaster,

To sue his livery and beg his peace,  
 With tears of innocency and terms of zeal,—  
 My father, in kind heart and pity mov'd,  
 Swore him assistance, and perform'd it too.  
 Now, when the lords and barons of the realm  
 Perceiv'd Northumberland did lean to him,  
 The more and less came in with cap and knee ;  
 Met him in boroughs, cities, villages,  
 Attended him on bridges, stood in lanes,  
 Laid gifts before him, proffer'd him their oaths,  
 Gave him their heirs as pages, follow'd him  
 Even at the heels in golden multitudes.  
 He presently,—as greatness knows itself,—  
 Steps me a little higher than his vow  
 Made to my father, while his blood was poor,  
 Upon the naked shore at Ravenspurg ;  
 And now, forsooth, takes on him to reform  
 Some certain edicts and some strait decrees  
 That lie too heavy on the commonwealth ;  
 Cries out upon abuses, seems to weep  
 Over his country's wrongs ; and, by this face,  
 This seeming brow of justice, did he win  
 The hearts of all that he did angle for :  
 Proceeded further ; cut me off the heads  
 Of all the favourites, that the absent king  
 In deputation left behind him here,  
 When he was personal in the Irish war.

*Blunt.* Tut, I came not to hear this.

*Hot.*

Then to the point.

In short time after, he depos'd the king ;  
 Soon after that, dépriv'd him of his life ;  
 And, in the neck of that, task'd the whole state :  
 To make that worse, suffer'd his kinsman March  
 (Who is, if every owner were well plac'd,  
 Indeed his king,) to be engag'd in Wales,  
 There without ransom to lie forfeited ;  
 Disgrac'd me in my happy victories,  
 Sought to entrap me by intelligence ;  
 Rated my uncle from the council-board ;

In rage dismiss'd my father from the court ;  
 Broke oath on oath, committed wrong on wrong ;  
 And, in conclusion, drove us to seek out  
 This head of safety ; and withal to pry  
 Into his title, the which we find  
 Too indirect for long continuance.

*Blunt.* Shall I return this answer to the king ?

*Hot.* Not so, Sir Walter : we'll withdraw awhile.  
 Go to the king ; and let there be impawn'd  
 Some surety for a safe return again,  
 And in the morning early shall my uncle  
 Bring him our purposes : and so, farewell.

*Blunt.* I would you would accept of grace and love.

*Hot.* And may be so we shall.

*Blunt.* Pray God you do.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV. *York. A room in the Archbishop's house.*

*Enter the Archbishop of York and Sir MICHAEL.*

*Arch.* Hie, good Sir Michael ; bear this sealèd brief  
 With wingèd haste to the lord marshal ;  
 This to my cousin Scroop ; and all the rest  
 To whom they are directed. If you knew  
 How much they do import, you would make haste.

*Sir M.* My good lord,  
 I guess their tenor.

*Arch.* Like enough you do.  
 To-morrow, good Sir Michael, is a day  
 Wherein the fortune of ten thousand men  
 Must bide the touch ; for, sir, at Shrewsbury,  
 As I am truly given to understand,  
 The king, with mighty and quick-raisèd power,  
 Meets with Lord Harry : and, I fear, Sir Michael,  
 What with the sickness of Northumberland  
 (Whose power was in the first proportion),  
 And what with Owen Glendower's absence thence,  
 (Who with them was a rated sinew too,  
 And comes not in, o'er-rul'd by prophecies),

I fear the power of Percy is too weak  
To wage an instant trial with the king.

*Sir M.* Why, my good lord, you need not fear; there is  
Douglas

And Lord Mortimer.

*Arch.* No, Mortimer is not there.

*Sir M.* But there is Mordake, Vernon, Lord Harry Percy,  
And there is my Lord of Worcester; and a head  
Of gallant warriors, noble gentlemen.

*Arch.* And so there is: but yet the king hath drawn  
The special head of all the land together:—  
The Prince of Wales, Lord John of Lancaster,  
The noble Westmoreland, and warlike Blunt;  
And many more corrivals and dear men  
Of estimation and command in arms.

*Sir M.* Doubt not, my lord, they shall be well oppos'd.

*Arch.* I hope no less, yet needful 'tis to fear;  
And, to prevent the worst, Sir Michael, speed:  
For if Lord Percy thrive not, ere the king  
Dismiss his power, he means to visit us,  
For he hath heard of our confederacy,—  
And 'tis but wisdom to make strong against him:  
Therefore make haste. I must go write again  
To other friends; and so, farewell, Sir Michael.

[*Exeunt.*]

---



---

## ACT V.

### SCENE I. *The King's camp near Shrewsbury.*

*Enter* King HENRY, Prince HENRY, Prince JOHN of Lancaster, Sir  
WALTER BLUNT, and Sir JOHN FALSTAFF.

*K. Hen.* How bloodily the sun begins to peer  
Above yon bosky<sup>(37)</sup> hill! the day looks pale  
At his distemperature.

*P. Hen.* The southern wind  
Doth play the trumpet to his purposes;

And by his hollow whistling in the leaves  
Foretells a tempest and a blustering day.

*K. Hen.* Then with the losers let it sympathise,  
For nothing can seem foul to those that win.

[*The trumpet sounds.*]

*Enter WORCESTER and VERNON.*

How now, my Lord of Worcester! 'tis not well  
That you and I should meet upon such terms  
As now we meet. You have deceiv'd our trust;  
And made us doff our easy robes of peace,  
To crush our old limbs in ungentle steel:  
This is not well, my lord, this is not well.  
What say you to it? will you again unknit  
This churlish knot of all-abhorred war?  
And move in that obedient orb again  
Where you did give a fair and natural light;  
And be no more an exhal'd meteor,  
A prodigy of fear, and a portent  
Of broach'd mischief to the unborn times?

*Wor.* Hear me, my liege:

For mine own part, I could be well content  
To entertain the lag-end of my life  
With quiet hours; for, I do protest,  
I have not sought the day of this dislike.

*K. Hen.* You have not sought it! how comes it, then?

*Fal.* Rebellion lay in his way, and he found it.

*P. Hen.* Peace, chewet, peace!

*Wor.* It pleas'd your majesty to turn your looks  
Of favour from myself and all our house;  
And yet I must remember you, my lord,  
We were the first and dearest of your friends.  
For you my staff of office did I break  
In Richard's time; and posted day and night  
To meet you on the way, and kiss your hand,  
When yet you were in place and in account  
Nothing so strong and fortunate as I.  
It was myself, my brother, and his son,  
That brought you home, and boldly did outdare

The dangers of the time : you swore to us,  
 And you did swear that oath at Doncaster,  
 That you did nothing purpose 'gainst the state ;  
 Nor claim no further than your new-fall'n right,  
 The seat of Gaunt, dukedom of Lancaster :  
 To this we swore our aid. But in short space  
 It rain'd down fortune showering on your head ;  
 And such a flood of greatness fell on you,—  
 What with our help, what with the absent king,  
 What with the injuries of a wanton time,  
 The seeming sufferances that you had borne,  
 And the contrarious winds that held the king  
 So long in his unlucky Irish wars  
 That all in England did repute him dead,—  
 And, from this swarm of fair advantages,  
 You took occasion to be quickly woo'd  
 To gripe the general sway into your hand ;  
 Forgot your oath to us at Doncaster ;  
 And, being fed by us, you us'd us so  
 As that ungentle gull, the cuckoo's bird,  
 Useth the sparrow,—did oppress our nest,  
 Grew by our feeding to so great a bulk,  
 That even our love durst not come near your sight  
 For fear of swallowing ; but with nimble wing  
 We were enforc'd, for safety-sake, to fly  
 Out of your sight, and raise this present head :  
 Whereby we stand opposèd by such means  
 As you yourself have forg'd against yourself,  
 By unkind usage, dangerous countenance,  
 And violation of all faith and troth  
 Sworn to us in your younger enterprise.

*K. Hen.* These things, indeed, you have articulated,  
 Proclaim'd at market-crosses, read in churches,  
 To face the garment of rebellion  
 With some fine colour that may please the eye  
 Of fickle changelings and poor discontents,  
 Which gape and rub the elbow at the news  
 Of hurlyburly innovation :  
 And never yet did insurrection want

Such water-colours to impaint his cause ;  
 Nor moody beggars, starving for a time  
 Of pellmell havoc and confusion.

*P. Hen.* In both our armies there is many a soul  
 Shall pay full dearly for this encounter,  
 If once they join in trial. Tell your nephew,  
 The Prince of Wales doth join with all the world  
 In praise of Henry Percy : by my hopes,  
 This present enterprise set off his head,  
 I do not think a braver gentleman,  
 More active-valiant or more valiant-young,  
 More daring or more bold, is now alive  
 To grace this latter age with noble deeds.  
 For my part, I may speak it to my shame,  
 I have a truant been to chivalry ;  
 And so I hear he doth account me too :  
 Yet this before my father's majesty,—  
 I am content that he shall take the odds  
 Of his great name and estimation,  
 And will, to save the blood on either side,  
 Try fortune with him in a single fight.

*K. Hen.* And, Prince of Wales, so dare we venture thee,  
 Albeit considerations infinite  
 Do make against it.—No, good Worcester, no,  
 We love our people well ; even those we love  
 That are misled upon your cousin's part ;  
 And, will they take the offer of our grace,  
 Both he, and they, and you, yea, every man  
 Shall be my friend again, and I'll be his :  
 So tell your cousin, and bring me word  
 What he will do : but if he will not yield,  
 Rebuke and dread correction wait on us,  
 And they shall do their office. So, be gone ;  
 We will not now be troubled with reply :  
 We offer fair ; take it advisedly.

[*Exeunt Worcester and Vernon.*]

*P. Hen.* It will not be accepted, on my life :  
 The Douglas and the Hotspur both together  
 Are confident against the world in arms.



*K. Hen.* Hence, therefore, every leader to his charge;  
For, on their answer, will we set on them:  
And God befriend us, as our cause is just!

[*Exeunt King, Blunt, and Prince John.*]

*Fal.* Hal, if thou see me down in the battle, and bestride me, so; 'tis a point of friendship.

*P. Hen.* Nothing but a colossus can do thee that friendship. Say thy prayers, and farewell.

*Fal.* I would it were bed-time, Hal, and all well.

*P. Hen.* Why, thou owest God a death. [*Exit.*]

*Fal.* 'Tis not due yet; I would be loth to pay him before his day. What need I be so forward with him that calls not on me? Well, 'tis no matter; honour pricks me on. Yea, but how if honour prick me off when I come on? how then? Can honour set to a leg? no: or an arm? no: or take away the grief of a wound? no. Honour hath no skill in surgery, then? no. What is honour? a word. What is that word, honour? air.<sup>(38)</sup> A trim reckoning!—Who hath it? he that died o' Wednesday. Doth he feel it? no. Doth he hear it? no. Is it insensible, then? yea, to the dead. But will it not live with the living? no. Why? destraction will not suffer it:—therefore I'll none of it: honour is a mere scutcheon:—and so ends my catechism. [*Exit.*]

---

SCENE II. *The Rebel Camp.*

*Enter WORCESTER and VERNON.*

*Wor.* O, no, my nephew must not know, Sir Richard,  
The liberal kind offer of the king.

*Ver.* 'Twere best he did.

*Wor.* Then are we all undone.

It is not possible, it cannot be,  
The king should keep his word in loving us;  
He will suspect us still, and find a time  
To punish this offence in other faults:  
Suspicion<sup>(39)</sup> all our lives shall be stuck full of eyes;  
For treason is but trusted like the fox,

Who, ne'er so tame, so cherish'd, and lock'd up,  
 Will have a wild trick of his ancestors.  
 Look how we can, or sad or merrily,  
 Interpretation will misquote our looks;  
 And we shall feed like oxen at a stall,  
 The better cherish'd still the nearer death.  
 My nephew's trespass may be well forgot,—  
 It hath the excuse of youth and heat of blood;  
 And an adopted name of privilege,—  
 A hare-brain'd Hotspur, govern'd by a spleen:  
 All his offences live upon my head  
 And on his father's: we did train him on;  
 And, his corruption being ta'en from us,  
 We, as the spring of all, shall pay for all.  
 Therefore, good cousin, let not Harry know,  
 In any case, the offer of the king.

*Ver.* Deliver what you will, I'll say 'tis so.  
 Here comes your cousin.

*Enter HOTSPUR and DOUGLAS; Officers and Soldiers behind.*

*Hot.* My uncle is return'd:—deliver up  
 My Lord of Westmoreland.—Uncle, what news?

*Wor.* The king will bid you battle presently.

*Doug.* Defy him by the Lord of Westmoreland.

*Hot.* Lord Douglas, go you and tell him so.

*Doug.* Marry, and shall, and very willingly.

[*Exit.*]

*Wor.* There is no seeming mercy in the king.

*Hot.* Did you beg any? God forbid!

*Wor.* I told him gently of our grievances,  
 Of his oath-breaking; which he mended thus,—  
 By now forswearing that he is forsworn:  
 He calls us rebels, traitors; and will scourge  
 With haughty arms this hateful name in us.

*Re-enter DOUGLAS.*

*Doug.* Arm, gentlemen; to arms! for I have thrown  
 A brave defiance in King Henry's teeth,  
 And Westmoreland, that was engag'd, did bear it;  
 Which cannot choose but bring him quickly on.

*Wor.* The Prince of Wales stepp'd forth before the king,  
And, nephew, challeng'd you to single fight.

*Hot.* O, would the quarrel lay upon our heads;  
And that no man might draw short breath to-day  
But I and Harry Monmouth! Tell me, tell me,  
How show'd his tasking? seem'd it in contempt?

*Ver.* No, by my soul; I never in my life  
Did hear a challenge urg'd more modestly,  
Unless a brother should a brother dare  
To gentle exercise and proof of arms.  
He gave you all the duties of a man;  
Trimm'd up your praises with a princely tongue;  
Spoke your deservings like a chronicle;  
Making you ever better than his praise,  
By still dispraising praise valu'd with you:  
And, which became him like a prince indeed,  
He made a blushing cital of himself;  
And chid his truant youth with such a grace,  
As if he master'd there a double spirit,  
Of teaching and of learning instantly.  
There did he pause: but let me tell the world,—  
If he outlive the envy of this day,  
England did never owe so sweet a hope,  
So much misconstru'd in his wantonness.

*Hot.* Cousin, I think thou art enamour'd  
Upon<sup>(40)</sup> his follies: never did I hear  
Of any prince so wild o' liberty.  
But be he as he will, yet once ere night  
I will embrace him with a soldier's arm,  
That he shall shrink under my courtesy.—  
Arm, arm with speed:—and, fellows, soldiers, friends,  
Better consider what you have to do  
Than I, that have not well the gift of tongue,  
Can lift your blood up with persuasion.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord, here are letters for you.

*Hot.* I cannot read them now.—

O gentlemen, the time of life is short!

To spend that shortness basely were too long,  
 If life did ride upon a dial's point,  
 Still ending at the arrival of an hour.  
 An if we live, we live to tread on kings;  
 If die, brave death, when princes die with us!  
 Now, for our consciences,—the arms are fair,  
 When the intent of bearing them is just.

*Enter another Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord, prepare; the king comes on apace.

*Hot.* I thank him, that he cuts me from my tale,  
 For I profess not talking; only this,—  
 Let each man do his best: and here draw I  
 A sword, whose temper I intend to stain  
 With the best blood that I can meet withal  
 In the adventure of this perilous day.  
 Now,—*Esperance!*—*Percy!*—and set on.—  
 Sound all the lofty instruments of war,  
 And by that music let us all embrace;  
 For,<sup>(41)</sup> heaven to earth, some of us never shall  
 A second time do such a courtesy.

*[The trumpets sound. They embrace, and exeunt.]*

---

SCENE III. *Plain near Shrewsbury.*

*Excursions, and parties fighting. Alarum to the battle. Then enter  
 DOUGLAS and BLUNT, meeting.*

*Blunt.* What is thy name, that in the<sup>(42)</sup> battle thus  
 Thou crossest me? what honour dost thou seek  
 Upon my head?

*Doug.* Know, then, my name is Douglas;  
 And I do haunt thee in the battle thus  
 Because some tell me that thou art a king.

*Blunt.* They tell thee true.

*Doug.* The Lord of Stafford dear to-day hath bought  
 Thy likeness; for, instead of thee, King Harry,  
 This sword hath ended him: so shall it thee,  
 Unless thou yield thee as my prisoner.

*Blunt.* I was not born a yielder, thou proud Scot;  
 And thou shalt find a king that will revenge  
 Lord Stafford's death. *[They fight, and Blunt is slain.*

*Enter* HOTSPUR.

*Hot.* O Douglas, hadst thou fought at Holmedon thus,  
 I never had triumph'd upon a Scot.

*Doug.* All's done, all's won; here breathless lies the  
 king.

*Hot.* Where?

*Doug.* Here.

*Hot.* This, Douglas? no; I know this face full well:  
 A gallant knight he was, his name was Blunt;  
 Semblably furnish'd like the king himself.

*Doug.* A fool go with thy soul, whither it goes!  
 A borrow'd title hast thou bought too dear:  
 Why didst thou tell me that thou wert a king?

*Hot.* The king hath many masking<sup>(43)</sup> in his coats.

*Doug.* Now, by my sword, I will kill all his coats;  
 I'll murder all his wardrobe, piece by piece,  
 Until I meet the king.

*Hot.* Up, and away!

Our soldiers stand full fairly for the day. *[Exeunt.*

*Alarums. Enter* FALSTAFF.

*Fal.* Though I could scape shot-free at London, I fear  
 the shot here; here's no scoring but upon the pate.—Soft!  
 who are you? Sir Walter Blunt:—there's honour for you!  
 here's no vanity!—I am as hot as molten lead, and as heavy  
 too: God keep lead out of me! I need no more weight than  
 mine own bowels.—I have led my raggamuffins where they  
 are peppered: there's not three of my hundred and fifty left  
 alive; and they are for the town's end, to beg during life.—  
 But who comes here?

*Enter* Prince HENRY.

*P. Hen.* What, stand'st thou idle here? lend me thy  
 sword:  
 Many a nobleman lies stark and stiff

Under the hoofs of vaunting enemies,  
Whose deaths are unreveng'd : I prithee, lend me thy

[www.libtsword.com](http://www.libtsword.com)

*Fal.* O Hal, I prithee, give me leave to breathe awhile.—  
Turk Gregory never did such deeds in arms as I have done  
this day. I have paid Percy, I have made him sure.

*P. Hen.* He is, indeed ; and living to kill thee.  
I prithee, lend me thy sword.

*Fal.* Nay, before God, Hal, if Percy be alive, thou get-  
test not my sword ; but take my pistol, if thou wilt.

*P. Hen.* Give it me : what, is it in the case ?

*Fal.* Ay, Hal ; 'tis hot, 'tis hot ; there's that will sack a  
city. [*The Prince draws out a bottle of sack.*]

*P. Hen.* What, is it a time to jest and dally now ?

[*Throws it at him, and exit.*]

*Fal.* Well, if Percy be alive, I'll pierce him. If he do  
come in my way, so ; if he do not, if I come in his willingly,  
let him make a carbonado of me. I like not such grinning  
honour as Sir Walter hath : give me life : which if I can  
save, so ; if not, honour comes unlooked for, and there's an  
end. [*Exit.*]

---

SCENE IV. *Another part of the field.*

*Alarums. Excursions. Enter King HENRY, Prince HENRY,  
Prince JOHN, and WESTMORELAND.*

*K. Hen.* I prithee,  
Harry, withdraw thyself ; thou bleed'st too much.—  
Lord John of Lancaster, go you with him.

*P. John.* Not I, my lord, unless I did bleed too.

*P. Hen.* I beseech your majesty, make up,  
Lest your retirement do amaze your friends.

*K. Hen.* I will do so.—  
My Lord of Westmoreland, lead him to his tent.

*West.* Come, my lord, I'll lead you to your tent.

*P. Hen.* Lead me, my lord ? I do not need your help :  
And God forbid, a shallow scratch should drive  
The Prince of Wales from such a field as this,

Where stain'd nobility lies trodden on,  
And rebels' arms triumph in massacres!

*P. John.* We breathe too long:—come, cousin Westmoreland,

Our duty this way lies; for God's sake, come.

[*Exeunt Prince John and Westmoreland.*]

*P. Hen.* By heaven, thou hast deceiv'd me, Lancaster;  
I did not think thee lord of such a spirit:  
Before, I lov'd thee as a brother, John;  
But now, I do respect thee as my soul.

*K. Hen.* I saw him hold Lord Percy at the point  
With lustier maintenance than I did look for  
Of such an ungrown warrior.

*P. Hen.* O, this boy  
Lends mettle to us all!

[*Exit.*]

*Alarums. Enter DOUGLAS.*

*Doug.* Another king! they grow like Hydra's heads:  
I am the Douglas, fatal to all those  
That wear those colours on them:—what art thou,  
That counterfeit'st the person of a king?

*K. Hen.* The king himself; who, Douglas, grieves at  
heart,  
So many of his shadows thou hast met,  
And not the very king. I have two boys  
Seek Percy and thyself about the field:  
But, seeing thou fall'st on me so luckily,  
I will assay thee: so, defend thyself.

*Doug.* I fear thou art another counterfeit;  
And yet, in faith, thou bear'st thee like a king:  
But mine I am sure thou art, whoe'er thou be,  
And thus I win thee.

[*They fight; the King being in danger, re-enter P. Henry.*]

*P. Hen.* Hold up thy head, vile Scot, or thou art like  
Never to hold it up again! the spirits  
Of valiant Shirley, Stafford, Blunt, are in my arms:  
It is the Prince of Wales that threatens thee;  
Who never promiseth but he means to pay.

[*They fight: Douglas flies.*]

Cheerly, my lord: how fares your grace?—  
 Sir Nicholas Gawsey hath for succour sent,  
 And so hath Clifton: I'll to Clifton straight.

*K. Hen.* Stay, and breathe awhile:—  
 Thou hast redeem'd thy lost opinion;  
 And show'd thou mak'st some tender of my life,  
 In this fair rescue thou hast brought to me.

*P. Hen.* O God, they did me too much injury  
 That ever said I hearken'd for your death!  
 If it were so, I might have let alone  
 The insulting hand of Douglas over you,  
 Which would have been as speedy in your end  
 As all the poisonous potions in the world,  
 And sav'd the treacherous labour of your son.

*K. Hen.* Make up to Clifton: I'll to Sir Nicholas Gawsey.  
 [Exit.]

*Enter HOTSPUR.*

*Hot.* If I mistake not, thou art Harry Monmouth.

*P. Hen.* Thou speak'st as if I would deny my name.

*Hot.* My name is Harry Percy.

*P. Hen.* Why, then I see

A very valiant rebel of that name.  
 I am the Prince of Wales; and think not, Percy,  
 To share with me in glory any more:  
 Two stars keep not their motion in one sphere;  
 Nor can one England brook a double reign,  
 Of Harry Percy and the Prince of Wales.

*Hot.* Nor shall it, Harry; for the hour is come  
 To end the one of us; and would to God  
 Thy name in arms were now as great as mine!

*P. Hen.* I'll make it greater ere I part from thee;  
 And all the budding honours on thy crest  
 I'll crop, to make a garland for my head.

*Hot.* I can no longer brook thy vanities. [They fight.]

*Enter FALSTAFF.*

*Fal.* Well said, Hal! to it, Hal!—Nay, you shall find no  
 boy's play here, I can tell you.



*Re-enter DOUGLAS; he fights with FALSTAFF, who falls down as if he were dead, and exit DOUGLAS. O HOTSPUR is wounded, and falls.*

*Hot.* O, Harry, thou hast robb'd me of my youth!

I better brook the loss of brittle life  
 Than those proud titles thou hast won of me;  
 They wound my thoughts worse than thy sword my flesh:—  
 But thought's the slave of life, and life time's fool;  
 And time, that takes survey of all the world,  
 Must have a stop. O, I could prophesy,  
 But that the earthy and cold hand of death  
 Lies on my tongue:—no, Percy, thou art dust,  
 And food for— [Dies.

*P. Hen.* For worms, brave Percy: fare thee well, great heart!—

Ill-weav'd ambition, how much art thou shrunk!  
 When that this body did contain a spirit,  
 A kingdom for it was too small a bound;  
 But now two paces of the vilest earth  
 Is room enough:—this earth that bears thee dead  
 Bears not alive so stout a gentleman.  
 If thou wert sensible of courtesy,  
 I should not make so dear a show of zeal:—  
 But let my favours hide thy mangled face;  
 And, even in thy behalf, I'll thank myself  
 For doing these fair rites of tenderness.  
 Adieu, and take thy praise with thee to heaven!  
 Thy ignomy sleep with thee in the grave,  
 But not remember'd in thy epitaph!—

[*He sees Falstaff on the ground.*

What, old acquaintance! could not all this flesh  
 Keep in a little life? Poor Jack, farewell!  
 I could have better spar'd a better man:  
 O, I should have a heavy miss of thee,  
 If I were much in love with vanity!  
 Death hath not struck so fat a deer to-day,  
 Though many dearer, in this bloody fray.  
 Embowell'd will I see thee by and by:  
 Till then in blood by noble Percy lie.

[Exit.

*Fal.* [*rising.*] Embowelled! if thou embowel me to-day, I'll give you leave to powder me and eat me too to-morrow. 'Sblood, 'twas time to counterfeit, or that hot termagant Scot had paid me scot and lot too. Counterfeit? I lie, I am no counterfeit: to die, is to be a counterfeit; for he is but the counterfeit of a man who hath not the life of a man: but to counterfeit dying, when a man thereby liveth, is to be no counterfeit, but the true and perfect image of life indeed. The better part of valour is discretion; in the which better part I have saved my life. Zounds, I am afraid of this gunpowder Percy, though he be dead: how, if he should counterfeit too, and rise? by my faith, I am afraid he would prove the better counterfeit. Therefore I'll make him sure; yea, and I'll swear I killed him. Why may not he rise as well as I? Nothing confutes me but eyes, and nobody sees me. Therefore, sirrah [*stabbing him*], with a new wound in your thigh, come you along with me. [*Takes Hotspur on his back.*]

*Re-enter Prince HENRY and Prince JOHN.*

*P. Hen.* Come, brother John; full bravely hast thou flesh'd

Thy maiden sword.

*P. John.* But, soft! whom have we here?

Did you not tell me this fat man was dead?

*P. Hen.* I did; I saw him dead, breathless and bleeding On the ground.—

Art thou alive? or is it fantasy

That plays upon our eyesight? I prithee, speak;

We will not trust our eyes without our ears:—

Thou art not what thou seem'st.

*Fal.* No, that's certain; I am not a double man: but if I be not Jack Falstaff, then am I a Jack. There is Percy [*throwing the body down*]: if your father will do me any honour, so; if not, let him kill the next Percy himself. I look to be either earl or duke, I can assure you.

*P. Hen.* Why, Percy I killed myself, and saw thee dead.

*Fal.* Didst thou?—Lord, Lord, how this world is given to lying!—I grant you I was down and out of breath; and so was he: but we rose both at an instant, and fought a long

hour by Shrewsbury clock. If I may be believed, so; if not, let them that should reward valour bear the sin upon their own heads. I'll take it upon my death, I gave him this wound in the thigh: if the man were alive, and would deny it, zounds, I would make him eat a piece of my sword.

*P. John.* This is the strangest tale that e'er I heard.

*P. Hen.* This is the strangest fellow, brother John.—  
Come, bring your luggage nobly on your back:  
For my part, if a lie may do thee grace,  
I'll gild it with the happiest terms I have.

[*A retreat is sounded.*]

The trumpet sounds retreat; the day is ours.  
Come, brother, let us to the highest of the field,  
To see what friends are living, who are dead.

[*Exeunt Prince Henry and Prince John.*]

*Fal.* I'll follow, as they say, for reward. He that rewards me, God reward him! If I do grow great, I'll grow less; for I'll purge, and leave sack, and live cleanly as a nobleman should do.  
[*Exit, bearing off the body.*]

SCENE V. *Another part of the field.*

*The trumpets sound. Enter King HENRY, Prince HENRY, Prince JOHN, WESTMORELAND, and others, with WORCESTER and VERNON prisoners.*

*K. Hen.* Thus ever did rebellion find rebuke.—  
Ill-spirited Worcester! did we not send grace,  
Pardon, and terms of love to all of you?  
And wouldst thou turn our offers contrary?  
Misuse the tenor of thy kinsman's trust?  
Three knights upon our party slain to-day,  
A noble earl, and many a creature else,  
Had been alive this hour,  
If, like a Christian, thou hadst truly borne  
Betwixt our armies true intelligence.

*Wor.* What I have done my safety urg'd me to;  
And I embrace this fortune patiently,  
Since not to be avoided it falls on me.

*K. Hen.* Bear Worcester to the death, and Vernon too :  
Other offenders we will pause upon.—

*www.libtool.co* [*Exeunt Worcester and Vernon, guarded.*]

How goes the field ?

*P. Hen.* The noble Scot, Lord Douglas, when he saw  
The fortune of the day quite turn'd from him,  
The noble Percy slain, and all his men  
Upon the foot of fear,—fled with the rest ;  
And falling from 'a hill, he was so bruis'd  
That the pursuers took him. At my tent  
The Douglas is ; and I beseech your grace  
I may dispose of him.

*K. Hen.* With all my heart.

*P. Hen.* Then, brother John of Lancaster, to you  
This honourable bounty shall belong :  
Go to the Douglas, and deliver him  
Up to his pleasure, ransomless and free :  
His valour, shown upon our crests to-day,  
Hath taught us how to cherish such high deeds  
Even in the bosom of our adversaries.

*P. John.* I thank your grace for this high courtesy,  
Which I shall give away immediately.

*K. Hen.* Then this remains,—that we divide our power.—  
You, son John, and my cousin Westmoreland,  
Towards York shall bend you with your dearest speed,  
To meet Northumberland and the prelate Scroop,  
Who, as we hear, are busily in arms :  
Myself,—and you, son Harry,—will towards Wales,  
To fight with Glendower and the Earl of March.  
Rebellion in this land shall lose his sway,  
Meeting the check of such another day :  
And since this business so fair is done,  
Let us not leave till all our own be won. [*Exeunt.*]

## P. 363. (1) "in strands afar remote."

Here Malone and some other editors retain the old spelling, "stronds," though in *The Merchant of Venice*, act i. sc. 1, they print "Colchos' strand."—In early books we frequently meet with passages where the word is spelt "strond," and yet is to be pronounced *strand*: e. g. in *The Taming of the Shrew*, act i. sc. 1, the folio has,

"That made great Ioue to humble him to her hand,  
When with his knees he kist the Cretan strond."

## P. 364. (2) "Upon whose dead corpse'," &amp;c.

"corpse," i. e. corpses.—Here the old copies have "corps" and "corpes,"—which perhaps might be considered as the plural of "corp" (see Middleton's *Works*, vol. iv. 32, and vol. i. lxxiii. (Add. and Cor.) ed. Dyce), if other passages in our author's writings did not forbid us to suppose so: e. g. the folio has in *Twelfth-Night* (Song), act ii. sc. 4, "My poore corpse" (i. e. corpse); in *The Winter's Tale*, act v. sc. 1, "Againe possesse her corpse" (i. e. corpse), &c.

P. 365. (3) "West. In faith,  
It is a conquest for a prince to boast of."

The old copies, by mistake, make "*In faith it is*" the conclusion of the preceding speech.

## P. 367. (4) "Do not thou, when thou art king, hang a thief."

Here all the old copies, I believe, have "— *when thou art a king*," &c.; but erroneously: compare, in the present speech, "shall there be gallows standing in England *when thou art king*?"; in the preceding page, "I prithee, sweet wag, *when thou art king*—"; "Marry, then, sweet wag, *when thou art king*," &c.; and in p. 369, "I'll be a traitor, then, *when thou art king*."

## P. 368. (5) "Pointz!"

So the name is spelt here in the folio, and rightly, I conceive: compare *The Merry Wives of Windsor*, act iii. sc. 2, vol. i. p. 179; "he kept company with the wild prince and Pointz."

## P. 370. (6) "thou latter spring!"

The old copies have "the latter," &c. (which Mr. Knight thinks "more correct").

## P. 370. (7) "Bardolph, Peto," &amp;c.

The old copies have "Haruey, Rossill," &c. (the names of the actors, it would seem).

P. 370. (\*)

*"and meet me to-morrow night in Eastcheap; there I'll sup."*

"I think ~~we should read:—~~ *to-night* in Eastcheap,' &c. The disguises were to be provided for the purpose of the robbery, which was to be committed at *four in the morning*; and they would come too late if the Prince was not to receive them till the night after the day of the exploit."—STEEVENS. Mr. Knight fancies that he has made all clear by printing, "— and meet me. To-morrow night in Eastcheap, there I'll sup."

P. 372. (\*)

*"neat and trimly dress'd," &c.*

So the old copies: but the "and" is probably the transcriber's or the compositor's addition.

P. 383. (10)

*"Poin. O, 'tis our setter: I know his voice.*

[Coming forward with Bardolph and Peto.

*Bard. What news?*

*Gads. Case ye, case ye," &c.*

The old copies have,

*"Poin. O 'tis our Setter, I know his voyce: Bardolfe, what newes?*

*Bar. Case ye, case ye," &c.*

P. 392. (11) *"Didst thou never see Titan kiss a dish of butter? pitiful-hearted Titan, that melted at the sweet tale of the sun!"*

The first and second 4tos have "— *tale of the sonnes*;" the later 4tos and the folio "— *tale of the sunne*."—Theobald printed "— *pitiful-hearted butter that melted at the sweet tale of the sun!*"—Warburton's reading, or rather change of punctuation (which, according to Mr. Knight, "appears to present no difficulty"!), is "Didst thou never see Titan kiss a dish of butter (pitiful-hearted Titan) that melted at the sweet tale of the sun?"—Malone,—but I forbear saying more about a passage which must remain a puzzle till *Shakespeare's autograph manuscript of the play turns up*.

P. 393. (12)

*"Gads. We four set upon some dozen,—*

*Gads. And bound them.*

*Gads. As we were sharing," &c.*

So the folio.—The 4tos give these speeches to "Ross;" and Mr. Collier assigns them to *Bardolph*, because, he says, "we have seen before, p. 235, that *Rossill* was inserted in the text for *Bardolph*." But on turning to p. 235 of Mr. Collier's edition, we find that he (with Theobald and others) has there substituted "*BARDOLPH, Peto*" for the "*HARVEY, Rossill*" of the old eds. See note (?).—The matter is of little consequence.

P. 393. (13) " — come in the other."

Qy. "came in," &c.?

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

P. 394. (14)

"P. Hen. Seven? why, there were but four even now.

Fal. In buckram.

Poin. Ay, four, in buckram suits."

In this dialogue the reply of Falstaff, "In buckram," is not free from difficulty. "I believe," says Malone, "these words belong to the Prince's speech: ' — there were but four even now,—in buckram.' Poinc concurs with the Prince: 'Ay, four, in buckram suits;' and Falstaff perseveres in the number of seven."—Whalley observes, "From the Prince's speech and Poinc's answer, I apprehend that Falstaff's reply should be interrogatively,—'In buckram?':" and so Capell printed it.

P. 394. (15)

"*thou nott-pated fool, thou whoreson, obscene, greasy tallow-keech,—*"

Here the old copies have "knotty-pated,"—which the modern editors retain: but I quite agree with Douce that it is an error of the scribe or compositor. "The word," he remarks, "should be changed without scruple to *nott-pated*, i. e. polled or cropped. The Prince had a little before bestowed the same epithet on the Drawer [no,—the Prince, at p. 390, says to the *Drawer*, and speaking, it would seem, of Falstaff, "Wilt thou rob this leathern-jerkin, crystal-button, *nott-pated*," &c.]. In this place it may refer to the practice of nicking or cropping naturals." *Illust. of Shakespeare*, i. 427. See also Richardson's *Dict.* sub *Notted, Nott-head, Nott-headed, Nott-pated*.—Here too the old copies have "tallow catch;"—which we may presume is merely a variety of spelling. In the Sec. Part of *Henry IV.* act ii. sc. 1, Mrs. Quickly talks of "goodwife *Keech*, the butcher's wife;" and in *Henry VIII.* act i. sc. 1, Buckingham says of Wolsey,—

"I wonder

That such a *keech* can with his very bulk  
Take up the rays o' the beneficial sun,  
And keep it from the earth."

P. 395. (16) "*you bound them, and were masters of their wealth.—Mark now, how a plain tale shall put you down.*"

The old copies have "and bound them," &c.—Here Malone and some others prefer the lection, "*how plain a tale:*" but it is manifestly wrong.

P. 397. (17) "*I was not an eagle's talon in the waist.*"

The old copies have " — an eagle's talent," &c.,—"talent" being an old form of "*talon:*" compare *Love's Labour's lost*, act iv. sc. 2, where it is absolutely necessary to retain that form,—"*If a talent be a claw, look how he claws him with a talent.*" In the present passage, however, I think it better to print,

with the modern editors, "*talon*:"—and compare the folio in Sec. Part of *Henry VI.* act iii. sc. 2,—

“Is Beauford team'd a Kyte? where are his *Tallons*?”  
and in Third Part of *Henry VI.* act i. sc. 4,—

“So Doues do peck the Faulcons piercing *Tallons*.”

P. 397. (29) “— *what, a plague, call you him?*—

Poin. *O, Glendower.*

Fal. *Owen, Owen,—the same,*” &c.

Here, according to *Henry the Fourth printed from a contemporary manuscript* for the Shakespeare Soc., Poinz replies “*Owen Glendower*,” and the editor of that Ms. (Introd. p. xviii.) observes, “it is easy to see this must be the correct reading from Falstaff’s answer. The error is one easily made, initials being constantly written for Christian names. Besides, an exclamation from Poinz would be out of place.” On the contrary, I think that Falstaff’s answer decidedly proves the old text to be right: Poinz gives the Welshman’s surname; and Falstaff adds his Christian name. Nor is the “*O*” to be considered as “an exclamation:”—it is a slight interjection very naturally used on such an occasion. (I am much mistaken if the editor of the Ms. just mentioned has not by this time changed his opinion concerning its critical value, and does not now see that its variations from the printed copies have not even the shadow of authority to recommend them.)

P. 399. (30) “*my trustful queen,*” &c.

The old copies have “*my trustful queen,*” &c.—The alteration,—an almost inevitable one,—was made by Rowe.

P. 401. (31) “*never call a true piece of gold a counterfeit: thou art essentially mad, without seeming so.*”

The old copies have “— *thou art essentially made, without,*” &c.—I give the usual modern reading of this obscure passage. (Capell very coolly printed “— *a counterfeit: if thou dost, thou art essentially mad,*” &c.)

P. 401. (32) “[*Exeunt all except the Prince and Poinz.*”

Here the 4tos have no stage-direction: the folio has “*Exit.*” According to all the old copies, the subsequent conversation about Falstaff and the contents of his pockets takes place between the Prince and “*Peto*,” but, as Johnson saw, the latter name is undoubtedly a mistake for “*Poinz*.”—“*Peto* is again printed elsewhere for *Poinz* in this play [towards the close of act iii,—“*Go, Peto, to horse,*” &c.], probably from a P. only being used in the Ms. ‘What had *Peto* done’ (Dr. Johnson observes) ‘to be trusted with the plot against Falstaff? Poinz has the Prince’s confidence, and is a man of courage. This alteration clears the whole difficulty; they all retired but Poinz, who, with the Prince, having only robbed the robbers, had no need to conceal himself from the travellers.’” MALONE.



P. 403. (23) "as often as," &c.

The old copies have "as oft as," &c.

P. 407. (23) "I'll haste the writer, and withal," &c.

Steevens's reading (see the passages cited in his note and in Malone's *ad l.*) is a very probable one,—

"I'll in and haste the writer, and withal," &c.

P. 407. (24) "As a tir'd horse, a railing wife."

This line has been variously amended by the modern editors,—

"As a tir'd horse, or as a railing wife."

"As is a tirèd horse, a railing wife."

P. 408. (24) "In faith, my lord, you are too wilful-blame," &c.

Though Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, Dr. Johnson, and Mr. Sydney Walker are all dissatisfied with "too wilful-blame," I have not the slightest doubt that it is the phraseology of Shakespeare.

P. 408. (25) "that pretty Welsh  
Which thou pour'st down from these welling heavens," &c.

The old copies have "— these swelling heauens," &c.: but I adopt, without hesitation, the reading of Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector. "The defect of harmony in this line induces me to suppose (with Sir T. Hanmer) that our author originally wrote, 'Which thou pour'st down from these two,' &c." STEEVENS. (Pope first inserted "two.")—The line certainly halts: but the more recent editors rather injure than improve the metre by printing "pourest."

P. 409. (27) "Glend. She bids you on the wanton rushes lay you down," &c.

The right reading and arrangement would seem to be,—

"Glend. She bids you  
Upon the wanton rushes lay you down," &c.

P. 411. (28) "and the soul of every man  
Prophetically does forethink thy fall."

The old copies have "— do forethink," &c.; and perhaps rightly,—for Shakespeare may have considered "every man" as a plural. (We have already had several examples of a verb plural following a nominative singular when a genitive plural intervenes.)

P. 420. (20) "Go, Pointz, to horse," &c.

The old copies have "Go, Peto, to horse," &c. See note (21).—Theobald reduced this speech to prose, from the commencement to "their furniture:" Douce would have the prose end a little earlier,—with "in the afternoon."

P. 421. (20) "His letters bear his mind, not I, my lord."

The two first 4tos have "Not I my mind;" the later eds. "Not I his mind."—Capell made the present correction, which is fully confirmed by the context.

P. 422. (21) "for therein should we read  
The very bottom and the soul of hope," &c.

With this passage conjecture has been very busy,—altering "read" to "risque," to "tread," to "dare," and to "reach:" but the notes of Steevens and Malone *ad l.* will show that the old lection is not to be hastily changed.

P. 423. (22) "All furnish'd, all in arms;  
All plum'd like estridges that wing the wind;  
Bated like eagles having lately bath'd," &c.

The old copies have "— with the wind,"—a verb, to all appearance, lying concealed under "with."—I adopt the reading of Rowe, "*wing the wind*," (which in the notes to the *Variorum Shakespeare* is called "*Dr. Johnson's emendation*"), not only because that reading affords a clear and good meaning, but because it is far from improbable that "*wing*" might have been mistaken by a transcriber or compositor for "with," in which word, in the handwriting of the poet's time, the head of the *h* is often found carried below the line.—"*Bated*," as Malone observes, would seem to be used here for "*Bating*,"—the passive for the active participle: so Shakespeare has "*delighted*" for "*delighting*," "*deformed*" for "*deforming*," &c.—There is a double comparison:—the Prince and his followers are compared first to ostriches, and secondly to eagles.—In what sense *the ostrich* may be said to "*wing the wind*," we are beautifully told by Claudian,—who, if he was a native of Alexandria, might not have had to trust entirely to his fancy for a picture, which indeed has quite the air of having been taken from the life;

"Vasta velut Libyæ venantum vocibus ales  
Cum premitur, calidas cursu transmittit arenas,  
Inque modum veli sinuatis flamine pennis  
Pulverulenta volat." *In Eutrop. ii. 310.*

(The latest editors have "restored" the old reading, and are persuaded that they have rendered it intelligible by printing,

"like estridges that with the wind  
Bated,—"

a construction which, it is evident, was never intended by the author, who in that case would most assuredly have written "*Bate*."—The absurdity of

Douce's remarks on this passage is beyond belief: he labours to prove that by "*estridges*" we are not to understand *ostriches* but *estridge-falcons*;—and that, too, in the very face of the lines quoted by Steevens *ad l.* from Drayton's *Polyolbion*, Song 22,—

"Prince Edward all in gold, as he great Jove had been;  
The Mountfords *all in plumes, like estridges*, were seen."

And see Richardson's *Dict.* sub *Estrich*.)

P. 424. (23) "Come, let us take a muster speedily."

So all the 4tos and the folio.—Mr. Grant White, in a work just published, *Shakespeare's Scholar*, &c. p. 317, rather boldly maintains that "*take*" is a misprint, and that it should be altered (as Malone and some others altered it) to "*make*."

P. 425. (24) "Sutton-Cop-hill."

So all the old copies.—The more recent editors (Mr. Knight excepted) alter the name to "*Sutton-Colfield*."

P. 426. (25) "There's but a shirt," &c.

The old copies have "*There's not a shirt*," &c.

P. 427. (26) "As you, my lord, or any Scot that this day lives."

Shakespeare has occasionally lines of twelve syllables: but here probably the words "*this day*" are an interpolation; for, as Mason observes, they weaken the sense.

P. 431. (27) "*bosky hill*!"

Here the modern editors retain, with the old copies, the spelling "*busky*." ("Milton writes the word, perhaps more properly, *bosky*." STEEVENS,—who appears to have forgotten that, in *The Tempest*, act iv. sc. 1, the folio has "*my boskie acres*," &c.)

P. 435. (28) "What is honour? a word. What is that word, honour? air."

So the 4to of 1613 and the folio.—Malone and Mr. Collier, strange to say, print, with the two earliest 4tos, "*What is honour? A word. What is in that word, honour? What is that honour? Air*."

P. 435. (28) "*Suspicion all our lives shall be stuck full of eyes*," &c.

So Rowe (in his sec. ed. 1714).—The old copies have "*Supposition, all our liues*," &c.

P. 437. (40) "Upon his follies."

The old copies have "On his follies."

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

P. 438. (41)

"For, heaven to earth, some of us never shall," &c.

On the very improper alteration made here by Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, "Fore heaven and earth," &c.,—see my *Few Notes*, &c. p. 94.

P. 438. (42)

"Blunt. *What is thy name, that in the battle thus  
Thou crossest me?*"

The old copies have "— *that in battle thus,*" &c.; and Mr. Collier and Mr. Knight follow them: but (putting the metre out of the question) the reply of Douglas would be alone sufficient to show that "*the*" has been accidentally omitted,—

"Know, then, my name is Douglas;  
And I do haunt thee in *the* battle thus," &c.

P. 439. (43) "*The king hath many masking in his coats.*"

The old copies have "— *marching in his coats?*" but Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector has undoubtedly recovered the true reading by substituting "*masking*" for "*marching.*" (In *Tamburlaine, Part First*, act v. sc. 2, a line used to stand thus,—

"And *march* in cottages of strowed reeds,"—

till, in my ed. of Marlowe's *Works*, vol. i. 99, I altered "*march*" to "*mask.*")

P. 440. (44)

"*Whose deaths are unreveng'd: I prithee, lend me thy sword.*"

The 4tos have "*Whose deaths are yet unreveng'd; I prethee lend me thy sword.*"—The folio has "*Whose deaths are vnreveng'd. Prethey lend me thy sword:*"—but the Prince in his next speech repeats "*I prithee, lend me thy sword.*"—(Qy. did Shakespeare write *ōbrōcī rēs*,

"Whose deaths as yet are unreveng'd: I prithee,  
Lend me thy sword"?)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

**THE SECOND PART OF  
KING HENRY THE FOURTH.**

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

www.libtool.com.cn

KING HENRY the Fourth.

HENRY, Prince of Wales, afterwards King Henry V.,

THOMAS, Duke of Clarence,

PRINCE JOHN OF LANCASTER,

PRINCE HUMPHREY OF GLOSTER,

EARL OF WARWICK.

EARL OF WESTMORELAND.

EARL OF SURREY.

GOWER.

HARCOURT.

Lord Chief-Justice of the King's Bench.

A Gentleman attending on the Chief-Justice.

EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND.

SCROOP, Archbishop of York.

LORD MOWBRAY.

LORD HASTINGS.

LORD BARDOLPH.

SIR JOHN COLEVILE.

TRAVERS and MORTON, retainers of Northumberland.

SIR JOHN FALSTAFF.

His Page.

BARDOLPH.

PISTOL.

POINTZ.

PETO.

SHALLOW, } country justices.

SILENCE, }

DAVY, servant to Shallow.

MOULDY, SHADOW, WART, FEEBLE, and BULLCALF, recruits.

FANG and SNARE, sheriff's officers.

LADY NORTHUMBERLAND.

LADY PERCY.

MISTRESS QUICKLY, hostess of a tavern in Eastcheap.

DOLL TEARSHHEET.

Lords and Attendants ; Porter, Drawers, Beadles, Grooms, &c.

Rumour, the Presenter.

A Dancer, speaker of the epilogue.

SCENE—*England.*

THE SECOND PART OF  
KING HENRY IV.

---

---

INDUCTION.

*Warkworth. Before Northumberland's Castle.*

*Enter Rumour, painted full of tongues.*

*Rum.* Open your ears; for which of you will stop  
The vent of hearing when loud Rumour speaks?  
I, from the orient to the drooping west,  
Making the wind my post-horse, still unfold  
The acts commencèd on this ball of earth:  
Upon my tongues continual slanders ride,  
The which in every language I pronounce,  
Stuffing the ears of men with false reports.  
I speak of peace, while covert enmity,  
Under the smile of safety, wounds the world:  
And who but Rumour, who but only I,  
Make fearful musters and prepar'd defence,  
Whilst the big year, swoln with some other grief,  
Is thought with child by the stern tyrant war,  
And no such matter? Rumour is a pipe  
Blown by surmises, jealousies, conjectures;  
And of so easy and so plain a stop,  
That the blunt monster with uncounted heads,  
The still-discordant wavering multitude,  
Can play upon it. But what need I thus  
My well-known body to anatomize  
Among my household? Why is Rumour here?  
I run before King Harry's victory;  
Who, in a bloody field by Shrewsbury,  
Hath beaten down young Hotspur and his troops,

Quenching the flame of bold rebellion  
 Even with the rebels' blood. But what mean I  
 To speak so true at first? my office is  
 To noise abroad, that Harry Monmouth fell  
 Under the wrath of noble Hotspur's sword;  
 And that the king before the Douglas' rage  
 Stoop'd his anointed head as low as death.  
 This have I rumour'd through the peasant towns<sup>(1)</sup>  
 Between that royal field of Shrewsbury  
 And this worm-eaten hold of ragged stone,  
 Where Hotspur's father, old Northumberland,  
 Lies crafty-sick: the posts come tiring on,  
 And not a man of them brings other news  
 Than they have learn'd of me: from Rumour's tongues  
 They bring smooth comforts false, worse than true wrongs.  
[Exit.]

## ACT I.

SCENE I. *The same.*

*Enter Lord BARDOLPH.*

*L. Bard.* Who keeps the gate here, ho?

*Enter Porter.*

Where is the earl?

*Port.* What shall I say you are?

*L. Bard.* Tell thou the earl

That the Lord Bardolph doth attend him here.

*Port.* His lordship is walk'd forth into the orchard:  
 Please it your honour, knock but at the gate,  
 And he himself will answer.

*L. Bard.* Here comes the earl. [Exit Porter.]

*Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.*

*North.* What news, Lord Bardolph? every minute now  
 Should be the father of some stratagem:  
 The times are wild; contention, like a horse



Full of high feeding, madly hath broke loose,  
And bears down all before him.

*L. Bard.* Noble earl,

I bring you certain news from Shrewsbury.

*North.* Good, an God will!

*L. Bard.* As good as heart can wish :—

The king is almost wounded to the death ;  
And, in the fortune of my lord your son,  
Prince Harry slain outright ; and both the Blunts  
Kill'd by the hand of Douglas ; young Prince John  
And Westmoreland and Stafford fled the field ;  
And Harry Monmouth's brawn, the hulk Sir John,  
Is prisoner to your son : O, such a day,  
So fought, so follow'd, and so fairly won,  
Came not till now to dignify the times,  
Since Cæsar's fortunes !

*North.* How is this deriv'd ?

Saw you the field ? came you from Shrewsbury ?

*L. Bard.* I spake with one, my lord, that came from thence,  
A gentleman well bred and of good name,  
That freely render'd me these news for true.

*North.* Here comes my servant Travers, whom I sent  
On Tuesday last to listen after news.

*L. Bard.* My lord, I over-rode him on the way ;  
And he is furnish'd with no certainties  
More than he haply may retail from me.

*Enter TRAVERS.*

*North.* Now, Travers, what good tidings come with you ?

*Tra.* My lord, Sir John Umfrevile turn'd me back  
With joyful tidings ; and, being better hors'd,  
Out-rode me. After him came spurring hard  
A gentleman, almost forspent with speed,  
That stopp'd by me to breathe his bloodied horse.  
He ask'd the way to Chester ; and of him  
I did demand what news from Shrewsbury :  
He told me that rebellion had bad luck,  
And that young Harry Percy's spur was cold.  
With that, he gave his able horse the head,

And, bending forward, struck his armèd heels  
 Against the panting sides of his poor jade  
 Up to the rowel-head; and starting so,  
 He seem'd in running to devour the way,  
 Staying no longer question.

*North.* Ha!—Again :

Said he young Harry Percy's spur was cold ?  
 Of Hotspur, coldspur ? that rebellion  
 Had met ill luck ?

*L. Bard.* My lord, I'll tell you what ;  
 If my young lord your son have not the day,  
 Upon mine honour, for a silken point  
 I'll give my barony : never talk of it.

*North.* Why should the gentleman that rode by Travers  
 Give, then, such instances of loss ?

*L. Bard.* Who, he ?  
 He was some hilding fellow, that had stolen  
 The horse he rode on ; and, upon my life,  
 Spoke at a venture.—Look, here comes more news.

*Enter MORTON.*

*North.* Yea, this man's brow, like to a title-leaf,  
 Foretells the nature of a tragic volume :  
 So looks the strand, (\*) whereon the imperious flood  
 Hath left a witness'd usurpation.—

Say, Morton, didst thou come from Shrewsbury ?

*Mor.* I ran from Shrewsbury, my noble lord ;  
 Where hateful death put on his ugliest mask  
 To fright our party.

*North.* How doth my son and brother ?  
 Thou tremblest ; and the whiteness in thy cheek  
 Is apter than thy tongue to tell thy errand.  
 Even such a man, so faint, so spiritless,  
 So dull, so dead in look, so woe-begone,  
 Drew Priam's curtain in the dead of night,  
 And would have told him half his Troy was burn'd ;  
 But Priam found the fire ere he his tongue,  
 And I my Percy's death ere thou report'st it.  
 This thou wouldst say,—Your son did thus and thus ;

Your brother thus ; so fought the noble Douglas ;  
 Stopping my greedy ear with their bold deeds :  
 But in the end, to stop mine ear indeed,  
 Thou hast a sigh to blow away this praise,  
 Ending with—brother, son, and all are dead.

*Mor.* Douglas is living, and your brother, yet ;  
 But, for my lord your son,—

*North.* Why, he is dead.

See what a ready tongue suspicion hath !  
 He that but fears the thing he would not know  
 Hath by instinct knowledge from others' eyes  
 That what he fear'd is chanced.<sup>(3)</sup> Yet speak, Morton ;  
 Tell thou thy earl his divination lies,  
 And I will take it as a sweet disgrace,  
 And make thee rich for doing me such wrong.

*Mor.* You are too great to be by me gainsaid :  
 Your spirit is too true, your fears too certain.

*North.* Yet, for all this, say not that Percy's dead.

I see a strange confession in thine eye :  
 Thou shak'st thy head, and hold'st it fear or sin  
 To speak a truth. If he be slain, say so ;  
 The tongue offends not that reports his death :  
 And he doth sin that doth belie the dead ;  
 Not he which says the dead is not alive.  
 Yet the first bringer of unwelcome news  
 Hath but a losing office ; and his tongue  
 Sounds ever after as a sullen bell,  
 Remember'd knolling a departing friend.

*L. Bard.* I cannot think, my lord, your son is dead.

*Mor.* I am sorry I should force you to believe  
 That which I would to God I had not seen ;  
 But these mine eyes saw him in bloody state,  
 Rendering faint quittance, wearied and outbreath'd,  
 To Harry Monmouth ; whose swift wrath beat down  
 The never-daunted Percy to the earth,  
 From whence with life he never more sprung up.  
 In few, his death (whose spirit lent a fire  
 Even to the dullest peasant in his camp)  
 Being bruited once, took fire and heat away

From the best-temper'd courage in his troops ;  
 For from his metal was his party steel'd ;  
 Which once in him abated, all the rest  
 Turn'd on themselves, like dull and heavy lead :  
 And as the thing that's heavy in itself,  
 Upon enforcement flies with greatest speed,  
 So did our men, heavy in Hotspur's loss,  
 Lend to this weight such lightness with their fear,  
 That arrows fled not swifter toward their aim  
 Than did our soldiers, aiming at their safety,  
 Fly from the field. Then was that noble Worcester  
 Too soon ta'en prisoner ; and that furious Scot,  
 The bloody Douglas, whose well-labouring sword  
 Had three times slain the appearance of the king,  
 Gan vail his stomach, and did grace the shame  
 Of those that turn'd their backs ; and in his flight,  
 Stumbling in fear, was took. The sum of all  
 Is, that the king hath won ; and hath sent out  
 A speedy power to encounter you, my lord,  
 Under the conduct of young Lancaster  
 And Westmoreland. This is the news at full.

*North.* For this I shall have time enough to mourn.  
 In poison there is physic ; and these news,  
 Having been well, that would have made me sick,  
 Being sick, have in some measure made me well :  
 And as the wretch, whose fever-weaken'd joints,  
 Like strengthless hinges, buckle under life,  
 Impatient of his fit, breaks like a fire  
 Out of his keeper's arms ; even so my limbs,  
 Weaken'd with grief, being now enrag'd with grief,  
 Are thrice themselves. Hence, therefore, thou nice crutch !  
 A scaly gauntlet now, with joints of steel,  
 Must glove this hand : and hence, thou sickly quoif !  
 Thou art a guard too wanton for the head  
 Which princes, flesh'd with conquest, aim to hit.  
 Now bind my brows with iron ; and approach  
 The ragged'st hour that time and spite dare bring  
 To frown upon the enrag'd Northumberland !  
 Let heaven kiss earth ! now let not Nature's hand

Keep the wild flood confin'd ! let order die !  
 And let this world no longer be a stage  
 To feed contention in a lingering act ;  
 But let one spirit of the first-born Cain  
 Reign in all bosoms, that, each heart being set  
 On bloody courses, the rude scene may end,  
 And darkness be the burier of the dead !

*Tra.* This strainèd passion doth you wrong, my lord.

*L. Bard.* Sweet earl, divorce not wisdom from your honour.

*Mor.* The lives of all your loving complices  
 Lean on your health ; the which, if you give o'er  
 To stormy passion, must perforce decay.  
 You cast the event of war, my noble lord ;  
 And summ'd the account of chance, before you said,  
 Let us make head. It was your presurmise,  
 That, in the dole of blows, your son might drop :  
 You knew he walk'd o'er perils on an edge,  
 More likely to fall in than to get o'er ;  
 You were advis'd his flesh was capable  
 Of wounds and scars, and that his forward spirit  
 Would lift him where most trade of danger rang'd :  
 Yet did you say, Go forth ; and none of this,  
 Though strongly apprehended, could restrain  
 The stiff-borne action : what hath, then, befallen,  
 Or what hath this bold enterprise brought forth,  
 More than that being which was like to be ?

*L. Bard.* We all that are engagèd to this loss  
 Knew that we ventur'd on such dangerous seas,  
 That if we wrought out life, 'twas ten to one ;  
 And yet we ventur'd, for the gain propos'd  
 Chok'd the respect of likely peril fear'd ;  
 And since we are o'erset, venture again.  
 Come, we will all put forth, body and goods.

*Mor.* 'Tis more than time : and, my most noble lord,  
 I hear for certain, and do speak the truth,  
 The gentle Archbishop of York is up  
 With well-appointed powers : he is a man  
 Who with a double surety binds his followers.  
 My lord your son had only but the corpse',<sup>(4)</sup>

But shadows and the shows of men, to fight;  
 For that same word, rebellion, did divide  
 The action of their bodies from their souls;  
 And they did fight with queasiness, constrain'd,  
 As men drink potions; that their weapons only  
 Seem'd on our side, but, for their spirits and souls,  
 This word, rebellion, it had froze them up,  
 As fish are in a pond. But now the bishop  
 Turns insurrection to religion:  
 Suppos'd sincere and holy in his thoughts,  
 He's follow'd both with body and with mind;  
 And doth enlarge his rising with the blood  
 Of fair King Richard, scrap'd from Pomfret stones;  
 Derives from heaven his quarrel and his cause;  
 Tells them he doth bestride a bleeding land,  
 Gasping for life under great Bolingbroke;  
 And more and less do flock to follow him.

*North.* I knew of this before; but, to speak truth,  
 This present grief had wip'd it from my mind.  
 Go in with me; and counsel every man  
 The aptest way for safety and revenge:  
 Get posts and letters, and make friends with speed,—  
 Never so few, and never yet more need. [*Exeunt.*

---

SCENE II. *London. A street.*

*Enter FALSTAFF, with his Page bearing his sword and buckler.*

*Fal.* Sirrah, you giant, what says the doctor to my water?

*Page.* He said, sir, the water itself was a good healthy water; but, for the party that owed it, he might have more diseases than he knew for.

*Fal.* Men of all sorts take a pride to gird at me: the brain of this foolish-compounded clay, man, is not able to invent any thing that tends to laughter, more than I invent or is invented on me: I am not only witty in myself, but the cause that wit is in other men. I do here walk before thee

like a sow that hath overwhelmed all her litter but one. If the prince put thee into my service for any other reason than to set me off, why then I have no judgment. Thou whoreson mandrake, thou art fitter to be worn in my cap than to wait at my heels. I was never manned with an agate till now: but I will set you neither in gold nor silver, but in vile apparel, and send you back again to your master, for a jewel,—the juvenal, the prince your master, whose chin is not yet fledged. I will sooner have a beard grow in the palm of my hand than he shall get one on his cheek; and yet he will not stick to say his face is a face-royal: God may finish it when he will, it is not a hair amiss yet: he may keep it still as a face-royal, for a barber shall never earn sixpence out of it; and yet he will be crowing as if he had writ man ever since his father was a bachelor. He may keep his own grace, but he is almost out of mine, I can assure him.—What said Master Dumbleton about the satin for my short cloak and my slops?

*Page.* He said, sir, you should procure him better assurance than Bardolph: he would not take his bond and yours; he liked not the security.

*Fal.* Let him be damned, like the glutton! may his tongue be hotter!—A whoreson Achitophel! a rascally yea-forsooth knave! to bear a gentleman in hand, and then stand upon security!—The whoreson smooth-pates do now wear nothing but high shoes, and bunches of keys at their girdles; and if a man is through with them in honest taking-up, then they must stand upon security. I had as lief they would put ratsbane in my mouth as offer to stop it with security. I looked he should have sent me two-and-twenty yards of satin, as I am a true knight, and he sends me security. Well, he may sleep in security; for he hath the horn of abundance, and the lightness of his wife shines through it: and yet cannot he see, though he have his own lantern to light him.—Where's Bardolph?

*Page.* He's gone into Smithfield to buy your worship a horse.

*Fal.* I bought him in Paul's, and he'll buy me a horse in Smithfield: an I could get me but a wife in the stews, I were manned, horsed, and wived.

*Page.* Sir, here comes the nobleman that committed the prince for striking him about Bardolph.

*Fal.* Wait close; I will not see him.

*Enter the Lord Chief-Justice and an Attendant.*

*Ch. Just.* What's he that goes there ?

*Atten.* Falstaff, an't please your lordship.

*Ch. Just.* He that was in question for the robbery ?

*Atten.* He, my lord : but he hath since done good service at Shrewsbury ; and, as I hear, is now going with some charge to the Lord John of Lancaster.

*Ch. Just.* What, to York ? Call him back again.

*Atten.* Sir John Falstaff !

*Fal.* Boy, tell him I am deaf.

*Page.* You must speak louder ; my master is deaf.

*Ch. Just.* I am sure he is, to the hearing of any thing good.—Go, pluck him by the elbow ; I must speak with him.

*Atten.* Sir John,—

*Fal.* What ! a young knave, and begging ! Is there not wars ? is there not employment ? doth not the king lack subjects ? do not the rebels need soldiers ? Though it be a shame to be on any side but one, it is worse shame to beg than to be on the worst side, were it worse than the name of rebellion can tell how to make it.

*Atten.* You mistake me, sir.

*Fal.* Why, sir, did I say you were an honest man ? setting my knighthood and my soldiership aside, I had lied in my throat, if I had said so.

*Atten.* I pray you, sir, then set your knighthood and your soldiership aside ; and give me leave to tell you, you lie in your throat, if you say I am any other than an honest man.

*Fal.* I give thee leave to tell me so ! I lay aside that which grows to me ! If thou gettest any leave of me, hang me ; if thou takest leave, thou wert better be hanged. You hunt-counter, hence ! avaunt !

*Atten.* Sir, my lord would speak with you.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John Falstaff, a word with you.

*Fal.* My good lord !—God give your lordship good time of day. I am glad to see your lordship abroad : I heard say



your lordship was sick: I hope your lordship goes abroad by advice. Your lordship, though not clean past your youth, hath yet some smack of age in you, some relish of the saltness of time; and I most humbly beseech your lordship to have a reverend care of your health.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, I sent for you before your expedition to Shrewsbury.

*Fal.* An't please your lordship, I hear his majesty is returned with some discomfort from Wales.

*Ch. Just.* I talk not of his majesty:—you would not come when I sent for you.

*Fal.* And I hear, moreover, his highness is fallen into this same whoreson apoplexy.

*Ch. Just.* Well, God mend him!—I pray you, let me speak with you.

*Fal.* This apoplexy is, as I take it, a kind of lethargy, an't please your lordship; a kind of sleeping in the blood, a whoreson tingling.

*Ch. Just.* What tell you me of it? be it as it is.

*Fal.* It hath its original from much grief, from study, and perturbation of the brain: I have read the cause of his effects in Galen: it is a kind of deafness.

*Ch. Just.* I think you are fallen into the disease; for you hear not what I say to you.

*Fal.* Very well, my lord, very well: rather, an't please you, it is the disease of not listening, the malady of not marking, that I am troubled withal.

*Ch. Just.* To punish you by the heels would amend the attention of your ears; and I care not if I do become your physician.

*Fal.* I am as poor as Job, my lord, but not so patient: your lordship may minister the potion of imprisonment to me in respect of poverty; but how I should be your patient to follow your prescriptions, the wise may make some dram of a scruple, or, indeed, a scruple itself.

*Ch. Just.* I sent for you, when there were matters against you for your life, to come speak with me.

*Fal.* As I was then advised by my learned counsel in the laws of this land-service, I did not come.

*Ch. Just.* Well, the truth is, Sir John, you live in great infamy.

*Fal.* He that buckles him in my belt cannot live in less.

*Ch. Just.* Your means are very slender, and your waste is great.

*Fal.* I would it were otherwise; I would my means were greater, and my waist slenderer.

*Ch. Just.* You have misled the youthful prince.

*Fal.* The young prince hath misled me: I am the fellow with the great belly, and he my dog.

*Ch. Just.* Well, I am loth to gall a new-healed wound: your day's service at Shrewsbury hath a little gilded over your night's exploit on Gads-hill: you may thank the unquiet time for your quiet o'er-posting that action.

*Fal.* My lord,—

*Ch. Just.* But since all is well, keep it so: wake not a sleeping wolf.

*Fal.* To wake a wolf is as bad as to smell a fox.

*Ch. Just.* What! you are as a candle, the better part burnt out.

*Fal.* A wassail candle, my lord; all tallow: if I did say of wax, my growth would approve the truth.

*Ch. Just.* There is not a white hair on your face but should have his effect of gravity.

*Fal.* His effect of gravy, gravy, gravy.

*Ch. Just.* You follow the young prince up and down, like his ill angel.

*Fal.* Not so, my lord; your ill angel is light; but I hope he that looks upon me will take me without weighing: and yet, in some respects, I grant, I cannot go:—I cannot tell. Virtue is of so little regard in these costermonger times, that true valour is turned bear-herd: pregnancy is made a tapster, and hath his quick wit wasted in giving reckonings: all the other gifts appertinent to man, as the malice of this age shapes them, are not worth a gooseberry. You that are old consider not the capacities of us that are young; you measure the heat of our livers with the bitterness of your galls: and we that are in the vaward of our youth, I must confess, are wags too.

*Ch. Just.* Do you set down your name in the scroll of

youth, that are written down old with all the characters of age? Have you not a moist eye? a dry hand? a yellow cheek? a white beard? a decreasing leg? an increasing belly? is not your voice broken? your wind short? your chin double? your wit single? and every part about you blasted with antiquity? and will you yet call yourself young? Fie, fie, fie, Sir John!

*Fal.* My lord, I was born about three of the clock in the afternoon, with a white head and something a round belly. For my voice,—I have lost it with hollaing, and singing of anthems. To approve my youth further, I will not: the truth is, I am only old in judgment and understanding; and he that will caper with me for a thousand marks, let him lend me the money, and have at him. For the box of the ear that the prince gave you,—he gave it like a rude prince, and you took it like a sensible lord. I have checked him for it; and the young lion repents,—marry, not in ashes and sackcloth, but in new silk and old sack.

*Ch. Just.* Well, God send the prince a better companion!

*Fal.* God send the companion a better prince! I cannot rid my hands of him.

*Ch. Just.* Well, the king hath severed you and Prince Harry: I hear you are going with Lord John of Lancaster against the Archbishop and the Earl of Northumberland.

*Fal.* Yea; I thank your pretty sweet wit for it. But look you, pray, all you that kiss my lady Peace at home, that our armies join not in a hot day; for, by the Lord, I take but two shirts out with me, and I mean not to sweat extraordinarily: if it be a hot day, an I brandish any thing but my bottle, I would I might never spit white again. There is not a dangerous action can peep out his head, but I am thrust upon it: well, I cannot last ever: but it was alway yet the trick of our English nation, if they have a good thing, to make it too common. If ye will needs say I am an old man, you should give me rest. I would to God, my name were not so terrible to the enemy as it is: I were better to be eaten to death with a rust than to be scoured to nothing with perpetual motion.

*Ch. Just.* Well, be honest, be honest; and God bless your expedition!

*Fal.* Will your lordship lend me a thousand pound to furnish me forth?

*Ch. Just.* Not a penny, not a penny; you are too impatient to bear crosses. Fare you well: commend me to my cousin Westmoreland. [*Exeunt Chief-Justice and Attendant.*]

*Fal.* If I do, fillip me with a three-man beetle.—A man can no more separate age and covetousness than he can part young limbs and lechery: but the gout galls the one, and the pox pinches the other; and so both the diseases<sup>(*o*)</sup> prevent my curses.—Boy!—

*Page.* Sir?

*Fal.* What money is in my purse?

*Page.* Seven groats and two pence.

*Fal.* I can get no remedy against this consumption of the purse: borrowing only lingers and lingers it out, but the disease is incurable.—Go bear this letter to my Lord of Lancaster; this to the prince; this to the Earl of Westmoreland; and this to old Mistress Ursula, whom I have weekly sworn to marry since I perceived the first white hair on my chin. About it: you know where to find me. [*Exit Page.*] A pox of this gout! or, a gout of this pox! for the one or the other plays the rogue with my great toe. It is no matter if I do halt; I have the wars for my colour, and my pension shall seem the more reasonable. A good wit will make use of any thing: I will turn diseases to commodity. [*Exit.*]

---

SCENE III. *A room in the Archbishop of York's palace.*

*Enter the Archbishop, the Lords HASTINGS, MOWBRAY, and BARDOLPH.*

*Arch.* Thus have you heard our cause and know our means; And, my most noble friends, I pray you all Speak plainly your opinions of our hopes:— And first, lord marshal, what say you to it?

*Mowb.* I well allow the occasion of our arms;

But gladly would be better satisfied  
 How, in our means, we should advance ourselves  
 To look with forehead bold and big enough  
 Upon the power and puissance of the king.

*Hast.* Our present musters grow upon the file  
 To five-and-twenty thousand men of choice ;  
 And our supplies live largely in the hope  
 Of great Northumberland, whose bosom burns  
 With an incensèd fire of injuries.

*L. Bard.* The question, then, Lord Hastings, standeth  
 thus ;—

Whether our present five-and-twenty thousand  
 May hold up head without Northumberland ?

*Hast.* With him, we may.

*L. Bard.* Ay, marry, there's the point :  
 But if without him we be thought too feeble,  
 My judgment is, we should not step too far  
 Till we had his assistance by the hand ;  
 For, in a theme so bloody-fac'd as this,  
 Conjecture, expectation, and surmise  
 Of aids incertain, should not be admitted.

*Arch.* 'Tis very true, Lord Bardolph ; for, indeed,  
 It was young Hotspur's case at Shrewsbury.

*L. Bard.* It was, my lord ; who lin'd himself with hope,  
 Eating the air on promise of supply,  
 Flattering himself with project of a power  
 Much smaller than the smallest of his thoughts :  
 And so, with great imagination,  
 Proper to madmen, led his powers to death,  
 And, winking, leap'd into destruction.

*Hast.* But, by your leave, it never yet did hurt  
 To lay down likelihoods and forms of hope.

*L. Bard.* Yes, in<sup>(6)</sup> this present quality of war ;—  
 Indeed, the instant action,—a cause on foot,—  
 Lives so in hope, as in an early spring  
 We see the appearing buds ; which to prove fruit,  
 Hope gives not so much warrant, as despair  
 That frosts will bite them. When we mean to build,  
 We first survey the plot, then draw the model ;

And when we see the figure of the house,  
 Then must we rate the cost of the erection ;  
 Which if we find outweighs ability,  
 What do we then but draw anew the model  
 In fewer offices, or at least<sup>(7)</sup> desist  
 To build at all? Much more, in this great work  
 (Which is almost to pluck a kingdom down,  
 And set another up) should we survey  
 The plot of situation and the model,  
 Consent upon a sure foundation,  
 Question surveyors, know our own estate,  
 How able such a work to undergo,  
 To weigh against his opposite ; or else  
 We fortify in paper and in figures,  
 Using the names of men instead of men :  
 Like one that draws the model of a house  
 Beyond his power to build it ; who, half through,  
 Gives o'er, and leaves his part-created cost  
 A naked subject to the weeping clouds,  
 And waste for churlish winter's tyranny.

*Hast.* Grant that our hopes (yet likely of fair birth)  
 Should be still-born, and that we now possess'd  
 The utmost man of expectation ;  
 I think we are a body strong enough,  
 Even as we are, to equal with the king.

*L. Bard.* What, is the king but five-and-twenty thousand ?

*Hast.* To us no more ; nay, not so much, Lord Bardolph.  
 For his divisions, as the times do brawl,  
 Are in three heads : one power against the French,  
 And one against Glendower ; perforce a third  
 Must take up us : so is the unfirm king  
 In three divided ; and his coffers sound  
 With hollow poverty and emptiness.

*Arch.* That he should draw his several strengths together,  
 And come against us in full puissance,  
 Need not be dreaded.

*Hast.* If he should do so,  
 He leaves his back unarm'd, the French and Welsh  
 Baying him at the heels :<sup>(8)</sup> never fear that.

*L. Bard.* Who is it like should lead his forces hither?

*Hast.* The Duke of Lancaster and Westmoreland;  
Against the Welsh, himself and Harry Monmouth:  
But who is substituted 'gainst the French,  
I have no certain notice.

*Arch.* Let us on,  
And publish the occasion of our arms.  
The commonwealth is sick of their own choice;  
Their over-greedy love hath surfeited:  
An habitation giddy and unsure  
Hath he that buildeth on the vulgar heart.  
O thou fond many! with what loud applause  
Didst thou beat heaven with blessing Bolingbroke,  
Before he was what thou wouldst have him be!  
And being now trimm'd in thine own desires,  
Thou, beastly feeder, art so full of him,  
That thou provok'st thyself to cast him up.  
So, so, thou common dog, didst thou disgorge  
Thy glutton bosom of the royal Richard;  
And now thou wouldst eat thy dead vomit up,  
And howl'st to find it. What trust is in these times?  
They that, when Richard liv'd, would have him die,  
Are now become enamour'd on his grave:  
Thou, that threw'st dust upon his goodly head  
When through proud London he came sighing on  
After the admirèd heels of Bolingbroke,  
Criest now, "O earth, yield us that king again,  
And take thou this!" O thoughts of men accurst!  
Past, and to come, seems best; things present, worst.

*Mowb.* Shall we go draw our numbers, and set on?

*Hast.* We are time's subjects, and time bids be gone.

[*Exeunt.*]

www.libtool.com.cn ACT II.

SCENE I. *London. A street.*

*Enter Hostess, FANG and his Boy with her, and SNARE following.*

*Host.* Master Fang, have you entered the action?

*Fang.* It is entered.

*Host.* Where's your yeoman? Is it a lusty yeoman? will he stand to it?

*Fang.* Sirrah, where's Snare?

*Host.* O Lord, ay! good Master Snare.<sup>(9)</sup>

*Snare.* Here, here.

*Fang.* Snare, we must arrest Sir John Falstaff.

*Host.* Yea, good Master Snare; I have entered him and all.

*Snare.* It may chance cost some of us our lives, for he will stab.

*Host.* Alas the day! take heed of him; he stabbed me in mine own house, and that most beastly: in good faith, he cares not what mischief he doth, if his weapon be out: he will foin like any devil; he will spare neither man, woman, nor child.

*Fang.* If I can close with him, I care not for his thrust.

*Host.* No, nor I neither: I'll be at your elbow.

*Fang.* An I but fist him once; an he come but within my vice,—

*Host.* I am undone by his going; I warrant you, he is an infinitive thing upon my score:—good Master Fang, hold him sure;—good Master Snare, let him not scape. He comes continually to Pie-corner (saving your manhoods) to buy a saddle; and he is indited to dinner to the Lubber's-head in Lumbert-street, to Master Smooth's the silkman: I pray ye, since my exion<sup>(10)</sup> is entered, and my case so openly known to the world, let him be brought in to his answer. A hundred mark is a long one<sup>(11)</sup> for a poor lone woman to bear: and I have borne, and borne, and borne; and have been fubbed off, and fubbed off, and fubbed off, from this day to that day, that it is a shame to be thought on. There



is no honesty in such dealing; unless a woman should be made an ass and a beast, to bear every knave's wrong.—Yonder he comes; and that arrant malmsey-nose knave, Bardolph, with him. Do your offices, do your offices, Master Fang and Master Snare; do me, do me, do me your offices.

*Enter FALSTAFF, PAGE, and BARDOLPH.*

*Fal.* How now! whose mare's dead? what's the matter?

*Fang.* Sir John, I arrest you at the suit of Mistress Quickly.

*Fal.* Away, varlets!—Draw, Bardolph: cut me off the villain's head; throw the quean in the channel.

*Host.* Throw me in the channel! I'll throw thee in the channel. Wilt thou? wilt thou? thou bastardly rogue!—Murder, murder! O thou honey-suckle villain! wilt thou kill God's officers and the king's? O thou honey-seed rogue! thou art a honey-seed, a man-queller, and a woman-queller.

*Fal.* Keep them off, Bardolph.

*Fang.* A rescue! a rescue!

*Host.* Good people, bring a rescue or two.—Thou wo't, wo't thou? thou wo't, wo't ta? do, do, thou rogue! do, thou hemp-seed!

*Fal.* (<sup>12</sup>) Away, you scullion! you rampallian! you fustilarian! I'll tickle your catastrophe.

*Enter the Lord Chief-Justice, attended.*

*Ch. Just.* What is the matter? keep the peace here, ho!

*Host.* Good my lord, be good to me! I beseech you, stand to me!

*Ch. Just.* How now, Sir John! what, are you brawling here?

Doth this become your place, your time, and business? You should have been well on your way to York.—Stand from him, fellow: wherefore hang'st upon him?

*Host.* O my most worshipful lord, an't please your grace, I am a poor widow of Eastcheap, and he is arrested at my suit.

*Ch. Just.* For what sum?

*Host.* It is more than for some, my lord ; it is for all,—all I have. He hath eaten me out of house and home ; he hath put all my substance into that fat belly of his :—but I will have some of it out again, or I will ride thee o' nights like the mare.

*Fal.* I think I am as like to ride the mare, if I have any vantage of ground to get up.

*Ch. Just.* How comes this, Sir John ? Fie ! what man of good temper would endure this tempest of exclamation ? Are you not ashamed to enforce a poor widow to so rough a course to come by her own ?

*Fal.* What is the gross sum that I owe thee ?

*Host.* Marry, if thou wert an honest man, thyself and the money too. Thou didst swear to me upon a parcel-gilt goblet, sitting in my Dolphin-chamber, at the round table, by a sea-coal fire, upon Wednesday in Wheeson-week, when the prince broke thy head for liking his father to a singing-man of Windsor,—thou didst swear to me then, as I was washing thy wound, to marry me, and make me my lady thy wife. Canst thou deny it ? Did not goodwife Keech, the butcher's wife, come in then, and call me gossip Quickly ? coming in to borrow a mess of vinegar ; telling us she had a good dish of prawns ; whereby thou didst desire to eat some ; whereby I told thee they were ill for a green wound ? And didst thou not, when she was gone down stairs, desire me to be no more so familiarity with such poor people ; saying that ere long they should call me madam ? And didst thou not kiss me, and bid me fetch thee thirty shillings ? I put thee now to thy book-oath : deny it, if thou canst.

*Fal.* My lord, this is a poor mad soul ; and she says, up and down the town, that her eldest son is like you : she hath been in good case, and the truth is, poverty hath distracted her. But for these foolish officers, I beseech you I may have redress against them.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, Sir John, I am well acquainted with your manner of wrenching the true cause the false way. It is not a confident brow, nor the throng of words that come with such more than impudent sauciness from you, can thrust me from a level consideration : you have, as it appears to me,

practised upon the easy-yielding spirit of this woman, and made her serve your uses both in purse and in person.

*Host.* Yea, in troth, my lord.

*Ch. Just.* Prithee, peace.—Pay her the debt you owe her, and unpay the villany you have done with her : the one you may do with sterling money, and the other with current repentance.

*Fal.* My lord, I will not undergo this sneap without reply. You call honourable boldness impudent sauciness : if a man will make court'sy, and say nothing, he is virtuous :—no, my lord, my humble duty remembered, I will not be your suitor. I say to you, I do desire deliverance from these officers, being upon hasty employment in the king's affairs.

*Ch. Just.* You speak as having power to do wrong : but answer in the effect of your reputation, and satisfy the poor woman.

*Fal.* Come hither, hostess.

[*Takes her aside.*]

*Enter GOWER.*

*Ch. Just.* Now, Master Gower,—what news ?

*Gow.* The king, my lord, and Harry Prince of Wales  
Are near at hand : the rest the paper tells. [*Gives a letter.*]

*Fal.* As I am a gentleman,—

*Host.* Faith, you said so before.

*Fal.* As I am a gentleman :—come, no more words of it.

*Host.* By this heavenly ground I tread on, I must be fain to pawn both my plate and the tapestry of my dining-chambers.

*Fal.* Glasses, glasses, is the only drinking : and for thy walls,—a pretty slight drollery, or the story of the Prodigal, or the German hunting in water-work, is worth a thousand of these bed-hangings and these fly-bitten tapestries. Let it be ten pound, if thou canst. Come, an it were not for thy humours, there is not a better wench in England. Go, wash thy face, and draw thy action. Come, thou must not be in this humour with me ; dost not know me ? come, come, I know thou wast set on to this.

*Host.* Pray thee, Sir John, let it be but twenty nobles : i' faith, I am loth to pawn my plate, so God save me, la.

*Fal.* Let it alone; I'll make other shift: you'll be a fool still.

*Host.* Well, you shall have it, though I pawn my gown. I hope you'll come to supper. You'll pay me all together?

*Fal.* Will I live?—Go, with her, with her [*to Bardolph*]; hook on, hook on.

*Host.* Will you have Doll Tearsheet meet you at supper?

*Fal.* No more words; let's have her.

[*Exeunt Hostess, Bardolph, Officers, and Boy.*]

*Ch. Just.* I have heard better news.

*Fal.* What's the news, my good lord?

*Ch. Just.* Where lay the king last night?

*Gow.* At Basingstoke, my lord.

*Fal.* I hope, my lord, all's well: what is the news, my lord?

*Ch. Just.* Come all his forces back?

*Gow.* No; fifteen hundred foot, five hundred horse, Are march'd up to my Lord of Lancaster, Against Northumberland and the Archbishop.

*Fal.* Comes the king back from Wales, my noble lord?

*Ch. Just.* You shall have letters of me presently:

Come, go along with me, good Master Gower.

*Fal.* My lord!

*Ch. Just.* What's the matter?

*Fal.* Master Gower, shall I entreat you with me to dinner?

*Gow.* I must wait upon my good lord here,—I thank you, good Sir John.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, you loiter here too long, being you are to take soldiers up in counties as you go.

*Fal.* Will you sup with me, Master Gower?

*Ch. Just.* What foolish master taught you these manners, Sir John?

*Fal.* Master Gower, if they become me not, he was a fool that taught them me.—This is the right fencing grace, my lord; tap for tap, and so part fair.

*Ch. Just.* Now, the Lord lighten thee! thou art a great fool.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *The same. Another street.*

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Enter Prince HENRY and POINTZ. (13)*

*P. Hen.* Before God, I am exceeding weary.

*Poin.* Is it come to that? I had thought weariness durst not have attached one of so high blood.

*P. Hen.* Faith, it does me; though it discolours the complexion of my greatness to acknowledge it. Doth it not show vilely in me to desire small beer?

*Poin.* Why, a prince should not be so loosely studied as to remember so weak a composition.

*P. Hen.* Belike, then, my appetite was not princely got; for, by my troth, I do now remember the poor creature, small beer. But, indeed, these humble considerations make me out of love with my greatness. What a disgrace is it to me to remember thy name? or to know thy face to-morrow? or to take note how many pair of silk stockings thou hast, viz. these, and those that were thy peach-coloured ones? or to bear the inventory of thy shirts, as, one for superfluity, and one other for use?—but that the tennis-court-keeper knows better than I; for it is a low ebb of linen with thee when thou keepest not racket there; as thou hast not done a great while, because the rest of thy low-countries have made a shift to eat up thy holland: and God knows, whether those that bawl out the ruins of thy linen shall inherit his kingdom: but the midwives say the children are not in the fault; whereupon the world increases, and kindreds are mightily strengthened.

*Poin.* How ill it follows, after you have laboured so hard, you should talk so idly! Tell me, how many good young princes would do so, their fathers being so sick as yours at this time is?

*P. Hen.* Shall I tell thee one thing, Pointz?

*Poin.* Yes, faith; and let it be an excellent good thing.

*P. Hen.* It shall serve among wits of no higher breeding than thine.

*Poin.* Go to; I stand the push of your one thing that you will tell.

*P. Hen.* Marry, I tell thee,—it is not meet that I should

be sad, now my father is sick : albeit I could tell to thee (as to one it pleases me, for fault of a better, to call my friend), I could be sad, and sad indeed too.

*Poin.* Very hardly upon such a subject.

*P. Hen.* By this hand, thou thinkest me as far in the devil's book as thou and Falstaff for obduracy and persistency : let the end try the man. But I tell thee, my heart bleeds inwardly that my father is so sick : and keeping such vile company as thou art hath in reason taken from me all ostentation of sorrow.

*Poin.* The reason ?

*P. Hen.* What wouldst thou think of me, if I should weep ?

*Poin.* I would think thee a most princely hypocrite.

*P. Hen.* It would be every man's thought ; and thou art a blessed fellow to think as every man thinks : never a man's thought in the world keeps the road-way better than thine : every man would think me an hypocrite indeed. And what accites your most worshipful thought to think so ?

*Poin.* Why, because you have been so lewd, and so much engrafted to Falstaff.

*P. Hen.* And to thee.

*Poin.* By this light, I am well spoke on ; I can hear it with mine own ears : the worst that they can say of me is, that I am a second brother, and that I am a proper fellow of my hands ; and those two things, I confess, I cannot help.—By the mass, here comes Bardolph.

*P. Hen.* And the boy that I gave Falstaff : he had him from me Christian ; and look, if the fat villain have not transformed him ape.

*Enter BARDOLPH and PAGE.*

*Bard.* God save your grace !

*P. Hen.* And yours, most noble Bardolph !

*Bard.* Come, you virtuous ass [*to the Page*], you bashful fool, must you be blushing ? wherefore blush you now ? What a maidenly man-at-arms are you become ! Is it such a matter to get a pottle-pot's maidenhead ?

*Page.* He called me even now, my lord, through a red

lattice, and I could discern no part of his face from the window: at last I spied his eyes; and methought he had made two holes in the ale-wife's new petticoat, and so peeped through.

*P. Hen.* Hath not the boy profited?

*Bard.* Away, you whoreson upright rabbit, away!

*Page.* Away, you rascally Althæa's dream, away!

*P. Hen.* Instruct us, boy; what dream, boy?

*Page.* Marry, my lord, Althæa dreamed she was delivered of a fire-brand; and therefore I call him her dream.

*P. Hen.* A crown's worth of good interpretation:—there it is, boy. [Gives him money.]

*Poin.* O, that this good blossom could be kept from cankers!—Well, there is sixpence to preserve thee.

*Bard.* An you do not make him be hanged among you, the gallows shall have wrong.

*P. Hen.* And how doth thy master, Bardolph?

*Bard.* Well, my lord. He heard of your grace's coming to town: there's a letter for you.

*Poin.* Delivered with good respect.—And how doth the martlemas, your master?

*Bard.* In bodily health, sir.

*Poin.* Marry, the immortal part needs a physician; but that moves not him: though that be sick, it dies not.

*P. Hen.* I do allow this wen to be as familiar with me as my dog: and he holds his place; for look you how he writes.

*Poin.* [reads] "John Falstaff, knight,"—every man must know that, as oft as he has occasion to name himself: even like those that are kin to the king; for they never prick their finger but they say, "There is some of the king's blood spilt." "How comes that?" says he, that takes upon him not to conceive. The answer is as ready as a borrower's cap,<sup>(14)</sup> "I am the king's poor cousin, sir."

*P. Hen.* Nay, they will be kin to us, or they will fetch it from Japhet. But to the letter:—

*Poin.* [reads] "Sir John Falstaff, knight, to the son of the king, nearest his father, Harry Prince of Wales, greeting."—Why, this is a certificate.

*P. Hen.* Peace!

*Poin.* [reads] "I will imitate the honourable Romans in bre-

vity :”—sure he means brevity in breath, short-winded.—“ I commend me to thee, I commend thee, and I leave thee. Be not too familiar with Pointz; for he misuses thy favours so much, that he swears thou art to marry his sister Nell. Repent at idle times as thou mayest; and so, farewell.

“Thine, by yea and no (which is as much as to say, as thou usest him), JACK FALSTAFF with my familiars, JOHN with my brothers and sisters, and Sir JOHN with all Europe.”

My lord, I will steep this letter in sack, and make him eat it.

*P. Hen.* That's to make him eat twenty of his words. But do you use me thus, Ned? must I marry your sister?

*Poin.* God send the wench no worse fortune! but I never said so.

*P. Hen.* Well, thus we play the fools with the time; and the spirits of the wise sit in the clouds and mock us.—Is your master here in London?

*Bard.* Yes, my lord.

*P. Hen.* Where sups he? doth the old boar feed in the old frank?

*Bard.* At the old place, my lord,—in Eastcheap.

*P. Hen.* What company?

*Page.* Ephesians, my lord,—of the old church.

*P. Hen.* Sup any women with him?

*Page.* None, my lord, but old Mistress Quickly and Mistress Doll Tearsheet.

*P. Hen.* What pagan may that be?

*Page.* A proper gentlewoman, sir, and a kinswoman of my master's.

*P. Hen.* Even such kin as the parish heifers are to the town bull.—Shall we steal upon them, Ned, at supper?

*Poin.* I am your shadow, my lord; I'll follow you.

*P. Hen.* Sirrah, you boy,—and Bardolph,—no word to your master that I am yet come to town: there's for your silence.

[Gives money.]

*Bard.* I have no tongue, sir.

*Page.* And for mine, sir,—I will govern it.

*P. Hen.* Fare ye well; go. [Exeunt Bardolph and Page.]  
—This Doll Tearsheet should be some road.



*Poin.* I warrant you, as common as the way between Saint Alban's and London.

*P. Hen.* How might we see Falstaff bestow himself to-night in his true colours, and not ourselves be seen?

*Poin.* Put on two leathern jerkins and aprons, and wait upon him at his table as drawers.

*P. Hen.* From a god to a bull? a heavy descension! it was Jove's case. From a prince to a prentice? a low transformation! that shall be mine; for in every thing the purpose must weigh with the folly. Follow me, Ned. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *Warkworth. Before the Castle.*

*Enter* NORTHUMBERLAND, Lady NORTHUMBERLAND, and  
Lady PERCY.

*North.* I pray thee, loving wife, and gentle daughter,  
Give even way unto my rough affairs :  
Put not you on the visage of the times,  
And be, like them, to Percy troublesome.

*Lady N.* I have given over, I will speak no more :  
Do what you will ; your wisdom be your guide.

*North.* Alas, sweet wife, my honour is at pawn ;  
And, but my going, nothing can redeem it.

*Lady P.* O, yet, for God's sake, go not to these wars !  
The time was, father, that you broke your word,  
When you were more endear'd to it than now ;  
When your own Percy, when my heart-dear Harry,  
Threw many a northward look to see his father  
Bring up his powers ; but he did long in vain.  
Who then persuaded you to stay at home ?  
There were two honours lost,—yours and your son's.  
For yours,—may heavenly glory brighten it !  
For his,—it stuck upon him, as the sun  
In the grey vault of heaven ; and by his light  
Did all the chivalry of England move  
To do brave acts : he was, indeed, the glass  
Wherein the noble youth did dress themselves ;  
He had no legs that practis'd not his gait ;

And speaking thick, which nature made his blemish,  
 Became the accents of the valiant ;  
 For those that could speak low and tardily  
 Would turn their own perfection to abuse,  
 To seem like him : so that in speech, in gait,  
 In diet, in affections of delight,  
 In military rules, humours of blood,  
 He was the mark and glass, copy and book,  
 That fashion'd others. And him,—O wondrous him !  
 O miracle of men !—him did you leave  
 (Second to none, unseconded by you)  
 'To look upon the hideous god of war  
 In disadvantage ; to abide a field  
 Where nothing but the sound of Hotspur's name  
 Did seem defensible :—so you left him.  
 Never, O never, do his ghost the wrong  
 To hold your honour more precise and nice  
 With others than with him ! let them alone :  
 The marshal and the archbishop are strong :  
 Had my sweet Harry had but half their numbers,  
 To-day might I, hanging on Hotspur's neck,  
 Have talk'd of Monmouth's grave.

*North.*

Beshrew your heart,

Fair daughter, you do draw my spirits from me  
 With new lamenting ancient oversights,  
 But I must go, and meet with danger there ;  
 Or it will seek me in another place,  
 And find me worse provided.

*Lady N.*

O, fly to Scotland,

Till that the nobles and the armèd commons  
 Have of their puissance made a little taste.

*Lady P.* If they get ground and vantage of the king,  
 Then join you with them, like a rib of steel,  
 To make strength stronger ; but, for all our loves,  
 First let them try themselves. So did your son ;  
 He was so suffer'd : so came I a widow ;  
 And never shall have length of life enough  
 To rain upon remembrance with mine eyes,  
 That it may grow and sprout as high as heaven,

For reformation to my noble husband.

*North.* Come, come, go in with me. 'Tis with my mind  
As with the tide swell'd up unto his height,  
That makes a still-stand, running neither way :  
Fain would I go to meet the archbishop,  
But many thousand reasons hold me back.  
I will resolve for Scotland : there am I,  
Till time and vantage crave my company. [Exeunt.

---

SCENE IV. *London. A room in the Boar's-Head Tavern  
in Eastcheap.*

*Enter two Drawers.*

*First Draw.* What the devil hast thou brought there ?  
apple-johns ? thou knowest Sir John cannot endure an apple-  
john.

*Sec. Draw.* Mass, thou sayest true. The prince once set  
a dish of apple-johns before him, and told him there were  
five more Sir Johns ; and, putting off his hat, said, " I will  
now take my leave of these six dry, round, old, withered  
knights." It angered him to the heart : but he hath forgot  
that.

*First Draw.* Why, then, cover, and set them down : and  
see if thou canst find out Sneak's noise ; Mistress Tearsheet  
would fain hear some music. Dispatch :—the room where  
they supped is too hot ; they'll come in straight.

*Sec. Draw.* Sirrah, here will be the prince and Master  
Pointz anon ; and they will put on two of our jerkins and  
aprons ; and Sir John must not know of it : Bardolph hath  
brought word.

*First Draw.* By the mass, here will be old utis : it will  
be an excellent stratagem.

*Sec. Draw.* I'll see if I can find out Sneak. [Exit.

*Enter Hostess and DOLL TEARSHEET.*

*Host.* I' faith, sweetheart, methinks now you are in an  
excellent good temperality : your pulsidge beats as extraor-

dinarily as heart would desire; and your colour, I warrant you, is as red as any rose: but, i' faith, you have drunk too much canaries; and that's a marvellous searching wine, and it perfumes the blood ere one can say, What's this?—How do you now?

*Dol.* Better than I was:—hem.

*Host.* Why, that's well said; a good heart's worth gold.—Look, here comes Sir John.

*Enter FALSTAFF.*

*Fal.* [*singing*] When Arthur first in court—Empty the jorden. [*Exit First Drawer.*—]*singing*] And was a worthy king.—How now, Mistress Doll!

*Host.* Sick of a calm; yea, good faith.

*Fal.* So is all her sect; an they be once in a calm, they are sick.

*Dol.* You muddy rascal, is that all the comfort you give me?

*Fal.* You make fat rascals, Mistress Doll.

*Dol.* I make them! gluttony and diseases make them; I make them not.

*Fal.* If the cook help to make the gluttony, you help to make the diseases, Doll: we catch of you, Doll, we catch of you; grant that, my poor<sup>(15)</sup> virtue, grant that.

*Dol.* Yea, joy,—our chains and our jewels.

*Fal.* “Your brooches, pearls, and ouches:”—for to serve bravely is to come halting off, you know: to come off the breach with his pike bent bravely, and to surgery bravely; to venture upon the charged chambers bravely,—

*Dol.* Hang yourself, you muddy conger, hang yourself!

*Host.* By my troth, this is the old fashion; you two never meet but you fall to some discord: you are both, in good troth, as rheumatic as two dry toasts; you cannot one bear with another's confirmities. What the good-year!<sup>(16)</sup> one must bear, and that must be you [*to Doll*]: you are the weaker vessel, as they say, the emptier vessel.

*Doll.* Can a weak empty vessel bear such a huge full hogshead? there's a whole merchant's venture of Bourdeaux stuff in him; you have not seen a hulk better stuffed in the hold.—Come, I'll be friends with thee, Jack: thou art going

to the wars; and whether I shall ever see thee again or no, there is nobody cares.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Re-enter First Drawer.*

*First Draw.* Sir, Ancient Pistol is below, and would speak with you.

*Dol.* Hang him, swaggering rascal! let him not come hither: it is the foul-mouth'dst rogue in England.

*Host.* If he swagger, let him not come here: no, by my faith; I must live amongst my neighbours; I'll no swaggerers: I am in good name and fame with the very best:—shut the door;—there comes no swaggerers here: I have not lived all this while, to have swaggering now:—shut the door, I pray you.

*Fal.* Dost thou hear, hostess?—

*Host.* Pray you, pacify yourself, Sir John: there comes no swaggerers here.

*Fal.* Dost thou hear? it is mine ancient.

*Host.* Tilly-fally, Sir John, never tell me: your ancient swaggerer comes not in my doors. I was before Master Tisick, the deputy, the other day; and, as he said to me,—it was no longer ago than Wednesday last,—“Neighbour Quickly,” says he;—Master Dumb, our minister, was by then;—“Neighbour Quickly,” says he, “receive those that are civil; for,” saith he, “you are in an ill-name:”—now he said so, I can tell whereupon; “for,” says he, “you are an honest woman, and well thought on; therefore take heed what guests you receive: receive,” says he, “no swaggering companions.”—There comes none here:—you would bless you to hear what he said:—no, I'll no swaggerers.

*Fal.* He's no swaggerer, hostess; a tame cheater, i' faith; you may stroke him as gently as a puppy greyhound: he will not swagger with a Barbary hen, if her feathers turn back in any show of resistance.—Call him up, drawer.

*[Exit First Drawer.]*

*Host.* Cheater, call you him? I will bar no honest man my house, nor no cheater: but I do not love swaggering; by my troth, I am the worse, when one says swagger: feel, masters, how I shake; look you, I warrant you.

*Dol.* So you do, hostess.

*Host.* Do I? yea, in very truth, do I, an 'twere an aspen-leaf. I cannot abide swaggerers.

*Enter* PISTOL, BARDOLPH, *and* Page.

*Pist.* God save you, Sir John!

*Fal.* Welcome, Ancient Pistol. Here, Pistol, I charge you with a cup of sack: do you discharge upon mine hostess.

*Pist.* I will discharge upon her, Sir John, with two bullets.

*Fal.* She is pistol-proof, sir; you shall hardly offend her.

*Host.* Come, I'll drink no proofs nor no bullets: I'll drink no more than will do me good, for no man's pleasure, I.

*Pist.* Then to you, Mistress Dorothy; I will charge you.

*Dol.* Charge me! I scorn you, scurvy companion. What! you poor, base, rascally, cheating, lack-linen mate! Away, you mouldy rogue, away! I am meat for your master.

*Pist.* I know you, Mistress Dorothy.

*Dol.* Away, you cut-purse rascal! you filthy bung, away! by this wine, I'll thrust my knife in your mouldy chaps, an you play the saucy cuttle with me. Away, you bottle-ale rascal! you basket-hilt stale juggler, you!—Since when, I pray you, sir?—God's light, with two points on your shoulder? much!

*Pist.* I will murder your ruff for this.

*Fal.* No more, Pistol; I would not have you go off here: discharge yourself of our company, Pistol.

*Host.* No, good Captain Pistol; not here, sweet captain.

*Dol.* Captain! thou abominable damned cheater, art thou not ashamed to be called captain? An captains were of my mind, they would truncheon you out, for taking their names upon you before you have earned them. You a captain! you slave, for what? for tearing a poor whore's ruff in a bawdy-house?—He a captain! hang him, rogue! he lives upon mouldy stewed prunes and dried cakes. A captain! God's light, these villains will make the word as odious as the word occupy; which was an excellent good word before it was ill sorted: therefore captains had need look to it.

*Bard.* Pray thee, go down, good ancient.

*Fal.* Hark thee hither, Mistress Doll.

*Pist.* Not I: I tell thee what, Corporal Bardolph,— I could tear her:—I'll be revenged on her.

*Page.* Pray thee, go down.

*Pist.* I'll see her damned first;—to Pluto's damned lake, by this hand, to the infernal deep, with Erebus and tortures vile also. Hold hook and line, say I. Down, down, dogs! down, fainers! Have we not Hiren here?

*Host.* Good Captain Peesel, be quiet; it is very late, i' faith: I beseech you now, aggravate your choler.

*Pist.* These be good humours, indeed! Shall packhorses, And hollow pamper'd jades of Asia, Which cannot go but thirty miles a-day, Compare with Cæsars, and with Cannibals, And Trojan Greeks? nay, rather damn them with King Cerberus; and let the welkin roar. Shall we fall foul for toys?

*Host.* By my troth, captain, these are very bitter words.

*Bard.* Be gone, good ancient: this will grow to a brawl anon.

*Pist.* Die men like dogs! give crowns like pins! Have we not Hiren here?

*Host.* On my word, captain, there's none such here. What the good-year! do you think I would deny her? for God's sake, be quiet.

*Pist.* Then feed, and be fat, my fair Calipolis.

Come, give me some sack.

*Se fortuna mi tormenta, lo sperare mi contenta.*—(17)

Fear we broadsides? no, let the fiend give fire:

Give me some sack:—and, sweetheart, lie thou there.

[Laying down his sword.

Come we to full points here, and are *et-ceteras* nothing?

*Fal.* Pistol, I would be quiet.

*Pist.* Sweet knight, I kiss thy neif: what! we have seen the seven stars.

*Dol.* For God's sake, thrust him down stairs: I cannot endure such a fustian rascal.

*Pist.* Thrust him down stairs! know we not Galloway nags?

*Fal.* Quoit him down, Bardolph, like a shove-groat shilling: nay, an he do nothing but speak nothing, he shall be nothing here.

*Bard.* Come, get you down stairs.

*Pist.* What! shall we have incision? shall we imbrue?—

[*Snatching up his sword.*]

Then death rock me asleep, abridge my doleful days!

Why, then, let grievous, ghastly, gaping wounds

Untwine the Sisters Three! Come, Atropos, I say!

*Host.* Here's goodly stuff toward!

*Fal.* Give me my rapier, boy.

*Dol.* I pray thee, Jack, I pray thee, do not draw.

*Fal.* Get you down stairs.

[*Drawing, and driving Pistol out.*]

*Host.* Here's a goodly tumult! I'll forswear keeping house, afore I'll be in these tiritts and frights. So; murder, I warrant now.—Alas, alas! put up your naked weapons, put up your naked weapons. [*Exeunt Pistol and Bardolph.*]

*Dol.* I pray thee, Jack, be quiet; the rascal is gone. Ah, you whoreson little valiant villain, you!

*Host.* Are you not hurt i' the groin? methought he made a shrewd thrust at your belly.

*Re-enter BARDOLPH.*

*Fal.* Have you turned him out of doors?

*Bard.* Yes, sir. The rascal's drunk: you have hurt him, sir, in the shoulder.

*Fal.* A rascal! to brave me!

*Dol.* Ah, you sweet little rogue, you! Alas, poor ape, how thou sweatest! come, let me wipe thy face;—come on, you whoreson chops:—ah, rogue! i' faith, I love thee: thou art as valorous as Hector of Troy, worth five of Agamemnon, and ten times better than the Nine Worthies: ah, villain!

*Fal.* A rascally slave! I will toss the rogue in a blanket.

*Dol.* Do, an thou darest for thy heart: an thou dost, I'll canvass thee between a pair of sheets.



*Enter Musicians.*

*Page.* The music is come, sir.

*Fal.* Let them play;—play, sirs.—Sit on my knee, Doll. A rascal bragging slave! the rogue fled from me like quicksilver.

*Dol.* I' faith, and thou followedst him like a church. Thou whoreson little tidy Bartholomew boar-pig, when wilt thou leave fighting o' days and foining o' nights, and begin to patch up thine old body for heaven?

*Enter, behind, Prince HENRY and POINTZ disguised as Drawers.*

*Fal.* Peace, good Doll! do not speak like a Death's-head; do not bid me remember mine end.

*Dol.* Sirrah, what humour is the prince of?

*Fal.* A good shallow young fellow: he would have made a good pantler, he would have chipped bread well.

*Dol.* They say Pointz has a good wit.

*Fal.* He a good wit? hang him, baboon! his wit is as thick as Tewksbury mustard; there is no more conceit in him than is in a mallet.

*Dol.* Why does the prince love him so, then?

*Fal.* Because their legs are both of a bigness; and he plays at quoits well; and eats conger and fennel; and drinks off candles' ends for flap-dragons; and rides the wild-mare with the boys; and jumps upon joint-stools; and swears with a good grace; and wears his boot very smooth, like unto the sign of the leg; and breeds no bate with telling of discreet stories; and such other gambol faculties he has, that show a weak mind and an able body, for the which the prince admits him: for the prince himself is such another; the weight of a hair will turn the scales between their avoirdupois.

*P. Hen.* Would not this nave of a wheel have his ears cut off?

*Poin.* Let us beat him before his whore.

*P. Hen.* Look, whether the withered elder hath not his poll clawed like a parrot.

*Poin.* Is it not strange that desire should so many years outlive performance?

*Fal.* Kiss me, Dol.

*P. Hen.* Saturn and Venus this year in conjunction! what says the almanac to that?

*Poin.* And, look, whether the fiery Trigon, his man, be not lipping to his master's old tables, his note-book, his counsel-keeper.

*Fal.* Thou dost give me flattering busses.

*Dol.* By my troth, I kiss thee with a most constant heart.

*Fal.* I am old, I am old.

*Dol.* I love thee better than I love e'er a scurvy young boy of them all.

*Fal.* What stuff wilt thou have a kirtle of? I shall receive money on Thursday: thou shalt have a cap to-morrow. A merry song, come: it grows late; we will to bed. Thou wilt forget me when I am gone.

*Dol.* By my troth, thou wilt set me a-weeping, an thou sayest so: prove that ever I dress myself handsome till thy return:—well, hearken the end.

*Fal.* Some sack, Francis.

*P. Hen.* }  
*Poin.* } Anon, anon, sir.

[*Advancing.*]

*Fal.* Ha! a bastard son of the king's?—And art not thou Pointz his brother?

*P. Hen.* Why, thou globe of sinful continents, what a life dost thou lead!

*Fal.* A better than thou: I am a gentleman; thou art a drawer.

*P. Hen.* Very true, sir; and I come to draw you out by the ears.

*Host.* O, the Lord preserve thy good grace! by my troth, welcome to London. Now, the Lord bless that sweet face of thine! O Jesu, are you come from Wales?

*Fal.* Thou whoreson mad compound of majesty,—by this light flesh and corrupt blood, thou art welcome.

[*Leaning his hand upon Doll.*]

*Dol.* How, you fat fool! I scorn you.

*Poin.* My lord, he will drive you out of your revenge, and turn all to a merriment, if you take not the heat.

*P. Hen.* You whoreson candle-mine, you, how vilely did

you speak of me even now before this honest, virtuous, civil gentlewoman!

*Host.* God's blessing on your good heart! and so she is, by my troth.

*Fal.* Didst thou hear me?

*P. Hen.* Yes; and you knew me, as you did when you ran away by Gad's-hill: you knew I was at your back, and spoke it on purpose to try my patience.

*Fal.* No, no, no; not so; I did not think thou wast within hearing.

*P. Hen.* I shall drive you, then, to confess the wilful abuse; and then I know how to handle you.

*Fal.* No abuse, Hal, on mine honour; no abuse.

*P. Hen.* Not,—to dispraise me, and call me pantler, and bread-chipper, and I know not what!

*Fal.* No abuse, Hal.

*Poin.* No abuse!

*Fal.* No abuse, Ned, in the world; honest Ned, none. I dispraised him before the wicked, that the wicked might not fall in love with him;—in which doing, I have done the part of a careful friend and a true subject, and thy father is to give me thanks for it. No abuse, Hal;—none, Ned, none;—no, faith, boys, none.

*P. Hen.* See now, whether pure fear and entire cowardice doth not make thee wrong this virtuous gentlewoman to close with us? is she of the wicked? is thine hostess here of the wicked? or is thy boy of the wicked? or honest Bardolph, whose zeal burns in his nose, of the wicked?

*Poin.* Answer, thou dead elm, answer.

*Fal.* The fiend hath pricked down Bardolph irrecoverable; and his face is Lucifer's privy-kitchen, where he doth nothing but roast malt-worms. For the boy,—there is a good angel about him; but the devil outbids him too.

*P. Hen.* For the women?

*Fal.* For one of them,—she is in hell already, and burns, poor soul! For the other,—I owe her money; and whether she be damned for that, I know not.

*Host.* No, I warrant you.

*Fal.* No, I think thou art not; I think thou art quit for

that. Marry, there is another indictment upon thee, for suffering flesh to be eaten in thy house, contrary to the law; for the which I think thou wilt howl.

*Host.* All victuallers do so: what is a joint of mutton or two in a whole Lent?

*P. Hen.* You, gentlewoman,—

*Dol.* What says your grace?

*Fal.* His grace says that which his flesh rebels against.

[*Knocking within.*]

*Host.* Who knocks so loud at door?—Look to the door there, Francis.

*Enter Peto.*

*P. Hen.* Peto, how now! what news?

*Peto.* The king your father is at Westminster; And there are twenty weak and wearied posts Come from the north: and, as I came along, I met and overtook a dozen captains, Bare-headed, sweating, knocking at the taverns, And asking every one for Sir John Falstaff.

*P. Hen.* By heaven, Pointz, I feel me much to blame, So idly to profane the precious time; When tempest of commotion, like the south, Borne with black vapour, doth begin to melt, And drop upon our bare unarmèd heads. Give me my sword and cloak.—Falstaff, good night.

[*Exeunt Prince Henry, Pointz, Peto, and Bardolph.*]

*Fal.* Now comes in the sweetest morsel of the night, and we must hence, and leave it unpicked. [*Knocking within.*] More knocking at the door!

*Re-enter BARDOLPH.*

How now! what's the matter?

*Bard.* You must away to court, sir, presently; A dozen captains stay at door for you.

*Fal.* Pay the musicians, sirrah [*to the Page*].—Farewell, hostess;—farewell, Doll.—You see, my good wenches, how men of merit are sought after: the undeserver may sleep, when the man of action is called on. Farewell, good wenches: if I be not sent away post, I will see you again ere I go.

*Dol.* I cannot speak ;—if my heart be not ready to burst,  
—well, sweet Jack, have a care of thyself.

*Fal.* Farewell, farewell. [*Exeunt Falstaff and Bardolph.*]

*Host.* Well, fare thee well : I have known thee these  
twenty-nine years, come peascod-time ; but an honest and  
truer-hearted man,—well, fare thee well.

*Bard.* [*within.*] Mistress Tearsheet !

*Host.* What's the matter ?

*Bard.* [*within.*] Bid Mistress Tearsheet come to my master.

*Host.* O, run, Doll, run ; run, good Doll : come [*Doll  
comes blubbered*] ; yea, will you come, Doll ? <sup>(18)</sup> [*Exeunt.*]

## ACT III.

### SCENE I. *Westminster. A room in the palace.*

*Enter King HENRY in his nightgown, with a Page.*

*K. Hen.* Go call the Earls of Surrey and of Warwick ;  
But, ere they come, bid them o'er-read these letters,  
And well consider of them : make good speed. [*Exit Page.*]  
How many thousand of my poorest subjects  
Are at this hour asleep !—O sleep, O gentle sleep,  
Nature's soft nurse, how have I frighted thee,  
That thou no more wilt weigh my eyelids down,  
And steep my senses in forgetfulness ?  
Why rather, sleep, liest thou in smoky cribs,  
Upon uneasy pallets stretching thee,  
And hush'd with buzzing night-flies to thy slumber,  
Than in the perfum'd chambers of the great,  
Under the <sup>(19)</sup> canopies of costly state,  
And lull'd with sounds of sweetest melody ?  
O thou dull god, why liest thou with the vile  
In loathsome beds, and leav'st the kingly couch  
A watch-case or a common 'larum-bell ?  
Wilt thou upon the high and giddy mast  
Seal up the ship-boy's eyes, and rock his brains

In cradle of the rude imperious surge,  
 And in the visitation of the winds,  
 Who take the ruffian billows by the top,  
 Curling their monstrous heads, and hanging them  
 With deafening clamour in the slippery clouds,(20)  
 That, with the hurly, death itself awakes?—  
 Canst thou, O partial sleep, give thy repose  
 To the wet sea-boy in an hour so rude;  
 And in the calmest and most stillest night,  
 With all appliances and means to boot,  
 Deny it to a king? Then, happy low, lie down!(21)  
 Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.

*Enter WARWICK and SURREY.*

*War.* Many good morrows to your majesty!

*K. Hen.* Is it good morrow, lords?

*War.* 'Tis one o'clock, and past.

*K. Hen.* Why, then, good morrow to you all, my lords.

Have you read o'er the letters that I sent you?

*War.* We have, my liege.

*K. Hen.* Then you perceive the body of our kingdom  
 How foul it is; what rank diseases grow,  
 And with what danger, near the heart of it.

*War.* It is but as a body yet distemper'd;  
 Which to his former strength may be restor'd  
 With good advice and little medicine:  
 My Lord Northumberland will soon be cool'd.

*K. Hen.* O God! that one might read the book of fate,  
 And see the revolution of the times  
 Make mountains level, and the continent  
 (Weary of solid firmness) melt itself  
 Into the sea! and, other times, to see  
 The beachy girdle of the ocean  
 Too wide for Neptune's hips; how chances mock,  
 And changes fill the cup of alteration  
 With divers liquors! O, if this were seen,  
 The happiest youth,—viewing his progress through,  
 What perils past, what crosses to ensue,—  
 Would shut the book, and sit him down and die.

'Tis not ten years gone  
 Since Richard and Northumberland, great friends,  
 Did feast together, and in two years after  
 Were they at wars: it is but eight years since  
 This Percy was the man nearest my soul;  
 Who like a brother toil'd in my affairs,  
 And laid his love and life under my foot;  
 Yea, for my sake, even to the eyes of Richard  
 Gave him defiance. But which of you was by  
 (You, cousin Nevil, as I may remember), [To Warwick.  
 When Richard,—with his eye brimful of tears,  
 Then check'd and rated by Northumberland,—  
 Did speak these words, now prov'd a prophecy?  
 "Northumberland, thou ladder by the which  
 My cousin Bolingbroke ascends my throne,"—  
 Though then, God knows, I had no such intent,  
 But that necessity so bow'd the state,  
 That I and greatness were compell'd to kiss:—  
 "The time shall come," thus did he follow it,  
 "The time will come, that foul sin, gathering head,  
 Shall break into corruption:"—so went on,  
 Foretelling this same time's condition,  
 And the division of our amity.

*War.* There is a history in all men's lives,  
 Figuring the nature of the times deceas'd;  
 The which observ'd, a man may prophesy,  
 With a near aim, of the main chance of things  
 As yet not come to life, which in their seeds  
 And weak beginnings lie intreasurèd.  
 Such things become the hatch and brood of time;  
 And, by the necessary form of this,  
 King Richard might create a perfect guess,  
 That great Northumberland, then false to him,  
 Would of that seed grow to a greater falseness;  
 Which should not find a ground to root upon,  
 Unless on you.

*K. Hen.* Are these things, then, necessities?  
 Then let us meet them like necessities;—  
 And that same word even now cries out on us:

They say the bishop and Northumberland  
Are fifty thousand strong.

*War.libtool.com.cn* It cannot be, my lord;  
Rumour doth double, like the voice and echo,  
The numbers of the fear'd. Please it your grace  
To go to bed. Upon my soul, my lord,  
The powers that you already have sent forth  
Shall bring this prize in very easily.  
To comfort you the more, I have receiv'd  
A certain instance that Glendower is dead.  
Your majesty hath been this fortnight ill;  
And these unseason'd hours perforce must add  
Unto your sickness.

*K. Hen.* I will take your counsel:  
And were these inward wars once out of hand,  
We would, dear lords, unto the Holy Land.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *Court before Justice SHALLOW's house in  
Gloucestershire.*

*Enter SHALLOW and SILENCE, meeting; MOULDY, SHADOW, WART,  
FEEBLE, BULLCALF, and Servants, behind.*

*Shal.* Come on, come on, come on, sir; give me your hand,  
sir, give me your hand, sir: an early stirrer, by the rood.  
And how doth my good cousin Silence?

*Sil.* Good morrow, good cousin Shallow.

*Shal.* And how doth my cousin, your bedfellow? and  
your fairest daughter and mine, my god-daughter Ellen?

*Sil.* Alas, a black ousel, cousin Shallow!

*Shal.* By yea and nay, sir, I dare say my cousin William  
is become a good scholar: he is at Oxford still, is he not?

*Sil.* Indeed, sir, to my cost.

*Shal.* He must, then, to the inns of court shortly: I was  
once of Clement's-inn, where I think they will talk of mad  
Shallow yet.

*Sil.* You were called lusty Shallow then, cousin.

*Shal.* By the mass, I was called any thing; and I would



have done any thing indeed too, and roundly too. There was I, and little John Doit of Staffordshire, and black George Bare, and Francis Pickbone, and Will Squele a Cotswold man,—you had not four such swinge-bucklers in all the inns of court again: and, I may say to you, we knew where the bona-robas were, and had the best of them all at commandment. Then was Jack Falstaff, now Sir John, a boy, and page to Thomas Mowbray, duke of Norfolk.

*Sil.* This Sir John, cousin, that comes hither anon about soldiers?

*Shal.* The same Sir John, the very same. I saw him break Skogan's head at the court-gate, when he was a crack not thus high: and the very same day did I fight with one Sampson Stockfish, a fruiterer, behind Gray's-inn. Jesu, Jesu, the mad days that I have spent! and to see how many of mine old acquaintance are dead!

*Sil.* We shall all follow, cousin.

*Shal.* Certain, 'tis certain; very sure, very sure: death, as the Psalmist saith, is certain to all; all shall die.—How a good yoke of bullocks at Stamford fair?

*Sil.* Truly, cousin, I was not there.

*Shal.* Death is certain.—Is old Double of your town living yet?

*Sil.* Dead, sir.

*Shal.* Jesu, Jesu, dead!—he drew a good bow;—and dead!—he shot a fine shoot:—John of Gaunt loved him well, and betted much money on his head. Dead!—he would have clapped in the clout at twelve score; and carried you a fore-hand shaft a fourteen and fourteen and a half, that it would have done a man's heart good to see.—How a score of ewes now?

*Sil.* Thereafter as they be: a score of good ewes may be worth ten pounds.

*Shal.* And is old Double dead?

*Sil.* Here come two of Sir John Falstaff's men, as I think.

*Enter BARDOLPH and one with him.*

*Bard.* Good morrow, honest gentlemen: I beseech you, which is Justice Shallow?

*Shal.* I am Robert Shallow, sir; a poor esquire of this county, and one of the king's justices of the peace: what is your good pleasure with me?

*Bard.* My captain, sir, commends him to you; my captain, Sir John Falstaff,—a tall gentleman, by heaven, and a most gallant leader.

*Shal.* He greets me well, sir. I knew him a good back-sword man. How doth the good knight? may I ask how my lady his wife doth?

*Bard.* Sir, pardon; a soldier is better accommodated than with a wife.

*Shal.* It is well said, in faith, sir; and it is well said indeed too. Better accommodated!—it is good; yea, indeed, is it: good phrases are surely, and ever were, very commendable. Accommodated!—it comes of *accommodo*: very good; a good phrase.

*Bard.* Pardon me, sir; I have heard the word. Phrase call you it? by this good day, I know not the phrase; but I will maintain the word with my sword to be a soldier-like word, and a word of exceeding good command, by heaven. Accommodated; that is, when a man is, as they say, accommodated; or when a man is, being, whereby he may be thought to be accommodated; which is an excellent thing.

*Shal.* It is very just.—Look, here comes good Sir John.

*Enter FALSTAFF.*

Give me your good hand, give me your worship's good hand: by my troth, you like<sup>(22)</sup> well, and bear your years very well: welcome, good Sir John.

*Fal.* I am glad to see you well, good Master Robert Shallow:—Master Surecard, as I think?

*Shal.* No, Sir John; it is my cousin Silence, in commission with me.

*Fal.* Good Master Silence, it well befits you should be of the peace.

*Sil.* Your good worship is welcome.

*Fal.* Fie! this is hot weather.—Gentlemen, have you provided me here half a dozen sufficient men?

*Shal.* Marry, have we, sir. Will you sit?

*Fal.* Let me see them, I beseech you.

*Shal.* Where's the roll? where's the roll? where's the roll?  
—Let me see, let me see, let me see. So, so, so, so: yea, marry, sir:—Ralph Mouldy!—let them appear as I call; let them do so, let them do so.—Let me see; where is Mouldy?

*Moul.* Here, an't please you.

*Shal.* What think you, Sir John? a good-limbed fellow; young, strong, and of good friends.

*Fal.* Is thy name Mouldy?

*Moul.* Yea, an't please you.

*Fal.* 'Tis the more time thou wert used.

*Shal.* Ha, ha, ha! most excellent, i' faith! things that are mouldy lack use: very singular good!—in faith, well said, Sir John; very well said.

*Fal.* Prick him.

[*To Shallow.*]

*Moul.* I was pricked well enough before, an you could have let me alone: my old dame will be undone now, for one to do her husbandry and her drudgery: you need not to have pricked me; there are other men fitter to go out than I.

*Fal.* Go to: peace, Mouldy; you shall go. Mouldy, it is time you were spent.

*Moul.* Spent!

*Shal.* Peace, fellow, peace; stand aside: know you where you are?—For the other, Sir John:—let me see;—Simon Shadow!

*Fal.* Yea, marry, let me have him to sit under: he's like to be a cold soldier.

*Shal.* Where's Shadow?

*Shad.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* Shadow, whose son art thou?

*Shad.* My mother's son, sir.

*Fal.* Thy mother's son! like enough; and thy father's shadow: so the son of the female is the shadow of the male: it is often so, indeed; but not of the father's substance.<sup>(23)</sup>

*Shal.* Do you like him, Sir John?

*Fal.* Shadow will serve for summer,—prick him; for we have a number of shadows to fill up the muster-book.

*Shal.* Thomas Wart!

*Fal.* Where's he?

*Wart.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* Is thy name Wart?

*Wart.* Yea, sir.

*Fal.* Thou art a very ragged wart.

*Shal.* Shall I prick him, Sir John?

*Fal.* It were superfluous; for his apparel is built upon his back, and the whole frame stands upon pins: prick him no more.

*Shal.* Ha, ha, ha!—you can do it, sir; you can do it: I commend you well.—Francis Feeble!

*Fee.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* What trade art thou, Feeble?

*Fee.* A woman's tailor, sir.

*Shal.* Shall I prick him, sir?

*Fal.* You may: but if he had been a man's tailor, he would have pricked you.—Wilt thou make as many holes in an enemy's battle as thou hast done in a woman's petticoat?

*Fee.* I will do my good will, sir: you can have no more.

*Fal.* Well said, good woman's tailor! well said, courageous Feeble! thou wilt be as valiant as the wrathful dove or most magnanimous mouse.—Prick the woman's tailor well, Master Shallow; deep, Master Shallow.

*Fee.* I would Wart might have gone, sir.

*Fal.* I would thou wert a man's tailor, that thou mightst mend him, and make him fit to go. I cannot put him to a private soldier, that is the leader of so many thousands: let that suffice, most forcible Feeble.

*Fee.* It shall suffice, sir.

*Fal.* I am bound to thee, reverend Feeble.—Who is next?

*Shal.* Peter Bullcalf of the green!

*Fal.* Yea, marry, let us see Bullcalf.

*Bull.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* 'Fore God, a likely fellow!—Come, prick me Bullcalf till he roar again.

*Bull.* O Lord! good my lord captain,—

*Fal.* What, dost thou roar before thou art pricked?

*Bull.* O Lord, sir! I am a diseased man.

*Fal.* What disease hast thou?

*Bull.* A whoreson cold, sir,—a cough, sir,—which I

caught with ringing in the king's affairs upon his coronation-day, sir.

*Fal.* Come, thou shalt go to the wars in a gown; we will have away thy cold; and I will take such order, that thy friends shall ring for thee.—Is here all?

*Shal.* Here is two<sup>(34)</sup> more called than your number; you must have but four here, sir:—and so, I pray you, go in with me to dinner.

*Fal.* Come, I will go drink with you, but I cannot tarry dinner. I am glad to see you, by my troth, Master Shallow.

*Shal.* O, Sir John, do you remember since we lay all night in the windmill in Saint George's fields?

*Fal.* No more of that, good Master Shallow, no more of that.

*Shal.* Ha, it was a merry night. And is Jane Nightwork alive?

*Fal.* She lives, Master Shallow.

*Shal.* She never could away with me.

*Fal.* Never, never; she would always say she could not abide Master Shallow.

*Shal.* By the mass, I could anger her to the heart. She was then a bona-roba. Doth she hold her own well?

*Fal.* Old, old, Master Shallow.

*Shal.* Nay, she must be old; she cannot choose but be old; certain she's old; and had Robin Nightwork by old Nightwork before I came to Clement's-inn.

*Sil.* That's fifty-five year ago.

*Shal.* Ha, cousin Silence, that thou hadst seen that that this knight and I have seen!—Ha, Sir John, said I well?

*Fal.* We have heard the chimes at midnight, Master Shallow.

*Shal.* That we have, that we have, that we have; in faith, Sir John, we have: our watch-word was, "Hem, boys!"—Come, let's to dinner; come, let's to dinner:—Jesus, the days that we have seen!—come, come.

[*Exeunt Falstaff, Shallow, and Silence.*]

*Bull.* Good Master Corporate Bardolph, stand my friend; and here is four Harry ten shillings in French crowns for you. In very truth, sir, I had as lief be hanged, sir, as go: and yet, for mine own part, sir, I do not care; but rather,

because I am unwilling, and, for mine own part, have a desire to stay with my friends; else, sir, I did not care, for mine own part, so much.

*Bard.* Go to; stand aside.

*Moul.* And, good master corporal captain, for my old dame's sake, stand my friend: she has nobody to do any thing about her when I am gone; and she is old, and cannot help herself: you shall have forty, sir.

*Bard.* Go to; stand aside.

*Fee.* By my troth, I care not; a man can die but once;—we owe God a death: I will never bear a base mind: an't be my destiny, so; an't be not, so: no man is too good to serve his prince; and let it go which way it will, he that dies this year is quit for the next.

*Bard.* Well said; thou art a good fellow.

*Fee.* Faith, I will bear no base mind.

*Re-enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, and SILENCE.*

*Fal.* Come, sir, which men shall I have?

*Shal.* Four of which you please.

*Bard.* Sir, a word with you:—I have three pound to free Mouldy and Bullcalf.

*Fal.* Go to; well.

*Shal.* Come, Sir John, which four will you have?

*Fal.* Do you choose for me.

*Shal.* Marry, then,—Mouldy, Bullcalf, Feeble, and Shadow.

*Fal.* Mouldy and Bullcalf:—for you, Mouldy, stay at home till you are past service:—and for your part, Bullcalf, grow till you come unto it:—I will none of you.

*Shal.* Sir John, Sir John, do not yourself wrong: they are your likeliest men, and I would have you served with the best.

*Fal.* Will you tell me, Master Shallow, how to choose a man? Care I for the limb, the thewes, the stature, bulk, and big assemblance of a man! Give me the spirit, Master Shallow.—Here's Wart;—you see what a ragged appearance it is: he shall charge you, and discharge you, with the motion of a pewterer's hammer; come off, and on, swifter than

he that gibbets-on the brewer's bucket. And this same half-faced fellow, Shadow,—give me this man: he presents no mark to the enemy,—the foeman may with as great aim level at the edge of a penknife. And, for a retreat,—how swiftly will this Feeble, the woman's tailor, run off! O, give me the spare men, and spare me the great ones.—Put me a caliver into Wart's hand, Bardolph.

*Bard.* Hold, Wart, traverse; thus, thus, thus.

*Fal.* Come, manage me your caliver. So:—very well:—go to:—very good:—exceeding good.—O, give me always a little, lean, old, chapped, bald shot.—Well said, i' faith, Wart; thou art a good scab: hold, there is a tester for thee.

*Shal.* He is not his craft's-master; he doth not do it right. I remember at Mile-end Green,—when I lay at Clement's-inn,—I was then Sir Dagonet in Arthur's show,—there was a little quiver fellow, and he would manage you his piece thus; and he would about and about, and come you in and come you in: “rah, tah, tah,” would he say; “bounce” would he say; and away again would he go, and again would he come:—I shall never see such a fellow.

*Fal.* These fellows will do well, Master Shallow.—God keep you, Master Silence: I will not use many words with you.—Fare you well, gentlemen both: I thank you: I must a dozen mile to-night.—Bardolph, give the soldiers coats.

*Shal.* Sir John, the Lord bless you, and prosper your affairs, and send us peace! As you return, visit my house; let our old acquaintance be renewed: peradventure I will with you to the court.

*Fal.* 'Fore God, I would you would, Master Shallow.

*Shal.* Go to; I have spoke at a word. Fare you well.

*Fal.* Fare you well, gentle gentlemen. [*Exeunt Shallow and Silence.*] On, Bardolph; lead the men away. [*Exeunt Bardolph, Recruits, &c.*] As I return, I will fetch off these justices: I do see the bottom of Justice Shallow. Lord, Lord, how subject we old men are to this vice of lying! This same starved justice hath done nothing but prate to me of the wildness of his youth, and the feats he hath done about Turnbull-street; and every third word a lie, duer paid to the hearer than the Turk's tribute. I

do remember him at Clement's-inn, like a man made after supper of a cheese-paring: when he was naked, he was, for all the world, like a forked radish, with a head fantastically carved upon it with a knife: he was so forlorn, that his dimensions to any thick sight were invincible<sup>(25)</sup>: he was the very genius of famine; yet lecherous as a monkey, and the whores called him mandrake: he came ever in the rearward of the fashion; and sung those tunes to the overscutched huswives that he heard the carmen whistle, and swore they were his fancies or his good-nights. And now is this Vice's dagger become a squire, and talks as familiarly of John of Gaunt as if he had been sworn brother to him; and I'll be sworn he never saw him but once in the Tilt-yard; and then he burst his head for crowding among the marshal's men. I saw it, and told John of Gaunt he beat his own name; for you might have thrust him and all his apparel into an eel-skin; the case of a treble hautboy was a mansion for him, a court:— and now has he land and beeves. Well, I will be acquainted with him, if I return; and it shall go hard but I will make him a philosopher's two stones to me: if the young dace be a bait for the old pike, I see no reason, in the law of nature, but I may snap at him. Let time shape, and there an end.

[*Exit.*]

---

## ACT IV.

### SCENE I. *A forest in Yorkshire.*

*Enter the Archbishop of York, MOWBRAY, HASTINGS, and others.*

*Arch.* What is this forest call'd?

*Hast.* 'Tis Gualtree Forest, an't shall please your grace.

*Arch.* Here stand, my lords; and send discoverers forth  
To know the numbers of our enemies.

*Hast.* We have sent forth already.

*Arch.* 'Tis well done.

My friends and brethren in these great affairs,  
I must acquaint you that I have receiv'd  
New-dated letters from Northumberland;



Their cold intent, tenour, and substance, thus :—  
 Here doth he wish his person, with such powers  
 As might hold sortance with his quality,  
 The which he could not levy ; whereupon  
 He is retir'd, to ripe his growing fortunes,  
 To Scotland ; and concludes in hearty prayers  
 That your attempts may overlive the hazard  
 And fearful meeting of their opposite.

*Mowb.* Thus do the hopes we have in him touch ground,  
 And dash themselves to pieces.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Hast.* Now, what news ?

*Mess.* West of this forest, scarcely off a mile,  
 In goodly form comes on the enemy ;  
 And, by the ground they hide, I judge their number  
 Upon or near the rate of thirty thousand.

*Mowb.* The just proportion that we gave them out.  
 Let us sway on, and face them in the field.

*Arch.* What well-appointed leader fronts us here ?

*Mowb.* I think it is my Lord of Westmoreland.

*Enter WESTMORELAND.*

*West.* Health and fair greeting from our general,  
 The prince, Lord John and Duke of Lancaster.

*Arch.* Say on, my Lord of Westmoreland, in peace,  
 What doth concern your coming.

*West.* Then, my lord,  
 Unto your grace do I in chief address  
 The substance of my speech. If that rebellion  
 Came like itself, in base and abject routs,  
 Led on by bloody youth, guarded with rags,<sup>(26)</sup>  
 And countenanc'd by boys and beggary,—  
 I say, if damn'd commotion so appear'd,  
 In his true, native, and most proper shape,  
 You, reverend father, and these noble lords,  
 Had not been here, to dress the ugly form  
 Of base and bloody insurrection  
 With your fair honours. You, lord archbishop,—

Whose see is by a civil peace maintain'd ;  
 Whose beard the silver hand of peace hath touch'd ;  
 Whose learning and good letters peace hath tutor'd ;  
 Whose white investments figure innocence,  
 The dove and very blessèd spirit of peace,—  
 Wherefore do you so ill translate yourself  
 Out of the speech of peace, that bears such grace,  
 Into the harsh and boisterous tongue of war ;  
 Turning your books to greaves,<sup>(27)</sup> your ink to blood,  
 Your pens to lances, and your tongue divine  
 To a loud trumpet and a point of war ?

*Arch.* Wherefore do I this?—so the question stands.

Briefly to this end :—we are all diseas'd ;  
 And, with our surfeiting and wanton hours,  
 Have brought ourselves into a burning fever,  
 And we must bleed for it : of which disease  
 Our late king, Richard, being infected, died.  
 But, my most noble Lord of Westmoreland,  
 I take not on me here as a physician ;  
 Nor do I, as an enemy to peace,  
 Troop in the throngs of military men ;  
 But, rather, show awhile like fearful war,  
 To diet rank minds sick of happiness,  
 And purge the obstructions which begin to stop  
 Our very veins of life. Hear me more plainly.  
 I have in equal balance justly weigh'd  
 What wrongs our arms may do, what wrongs we suffer,  
 And find our griefs heavier than our offences.  
 We see which way the stream of time doth run,  
 And are enforc'd from our most quiet sphere<sup>(28)</sup>  
 By the rough torrent of occasion ;  
 And have the summary of all our griefs,  
 When time shall serve, to show in articles ;  
 Which long ere this we offer'd to the king,  
 And might by no suit gain our audience :  
 When we are wrong'd, and would unfold our griefs,  
 We are denied access unto his person  
 Even by those men that most have done us wrong.  
 The dangers of the days but newly gone

(Whose memory is written on the earth  
 With yet-appearing blood), and the examples  
 Of every minute's instance (present now),  
 Have put us in these ill-beseeming arms ;  
 Not to break peace, or any branch of it,  
 But to establish here a peace indeed,  
 Concurring both in name and quality.

*West.* When ever yet was your appeal denied ;  
 Wherein have you been gallèd by the king ;  
 What peer hath been suborn'd to grate on you ;—  
 That you should seal this lawless bloody book  
 Of forg'd rebellion with a seal divine,  
 And consecrate commotion's bitter edge ?

*Arch.* My brother general, the commonwealth,  
 To brother born an household cruelty,  
 I make my quarrel in particular.<sup>(20)</sup>

*West.* There is no need of any such redress ;  
 Or if there were, it not belongs to you.

*Mowb.* Why not to him in part, and to us all  
 That feel the bruises of the days before,  
 And suffer the condition of these times  
 To lay a heavy and unequal hand  
 Upon our honours ?

*West.* O, my good Lord Mowbray,  
 Construe the times to their necessities,  
 And you shall say indeed, it is the time,  
 And not the king, that doth you injuries.  
 Yet, for your part, it not appears to me,  
 Either from the king, or in the present time,  
 That you should have an inch of any ground  
 To build a grief on : were you not restor'd  
 To all the Duke of Norfolk's signiories,  
 Your noble and right-well-remember'd father's ?

*Mowb.* What thing, in honour, had my father lost,  
 That need to be reviv'd and breath'd in me ?  
 The king, that lov'd him, as the state stood then,  
 Was, force perforce, compell'd to banish him :  
 And then that<sup>(20)</sup> Henry Bolingbroke and he—  
 Being mounted and both rousèd in their seats,

Their neighing coursers daring of the spur,  
 Their armèd staves in charge, their beavers down,  
 Their eyes of fire sparkling through sights of steel,  
 And the loud trumpet blowing them together,—  
 Then, then, when there was nothing could have stay'd  
 My father from the breast of Bolingbroke,  
 O, when the king did throw his warder down,  
 His own life hung upon the staff he threw ;  
 Then threw he down himself, and all their lives  
 That by indictment and by dint of sword  
 Have since miscarried under Bolingbroke.

*West.* You speak, Lord Mowbray, now you know not  
 what.

The Earl of Hereford was reputed then  
 In England the most valiant gentleman :  
 Who knows on whom fortune would then have smil'd ?  
 But if your father had been victor there,  
 He ne'er had borne it out of Coventry :  
 For all the country, in a general voice,  
 Cried hate upon him ; and all their prayers and love  
 Were set on Hereford, whom they doted on,  
 And bless'd and grac'd indeed,<sup>(31)</sup> more than the king.  
 But this is mere digression from my purpose.—  
 Here come I from our princely general  
 To know your griefs ; to tell you from his grace  
 That he will give you audience ; and wherein  
 It shall appear that your demands are just,  
 You shall enjoy them,—every thing set off  
 That might so much as think you enemies.

*Mowb.* But he hath forc'd us to compel this offer ;  
 And it proceeds from policy, not love.

*West.* Mowbray, you overween to take it so ;  
 This offer comes from mercy, not from fear :  
 For, lo ! within a ken our army lies ;  
 Upon mine honour, all too confident  
 To give admittance to a thought of fear.  
 Our battle is more full of names than yours,  
 Our men more perfect in the use of arms,  
 Our armour all as strong, our cause the best ;

Then reason will our hearts should be as good :

Say you not, then, our offer is compell'd.

*Mowb.* Well, by my will we shall admit no parley.

*West.* That argues but the shame of your offence :

A rotten case abides no handling.

*Hast.* Hath the Prince John a full commission,

In very ample virtue of his father,

To hear and absolutely to determine

Of what conditions we shall stand upon ?

*West.* That is intended in the general's name :

I muse you make so slight a question.

*Arch.* Then take, my Lord of Westmoreland, this schedule,

For this contains our general grievances :

Each several article herein redress'd,

All members of our cause, both here and hence,

That are insinew'd to this action,

Acquitted by a true substantial form,

And present execution of our wills

To us and to our purposes consign'd,—<sup>(32)</sup>

We come within our awful banks again,

And knit our powers to the arm of peace.

*West.* This will I show the general. Please you, lords,

In sight of both our battles we may meet ;

And <sup>(33)</sup> either end in peace,—which God so frame !—

Or to the place of difference call the swords

Which must decide it.

*Arch.* My lord, we will do so. [*Exit West.*]

*Mowb.* There is a thing within my bosom tells me

That no conditions of our peace can stand.

*Hast.* Fear you not that : if we can make our peace

Upon such large terms and so absolute

As our conditions shall consist upon,

Our peace shall stand as firm as rocky mountains.

*Mowb.* Ay, but our valuation shall be such,

That every slight and false-derivèd cause,

Yea, every idle, nice, and wanton reason,

Shall to the king taste of this action ;

That, were our royal faiths martyrs in love,

We shall be winnow'd with so rough a wind,  
That even our corn shall seem as light as chaff,  
And good from bad find no partition.

*Arch.* No, no, my lord. Note this,—the king is weary  
Of dainty and such picking grievances :  
For he hath found, to end one doubt by death,  
Revives two greater in the heirs of life ;  
And therefore will he wipe his tables clean,  
And keep no tell-tale to his memory,  
That may repeat and history his loss  
To new remembrance : for full well he knows  
He cannot so precisely weed this land  
As his misdoubts present occasion :  
His foes are so enrooted with his friends,  
That, plucking to unfix an enemy,  
He doth unfasten so<sup>(34)</sup> and shake a friend.  
So that this land, like an offensive wife  
That hath enrag'd him on<sup>(35)</sup> to offer strokes,  
As he is striking, holds his infant up,  
And hangs resolv'd correction in the arm  
That was uprear'd to execution.

*Hast.* Besides, the king hath wasted all his rods  
On late offenders, that he now doth lack  
The very instruments of chastisement :  
So that his power, like to a fangless lion,  
May offer, but not hold.

*Arch.* 'Tis very true :  
And therefore be assur'd, my good lord marshal,  
If we do now make our atonement well,  
Our peace will, like a broken limb united,  
Grow stronger for the breaking.

*Mowb.* Be it so.  
Here is return'd my Lord of Westmoreland.

*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

*West.* The prince is here at hand : pleaseth your  
lordship  
To meet his grace just distance 'tween our armies.

*Mowb.* Your grace of York, in God's name, then, set forward.

*Arch.* Before, and greet his grace:—my lord, we come.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *Another part of the forest.*

*Enter, from one side, MOWBRAY, the Archbishop, HASTINGS, and others: from the other side, Prince JOHN of Lancaster, WEST-MORELAND, Officers, and Attendants.*

*P. John.* You are well encounter'd here, my cousin Mowbray:—

Good day to you, gentle lord archbishop;—  
 And so to you, Lord Hastings,—and to all.—  
 My Lord of York, it better show'd with you,  
 When that your flock, assembled by the bell,  
 Encircled you to hear with reverence  
 Your exposition on the holy text,  
 Than now to see you here an iron man,  
 Cheering a rout of rebels with your drum,  
 Turning the word to sword, and life to death.  
 That man that sits within a monarch's heart,  
 And ripens in the sunshine of his favour,  
 Would he abuse the countenance of the king,  
 Alack, what mischiefs might he set abroad,  
 In shadow of such greatness! With you, lord bishop,  
 It is even so. Who hath not heard it spoken,  
 How deep you were within the books of God?  
 To us the speaker in his parliament;  
 To us the imagin'd voice of God himself;  
 The very opener and intelligencer  
 Between the grace, the sanctities of heaven,  
 And our dull workings. O, who shall believe,  
 But you misuse the reverence of your place,  
 Employ the countenance and grace of heaven,  
 As a false favourite doth his prince's name,  
 In deeds dishonourable? You have taken up,  
 Under the counterfeited seal<sup>(36)</sup> of God,

The subjects of his substitute, my father,  
And both against the peace of heaven and him  
Have here up-swarm'd them.

*Arch.*

Good my Lord of Lancaster,

I am not here against your father's peace ;  
But, as I told my Lord of Westmoreland,  
The time disorder'd doth, in common sense,  
Crowd us and crush us to this monstrous form,  
To hold our safety up. I sent your grace  
The parcels and particulars of our grief,—  
The which hath been with scorn shov'd from the court,—  
Whereon this Hydra son of war is born ;  
Whose dangerous eyes may well be charm'd asleep  
With grant of our most just and right desires,  
And true obedience, of this madness cur'd,  
Stoop tamely to the foot of majesty.

*Mowb.* If not, we ready are to try our fortunes  
To the last man.

*Hast.*

And though we here fall down,

We have supplies to second our attempt :  
If they miscarry, theirs shall second them ;  
And so success of mischief shall be born,  
And heir from heir shall hold this quarrel up,  
Whiles England shall have generation.

*P. John.* You are too shallow, Hastings, much too  
shallow,

To sound the bottom of the after-times.

*West.* Pleaseth your grace to answer them directly,  
How far-forth you do like their articles.

*P. John.* I like them all, and do allow them well ;  
And swear here, by the honour of my blood,  
My father's purposes have been mistook ;  
And some about him have too lavishly  
Wrested his meaning and authority.—  
My lord, these griefs shall be with speed redress'd ;  
Upon my soul, they shall. If this may please you,  
Discharge your powers unto their several counties,  
As we will ours : and here, between the armies,  
Let's drink together friendly and embrace,



That all their eyes may bear those tokens home  
Of our restored love and amity.

*Arch.* I take your princely word for these redresses.

*P. John.* I give it you, and will maintain my word :  
And thereupon I drink unto your grace.

*Hast.* Go, captain [*to an Officer*], and deliver to the army  
This news of peace : let them have pay, and part :  
I know it will well please them. Hie thee, captain.

[*Exit Officer.*]

*Arch.* To you, my noble Lord of Westmoreland.

*West.* I pledge your grace ; and, if you knew what pains  
I have bestow'd to breed this present peace,  
You would drink freely : but my love to ye  
Shall show itself more openly hereafter.

*Arch.* I do not doubt you.

*West.* I am glad of it.—

Health to my lord and gentle cousin, Mowbray.

*Mowb.* You wish me health in very happy season ;  
For I am, on the sudden, something ill.

*Arch.* Against ill chances men are ever merry ;  
But heaviness foreruns the good event.

*West.* Therefore be merry, coz ; since sudden sorrow  
Serves to say thus,—Some good thing comes to-morrow.

*Arch.* Believe me, I am passing light in spirit.

*Mowb.* So much the worse, if your own rule be true.

[*Shouts within.*]

*P. John.* The word of peace is render'd : hark, how they  
shout !

*Mowb.* This had been cheerful after victory.

*Arch.* A peace is of the nature of a conquest ;  
For then both parties nobly are subdu'd,  
And neither party loser.

*P. John.* Go, my lord,  
And let our army be dischargèd too. [*Exit Westmoreland.*]  
And, good my lord, so please you, let our trains  
March by us, that we may peruse the men  
We should have cop'd withal.

*Arch.* Go, good Lord Hastings,

And, ere they be dismiss'd, let them march by.

[*Exit Hastings.*]

*P. John.* I trust, lords, we shall lie to-night together.  
[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

Now, cousin, wherefore stands our army still ?

*West.* The leaders, having charge from you to stand,  
 Will not go off until they hear you speak.

*P. John.* They know their duties.

*Re-enter HASTINGS.*

*Hast.* My lord, our army is dispers'd already :  
 Like youthful steers unyok'd, they take their courses  
 East, west, north, south ; or, like a school broke up,  
 Each hurries toward his home and sporting-place.

*West.* Good tidings, my Lord Hastings ; for the which  
 I do arrest thee, traitor, of high treason :—  
 And you, lord archbishop,—and you, Lord Mowbray,—  
 Of capital treason I attach you both.

*Mowb.* Is this proceeding just and honourable ?

*West.* Is your assembly so ?

*Arch.* Will you thus break your faith ?

*P. John.* I pawn'd thee none :

I promis'd you redress of these same grievances  
 Whereof you did complain ; which, by mine honour,  
 I will perform with a most Christian care.  
 But for you, rebels,—look to taste the due  
 Meet for rebellion and such acts as yours.  
 Most shallowly did you these arms commence,  
 Fondly brought here, and foolishly sent hence.—  
 Strike up our drums, pursue the scatter'd stray :  
 God, and not we, hath safely fought to-day.—  
 Some guard these traitors to the block of death,  
 Treason's true bed and yielder-up of breath.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *Another part of the forest.*

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Alarums : excursions. Enter FALSTAFF and COLEVILLE, meeting.*

*Fal.* What's your name, sir? of what condition are you, and of what place, I pray?

*Cole.* I am a knight, sir; and my name is Colevile of the dale.

*Fal.* Well, then, Colevile is your name, a knight is your degree, and your place the dale: Colevile shall be still your name, a traitor your degree, and the dungeon your place,—a place deep enough; so shall you be still Colevile of the dale.

*Cole.* Are not you Sir John Falstaff?

*Fal.* As good a man as he, sir, who'er I am. Do ye yield, sir? or shall I sweat for you? If I do sweat, they are the drops of thy lovers, and they weep for thy death: therefore rouse up fear and trembling, and do observance to my mercy.

*Cole.* I think you are Sir John Falstaff; and in that thought yield me.

*Fal.* I have a whole school of tongues in this belly of mine; and not a tongue of them all speaks any other word but my name. An I had but a belly of any indifferency, I were simply the most active fellow in Europe: my womb, my womb, my womb, undoes me.—Here comes our general.

*Enter Prince JOHN of Lancaster, WESTMORELAND, and others.*

*P. John.* The heat is past; follow no further now:—  
Call in the powers, good cousin Westmoreland.

[*Exit Westmoreland.*]

Now, Falstaff, where have you been all this while?

When every thing is ended, then you come:  
These tardy tricks of yours will, on my life,  
One time or other break some gallows' back.

*Fal.* I would be sorry, my lord, but it should be thus: I never knew yet but rebuke and check was the reward of valour. Do you think me a swallow, an arrow, or a bullet? have I, in my poor and old motion, the expedition of thought? I have speeded hither with the very extremest inch of possi-

bility; I have foundered nine-score and odd posts: and here, travel-tainted as I am, have, in my pure and immaculate valour, taken Sir John Colevile of the dale, a most furious knight and valorous enemy. But what of that? he saw me, and yielded; that I may justly say with the hook-nosed fellow of Rome,—I came, saw, and overcame.

*P. John.* It was more of his courtesy than your deserving.

*Fal.* I know not:—here he is, and here I yield him: and I beseech your grace, let it be booked with the rest of this day's deeds; or, by the Lord, I will have it in a particular ballad else, with mine own picture on the top of it, Colevile kissing my foot: to the which course if I be enforced, if you do not all show like gilt two-pences to me, and I, in the clear sky of fame, o'ershine you as much as the full moon doth the cinders of the element, which show like pins' heads to her, believe not the word of the noble: therefore let me have right, and let desert mount.

*P. John.* Thine's too heavy to mount.

*Fal.* Let it shine, then.

*P. John.* Thine's too thick to shine.

*Fal.* Let it do something, my good lord, that may do me good, and call it what you will.

*P. John.* Is thy name Colevile?

*Cole.* It is, my lord.

*P. John.* A famous rebel art thou, Colevile.

*Fal.* And a famous true subject took him.

*Cole.* I am, my lord, but as my betters are, That led me hither: had they been rul'd by me, You should have won them dearer than you have.

*Fal.* I know not how they sold themselves: but thou, like a kind fellow, gavest thyself away gratis; and I thank thee for thee.

*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

*P. John.* Now, have you left pursuit?

*West.* Retreat is made, and execution stay'd.

*P. John.* Send Colevile, with his confederates,  
To York, to present execution:—  
Blunt, lead him hence; and see you guard him sure.

[*Exeunt some with Colevile.*]

And now dispatch we toward the court, my lords :  
 I hear the king my father is sore sick :  
 Our news shall go before us to his majesty,—  
 Which, cousin, you shall bear,—to comfort him ;  
 And we with sober speed will follow you.

*Fal.* My lord, I beseech you, give me leave to go  
 Through Glostershire : and, when you come to court,  
 Stand my good lord, pray, in your good report.

*P. John.* Fare you well, Falstaff : I, in my condition,  
 Shall better speak of you than you deserve.

*[Exeunt all except Falstaff.]*

*Fal.* I would you had but the wit : 'twere better than  
 your dukedom.—Good faith, this same young sober-blooded  
 boy doth not love me ; nor a man cannot make him laugh ;—  
 but that's no marvel, he drinks no wine. There's never any  
 of these demure boys come to any proof ; for thin drink doth  
 so over-cool their blood, and making many fish-meals, that  
 they fall into a kind of male green-sickness ; and then, when  
 they marry, they get wenches : they are generally fools and  
 cowards ;—which some of us should be too, but for inflamma-  
 tion. A good sherris-sack hath a two-fold operation in it. It  
 ascends me into the brain ; dries me there all the foolish and  
 dull and crudy vapours which environ it ; makes it apprehen-  
 sive, quick, forgetive, full of nimble, fiery, and delectable  
 shapes ; which delivered o'er to the voice (the tongue), which  
 is the birth, becomes excellent wit. The second property of  
 your excellent sherris is,—the warming of the blood ; which,  
 before cold and settled, left the liver white and pale, which  
 is the badge of pusillanimity and cowardice ; but the sherris  
 warms it, and makes it course from the inwards to the parts  
 extreme : it illumineth the face, which, as a beacon, gives  
 warning to all the rest of this little kingdom, man, to arm ;  
 and then the vital commoners and inland petty spirits muster  
 me all to their captain, the heart, who, great, and puffed up  
 with this retinue, doth any deed of courage : and this valour  
 comes of sherris. So that skill in the weapon is nothing with-  
 out sack, for that sets it a-work ; and learning, a mere hoard  
 of gold kept by a devil, till sack commences it, and sets it in  
 act and use. Hereof comes it, that Prince Harry is valiant ;

for the cold blood he did naturally inherit of his father, he hath, like lean, sterile, and bare land, manured, husbanded, and tilled, ~~lib~~ with excellent endeavour of drinking good and good store of fertile sherris, that he is become very hot and valiant. If I had a thousand sons, the first human principle I would teach them should be,—to forswear thin potations, and to addict themselves to sack.

*Enter* BARDOLPH.

How now, Bardolph!

*Bard.* The army is discharged all, and gone.

*Fal.* Let them go. I'll through Glostershire; and there will I visit Master Robert Shallow, esquire: I have him already tempering between my finger and my thumb, and shortly will I seal with him. Come away. [*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE IV. *Westminster. A room in the palace.*

*Enter* King HENRY, CLARENCE, Prince HUMPHREY, WARWICK, and others.

*K. Hen.* Now, lords, if God doth give successful end  
To this debate that bleedeth at our doors,  
We will our youth lead on to higher fields,  
And draw no swords but what are sanctified.  
Our navy is address'd, our power collected,  
Our substitutes in absence well invested,  
And every thing lies level to our wish:  
Only, we want a little personal strength;  
And pause us, till these rebels, now afoot,  
Come underneath the yoke of government.

*War.* Both which we doubt not but your majesty  
Shall soon enjoy.

*K. Hen.* Humphrey, my son of Gloster,  
Where is the prince your brother?

*P. Humph.* I think he's gone to hunt, my lord, at Windsor.

*K. Hen.* And how accompanied?

*P. Humph.* I do not know, my lord.

*K. Hen.* Is not his brother, Thomas of Clarence, with him?

*P. Humph.* No, my good lord; he is in presence here.

*Cla.* What would my lord and father?

*K. Hen.* Nothing but well to thee, Thomas of Clarence.  
 How chance thou art not with the prince thy brother?  
 He loves thee, and thou dost neglect him, Thomas;  
 Thou hast a better place in his affection  
 Than all thy brothers: cherish it, my boy;  
 And noble offices thou mayst effect  
 Of mediation, after I am dead,  
 Between his greatness and thy other brethren:  
 Therefore omit him not; blunt not his love,  
 Nor lose the good advantage of his grace  
 By seeming cold or careless of his will;  
 For he is gracious, if he be observ'd:  
 He hath a tear for pity, and a hand  
 Open as day for melting charity:  
 Yet notwithstanding, being incens'd, he's flint;  
 As humorous as winter, and as sudden  
 As flaws congealèd in the spring of day.  
 His temper, therefore, must be well observ'd:  
 Chide him for faults, and do it reverently,  
 When you perceive his blood inclin'd to mirth;  
 But, being moody, give him line and scope,  
 Till that his passions, like a whale on ground,  
 Confound themselves with working. Learn this, Thomas,  
 And thou shalt prove a shelter to thy friends;  
 A hoop of gold to bind thy brothers in,  
 That the united vessel of their blood,  
 Mingled with venom of suggestion  
 (As, force perforce, the age will pour it in),  
 Shall never leak, though it do work as strong  
 As aconitum or rash gunpowder.

*Cla.* I shall observe him with all care and love.

*K. Hen.* Why art thou not at Windsor with him,  
 Thomas?

*Cla.* He is not there to-day; he dines in London.

*K. Hen.* And how accompanied? canst thou tell that?

*Cla.* With Pointz, and other his continual followers.

*K. Hen.* Most subject is the fattest soil to weeds ;  
 And he, the noble image of my youth,  
 Is overspread with them : therefore my grief  
 Stretches itself beyond the hour of death :  
 The blood weeps from my heart, when I do shape,  
 In forms imaginary, the unguided days  
 And rotten times that you shall look upon  
 When I am sleeping with my ancestors.  
 For when his headstrong riot hath no curb,  
 When rage and hot blood are his counsellors,  
 When means and lavish manners meet together,  
 O, with what wings shall his affections fly  
 Towards fronting peril and oppos'd decay !

*War.* My gracious lord, you look beyond him quite :  
 The prince but studies his companions,  
 Like a strange tongue ; wherein, to gain the language,  
 'Tis needful that the most immodest word  
 Be look'd upon and learn'd ; which once attain'd,  
 Your highness knows, comes to no further use  
 But to be known and hated. So, like gross terms,  
 The prince will, in the perfectness of time,  
 Cast off his followers ; and their memory  
 Shall as a pattern or a measure live,  
 By which his grace must mete the lives of others,  
 Turning past evils to advantages.

*K. Hen.* 'Tis seldom-when the bee doth leave her comb  
 In the dead carrion.

*Enter WESTMORELAND.*

Who's here ? Westmoreland ?

*West.* Health to my sovereign, and new happiness  
 Added to that that I am to deliver !  
 Prince John, your son, doth kiss your grace's hand :  
 Mowbray, the Bishop Scroop, Hastings, and all,  
 Are brought to the correction of your law ;  
 There is not now a rebel's sword unsheath'd,  
 But Peace puts forth her olive every where :



The manner how this action hath been borne,  
Here at more leisure may your highness read,  
With every course in his particular.

*K. Hen.* O Westmoreland, thou art a summer bird,  
Which ever in the haunch of winter sings  
The lifting-up of day.—Look, here's more news.

*Enter HARCOURT.*

*Har.* From enemies heaven keep your majesty ;  
And, when they stand against you, may they fall  
As those that I am come to tell you of !  
The Earl Northumberland and the Lord Bardolph,  
With a great power of English and of Scots,  
Are by the sheriff of Yorkshire overthrown :  
The manner and true order of the fight,  
This packet, please it you, contains at large.

*K. Hen.* And wherefore should these good news make me  
sick ?

Will Fortune never come with both hands full,  
But write her fair words still in foulest letters ?  
She either gives a stomach, and no food,—  
Such are the poor, in health ; or else a feast,  
And takes away the stomach,—such are the rich,  
That have abundance, and enjoy it not.  
I should rejoice now at this happy news ;  
And now my sight fails, and my brain is giddy :—  
O me ! come near me ; now I am much ill.

[*Swoons.*

*P. Humph.* Comfort, your majesty !

*Cla.*

O my royal father !

*West.* My sovereign lord, cheer up yourself, look up.

*War.* Be patient, princes ; you do know, these fits  
Are with his highness very ordinary.  
Stand from him, give him air ; he'll straight be well.

*Cla.* No, no, he cannot long hold out these pangs :  
The incessant care and labour of his mind  
Hath wrought the mure, that should confine it in,  
So thin, that life looks through, and will break out.

*P. Humph.* The people fear me ; for they do observe  
Unfather'd heirs and loathly births of nature :

The seasons change their manners, as the year  
Had found some months asleep, and leap'd them over.

*Cla.* The river hath thrice flow'd, no ebb between;  
And the old folk, time's doting chronicles,  
Say it did so a little time before  
That our great-grandsire, Edward, sick'd and died.

*War.* Speak lower, princes, for the king recovers.

*P. Humph.* This apoplexy will certain be his end.

*K. Hen.* I pray you, take me up, and bear me hence  
Into some other chamber: softly, pray.

[*They convey the King<sup>(37)</sup> into an inner part of  
the room, and place him on a bed.*]

Let there be no noise made, my gentle friends;  
Unless some dull and favourable hand  
Will whisper music to my weary spirit.

*War.* Call for the music in the other room.

*K. Hen.* Set me the crown upon my pillow here.

*Cla.* His eye is hollow, and he changes much.

*War.* Less noise, less noise!

*Enter Prince HENRY.*

*P. Hen.* Who saw the Duke of Clarence?

*Cla.* I am here, brother, full of heaviness.

*P. Hen.* How now! rain within doors, and none abroad!  
How doth the king?

*P. Humph.* Exceeding ill.

*P. Hen.* Heard he the good news yet?  
Tell it him.

*P. Humph.* He alter'd much upon the hearing it.

*P. Hen.* If he be sick  
With joy, he will recover without physic.

*War.* Not so much noise, my lords:—sweet prince, speak  
low;

The king your father is dispos'd to sleep.

*Cla.* Let us withdraw into the other room.

*War.* Will't please your grace to go along with us?

*P. Hen.* No; I will sit and watch here by the king.

[*Exeunt all except P. Henry.*]

Why doth the crown lie there upon his pillow,

Being so troublesome a bedfellow ?  
 O polish'd perturbation ! golden care !  
 That keep'st the ports of slumber open wide  
 To many a watchful night !—sleep with it now !  
 Yet not so sound and half so deeply sweet  
 As he whose brow with homely biggin bound  
 Snores out the watch of night. O majesty !  
 When thou dost pinch thy bearer, thou dost sit  
 Like a rich armour worn in heat of day,  
 That scalds with safety. By his gates of breath  
 There lies a downy feather which stirs not :  
 Did he suspire, that light and weightless down  
 Perforce must move.—My gracious lord ! my father !—  
 This sleep is sound indeed ; this is a sleep,  
 That from this golden rigol hath divorc'd  
 So many English kings. Thy due from me  
 Is tears and heavy sorrows of the blood,  
 Which nature, love, and filial tenderness,  
 Shall, O dear father, pay thee plenteously :  
 My due from thee is this imperial crown,  
 Which, as immediate from thy place and blood,  
 Derives itself to me. Lo, here it sits,—

[*Putting it on his head.*]

Which God shall guard : and put the world's whole strength  
 Into one giant arm, it shall not force  
 This lineal honour from me : this from thee  
 Will I to mine leave, as 'tis left to me. [Exit.]

*K. Hen.* Warwick ! Gloster ! Clarence !

*Re-enter WARWICK and the rest.*

*Cla.* Doth the king call ?

*War.* What would your majesty ? how fares your grace ?

*K. Hen.* Why did you leave me here alone, my lords ?

*Cla.* We left the prince my brother here, my liege,  
 Who undertook to sit and watch by you.

*K. Hen.* The Prince of Wales ! Where is he ? let me  
 see him :

He is not here.

*War.* This door is open ; he is gone this way.

*P. Humph.* He came not through the chamber where we stay'd.

*K. Hen.* Where is the crown? who took it from my pillow?

*War.* When we withdrew, my liege, we left it here.

*K. Hen.* The prince hath ta'en it hence:—go, seek him out.  
Is he so hasty, that he doth suppose  
My sleep my death?—  
Find him, my Lord of Warwick; chide him hither. .

[*Exit Warwick.*]

This part of his conjoins with my disease,  
And helps to end me.—See, sons, what things you are!  
How quickly nature falls into revolt  
When gold becomes her object!  
For this the foolish over-careful fathers  
Have broke their sleeps with thought,<sup>(38)</sup> their brains with  
care,  
Their bones with industry;  
For this they have engrossèd and pil'd up  
The canker'd heaps of strange-achievèd gold;  
For this they have been thoughtful to invest  
Their sons with arts and martial exercises:  
When, like the bee, tolling from every flower  
The virtuous sweets,  
Our thighs pack'd with wax, our mouths with honey,<sup>(39)</sup>  
We bring it to the hive; and, like the bees,  
Are murder'd for our pains. This bitter taste  
Yield his engrossments to the ending father.

*Re-enter WARWICK.*

Now, where is he that will not stay so long  
Till his friend sickness hath determin'd me?

*War.* My lord, I found the prince in the next room,  
Washing with kindly tears his gentle cheeks;  
With such a deep demeanour in great sorrow,  
That tyranny, which never quaff'd but blood,  
Would, by beholding him, have wash'd his knife  
With gentle eye-drops. He is coming hither.

*K. Hen.* But wherefore did he take away the crown?

*Re-enter Prince HENRY.*

Lo, where he comes.—Come hither to me, Harry.—  
Depart the chamber, leave us here alone.

*[Exeunt all except K. Hen. and P. Hen.]*

*P. Hen.* I never thought to hear you speak again.

*K. Hen.* Thy wish was father, Harry, to that thought :  
I stay too long by thee, I weary thee.  
Dost thou so hunger for my empty chair,  
That thou wilt needs invest thee with mine honours  
Before thy hour be ripe ? O foolish youth !  
Thou seek'st the greatness that will overwhelm thee.  
Stay but a little ; for my cloud of dignity  
Is held from falling with so weak a wind  
That it will quickly drop : my day is dim.  
Thou hast stolen that which, after some few hours,  
Were thine without offence ; and at my death  
Thou hast seal'd up my expectation :  
Thy life did manifest thou lov'dst me not,  
And thou wilt have me die assur'd of it.  
Thou hid'st a thousand daggers in thy thoughts,  
Which thou hast whetted on thy stony heart,  
To stab at half an hour of my life.  
What ! canst thou not forbear me half an hour ?  
Then, get thee gone, and dig my grave thyself ;  
And bid the merry bells ring to thine ear,  
That thou art crownèd, not that I am dead.  
Let all the tears that should bedew my hearse  
Be drops of balm to sanctify thy head :  
Only compound me with forgotten dust ;  
Give that which gave thee life unto the worms.  
Pluck down my officers, break my decrees ;  
For now a time is come to mock at form :—  
Harry the fifth is crown'd :—up, vanity !  
Down, royal state ! all you sage counsellors, hence !  
And to the English court assemble now,  
From every region, apes of idleness !  
Now, neighbour confines, purge you of your scum :  
Have you a ruffian that will swear, drink, dance,

Revel the night, rob, murder, and commit  
 The oldest sins the newest kind of ways ?  
 Be happy, **He will trouble** you no more ;  
 England shall double-gild his treble guilt,—  
 England shall give him office, honour, might ;  
 For the fifth Harry from curb'd license plucks  
 The muzzle of restraint, and the wild dog  
 Shall flesh his tooth in every innocent.  
 O my poor kingdom, sick with civil blows !  
 When that my care could not withhold thy riots,  
 What wilt thou do when riot is thy care ?  
 O, thou wilt be a wilderness again,  
 Peopled with wolves, thy old inhabitants !

*P. Hen.* O, pardon me, my liege ! but for my tears,

[*Kneeling.*]

The moist impediments unto my speech,  
 I had forestall'd this dear and deep rebuke,  
 Ere you with grief had spoke, and I had heard  
 The course of it so far. There is your crown ;  
 And He that wears the crown immortally  
 Long guard it yours ! If I affect it more  
 Than as your honour and as your renown,  
 Let me no more from this obedience rise,—  
 Which my most inward true and duteous spirit<sup>(40)</sup>  
 Teacheth,—this prostrate and exterior bending !  
 God witness with me, when I here came in,  
 And found no course of breath within your majesty,  
 How cold it struck my heart ! If I do feign,  
 O, let me in my present wildness die,  
 And never live to show the incredulous world  
 The noble change that I have purposèd !  
 Coming to look on you, thinking you dead  
 (And dead almost, my liege, to think you were),  
 I spake unto the crown as having sense,  
 And thus upbraided it : “ The care on thee depending  
 Hath fed upon the body of my father ;  
 Therefore, thou, best of gold, art worst of gold :  
 Other, less fine in carat, is more precious,  
 Preserving life in medicine potable ;

But thou, most fine, most honour'd, most renown'd,  
 Hast eat thy bearer up." Thus, my most royal liege,  
 Accusing it, I put it on my head,  
 To try with it,—as with an enemy  
 That had before my face murder'd my father,—  
 The quarrel of a true inheritor.  
 But if it did infect my blood with joy,  
 Or swell my thoughts to any strain of pride;  
 If any rebel or vain spirit of mine  
 Did with the least affection of a welcome  
 Give entertainment to the might of it,—  
 Let God for ever keep it from my head,  
 And make me as the poorest vassal is,  
 That doth with awe and terror kneel to it!

*K. Hen.* O my son,  
 God put it in thy mind to take it hence,  
 That thou mightst win the more thy father's love,  
 Pleading so wisely in excuse of it!  
 Come hither, Harry, sit thou by my bed;  
 And hear, I think, the very latest counsel  
 That ever I shall breathe. God knows, my son,  
 By what by-paths and indirect crook'd ways  
 I met this crown; and I myself know well  
 How troublesome it sat upon my head:  
 To thee it shall descend with better quiet,  
 Better opinion, better confirmation;  
 For all the soil of the achievement goes  
 With me into the earth. It seem'd in me  
 But as an honour snatch'd with boisterous hand;  
 And I had many living to upbraid  
 My gain of it by their assistances;  
 Which daily grew to quarrel and to bloodshed,  
 Wounding supposed peace: all these bold fears  
 Thou see'st with peril I have answer'd;  
 For all my reign hath been but as a scene  
 Acting that argument: and now my death  
 Changes the mode; for what in me was purchas'd,  
 Falls upon thee in a more fairer sort;  
 So thou the garland wear'st successively.

Yet, though thou stand'st more sure than I could do,  
 Thou art not firm enough, since griefs are green;  
 And all my<sup>(1)</sup> friends, which thou must make thy friends,  
 Have but their stings and teeth newly ta'en out;  
 By whose fell working I was first advanc'd,  
 And by whose power I well might lodge a fear  
 To be again displac'd: which to avoid,  
 I cut them off; and had a purpose now  
 To lead out many to the Holy Land,  
 Lest rest and lying still might make them look  
 Too near unto my state. Therefore, my Harry,  
 Be it thy course to busy giddy minds  
 With foreign quarrels; that action, hence borne out,  
 May waste the memory of the former days.  
 More would I, but my lungs are wasted so,  
 That strength of speech is utterly denied me.  
 How I came by the crown, O God forgive;  
 And grant it may with thee in true peace live!

*P. Hen.* My gracious liege,  
 You won it, wore it, kept it, gave it me;  
 Then plain and right must my possession be:  
 Which I with more than with a common pain  
 'Gainst all the world will rightfully maintain.

*K. Hen.* Look, look, here comes my John of Lancaster.

*Enter Prince JOHN of Lancaster, WARWICK, Lords, and others.*

*P. John.* Health, peace, and happiness to my royal father!

*K. Hen.* Thou bring'st me happiness and peace, son John;  
 But health, alack, with youthful wings is flown  
 From this bare wither'd trunk: upon thy sight,  
 My worldly business makes a period.—  
 Where is my Lord of Warwick?

*P. Hen.* My Lord of Warwick!

*K. Hen.* Doth any name particular belong  
 Unto the lodging where I first did swoon?

*War.* 'Tis call'd Jerusalem, my noble lord.

*K. Hen.* Laud be to God!—even there my life must end.  
 It hath been prophesied to me many years,  
 I should not die but in Jerusalem;



Which vainly I suppos'd the Holy Land :—  
 But, bear me to that chamber ; there I'll lie ;  
 In that Jerusalem shall Harry die.

[*Exeunt.*]

## ACT V.

SCENE I. *Gloucestershire. A hall in SHALLOW's house.*

*Enter SHALLOW, FALSTAFF, BARDOLPH, and Page.*

*Shal.* By cock and pie, sir, you shall not away to-night.  
 —What, Davy, I say !

*Fal.* You must excuse me, Master Robert Shallow.

*Shal.* I will not excuse you ; you shall not be excused ;  
 excuses shall not be admitted ; there is no excuse shall serve ;  
 you shall not be excused.—Why, Davy !

*Enter DAVY.*

*Davy.* Here, sir.

*Shal.* Davy, Davy, Davy, Davy,—let me see, Davy ; let  
 me see, Davy ; let me see :—yea, marry, William cook, bid  
 him come hither.—Sir John, you shall not be excused.

*Davy.* Marry, sir, thus ; those precepts cannot be served :  
 and, again, sir,—shall we sow the headland with wheat ?

*Shal.* With red wheat, Davy. But for William cook :  
 —are there no young pigeons ?

*Davy.* Yes, sir.—Here is now the smith's note for shoeing  
 and plough-irons.

*Shal.* Let it be cast, and paid.—Sir John, you shall not  
 be excused.

*Davy.* Now, sir, a new link to the bucket must needs be  
 had :—and, sir, do you mean to stop any of William's wages,  
 about the sack he lost the other day at Hinckley fair ?

*Shal.* He shall answer it.—Some pigeons, Davy, a couple  
 of short-legged hens, a joint of mutton, and any pretty little  
 tiny kickshaws, tell William cook.

*Davy.* Doth the man of war stay all night, sir ?

*Shal.* Yea, Davy. I will use him well : a friend i' the  
 court is better than a penny in purse. Use his men well,  
 Davy ; for they are arrant knaves, and will backbite.

*Davy.* No worse than they are backbitten, sir; for they have marvellous foul linen.

*Shal.* Well conceited, Davy:—about thy business, Davy.

*Davy.* I beseech you, sir, to countenance William Visor of Wincot against Clement Perkes of the hill.

*Shal.* There are many complaints, Davy, against that Visor: that Visor is an arrant knave, on my knowledge.

*Davy.* I grant your worship that he is a knave, sir; but yet, God forbid, sir, but a knave should have some countenance at his friend's request. An honest man, sir, is able to speak for himself, when a knave is not. I have served your worship truly, sir, this eight years; and if I cannot once or twice in a quarter bear out a knave against an honest man, I have but a very little credit with your worship. The knave is mine honest friend, sir; therefore, I beseech your worship, let him be countenanced.

*Shal.* Go to; I say he shall have no wrong. Look about, Davy. [*Exit Davy.*] Where are you, Sir John? Come, come, come, off with your boots.—Give me your hand, Master Bardolph.

*Bard.* I am glad to see your worship.

*Shal.* I thank thee with all my heart, kind Master Bardolph:—and welcome, my tall fellow [*to the Page*].—Come, Sir John.

*Fal.* I'll follow you, good Master Robert Shallow. [*Exit Shallow.*] Bardolph, look to our horses. [*Exeunt Bardolph and Page.*] If I were sawed into quantities, I should make four dozen of such bearded hermits'-staves as Master Shallow. It is a wonderful thing to see the semblable coherence of his men's spirits and his: they, by observing of him, do bear themselves like foolish justices; he, by conversing with them, is turned into a justice-like serving-man: their spirits are so married in conjunction with the participation of society, that they flock together in consent, like so many wild-geese. If I had a suit to Master Shallow, I would humour his men with the imputation of being near their master: if to his men, I would curry with Master Shallow, that no man could better command his servants. It is certain that either wise bearing or ignorant carriage is caught, as men take diseases, one of

another: therefore let men take heed of their company. I will devise matter enough out of this Shallow to keep Prince Harry in continual laughter the wearing-out of six fashions (which is four terms, or two actions), and he shall laugh without *intervallums*. O, it is much that a lie with a slight oath, and a jest with a sad brow, will do with a fellow that never had the ache in his shoulders! O, you shall see him laugh till his face be like a wet cloak ill laid up!

*Shal.* [*within.*] Sir John!

*Fal.* I come, Master Shallow; I come, Master Shallow.

[*Exit.*]

SCENE II. *Westminster. A room in the palace.*

*Enter, severally, WARWICK and the Lord Chief-Justice.*

*War.* How now, my lord chief-justice! whither away?

*Ch. Just.* How doth the king?

*War.* Exceeding well; his cares are now all ended.

*Ch. Just.* I hope, not dead.

*War.* He's walk'd the way of nature;  
And, to our purposes, he lives no more.

*Ch. Just.* I would his majesty had call'd me with him:  
The service that I truly did his life  
Hath left me open to all injuries.

*War.* Indeed I think the young king loves you not.

*Ch. Just.* I know he doth not; and do arm myself  
To welcome the condition of the time;  
Which cannot look more hideously upon me  
Than I have drawn it in my fantasy.

*War.* Here come the heavy issue of dead Harry:  
O that the living Harry had the temper  
Of him, the worst of these three gentlemen!  
How many nobles then should hold their places,  
That must strike sail to spirits of vile sort!

*Ch. Just.* O God, I fear all will be overturn'd!

*Enter Prince JOHN, Prince HUMPHREY, CLARENCE, WESTMORELAND,  
and others.*

*P. John.* Good morrow, cousin Warwick, good morrow.

*P. Humph.* } Good morrow, cousin.  
*Cla.* }

*P. John.* We meet like men that had forgot to speak.

*War.* We do remember; but our argument  
 Is all too heavy to admit much talk.

*P. John.* Well, peace be with him that hath made us  
 heavy!

*Ch. Just.* Peace be with us, lest we be heavier!

*P. Humph.* O, good my lord, you have lost a friend in-  
 deed;

And I dare swear you borrow not that face  
 Of seeming sorrow,—it is sure your own.

*P. John.* Though no man be assur'd what grace to find,  
 You stand in coldest expectation:  
 I am the sorrier; would 'twere otherwise.

*Cla.* Well, you must now speak Sir John Falstaff fair;  
 Which swims against your stream of quality.

*Ch. Just.* Sweet princes, what I did, I did in honour,  
 Led by the impartial conduct of my soul;  
 And never shall you see that I will beg  
 A raggèd and forestall'd remission.  
 If truth and upright innocency fail me,  
 I'll to the king my master that is dead,  
 And tell him who hath sent me after him.

*War.* Here comes the prince.

*Enter King HENRY V.*

*Ch. Just.* Good morrow; and God save your majesty!

*King.* This new and gorgeous garment, majesty,  
 Sits not so easy on me as you think.—  
 Brothers, you mix your sadness with some fear:  
 This is the English, not the Turkish court;  
 Not Amurath an Amurath succeeds,  
 But Harry Harry. Yet be sad, good brothers,  
 For, to speak truth, it very well becomes you:  
 Sorrow so royally in you appears,  
 That I will deeply put the fashion on,  
 And wear it in my heart: why, then, be sad;  
 But entertain no more of it, good brothers,

Than a joint burden laid upon us all.  
 For me, by heaven, I bid you be assur'd,  
 I'll be your father and your brother too;  
 Let me but bear your love, I'll bear your cares:  
 Yet weep that Harry's dead; and so will I;  
 But Harry lives, that shall convert those tears,  
 By number, into hours of happiness.

*P. John, &c.* We hope no other from your majesty.

*King.* You all look strangely on me:—and you most;

[*To the Chief-Justice.*

You are, I think, assur'd I love you not.

*Ch. Just.* I am assur'd, if I be measur'd rightly,  
 Your majesty hath no just cause to hate me.

*King.* No!

How might a prince of my great hopes forget  
 So great indignities you laid upon me?  
 What! rate, rebuke, and roughly send to prison  
 The immediate heir of England! Was this easy?  
 May this be wash'd in Lethe, and forgotten?

*Ch. Just.* I then did use the person of your father;  
 The image of his power lay then in me:  
 And, in the administration of his law,  
 Whiles I was busy for the commonwealth,  
 Your highness pleasèd to forget my place,  
 The majesty and power of law and justice,  
 The image of the king whom I presented,  
 And struck me in my very seat of judgment;  
 Whereon, as an offender to your father,  
 I gave bold way to my authority,  
 And did commit you. If the deed were ill,  
 Be you contented, wearing now the garland,  
 To have a son set your decrees at naught,  
 To pluck down justice from your awful bench,  
 To trip the course of law, and blunt the sword  
 That guards the peace and safety of your person,  
 Nay, more, to spurn at your most royal image,  
 And mock your workings in a second body.  
 Question your royal thoughts, make the case yours;  
 Be now the father, and propose a son;

Hear your own dignity so much profan'd,  
 See your most dreadful laws so loosely slighted,  
 Behold yourself so by a son disdain'd ;  
 And then imagine me taking your part,  
 And, in your power, soft silencing your son :  
 After this cold considerance, sentence me ;  
 And, as you are a king, speak in your state,  
 What I have done that misbecame my place,  
 My person, or my liege's sovereignty.

*King.* You are right, justice, and you weigh this  
 well ;

Therefore still bear the balance and the sword :  
 And I do wish your honours may increase,  
 Till you do live to see a son of mine  
 Offend you, and obey you, as I did.  
 So shall I live to speak my father's words :  
 " Happy am I, that have a man so bold,  
 That dares do justice on my proper son ;  
 And not less happy, having such a son,  
 That would deliver up his greatness so  
 Into the hands of justice."—You did commit me :  
 For which, I do commit into your hand  
 The unstainèd sword that you have us'd to bear ;  
 With this remembrance,—that you use the same  
 With the like bold, just, and impartial spirit  
 As you have done 'gainst me. There is my hand.  
 You shall be as a father to my youth :  
 My voice shall sound as you do prompt mine ear ;  
 And I will stoop and humble my intents  
 To your well-practis'd wise directions.—  
 And, princes all, believe me, I beseech you ;—  
 My father is gone wild into his grave,  
 For in his tomb lie my affections ;  
 And with his spirit sadly I survive,  
 To mock the expectation of the world,  
 To frustrate prophecies, and to raze out  
 Rotten opinion, who hath writ me down  
 After my seeming. The tide of blood in me  
 Hath proudly flow'd in vanity till now :

Now doth it turn, and ebb back to the sea,  
 Where it shall mingle with the state of floods,  
 And flow henceforth in formal majesty.  
 Now call we our high court of parliament :  
 And let us choose such limbs of noble counsel,  
 That the great body of our state may go  
 In equal rank with the best-govern'd nation ;  
 That war, or peace, or both at once, may be  
 As things acquainted and familiar to us ;  
 In which you, father, shall have foremost hand.

[*To the Lord Chief-Justice.*

Our coronation done, we will accite,  
 As I before remember'd, all our state :  
 And (God<sup>(42)</sup>) consigning to my good intents)  
 No prince nor peer shall have just cause to say,  
 God shorten Harry's happy life one day !

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III. *Gloucestershire. The garden of SHALLOW'S  
 house.*

*Enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, SILENCE, BARDOLPH, the Page, and  
 DAVY.*

*Shal.* Nay, you shall see mine orchard, where, in an ar-  
 bour, we will eat a last year's pippin of my own grafting, with  
 a dish of caraways, and so forth :—come, cousin Silence :—  
 and then to bed.

*Fal.* 'Fore God, you have here a goodly dwelling and a  
 rich.

*Shal.* Barren, barren, barren ; beggars all, beggars all, Sir  
 John :—marry, good air.—Spread, Davy ; spread, Davy : well  
 said, Davy.

*Fal.* This Davy serves you for good uses ; he is your  
 serving-man and your husband.<sup>(43)</sup>

*Shal.* A good varlet, a good varlet, a very good varlet, Sir  
 John :—by the mass, I have drunk too much sack at sup-  
 per :—a good varlet. Now sit down, now sit down :—come,  
 cousin.

*Sil.* Ah, sirrah ! quoth-a,—we shall

Do nothing but eat, and make good cheer, [Singing.  
 And praise God for the merry year ;  
 When flesh is cheap and females dear,  
 And lusty lads roam here and there  
 So merrily,  
 And ever among so merrily.

*Fal.* There's a merry heart!—Good Master Silence, I'll give you a health for that anon.

*Shal.* Give Master Bardolph some wine, Davy.

*Davy.* Sweet sir, sit [to Bardolph, and pointing to another table]; I'll be with you anon; most sweet sir, sit.—Master page, good master page, sit.—Proface! What you want in meat, we'll have in drink: but you must bear;—the heart's all. [Exit.

*Shal.* Be merry, Master Bardolph;—and, my little soldier there, be merry.

*Sil.* Be merry, be merry, my wife has all; [Singing.  
 For women are shrews, both short and tall :  
 'Tis merry in hall when beards wag all,  
 And welcome merry Shrove-tide.  
 Be merry, be merry, &c.

*Fal.* I did not think Master Silence had been a man of this mettle.

*Sil.* Who, I? I have been merry twice and once ere now.

*Re-enter DAVY.*

*Davy.* There is a dish of leather-coats for you.

[Setting them before Bardolph.

*Shal.* Davy,—

*Davy.* Your worship?—I'll be with you straight [to Bardolph].—A cup of wine, sir?

*Sil.* A cup of wine that's brisk and fine, [Singing.  
 And drink unto the leman mine ;  
 And a merry heart lives long-a.

*Fal.* Well said, Master Silence.

*Sil.* And<sup>(4)</sup> we shall be merry;—now comes in the sweet of the night.

*Fal.* Health and long life to you, Master Silence.

*Sil.* Fill the cup, and let it come; [Singing.  
 I'll pledge you a mile to the bottom.



*Shal.* Honest Bardolph, welcome: if thou wantest any thing, and wilt not call, beshrew thy heart.—Welcome, my little tiny thief [*to the Page*], and welcome indeed too.—I'll drink to Master Bardolph, and to all the cavaleroes about London.

*Davy.* I hope to see London once ere I die.

*Bard.* An I might see you there, Davy,—

*Shal.* By the mass, you'll crack a quart together,—ha! will you not, Master Bardolph?

*Bard.* Yea, sir, in a pottle-pot.

*Shal.* By God's liggens, I thank thee:—the knave will stick by thee, I can assure thee that: he will not out; he is true bred.

*Bard.* And I'll stick by him, sir.

*Shal.* Why, there spoke a king. Lack nothing: be merry. [*Knocking within.*] Look who's at door there, ho! who knocks? [*Exit Davy.*]

*Fal.* Why, now you have done me right.

[*To Silence, who has drunk a bumper.*]

*Sil.* Do me right, [*Singing.*]

And dub me knight:

Samingo.

Is't not so?

*Fal.* 'Tis so.

*Sil.* Is't so? Why, then, say an old man can do somewhat.

*Re-enter DAVY.*

*Davy.* An't please your worship, there's one Pistol come from the court with news.

*Fal.* From the court! let him come in.

*Enter PISTOL.*

How now, Pistol!

*Pist.* Sir John, God save you!

*Fal.* What wind blew you hither, Pistol?

*Pist.* Not the ill wind which blows no man to good.—Sweet knight, thou art now one of the greatest men in the realm.

*Sil.* By'r lady, I think he be, but goodman Puff of Barson.

*Pist.* Puff?

Puff in thy teeth, most recreant coward base!—  
 Sir John, I am thy Pistol and thy friend,  
 And helter-skelter have I rode to thee;  
 And tidings do I bring, and lucky joys,  
 And golden times, and happy news of price.

*Fal.* I pray thee, now, deliver them like a man of this world.

*Pist.* A foutra for the world and worldlings base!  
 I speak of Africa and golden joys.

*Fal.* O base Assyrian knight, what is thy news?  
 Let King Cophetua know the truth thereof.

*Sil.* And Robin Hood, Scarlet, and John. [Singing.]

*Pist.* Shall dunghill curs confront the Helicons?  
 And shall good news be baffled?  
 Then, Pistol, lay thy head in Furies' lap.

*Shal.* Honest gentleman, I know not your breeding.

*Pist.* Why, then, lament therefore.

*Shal.* Give me pardon, sir:—if, sir, you come with news from the court, I take it there is but two ways,—either to utter them, or to conceal them. I am, sir, under the king, in some authority.

*Pist.* Under which king, bezonian? speak, or die.

*Shal.* Under King Harry.

*Pist.* Harry the fourth? or fifth?

*Shal.* Harry the fourth.

*Pist.* A foutra for thine office!—

Sir John, thy tender lambkin now is king;  
 Harry the fifth's the man. I speak the truth:  
 When Pistol lies, do this; and fig me, like  
 The bragging Spaniard.

*Fal.* What, is the old king dead?

*Pist.* As nail in door: the things I speak are just.

*Fal.* Away, Bardolph! saddle my horse.—Master Robert Shallow, choose what office thou wilt in the land, 'tis thine.—Pistol, I will double-charge thee with dignities.

*Bard.* O joyful day!—

I would not take a knighthood for my fortune.<sup>(45)</sup>

*Pist.* What, I do bring good news?

*Fal.* Carry Master Silence to bed.—Master Shallow, my

Lord Shallow, be what thou wilt; I am fortune's steward. Get on thy boots: we'll ride all night.—O sweet Pistol!—away, Bardolph! [*Exit Bard.*]—come, Pistol, utter more to me; and, withal, devise something to do thyself good.—Boot, boot, Master Shallow: I know the young king is sick for me. Let us take any man's horses; the laws of England are at my commandment. Happy are they which have been my friends; and woe unto my lord chief-justice!

*Pist.* Let vultures vile seize on his lungs also!

“Where is the life that late I led?” say they:

Why, here it is;—welcome these pleasant days!<sup>(46)</sup> [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV. *London. A street.*

*Enter* Beadles, *dragging in* Hostess and DOLL TEARSHEET.

*Host.* No, thou arrant knave; I would to God that I might die, that I might have thee hanged: thou hast drawn my shoulder out of joint.

*First Bead.* The constables have delivered her over to me; and she shall have whipping-cheer enough, I warrant her: there hath been a man or two lately killed about her.

*Dol.* Nut-hook, nut-hook, you lie. Come on; I'll tell thee what, thou damned tripe-visaged rascal, an the child I go with do miscarry, thou wert better thou hadst struck thy mother, thou paper-faced villain.

*Host.* O the Lord, that Sir John were come! he would make this a bloody day to somebody. But I pray God the fruit of her womb miscarry!

*First Bead.* If it do, you shall have a dozen of cushions again; you have but eleven now. Come, I charge you both go with me; for the man is dead that you and Pistol beat among you.

*Dol.* I'll tell thee what, thou thin man in a censer, I will have you as soundly swung for this,—you blue-bottle rogue, you filthy famished correctioner, if you be not swung, I'll forswear half-kirtles.

*First Bead.* Come, come, you she knight-errant, come.

*Host.* O God, that right should thus overcome might!  
Well, of sufferance comes ease.

*Dol.* Come, you rogue, come; bring me to a justice.

*Host.* Ay, come, you starved bloodhound.

*Dol.* Goodman death, goodman bones!

*Host.* Thou atomy, thou!

*Dol.* Come, you thin thing; come, you rascal.

*First Bead.* Very well. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE V. *A public place near Westminster Abbey.*

*Enter two Grooms, strewing rushes.*

*First Groom.* More rushes, more rushes.

*Sec. Groom.* The trumpets have sounded twice.

*First Groom.* It will be two of the clock ere they come  
from the coronation: dispatch, dispatch.<sup>(47)</sup> [*Exeunt.*]

*Enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, PISTOL, BARDOLPH, and the Page.*

*Fal.* Stand here by me, Master Robert Shallow; I will make the king do you grace: I will leer upon him as he comes by; and do but mark the countenance that he will give me.

*Pist.* God bless thy lungs, good knight.

*Fal.* Come here, Pistol; stand behind me.—O, if I had had time to have made new liveries, I would have bestowed the thousand pound I borrowed of you [*to Shallow*]. But it is no matter; this poor show doth better: this doth infer the zeal I had to see him,—

*Shal.*<sup>(48)</sup> It doth so.

*Fal.* It shows my earnestness of affection,—

*Shal.* It doth so.

*Fal.* My devotion,—

*Shal.* It doth, it doth, it doth.

*Fal.* As it were, to ride day and night; and not to deliberate, not to remember, not to have patience to shift me,—

*Shal.* It is most certain.

*Fal.* But to stand stained with travel, and sweating with desire to see him; thinking of nothing else, putting all

affairs else in oblivion, as if there were nothing else to be done but to see him.

*Pist.* 'Tis *semper idem*, for *absque hoc nihil est*: 'tis all in every part.

*Shal.* 'Tis so, indeed.

*Pist.* My knight, I will inflame thy noble liver,  
And make thee rage.

Thy Doll, and Helen of thy noble thoughts,  
Is in base durance and contagious prison ;

Hal'd thither

By most mechanical and dirty hand :—

Rouse up revenge from ebon den with fell Alecto's snake,  
For Doll is in. Pistol speaks naught but truth.

*Fal.* I will deliver her.

[*Shouts within, and the trumpets sound.*]

*Pist.* There roar'd the sea, and trumpet-clangor sounds.

*Enter the King and his train, the Chief-Justice among them.*

*Fal.* God save thy grace, King Hal! my royal Hal!

*Pist.* The heavens thee guard and keep, most royal imp  
of fame!

*Fal.* God save thee, my sweet boy!

*King.* My lord chief-justice, speak to that vain man.

*Ch. Just.* Have you your wits? know you what 'tis you  
speak?

*Fal.* My king! my Jove! I speak to thee, my heart!

*King.* I know thee not, old man: fall to thy prayers;

How ill white hairs become a fool and jester!

I have long dream'd of such a kind of man,

So surfeit-swell'd, so old, and so profane;

But, being awake, I do despise my dream.

Make less thy body hence, and more thy grace;

Leave gormandizing; know the grave doth gape

For thee thrice wider than for other men.—

Reply not to me with a fool-born jest:

Presume not that I am the thing I was;

For God doth know, so shall the world perceive,

That I have turn'd away my former self;

So will I those that kept me company.

When thou dost hear I am as I have been,  
 Approach me, and thou shalt be as thou wast,  
 The tutor and the feeder of my riots :  
 Till then, I banish thee, on pain of death,—  
 As I have done the rest of my misleaders,—  
 Not to come near our person by ten mile.  
 For competence of life I will allow you,  
 That lack of means enforce you not to evil :  
 And, as we hear you do reform yourselves,  
 We will, according to your strength and qualities,  
 Give you advancement.—Be it your charge, my lord,  
 To see perform'd the tenour of our word.—

Set on. [*Exeunt King and his train.*]

*Fal.* Master Shallow, I owe you a thousand pound.

*Shal.* Yea, marry, Sir John ; which I beseech you to let me have home with me.

*Fal.* That can hardly be, Master Shallow. Do not you grieve at this ; I shall be sent for in private to him : look you, he must seem thus to the world : fear not your advancement ; I will be the man yet that shall make you great.

*Shal.* I cannot perceive how,—unless you give me your doublet, and stuff me out with straw. I beseech you, good Sir John, let me have five hundred of my thousand.

*Fal.* Sir, I will be as good as my word : this that you heard was but a colour.

*Shal.* A colour, I fear, that you will die in, Sir John.

*Fal.* Fear no colours : go with me to dinner :—come, Lieutenant Pistol ;—come, Bardolph :—I shall be sent for soon at night.

*Re-enter Prince JOHN, the Chief-Justice, Officers, &c.*

*Ch. Just.* Go, carry Sir John Falstaff to the Fleet :  
 Take all his company along with him.

*Fal.* My lord, my lord,—

*Ch. Just.* I cannot now speak : I will hear you soon.—  
 Take them away.

*Pist.* *Se fortuna mi tormenta, lo sperare mi contenta.*

[*Exeunt Falstaff, Shallow, Pistol, Bardolph,  
 and Page, with Officers.*]

*P. John.* I like this fair proceeding of the king's :  
 He hath intent his wonted followers  
 Shall all be very well provided for ;  
 But all are banish'd till their conversations  
 Appear more wise and modest to the world.

*Ch. Just.* And so they are.

*P. John.* The king hath call'd his parliament, my lord.

*Ch. Just.* He hath.

*P. John.* I will lay odds that, ere this year expire,  
 We bear our civil swords and native fire  
 As far as France : I heard a bird so sing,  
 Whose music, to my thinking, pleas'd the king.  
 Come, will you hence ?

[*Exeunt.*]

## EPILOGUE.

*Spoken by a Dancer.*

First my fear ; then my court'sy ; last my speech. My fear is, your displeasure ; my court'sy, my duty ; and my speech, to beg your pardons. If you look for a good speech now, you undo me : for what I have to say is of mine own making ; and what indeed I should say will, I doubt, prove mine own marring. But to the purpose, and so to the venture.—Be it known to you (as it is very well), I was lately here in the end of a displeasing play, to pray your patience for it, and to promise you a better. I did mean, indeed, to pay you with this ; which, if, like an ill venture, it come unluckily home, I break, and you, my gentle creditors, lose. Here I promised you I would be, and here I commit my body to your mercies : bate me some, and I will pay you some, and, as most debtors do, promise you infinitely.

If my tongue cannot entreat you to acquit me, will you command me to use my legs ? and yet that were but light payment,—to dance out of your debt. But a good conscience will make any possible satisfaction, and so will I. All the gentlewomen here have forgiven me : if the gentlemen will not, then the gentlemen do not agree with the gentlewomen, which was never seen before in such an assembly.

One word more, I beseech you. If you be not too much cloyed with fat meat, our humble author will continue the story, with Sir John in it, and make you merry with fair Katharine of France: where, for any thing I know, Falstaff shall die of a sweat, unless already he be killed with your hard opinions; for Oldcastle died a martyr, and this is not the man. My tongue is weary; when my legs are too, I will bid you good night: and so kneel down before you;—but, indeed, to pray for the queen.



P. 458. (1)

*"This have I rumour'd through the peasant towns," &c.*

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector would substitute "*the pleasant towns,*" &c.,—an alteration which occurred long ago to myself, and also within these few days to Mr. Robson, who carefully reads the sheets of this edition as they come from his press. Mr. Singer, indeed, (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 111) reckons it among the "crudities of the corrector:" but one may wonder why Rumour should mention only "*the peasant towns,*" as if so busy a personage, in the long journey from Shrewsbury to Warkworth, had failed to "call in" at the more important places. (That the fact of the folio having a hyphen here,—"*peasant-towns,*"—weighs nothing in support of the old reading, my note on "*thin bestained cloak,*" p. 265, will show distinctly.)

P. 460. (2)

*"So looks the strand," &c.*

The old copies have "*the strond,*" &c. See note (1) p. 447.

P. 461. (3)

*"That what he fear'd is chanced. Yet speak, Morton," &c.*

Here the folio has "*chanc'd;*" but the earlier, and in some respects much better edition of this play, the 4to of 1600, has "*chanced.*"—The late Mr. Sydney Walker (whose acquaintance with the old copies was confined to the folio) declares that "*Shakespeare certainly did not write chanced*" (*Shakespeare's Versification, &c.* p. 134); and proceeds, as usual, to amend by conjecture a line which opposed his theory. But compare *Titus Andronicus*, act iii. sc. 2;

"I'll to thy closet; and go read with thee  
Sad stories *chanced* in the times of old."

P. 463. (4)

*"the corpse," &c.*

i. e. the *corpeses*, the bodies. Here the folio has "*the corpses.*" (This line is not in the 4to.) See note (2), p. 447.

P. 470. (5)

*"and so both the diseases prevent my curses."*

The old copies have "*the degrees prevent,*" &c.; from which it seems impossible to elicit even a tolerable sense.—The two Ms. Correctors,—Mr. Collier's and Mr. Singer's ("the Percy and the Douglas both together"),—agree in the reading which I have adopted.

P. 471. (6)

*"Yes, in this present quality of war;—  
Indeed, the instant action,—a cause on foot,—  
Lives so in hope," &c.*

This passage is not in the 4to.—The folio has "*Yes, if this,*" &c.,—from which, by altering the punctuation, Mr. Knight vainly attempts to extract a meaning.—I adopt, with Malone, the emendation of Johnson, "*in*"—(which, it

appears, was anticipated by Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector,—who also, and by no means happily, reads "*Indeed, the instant act and cause on foot,*" &c.).

P. 472. (7) *libtool.com* "*or at least desist,*" &c.

Stevens conjectured, and Capell printed, "*or at last,*" &c. (and so Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector).

P. 472. (8) "If he should do so,  
He leaves his back unarm'd, the French and Welsh  
Baying him at the heels."

So the folio.—The 4to has,

"If he should do so, French and Welch he leaues his back vnarmde, they baying him at the heeles."

"I believe the editor of the folio did not correct the quarto rightly; in which the only error probably was (as Mr. Capell has observed) the omission of the word *to* :

'To French and Welsh he leaves his back unarm'd,  
They baying him at the heels : never fear that.'

MALONE.

P. 474. (9) "O Lord, ay! good Master Snare."

"We have altered the punctuation according to a suggestion of Capell," says Mr. Knight, who accordingly prints "— ay; good! Master Snare!"—in direct opposition to what presently follows,—"*Yea, good Master Snare*"—"*good Master Snare, let him not scape.*"

P. 474. (10) "*my exion,*" &c.

So the old copies. But in the first speech of this scene Mrs. Quickly talks of her "*action.*" (Again,—p. 488, she says "*Captain Pistol,*" and p. 489, "*Captain Peesel.*")

P. 474. (11) "*A hundred mark is a long one,*" &c.

Here Theobald substituted "— *a long loan,*" &c.; and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "— *a long score,*" &c. But the old text is doubtless right. "The hostess means to say that a hundred mark is a long *mark*, that is, *score*, *reckoning*, for her to bear. The use of *mark* in the singular number in familiar language, admits very well of this equivoque." DOUCE.—(We have already seen Mrs. Quickly attempting a pun in *The Merry Wives of Windsor*, act i. sc. 4,—"*You shall have Aa fool's head of your own.*")

P. 475. (12) "*Fal.*"

The 4to has "*Boy,*" the folio "*Page.*"—The editor of the folio 1664 rightly assigned this speech to Falstaff.

P. 479. (13) "*Pointz.*"

So, here and throughout this scene, the name is spelt in the folio. See note (8), p. 447.

P. 481. (14) "a borrower's cap."

Warburton's correction.—The old copies have "a borrowed cap."

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

P. 486. (15) "my poor virtue," &c.

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "my pure virtue," &c.; which Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 115) pronounces to be "a good and probable conjectural emendation." But is not "poor" often an epithet of endearment?

P. 486. (16) "What the good-year!"

In *The Merry Wives of Windsor*, act i. sc. 4, Mrs. Quickly exclaims, "What the good-*jer*;" and I should have adopted that spelling here, but for other inconsistencies which the language of the hostess exhibits: see note (10).

P. 489. (17) "*Se fortuna mi tormenta, lo sperare mi contenta.*"

Printed corruptedly in the old copies both here, and (with a change of blunder) towards the close of the fifth act. ("This false Italian," says Theobald, "is not from the editors, but purposely from the author." No, no: "the author" intended neither the Italian nor the French in his dramas to be "false." And why did Theobald correct Pistol's "false" Latinity at p. 543?)

P. 495. (18)

"*come* [Doll comes blubbered]; *yea, will you come, Doll?*"

These words are found only in the 4to, where they stand thus; "*come, shee comes blubberd, yea,*" &c.—a stage-direction (as not unfrequently happens in early dramas) having crept into the text. (Formerly "*blubbered*" did not convey the ludicrous idea which it does at present:

"what wilt thou think  
Of rotten kings or *blubber'd* queens?"

*The Two Noble Kinsmen*, act i. sc. 1.)

P. 495. (19) "*Under the canopies of costly state,*" &c.

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes "*Under high canopies,*" &c.—a probable lection; for here the transcriber's or compositor's eye might have caught "*the*" from the preceding line,—"*Than in the pèrfum'd chambers,*" &c.

P. 496. (20)

"*With deafening clamour in the slippery clouds,*" &c.

As here the common modern reading is that of the folio, "clamours," I may notice that I have the authority of the 4to for "*clamour.*"—On the conjectural reading "*slippery shrowds,*" see the notes *ad l.* in the *Var. Shakespeare.*

P. 496. (21)

"Then, happy low, lie down!  
*Uneasy* lies the head that wears a crown."

Concerning this doubtful passage (in which Warburton would ingeniously read "*Then, happy lowly clown!*") see my *Remarks on Mr. Collier's and Mr. Knight's eds. of Shakespeare*, p. 113.—The punctuation of the folio is "*Then happy lowe, lye downe;*" which I think much preferable to that of the 4to,—"*then (happy) low lie downe.*"

P. 500. (22) "you like well," &c.

So the 4to.—The folio has "*you looke well,*" &c.—(Compare *Love's Labour's lost*, act v. sc. 2, "*Well-liking wits they have; gross, gross; fat, fat;*" and *First Part of Henry IV.* act iii. sc. 3, "*Well, I'll repent, and that suddenly, while I am in some liking.*")

P. 501. (23) "but not of the father's substance."

So the folio.—The 4to has "*but much of the father's substance.*"—The usual modern reading is,—"*but not much of the father's substance.*" (As "*but*" and "*not*" are frequently confounded, I suspect that the reading of the 4to is wrong only in a single word, and that Shakespeare may have written, "*not much of the father's substance.*")

P. 503. (24) "*Here is two more called than your number,*" &c.

"*Five* only have been called, and the number required is *four*. Some name seems to have been omitted by the transcriber. The restoration of this sixth man would solve the difficulty that occurs below; for when Mouldy and Bullcalf are set aside, Falstaff, as Dr. Farmer has observed, gets but *three* recruits. Perhaps our author himself is answerable for this slight inaccuracy." MALONE.—"Capell omits the word *two*." BOSWELL.

P. 506. (25)

"*that his dimensions to any thick sight were invincible.*"

In *Every Man in his Humour*, act i. sc. 3, Cob says, "and they flout him *invisibly*:"—on which Gifford has the following note. "I have some doubt whether we rightly comprehend this word, as understood by our ancestors. Here, and elsewhere, it is used where we should now write *invisibly*. 'He was so forlorn,' says Falstaff of Justice Shallow, 'that his dimensions to any thick sight were *invincible*.' This reading Steevens pronounces to be absolutely spurious; and adopts, with great applause, *invisible*, 'the correction of Rowe.' The correction, as it is termed, is sufficiently obvious to those who are not conversant with our old writers; but not so, I should have thought, to Steevens. However this may be, I have met with the expression so frequently, that I incline to the opinion of the judicious Crites, and think 'there is need of more deliberation,' before it be utterly proscribed." Jonson's *Works*, vol. i. 30.

P. 507. (26)

"*If that rebellion  
Came like itself, in base and abject routs.*"

*Led on by bloody youth, guarded with rags,  
And countenanc'd by boys and beggary,—  
I say, if damn'd commotion so appear'd," &c.*

The old copies have "— guarded with rage," &c.: but that Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, and the late Mr. Sidney Walker (see Preface to *Shakespeare's Versification*, &c. p. xxi.) are right in substituting "rags" for "rage," the context ("base and abject routs," "boys and beggary") evinces most clearly.—The old copies have also "— commotion so appeare," &c. (For "bloody youth" Warburton and Mr. Singer's Ms. Corrector would read "heady youth.")

P. 508. (27)

*"Turning your books to graeves, your ink to blood,  
Your pens to lances, and your tongue divine  
To a loud trumpet and a point of war?"*

The old copies have "*Turning your books to graues,*" &c.—Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, p. 117) says; "Warburton's correction of *glaiues* for *graves* has been adopted by Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector; yet the reading of Steevens, *graves*, is at least equally probable, and nearer to the old word:—the fact is, our early authors frequently write "graves" when (as here) "*graves*" are meant.—In the last line Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "— and report of war;" while Mr. Singer (*ubi supra*) would substitute "— and a bruit of war;"—neither of them being aware that "*a point of war*" is a not uncommon expression: so in Greene's *Orlando Furioso*,—

*"Tell him from me, false coward as he is,  
That Orlando, the County Palatine,  
Is come this morning with a band of French  
To play him hunt's-up with a point of war," &c.*

*Dram. Works*, i. 18, ed. Dyce.

P. 508. (28) "*And are enforc'd from our most quiet sphere," &c.*

So Warburton; and his alteration is at least better than the corruption of the folio, "— our most quiet there," &c. (though Henley gravely tells us that "'there' refers to the new channel which the rapidity of the flood from the stream of time would force itself into"!!!).—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "— most quiet chair," &c.: but in this line the Archbishop is evidently talking of his associates as well as of himself.—This passage is not in the 4to.

P. 509. (29) "*My brother general, the commonwealth,  
To brother born an household cruelty,  
I make my quarrel in particular."*

The second of these lines is not in the folio.—The passage, being plainly mutilated, defies any satisfactory explanation.

P. 509. (30) "*And then that Henry Bolingbroke and he," &c.*

Has been altered to "*And when that,*" &c., and to "*And then when,*" &c.

P. 510. (81)

*"And bless'd and grac'd indeed, more than the king."*

Thirlby's correction.—The folio has "— and grac'd, and did more," &c.— This is not in the 4to,

P. 511. (82) *"To us and to our purposes consign'd,"* &c.

The old copies have "— purposes confinde" (and "confind"), &c.— See Malone's note *ad l.*—Johnson first proposed the reading, "consign'd."

P. 511. (83) *"And either end in peace,"* &c.

Thirlby's correction.—The old copies have "At either," &c.

P. 512. (84) *"He doth unfasten so and shake a friend,"* &c.

Mr. White Grant (*Shakespeare's Scholar*, &c. p. 323) would read "*He doth unfasten too and shake,*" &c.: but our early writers rather affected than avoided the repetition of a word.

P. 512. (85) *"So that this land, like an offensive wife  
That hath enrag'd him on to offer strokes,"* &c.

The alteration made here by Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector,—"*That hath enrag'd her man to offer strokes,*" &c. is, in Mr. Singer's opinion, "evidently called for," and "one of the Corrector's few admissible conjectures" (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, &c. p. 117). Now, though I have no pleasure either in contradicting Mr. Singer, or in letting my readers see how verbal critics will sometimes differ *toto cælo*, I must conscientiously say that I consider the alteration as not only quite unnecessary, but as one of the Corrector's very worst conjectures.

P. 513. (86) *"Under the counterfeited seal of God,"* &c.

So both Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector and the late Mr. Sidney Walker (see Preface to *Shakespeare's Versification*, &c. p. xxi.), and, no doubt, rightly.—The old copies have "— counterfeited zeale," &c.

P. 524. (87)

*"[They convey the King into an inner part of the room,"* &c.

This is a modern addition.—Here the old copies have no stage-direction. In fact, the audience of Shakespeare's time were to suppose that a change of scene took place as soon as the King was laid on the bed.

P. 526. (88) *"Have broke their sleeps with thought,"* &c.

The old copies have "— with thoughts," &c. (Here the 4to has "*their sleeps,*" &c.: but compare *Hamlet*, act iv. sc. 7, "*Break not your sleeps for that.*")

P. 526. (29)

*"Our thighs pack'd with wax, our mouths with honey," &c.*Qy. *"Our thighs with wax; our mouths with honey pack'd," &c.?*P. 528. (40) *"Which my most inward true and duteous spirit," &c.*So the 4to.—The folio has *"Which my most true, and inward duteous spirit," &c.*

P. 530. (41)

*"And all my friends, which thou must make thy friends,  
Have but their stings and teeth newly ta'en out;  
By whose fell working I was first advanc'd,  
And by whose power I well might lodge a fear  
To be again displac'd: which to avoid,  
I cut them off; and had a purpose now  
To lead out many to the Holy Land,  
Lest rest and lying still might make them look  
Too near unto my state."*

The old copies have *"And all thy friends, which thou," &c.*,—where, as Tyrwhitt and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector saw, "my" is positively required by the context.—In the sixth line Mason would substitute *"I cut some off," &c.*,—an alteration made also by Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector: but it is a rather violent one; and perhaps Johnson's explanation of the original text may be accepted,—"Of those who assisted my usurpation, some I have cut off, and many I intended to lead abroad."—In the last line "unto" has been altered to "into:" but the words were often used indiscriminately.

P. 537. (42) *"And (God consigning to my good intents)*

*No prince nor peer shall have just cause to say,  
God shorten Harry's happy life one day!"*

As in most of the modern editions the reader will find, *"God consigning," &c.*, and *"Heaven shorten," &c.*,—I think it right to mention that, while the 4to has *"God consigning," &c.* and *"God shorten," &c.*, the folio has *"heauen consigning," &c.*, and *"Heauen shorten," &c.*

P. 537. (43) *"your serving-man and your husband."*

Here Malone,—who printed, with Rowe, "*— your husbandman,*"—says, "I am not sure that the emendation is necessary."—Strange that Malone should not have known how common the word *"husband"* was in the sense of *husbandman!*

P. 538. (44)

*"And we shall be merry;—now comes in the sweet of the night."*

Mr. Knight gives, *"If we shall be merry, now comes in the sweet of the night,"* and tells us in a note, "This is the reading of the folio; the quarto, *'And we*

shall be merry.' *And* was often printed for *an*. The 'If we shall be merry, now comes in the sweet of the night,' appears to us superior to the ordinary reading, 'And we shall be merry;—now comes in, &c.'" Superior! is it any sense at all? The fact is, the person who made the transcript of this play used for the folio, being accustomed to alter "*and*" (i. e. *an*) to "if," misunderstood the force of the word in the present passage: here the "*And*" of the 4to is not equivalent to *An* (if),—it is the copulative conjunction.

P. 540. (4\*) "Bard. *O joyful day!*—  
*I would not take a knighthood for my fortune.*"

So this speech stands in the folio; and so, most probably, Shakespeare intended it to stand.—We have before had blank verse from Bardolph, when he was not under such excitement as at present: see p. 494.

P. 541. (4\*) "'Where is the life that late I led?' say they:  
*Why, here it is;—welcome these pleasant days!*"

For the sake of a couplet, Pope and Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector read "—welcome this pleasant day!"—rightly, perhaps.

P. 542. (4\*)  
"First Groom. *More rushes, more rushes.*  
Sec. Groom. *The trumpets have sounded twice.*  
First Groom. *It will be two of the clock ere they come from the coronation: dispatch, dispatch.*"

The words "*dispatch, dispatch*" are found only in the 4to,—where the last speech is given to a *Third* "strewer of rushes:" and *qy.* ought the dialogue to be distributed thus?—

"*First Groom.* More rushes, more rushes.  
*Sec. Groom.* The trumpets have sounded twice.  
*Third Groom.* It will be two of the clock ere they come from the coronation.  
*First Groom.* Dispatch, dispatch."

P. 542. (4\*) "Shal. *It doth so.*  
Shal. *It doth so.*  
Shal. *It doth, it doth, it doth.*"

In the 4to the prefix to these three speeches is "*Pist.*" In the folio the first of them is rightly assigned to Shallow; but, by an oversight, the two others are left with the old prefix.



[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

**KING HENRY THE FIFTH.**

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

[www.libtool.com.ca](http://www.libtool.com.ca) —

**KING HENRY the Fifth.**

**DUKE OF GLOSTER,**  
**DUKE OF BEDFORD,** } brothers to the King.

**DUKE OF EXETER,** uncle to the King.

**DUKE OF YORK,** cousin to the King.

**EARLS OF SALISBURY, WESTMORELAND, and WARWICK.**

**ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.**

**BISHOP OF ELY.**

**EARL OF CAMBRIDGE.**

**LORD SCROOP.**

**SIR THOMAS GREY.**

**SIR THOMAS ERPINGHAM, GOWER, FLUELLEN, MACMORRIS, JAMY,**  
officers in King Henry's army.

**BATES, COURT, WILLIAMS,** soldiers in the same.

**PISTOL, NYM, BARDOLPH.**

**Boy.**

**A Herald.**

**CHARLES the Sixth,** king of France.

**LOUIS,** the Dauphin.

**DUKES OF BURGUNDY, ORLEANS, and BOURBON.**

**The Constable of France.**

**RAMBURES and GRANDPRÉ,** French Lords.

**Governor of Harfleur.**

**MONTJOY,** a French Herald.

**Ambassadors to the King of England.**

**ISABEL,** Queen of France.

**KATHARINE,** daughter to Charles and Isabel.

**ALICE,** a lady attending on her.

**Hostess of a tavern in Eastcheap** (formerly Mistress Quickly, and now married to Pistol).

**Lords, Ladies, Officers, Soldiers, Citizens, Messengers, and Attendants.**

**Chorus.**

**SCENE**—*During the earlier part of the play, in England, afterwards in France.*

## KING HENRY V.

---

---

*Enter* Chorus.

*Chor.* O for a Muse of fire, that would ascend  
The brightest heaven of invention,—  
A kingdom for a stage, princes to act,  
And monarchs to behold the swelling scene!  
Then should the warlike Harry, like himself,  
Assume the port of Mars; and at his heels,  
Leash'd-in like hounds, should famine, sword, and fire,  
Crouch for employment. But pardon, gentles all,  
The flat unraisèd spirit that hath dar'd  
On this unworthy scaffold to bring forth  
So great an object: can this cockpit hold  
The vasty fields of France? or may we cram  
Within this wooden O the very casques  
That did affright the air at Agincourt?  
O, pardon! since a crookèd figure may  
Attest in little place a million;  
And let us, ciphers to this great accompt,  
On your imaginary forces work.  
Suppose within the girdle of these walls  
Are now confin'd two mighty monarchies,  
Whose high uprearèd and abutting fronts  
The perilous narrow ocean parts asunder:  
Piece out our imperfections with your thoughts;  
Into a thousand parts divide one man,  
And make imaginary puissance;

Think, when we talk of horses, that you see them  
 Printing their proud hoofs i' the receiving earth;—  
 For 'tis your thoughts that now must deck our kings,  
 Carry them here and there; jumping o'er times,  
 Turning the accomplishment of many years  
 Into an hour-glass: for the which supply,  
 Admit me Chorus to this history;  
 Who, prologue-like, your humble patience pray,  
 Gently to hear, kindly to judge, our play.

[Exit.]

---



---

## ACT I.

SCENE I. *London. An ante-chamber in the King's palace.*

*Enter the Archbishop of CANTERBURY and the Bishop of ELY.*

*Cant.* My lord, I'll tell you,—that self bill is urg'd,  
 Which in the eleventh year of the last king's reign  
 Was like, and had indeed against us pass'd,  
 But that the scrambling and unquiet time  
 Did push it out of further question.

*Ely.* But how, my lord, shall we resist it now?

*Cant.* It must be thought on. If it pass against us,  
 We lose the better half of our possession:  
 For all the temporal lands, which men devout  
 By testament have given to the church,  
 Would they strip from us; being valu'd thus,—  
 As much as would maintain, to the king's honour,  
 Full fifteen earls and fifteen hundred knights,  
 Six thousand and two hundred good esquires;  
 And, to relief of lazars and weak age,  
 Of indigent faint souls past corporal toil,  
 A hundred almshouses right well supplied;  
 And to the coffers of the king beside,  
 A thousand pounds by the year: thus runs the bill.

*Ely.* This would drink deep.

*Cant.*

'Twould drink the cup and all.

*Ely.* But what prevention ?

*Cant.* The king is full of grace and fair regard.

*Ely.* And a true lover of the holy church.

*Cant.* The courses of his youth promis'd it not.

The breath no sooner left his father's body,  
But that his wildness, mortified in him,  
Seem'd to die too ; yea, at that very moment,  
Consideration, like an angel, came,  
And whipp'd the offending Adam out of him,  
Leaving his body as a paradise,  
To envelop and contain celestial spirits.  
Never was such a sudden scholar made ;  
Never came reformation in a flood,  
With such a heady currance, scouring faults ;  
Nor never Hydra-headed wilfulness  
So soon did lose his seat, and all at once,  
As in this king.

*Ely.* We are blessèd in the change.

*Cant.* Hear him but reason in divinity,  
And, all-admiring, with an inward wish  
You would desire the king were made a prelate :  
Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs,  
You would say, it hath been all-in-all his study :  
List his discourse of war, and you shall hear  
A fearful battle render'd you in music :  
Turn him to any cause of policy,  
The Gordian knot of it he will unloose,  
Familiar as his garter :—that, when he speaks,  
The air, a charter'd libertine, is still,  
And the mute wonder lurketh in men's ears,  
To steal his sweet and honey'd sentences ;  
So that the art and practic part of life  
Must be the mistress to this theoric :  
Which is a wonder how his grace should glean it,  
Since his addiction was to courses vain ;  
His companies unletter'd, rude, and shallow ;  
His hours fill'd up with riots, banquets, sports ;  
And never noted in him any study,

Any retirement, any sequestration  
From open haunts and popularity.

*Ely.* The strawberry grows underneath the nettle,  
And wholesome berries thrive and ripen best  
Neighbour'd by fruit of baser quality :  
And so the prince obscur'd his contemplation  
Under the veil of wildness ; which, no doubt,  
Grew like the summer grass, fastest by night,  
Unseen, yet crescive in his faculty.

*Cant.* It must be so ; for miracles are ceas'd ;  
And therefore we must needs admit the means  
How things are perfected.

*Ely.* But, my good lord,  
How now for mitigation of this bill  
Urg'd by the commons ? Doth his majesty  
Incline to it, or no ?

*Cant.* He seems indifferent ;  
Or, rather, swaying more upon our part  
Than cherishing the exhibitors against us :  
For I have made an offer to his majesty,—  
Upon our spiritual convocation,  
And in regard of causes now in hand,  
Which I have open'd to his grace at large,  
As touching France,—to give a greater sum  
Than ever at one time the clergy yet  
Did to his predecessors part withal.

*Ely.* How did this offer seem receiv'd, my lord ?

*Cant.* With good acceptance of his majesty ;  
Save that there was not time enough to hear  
(As, I perceiv'd, his grace would fain have done)  
The severals and unhidden passages  
Of his true titles to some certain dukedoms,  
And, generally, to the crown and seat of France,  
Deriv'd from Edward, his great-grandfather.

*Ely.* What was the impediment that broke this off ?

*Cant.* The French ambassador upon that instant  
Crav'd audience ;—and the hour, I think, is come  
To give him hearing : is it four o'clock ?

*Ely.* It is.

*Cant.* Then go we in, to know his embassy ;  
Which I could, with a ready guess, declare,  
Before the Frenchman speak a word of it.

*Ely.* I'll wait upon you ; and I long to hear it. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II. *The same. A room of state in the same.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER, WARWICK, WEST-MORELAND, *and* Attendants.

*K. Hen.* Where is my gracious Lord of Canterbury ?

*Exe.* Not here in presence.

*K. Hen.* Send for him, good uncle.

*West.* Shall we call in the ambassador, my liege ?

*K. Hen.* Not yet, my cousin : we would be resolv'd,  
Before we hear him, of some things of weight,  
That task our thoughts, concerning us and France.

*Enter the* Archbishop of CANTERBURY *and the* Bishop of ELY.

*Cant.* God and his angels guard your sacred throne,  
And make you long become it !

*K. Hen.* Sure, we thank you.

My learnéd lord, we pray you to proceed,  
And justly and religiously unfold  
Why the law Salique, that they have in France,  
Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim :  
And God forbid, my dear and faithful lord,  
That you should fashion, wrest, or bow your reading,  
Or nicely charge your understanding soul  
With opening titles miscreate, whose right  
Suits not in native colours with the truth ;  
For God doth know how many, now in health,  
Shall drop their blood in approbation  
Of what your reverence shall incite us to.  
Therefore take heed how you impawn our person,  
How you awake the sleeping sword of war :  
We charge you, in the name of God, take heed ;

For never two such kingdoms did contend  
 Without much fall of blood; whose guiltless drops  
 Are every one a woe, a sore complaint  
 'Gainst him whose wrongs give edge unto the swords  
 That make such waste in brief mortality.  
 Under this conjuration, speak, my lord;  
 For we will hear, note, and believe in heart  
 That what you speak is in your conscience wash'd  
 As pure as sin with baptism.

*Cant.* Then hear me, gracious sovereign,—and you peers,  
 That owe yourselves, your lives, and services  
 To this imperial throne.—There is no bar  
 To make against your highness' claim to France  
 But this, which they produce from Pharamond,—  
*In terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant,*  
 “No woman shall succeed in Salique land :”  
 Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze  
 To be the realm of France, and Pharamond  
 The founder of this law and female bar.  
 Yet their own authors faithfully affirm  
 That the land Salique is in Germany,  
 Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe ;  
 Where Charles the Great, having subdu'd the Saxons,  
 There left behind and settled certain French ;  
 Who, holding in disdain the German women  
 For some dishonest manners of their life,  
 Establish'd then this law,—to wit, no female  
 Should be inheritrix in Salique land :  
 Which Salique, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala,  
 Is at this day in Germany call'd Meisen.  
 Then doth it well appear, the Salique law  
 Was not devisèd for the realm of France :  
 Nor did the French possess the Salique land  
 Until four hundred one and twenty years  
 After defunction of King Pharamond,  
 Idly suppos'd the founder of this law ;  
 Who died within the year of our redemption  
 Four hundred twenty-six ; and Charles the Great  
 Subdu'd the Saxons, and did seat the French



Beyond the river Sala, in the year  
 Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say,  
 King Pepin, which deposed Childerick,  
 Did, as heir general, being descended  
 Of Blithild, which was daughter to King Clothair,  
 Make claim and title to the crown of France.  
 Hugh Capet also,—who usurp'd the crown  
 Of Charles the duke of Lorraine, sole heir male  
 Of the true line and stock of Charles the Great,—  
 To fine his title with some show of truth  
 (Though, in pure truth, it was corrupt and naught),  
 Convey'd himself as heir to the Lady Lingare,  
 Daughter to Charlemain, who was the son  
 To Louis the emperor, and Louis the son  
 Of Charles the Great. Also King Louis the Tenth,  
 Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet,  
 Could not keep quiet in his conscience,  
 Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied  
 That fair Queen Isabel, his grandmother,  
 Was lineal of the Lady Ermengare,  
 Daughter to Charles the foresaid duke of Lorraine:  
 By the which marriage the line of Charles the Great  
 Was re-united to the crown of France.  
 So that, as clear as is the summer's sun,  
 King Pepin's title, and Hugh Capet's claim,  
 King Louis his satisfaction, all appear  
 To hold in right and title of the female:  
 So do the kings of France unto this day;  
 Howbeit they would hold up this Salique law  
 To bar your highness claiming from the female;  
 And rather choose to hide them in a net  
 Than amply to imbar<sup>(1)</sup> their crookèd titles  
 Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

*K. Hen.* May I with right and conscience make this  
 claim?

*Cant.* The sin upon my head, dread sovereign!  
 For in the Book of Numbers is it writ,—  
 When the man<sup>(2)</sup> dies, let the inheritance

Descend unto the daughter. Gracious lord,  
 Stand for your own; unwind your bloody flag;  
 Look back into your mighty ancestors:  
 Go, my dread lord, to your great-grandsire's tomb,  
 From whom you claim; invoke his warlike spirit,  
 And your great-uncle's, Edward the Black Prince,  
 Who on the French ground play'd a tragedy,  
 Making defeat on the full power of France,  
 Whiles his most mighty father on a hill  
 Stood smiling to behold his lion's whelp  
 Forage in blood of French nobility.  
 O noble English, that could entertain  
 With half their forces the full pride of France,  
 And let another half stand laughing by,  
 All out of work and cold for action!

*Ely.* Awake remembrance of these valiant dead,  
 And with your puissant arm renew their feats:  
 You are their heir; you sit upon their throne;  
 The blood and courage that renownèd them  
 Runs in your veins; and my thrice-puissant liege  
 Is in the very May-morn of his youth,  
 Ripe for exploits and mighty enterprises.

*Exe.* Your brother kings and monarchs of the earth  
 Do all expect that you should rouse yourself,  
 As did the former lions of your blood.

*West.* They know your grace hath cause and means and  
 might:—

So hath your highness; never king of England  
 Had nobles richer and more loyal subjects,  
 Whose hearts have left their bodies here in England,  
 And lie pavilion'd in the fields of France.

*Cant.* O, let their bodies follow, my dear liege,  
 With blood and sword and fire to win your right:  
 In aid whereof we of the spirituality  
 Will raise your highness such a mighty sum  
 As never did the clergy at one time  
 Bring in to any of your ancestors.

*K. Hen.* We must not only arm to invade the French,

But lay down our proportions to defend  
Against the Scot, who will make road upon us  
With all advantages.

*Cant.* They of those marches, gracious sovereign,  
Shall be a wall sufficient to defend  
Our inland from the pilfering borderers.

*K. Hen.* We do not mean the coursing snatchers only,  
But fear the main intendment of the Scot,  
Who hath been still a giddy neighbour to us;  
For you shall read that my great-grandfather  
Never went with his forces into France,  
But that the Scot on his unfurnish'd kingdom  
Came pouring, like the tide into a breach,  
With ample and brim fulness of his force;  
Galling the gleanèd land with hot assays,  
Girding with grievous siege castles and towns;  
That England, being empty of defence,  
Hath shook and trembled at the ill neighbourhood.

*Cant.* She hath been then more fear'd than harm'd, my  
liege;

For hear her but exemplèd by herself:—  
When all her chivalry hath been in France,  
And she a mourning widow of her nobles,  
She hath herself not only well defended,  
But taken, and impounded as a stray,  
The King of Scots; whom she did send to France,  
To fill King Edward's fame with prisoner kings,  
And make her chronicle<sup>(3)</sup> as rich with praise  
As is the ooze and bottom of the sea  
With sunken wreck and sunless treasuries.

*West.* But there's a saying, very old and true,—

“If that you will France win,  
Then with Scotland first begin:”

For once the eagle England being in prey,  
To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot  
Comes sneaking, and so sucks her princely eggs;  
Playing the mouse in absence of the cat,  
To tear<sup>(4)</sup> and havoc more than she can eat.

*Exe.* It follows, then, the cat must stay at home:

Yet that is but a crush'd<sup>(5)</sup> necessity,  
 Since we have locks to safeguard necessaries,  
 And pretty traps to catch the petty thieves.  
 While that the armèd hand doth fight abroad,  
 The advisèd head defends itself at home ;  
 For government, though high, and low, and lower,  
 Put into parts, doth keep in one concent,  
 Congreeing in a full and natural close,  
 Like music.

*Cant.* Therefore doth heaven divide  
 The state of man in divers functions,  
 Setting endeavour in continual motion ;  
 To which is fixèd, as an aim or butt,  
 Obedience : for so work the honey-bees ;  
 Creatures that, by a rule in nature, teach  
 The act<sup>(6)</sup> of order to a peopled kingdom.  
 They have a king, and officers of sorts :  
 Where some, like magistrates, correct at home ;  
 Others, like merchants, venture trade abroad ;  
 Others, like soldiers, armèd in their stings,  
 Make boot upon the summer's velvet buds ;  
 Which pillage they with merry march bring home  
 To the tent-royal of their emperor :  
 Who, busied in his majesty, surveys  
 The singing masons building roofs of gold ;  
 The civil citizens kneading-up the honey ;  
 The poor mechanic porters crowding in  
 Their heavy burdens at his narrow gate ;  
 The sad-ey'd justice, with his surly hum,  
 Delivering o'er to éxecutors pale  
 The lazy yawning drone. I this infer,—  
 That many things, having full reference  
 To one concent, may work contrariously :  
 As many arrows, loosèd several ways,  
 Come to one mark ; as many ways meet in one town ;<sup>(7)</sup>  
 As many fresh streams meet in one salt sea ;  
 As many lines close in the dial's centre ;  
 So may a thousand actions, once afoot,  
 End in one purpose, and be all well borne

Without defeat. Therefore to France, my liege.  
 Divide your happy England into four ;  
 Whereof take you one quarter into France,  
 And you withal shall make all Gallia shake.  
 If we, with thrice such powers left at home,  
 Cannot defend our own doors from the dog,  
 Let us be worried, and our nation lose  
 The name of hardiness and policy.

*K. Hen.* Call in the messengers sent from the Dauphin.

[*Exit an Attendant.*]

Now are we well resolv'd ; and, by God's help,  
 And yours, the noble sinews of our power,  
 France being ours, we'll bend it to our awe,  
 Or break it all to pieces : or there we'll sit,  
 Ruling in large and ample empery  
 O'er France and all her almost kingly dukedoms,  
 Or lay these bones in an unworthy urn,  
 Tombless, with no remembrance over them :  
 Either our history shall with full mouth  
 Speak freely of our acts, or else our grave,  
 Like Turkish mute, shall have a tongueless mouth,  
 Not worshipp'd with a waxen epitaph.

*Enter Ambassadors of France.*

Now are we well prepar'd to know the pleasure  
 Of our fair cousin Dauphin ; for we hear  
 Your greeting is from him, not from the king.

*First Amb.* May 't please your majesty to give us leave  
 Freely to render what we have in charge ;  
 Or shall we sparingly show you far off  
 The Dauphin's meaning and our embassy ?

*K. Hen.* We are no tyrant, but a Christian king ;  
 Unto whose grace our passion is as subject  
 As are our wretches fetter'd in our prisons :  
 Therefore with frank and with uncurbèd plainness  
 Tell us the Dauphin's mind.

*First Amb.* Thus, then, in few.  
 Your highness, lately sending into France,  
 Did claim some certain dukedoms, in the right

Of your great predecessor, King Edward the third.  
 In answer of which claim, the prince our master  
 Says, ~~that you savour too much of your youth ;~~  
 And bids you be advis'd, there's naught in France  
 That can be with a nimble galliard won ;—  
 You cannot revel into dukedoms there.  
 He therefore sends you, meeter for your spirit,  
 This tun of treasure ; and, in lieu of this,  
 Desires you let the dukedoms that you claim  
 Hear no more of you. This the Dauphin speaks.

*K. Hen.* What treasure, uncle ?

*Exe.* Tennis-balls, my liege.

*K. Hen.* We are glad the Dauphin is so pleasant with us ;  
 His present and your pains we thank you for :  
 When we have match'd our rackets to these balls,  
 We will, in France, by God's grace, play a set  
 Shall strike his father's crown into the hazard.  
 Tell him he hath made a match with such a wrangler  
 That all the courts of France will be disturb'd  
 With chases. And we understand him well,  
 How he comes o'er us with our wilder days,  
 Not measuring what use we made of them.  
 We never valu'd this poor seat of England ;  
 And therefore, living hence, did give ourself  
 To barbarous license ; as 'tis ever common  
 That men are merriest when they are from home.  
 But tell the Dauphin, I will keep my state ;  
 Be like a king, and show my sail<sup>(6)</sup> of greatness,  
 When I do rouse me in my throne of France :  
 For that I have laid by my majesty,  
 And plodded like a man for working-days ;  
 But I will rise there with so full a glory,  
 That I will dazzle all the eyes of France,  
 Yea, strike the Dauphin blind to look on us.  
 And tell the pleasant prince, this mock of his  
 Hath turn'd his balls to gun-stones ; and his soul  
 Shall stand sore chargèd for the wasteful vengeance  
 That shall fly with them : for many a thousand widows  
 Shall this his mock mock out of their dear husbands ;

Mock mothers from their sons, mock castles down ;  
 And some are yet ungotten and unborn  
 That shall have cause to curse the Dauphin's scorn.  
 But this lies all within the will of God,  
 To whom I do appeal ; and in whose name,  
 Tell you the Dauphin, I am coming on,  
 To venge me as I may, and to put forth  
 My rightful hand in a well-hallow'd cause.  
 So, get you hence in peace ; and tell the Dauphin,  
 His jest will savour but of shallow wit,  
 When thousands weep, more than did laugh at it.—  
 Convey them with safe conduct.—Fare you well.

[*Exeunt Ambassadors.*

*Exe.* This was a merry message.

*K. Hen.* We hope to make the sender blush at it.  
 Therefore, my lords, omit no happy hour  
 That may give furtherance to our expedition ;  
 For we have now no thought in us but France,  
 Save those to God, that run before our business.  
 Therefore let our proportions for these wars  
 Be soon collected, and all things thought upon  
 That may with reasonable<sup>(9)</sup> swiftness add  
 More feathers to our wings ; for, God before,  
 We'll chide this Dauphin at his father's door.  
 Therefore let every man now task his thought,  
 That this fair action may on foot be brought.

*Exeunt.*

---

*Enter Chorus.*

*Chor.* Now all the youth of England are on fire,  
 And silken dalliance in the wardrobe lies :  
 Now thrive the armorers, and honour's thought  
 Reigns solely in the breast of every man :  
 They sell the pasture now to buy the horse ;  
 Following the mirror of all Christian kings,  
 With wingèd heels, as English Mercuries.  
 For now sits Expectation in the air ;

And hides a sword from hilts unto the point  
 With crowns imperial, crowns, and coronets,  
 Promis'd to Harry and his followers.  
 The French, advis'd by good intelligence  
 Of this most dreadful preparation,  
 Shake in their fear; and with pale policy  
 Seek to divert the English purposes.  
 O England!—model to thy inward greatness,  
 Like little body with a mighty heart,—  
 What mightst thou do, that honour would thee do,  
 Were all thy children kind and natural!  
 But see thy fault! France hath in thee found out  
 A nest of hollow bosoms, which he fills  
 With treacherous crowns; and three corrupted men,—  
 One, Richard Earl of Cambridge; and the second,  
 Henry Lord Scroop of Masham; and the third,  
 Sir Thomas Grey, knight, of Northumberland,—  
 Have, for the gilt of France (O guilt indeed!),  
 Confirm'd conspiracy with fearful France;  
 And by their hands this grace of kings must die  
 (If hell and treason hold their promises),  
 Ere he take ship for France, and in Southampton.  
 Linger your patience on; and well digest  
 The abuse of distance, while we force<sup>(10)</sup> a play.  
 The sum is paid; the traitors are agreed;  
 The king is set from London; and the scene  
 Is now transported, gentles, to Southampton,—  
 There is the playhouse now, there must you sit:  
 And thence to France shall we convey you safe,  
 And bring you back, charming the narrow seas  
 To give you gentle pass; for, if we may,  
 We'll not offend one stomach with our play.  
 But, till the king come forth, and not till then,  
 Unto Southampton do we shift our scene.

[*Exit.*]



www.libtool.com  
ACT II.

SCENE I. *London. Before the Boar's-Head Tavern,  
Eastcheap.*

*Enter, severally, NYM and BARDOLPH.*

*Bard.* Well met, Corporal Nym.

*Nym.* Good morrow, Lieutenant Bardolph.

*Bard.* What, are Ancient Pistol and you friends yet?

*Nym.* For my part, I care not: I say little; but when time shall serve, there shall be smiles;<sup>(11)</sup>—but that shall be as it may. I dare not fight; but I will wink, and hold out mine iron: it is a simple one; but what though? it will toast cheese, and it will endure cold as another man's sword will: and there's an end.

*Bard.* I will bestow a breakfast to make you friends; and we'll be all three sworn brothers to France: let't be so, good Corporal Nym.

*Nym.* Faith, I will live so long as I may, that's the certain of it; and when I cannot live any longer, I will do as I may: that is my rest, that is the rendezvous of it.

*Bard.* It is certain, corporal, that he is married to Nell Quickly: and, certainly, she did you wrong; for you were troth-plight to her.

*Nym.* I cannot tell:—things must be as they may: men may sleep, and they may have their throats about them at that time; and, some say, knives have edges. It must be as it may: though patience be a tired mare, yet she will plod. There must be conclusions. Well, I cannot tell.

*Bard.* Here comes Ancient Pistol and his wife:—good corporal, be patient here.

*Enter PISTOL and Hostess.*<sup>(12)</sup>

How now, mine host Pistol!

*Pist.* Base tike, call'st thou me host?

Now, by this hand, I swear, I scorn the term;  
Nor shall my Nell keep lodgers.

*Host.* No, by my troth, not long; for we cannot lodge and board a dozen or fourteen gentlewomen that live honestly

by the prick of their needles, but it will be thought we keep a bawdy-house straight. [*Nym draws his sword.*] O well-a-day, Lady, if he be not drawn! (13) now we shall see wilful adultery and murder committed.

*Bard.* Good lieutenant,—good corporal,—offer nothing here. (14)

*Nym.* Pish!

*Pist.* Pish for thee, Iceland dog! thou prick-ear'd cur of Iceland!

*Host.* Good Corporal Nym, show thy valour, and put up your sword.

*Nym.* Will you shog off? I would have you *solus*.

[*Sheathing his sword.*]

*Pist.* *Solus*, egregious dog? O viper vile!

The *solus* in thy most marvellous face;  
The *solus* in thy teeth, and in thy throat,  
And in thy hateful lungs, yea, in thy maw, perdy,  
And, which is worse, within thy nasty mouth!  
I do retort the *solus* in thy bowels;  
For I can take, and Pistol's cock is up,  
And flashing fire will follow.

*Nym.* I am not Barbason; you cannot conjure me. I have an humour to knock you indifferently well. If you grow foul with me, Pistol, I will scour you with my rapier, as I may, in fair terms: if you would walk off, I would prick your guts a little, in good terms, as I may: and that's the humour of it.

*Pist.* O braggart vile, and damnèd furious wight!

The grave doth gape, and doting death is near;  
Therefore exhale.

[*Pistol and Nym draw.*]

*Bard.* Hear me, hear me what I say:—he that strikes the first stroke, I'll run him up to the hilts, as I am a soldier.

[*Draws.*]

*Pist.* An oath of mickle might; and fury shall abate.—  
Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give:  
Thy spirits are most tall.

*Nym.* I will cut thy throat, one time or other, in fair terms: that is the humour of it.

*Pist.* *Coupe la gorge!*

That is the word. I thee defy again.

O hound of Crete, think'st thou my spouse to get?

No ; to the spital go,  
 And from the powdering-tub of infamy  
 Fetch forth the lazar kite of Cressid's kind,  
 Doll Tearsheet she by name, and her espouse :  
 I have, and I will hold, the *quondam* Quickly  
 For the only she ; and—*Pauca*, there's enough.  
 Go to.

*Enter the Boy.*

*Boy.* Mine host Pistol, you must come to my master,—  
 and you,<sup>(15)</sup> hostess :—he is very sick, and would to bed.—  
 Good Bardolph, put thy face between his sheets, and do the  
 office of a warming-pan.—Faith, he's very ill.

*Bard.* Away, you rogue !

*Host.* By my troth, he'll yield the crow a pudding one  
 of these days : the king has killed his heart.—Good husband,  
 come home presently. [*Exeunt Hostess and Boy.*

*Bard.* Come, shall I make you two friends ? We must  
 to France together : why the devil should we keep knives to  
 cut one another's throats ?

*Pist.* Let floods o'erswell, and fiends for food howl on !

*Nym.* You'll pay me the eight shillings I won of you at  
 betting ?

*Pist.* Base is the slave that pays.

*Nym.* That now I will have : that's the humour of it.

*Pist.* As manhood shall compound : push home.

[*Pistol and Nym draw.*

*Bard.* By this sword, he that makes the first thrust, I'll  
 kill him ; by this sword, I will.

*Pist.* Sword is an oath, and oaths must have their course.

*Bard.* Corporal Nym, an thou wilt be friends, be friends :  
 an thou wilt not, why, then, be enemies with me too. Pri-  
 thee, put up.

*Nym.* I shall have my eight shillings I won of you at  
 betting ?

*Pist.* A noble shalt thou have, and present pay ;  
 And liquor likewise will I give to thee,  
 And friendship shall combine, and brotherhood :  
 I'll live by Nym, and Nym shall live by me ;—  
 Is not this just ?—for I shall sutler be

Unto the camp, and profits will accrue.  
Give me thy hand.

*Nym.* I shall have my noble?

*Pist.* In cash most justly paid.

*Nym.* Well, then, that's the humour of it.

*Re-enter Hostess.*

*Host.* As ever you came<sup>(16)</sup> of women, come in quickly to Sir John. Ah, poor heart! he is so shaked of a burning quotidian tertian, that it is most lamentable to behold. Sweet men, come to him.

*Nym.* The king hath run bad humours on the knight, that's the even of it.

*Pist.* Nym, thou hast spoke the right;  
His heart is fracted and corroborate.

*Nym.* The king is a good king: but it must be as it may; he passes some humours and careers.

*Pist.* Let us condole the knight; for, lambkins, we will live.

SCENE II. *Southampton. A council-chamber.*

*Enter EXETER, BEDFORD, and WESTMORELAND.*

*Bed.* 'Fore God, his grace is bold, to trust these traitors.

*Exe.* They shall be apprehended by and by.

*West.* How smooth and even they do bear themselves!  
As if allegiance in their bosoms sat,  
Crownèd with faith and constant loyalty.

*Bed.* The king hath note of all that they intend,  
By interception which they dream not of.

*Exe.* Nay, but the man that was his bedfellow,  
Whom he hath dull'd and cloy'd with gracious favours,—  
That he should, for a foreign purse, so sell  
His sovereign's life to death and treachery!

*Trumpets sound. Enter King HENRY, SCROOP, CAMBRIDGE, GREY,  
Lords, and Attendants.*

*K. Hen.* Now sits the wind fair, and we will aboard.  
My Lord of Cambridge,—and my kind Lord of Masham,—  
And you, my gentle knight,—give me your thoughts:  
Think you not, that the powers we bear with us

Will cut their passage through the force of France,  
 Doing the execution and the act  
 For which we have in head assembled them ?

*Scroop.* No doubt, my liege, if each man do his best.

*K. Hen.* I doubt not that ; since we are well persuaded  
 We carry not a heart with us from hence  
 That grows not in a fair concert with ours,  
 Nor leave not one behind that doth not wish  
 Success and conquest to attend on us.

*Cam.* Never was monarch better fear'd and lov'd  
 Than is your majesty : there's not, I think, a subject  
 That sits in heart-grief and uneasiness  
 Under the sweet shade of your government.

*Grey.* True : those that were your father's enemies  
 Have steep'd their galls in honey, and do serve you  
 With hearts create of duty and of zeal.

*K. Hen.* We therefore have great cause of thankfulness ;  
 And shall forget the office of our hand,  
 Sooner than quittance of desert and merit  
 According to the weight and worthiness.

*Scroop.* So service shall with steelèd sinews toil,  
 And labour shall refresh itself with hope,  
 To do your grace incessant services.

*K. Hen.* We judge no less.—Uncle of Exeter,  
 Enlarge the man committed yesterday,  
 That rail'd against our person : we consider  
 It was excess of wine that set him on ;  
 And, on his more advice, we pardon him.

*Scroop.* That's mercy, but too much security :  
 Let him be punish'd, sovereign ; lest example  
 Breed, by his sufferance, more of such a kind.

*K. Hen.* O, let us yet be merciful.

*Cam.* So may your highness, and yet punish too.

*Grey.* Sir,  
 You show great mercy, if you give him life,  
 After the taste of much correction.

*K. Hen.* Alas, your too much love and care of me  
 Are heavy orisons 'gainst this poor wretch !  
 If little faults, proceeding on distemper,

Shall not be wink'd at, how shall we stretch our eye  
 When capital crimes, chew'd, swallow'd, and digested,  
 Appear before us?—We'll yet enlarge that man,  
 Though Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey, in their dear care  
 And tender preservation of our person,  
 Would have him punish'd. And now to our French causes :  
 Who are the late commissioners ?

*Cam.* I one, my lord :

Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.

*Scroop.* So did you me, my liege.

*Grey.* And me,<sup>(17)</sup> my royal sovereign.

*K. Hen.* Then, Richard Earl of Cambridge, there is  
 yours ;—

There yours, Lord Scroop of Masham ;—and, sir knight,  
 Grey of Northumberland, this same is yours :—  
 Read them ; and know, I know your worthiness.—  
 My Lord of Westmoreland,—and uncle Exeter,—  
 We will aboard to-night.—Why, how now, gentlemen !  
 What see you in those papers, that you lose  
 So much complexion ?—Look ye, how they change !  
 Their cheeks are paper.—Why, what read you there,  
 That hath so cowarded and chas'd your blood  
 Out of appearance ?

*Cam.* I do confess my fault ;  
 And do submit me to your highness' mercy.

*Grey.* } To which we all appeal.  
*Scroop.* }

*K. Hen.* The mercy that was quick in us but late,  
 By your own counsel is suppress'd and kill'd :  
 You must not dare, for shame, to talk of mercy ;  
 For your own reasons turn into your bosoms,  
 As dogs upon their masters, worrying you.—  
 See you, my princes and my noble peers,  
 These English monsters ! My Lord of Cambridge here,—  
 You know how apt our love was to accord  
 To furnish him with all appertinents  
 Belonging to his honour ; and this man  
 Hath, for a few light crowns, lightly conspir'd,  
 And sworn unto the practices of France,

To kill us here in Hampton : to the which  
This knight, no less for bounty bound to us  
Than Cambridge is, hath likewise sworn.—But, O,  
What shall I say to thee, Lord Scroop ? thou cruel,  
Ingrateful, savage, and inhuman creature !  
Thou that didst bear the key of all my counsels,  
That knew'st the very bottom of my soul,  
That almost mightst have coin'd me into gold,  
Wouldst thou have practis'd on me for thy use,—  
May it be possible, that foreign hire  
Could out of thee extract one spark of evil  
That might annoy my finger ? 'tis so strange,  
That, though the truth of it stands off as gross  
As black from white, my eye will scarcely see it.  
Treason and murder ever kept together,  
As two yoke-devils sworn to either's purpose,  
Working so grossly in a natural cause,  
That admiration did not whoop at them :  
But thou, 'gainst all proportion, didst bring in  
Wonder to wait on treason and on murder :  
And whatsoever cunning fiend it was  
That wrought upon thee so preposterously,  
Hath got the voice in hell for excellence :  
And other devils, that suggest by treasons,  
Do botch and bungle up damnation  
With patches, colours, and with forms being fetch'd  
From glistening semblances of piety ;  
But he that temper'd thee bade thee stand up,  
Gave thee no instance why thou shouldst do treason,  
Unless to dub thee with the name of traitor.  
If that same demon that hath gull'd thee thus  
Should with his lion-gait walk the whole world,  
He might return to vasty Tartar back,  
And tell the legions, " I can never win  
A soul so easy as that Englishman's."  
O, how hast thou with jealousy infected  
The sweetness of affiancè ! Show men dutiful ?  
Why, so didst thou : seem they grave and learnèd ?  
Why, so didst thou : come they of noble family ?

Why, so didst thou : seem they religious ?  
 Why, so didst thou : or are they spare in diet ;  
 Free from gross passion, or of mirth or anger ;  
 Constant in spirit, not swerving with the blood ;  
 Garnish'd and deck'd in modest compliment ;<sup>(18)</sup>  
 Not working with the eye without the ear,  
 And but in purgèd judgment trusting neither ?  
 Such and so finely bolted didst thou seem :  
 And thus thy fall hath left a kind of blot,  
 To mark the<sup>(19)</sup> full-fraught man and best indu'd  
 With some suspicion. I will weep for thee ;  
 For this revolt of thine, methinks, is like  
 Another fall of man.—Their faults are open :  
 Arrest them to the answer of the law ;—  
 And God acquit them of their practices !

*Exe.* I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Richard Earl of Cambridge.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Henry Lord Scroop of Masham.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Thomas Grey, knight, of Northumberland.

*Scroop.* Our purposes God justly hath discover'd ;  
 And I repent my fault more than my death ;  
 Which I beseech your highness to forgive,  
 Although my body pay the price of it.

*Cam.* For me,—the gold of France did not seduce ;  
 Although I did admit it as a motive  
 The sooner to effect what I intended :  
 But God be thankèd for prevention ;  
 Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,  
 Beseeching God and you to pardon me.

*Grey.* Never did faithful subject more rejoice  
 At the discovery of most dangerous treason  
 Than I do at this hour joy o'er myself,  
 Prevented from a damnèd enterprise :  
 My fault, but not my body, pardon, sovereign.

*K. Hen.* God quit you in his mercy ! Hear your sentence.

You have conspir'd against our royal person,



Join'd with an enemy proclaim'd, and from his coffers  
 Receiv'd the golden earnest of our death ;  
 Wherein you would have sold your king to slaughter,  
 His princes and his peers to servitude,  
 His subjects to oppression and contempt,  
 And his whole kingdom into desolation.  
 Touching our person, seek we no revenge ;  
 But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,  
 Whose ruin you have sought, that to her laws  
 We do deliver you. Get you, therefore, hence,  
 Poor miserable wretches, to your death :  
 The taste whereof, God of his mercy give  
 You patience to endure, and true repentance  
 Of all your dear offences !—Bear them hence.

[*Exeunt Conspirators, guarded.*]

Now, lords, for France ; the enterprise whereof  
 Shall be to you, as us, like glorious.

We doubt not of a fair and lucky war :  
 Since God so graciously hath brought to light  
 This dangerous treason, lurking in our way  
 To hinder our beginnings, we doubt not now  
 But every rub is smoothèd on our way.  
 Then, forth, dear countrymen : let us deliver  
 Our puissance into the hand of God,  
 Putting it straight in expedition.  
 Cheerly to sea ; the signs of war advance :  
 No king of England, if not king of France.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *London. Before the Boar's-head Tavern,  
 Eastcheap.*

*Enter* PISTOL, Hostess, NYM, BARDOLPH, and Boy.

*Host.* Prithee, honey-sweet husband, let me bring thee to  
 Staines.

*Pist.* No ; for my manly heart doth yearn.—  
 Bardolph, be blithe ;—Nym, rouse thy vaunting veins ;—

Boy, bristle thy courage up ;—for Falstaff he is dead,  
And we must yearn therefore.

*Bard.* Would I were with him, wheresome'er he is, either  
in heaven or in hell!

*Host.* Nay, sure, he's not in hell : he's in Arthur's bosom, if ever man went to Arthur's bosom. 'A made a finer end, and went away, an it had been any christom child ; 'a parted even just between twelve and one, even at the turning o' the tide : for after I saw him fumble with the sheets, and play with flowers, and smile upon his fingers' ends, I knew there was but one way ; for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and 'a babbled of green fields.<sup>(30)</sup> "How now, Sir John!" quoth I : "what, man ! be o' good cheer." So 'a cried out—"God, God, God!" three or four times. Now I, to comfort him, bid him 'a should not think of God ; I hoped there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet. So 'a bade me lay more clothes on his feet : I put my hand into the bed and felt them, and they were as cold as any stone ; then I felt to his knees, and so upward and upward, and all was as cold as any stone.

*Nym.* They say he cried out of sack.

*Host.* Ay, that 'a did.

*Bard.* And of women.

*Host.* Nay, that 'a did not.

*Boy.* Yes, that 'a did ; and said they were devils incarnate.

*Host.* 'A could never abide carnation ; 'twas a colour he never liked.

*Boy.* 'A said once, the devil would have him about women.

*Host.* 'A did in some sort, indeed, handle women ; but then he was rheumatic, and talked of the whore of Babylon.

*Boy.* Do you not remember, 'a saw a flea stick upon Bardolph's nose, and 'a said it was a black soul burning in hell ?

*Bard.* Well, the fuel is gone that maintained that fire : that's all the riches I got in his service.

*Nym.* Shall we shog ? the king will be gone from Southampton.

*Pist.* Come, let's away.—My love, give me thy lips.  
 Look to my chattels and my movables:  
 Let senses rule, the word is, Pitch and pay;  
 Trust none;  
 For oaths are straws, men's faiths are wafer-cakes,  
 And hold-fast is the only dog, my duck:  
 Therefore, *caveto* be thy counsellor.  
 Go, clear thy crystals.—Yoke-fellows in arms,  
 Let us to France; like horse-leeches, my boys,  
 To suck, to suck, the very blood to suck!

*Boy.* And that 's but unwholesome food, they say.

*Pist.* Touch her soft mouth, and march.

*Bard.* Farewell, hostess. [Kissing her.

*Nym.* I cannot kiss, that is the humour of it; but, adieu.

*Pist.* Let housewifery appear: keep close, I thee command.

*Host.* Farewell; adieu. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV. *France. A room in the French King's palace.*

*Flourish.* Enter the French King, attended; the Dauphin, the Duke of BURGUNDY, the Constable, and others.

*Fr. King.* Thus come the English with full power upon us;  
 And more than carefully it us concerns  
 To answer royally in our defences.  
 Therefore the Dukes of Berri and of Bretagne,  
 Of Brabant and of Orleans, shall make forth,—  
 And you, Prince Dauphin,—with all swift dispatch,  
 To line and new repair our towns of war  
 With men of courage and with means defendant;  
 For England his approaches makes as fierce  
 As waters to the sucking of a gulf.  
 It fits us, then, to be as provident  
 As fear may teach us, out of late examples  
 Left by the fatal and neglected English  
 Upon our fields.

*Dau.* My most redoubted father,  
 It is most meet we arm us 'gainst the foe;

For peace itself should not so dull a kingdom  
 (Though war nor no known quarrel were in question),  
 But that defences, musters, preparations,  
 Should be maintain'd, assembled, and collected,  
 As were a war in expectation.

Therefore, I say 'tis meet we all go forth  
 To view the sick and feeble parts of France :  
 And let us do it with no show of fear ;  
 No, with no more than if we heard that England  
 Were busied with a Whitsun morris-dance :  
 For, my good liege, she is so idly king'd,  
 Her sceptre so fantastically borne  
 By a vain, giddy, shallow, humorous youth,  
 That fear attends her not.

*Con.* O peace, Prince Dauphin !

You are too much mistaken in this king :  
 Question your grace the late ambassadors,—  
 With what great state he heard their embassy,  
 How well supplied with noble counsellors,  
 How modest in exception, and withal  
 How terrible in constant resolution,—  
 And you shall find his vanities forespent  
 Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,  
 Covering discretion with a coat of folly ;  
 As gardeners do with ordure hide those roots  
 That shall first spring and be most delicate.

*Dau.* Well, 'tis not so, my lord high-constable ;  
 But though we think it so, it is no matter :  
 In cases of defence 'tis best to weigh  
 The enemy more mighty than he seems :  
 So the proportions of defence are fill'd ;  
 Which, of a weak and niggardly projection,  
 Doth, like a miser, spoil his coat with scanting  
 A little cloth.

*Fr. King.* Think we King Harry strong ;  
 And, princes, look you strongly arm to meet him.  
 The kindred of him hath been flesh'd upon us ;  
 And he is bred out of that bloody strain  
 That haunted us in our familiar paths :

Witness our too-much memorable shame  
 When Cressy battle fatally was struck,  
 And all our princes captiv'd by the hand  
 Of that black name, Edward, Black Prince of Wales ;  
 Whiles that his mountain<sup>(21)</sup> sire,—on mountain standing,  
 Up in the air, crown'd with the golden sun,—  
 Saw his heroical seed, and smil'd to see him,  
 Mangle the work of nature, and deface  
 The patterns that by God and by French fathers  
 Had twenty years been made. This is a stem  
 Of that victorious stock ; and let us fear  
 The native mightiness and fate of him.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* Ambassadors from Harry King of England  
 Do crave admittance to your majesty.

*Fr. King.* We'll give them present audience. Go, and  
 bring them.

*[Exeunt Messenger and certain Lords.]*

You see this chase is hotly follow'd, friends.

*Dau.* Turn head, and stop pursuit ; for coward dogs  
 Most spend their mouths, when what they seem to threaten  
 Runs far before them. Good my sovereign,  
 Take up the English short ; and let them know  
 Of what a monarchy you are the head :  
 Self-love, my liege, is not so vile a sin  
 As self-neglecting.

*Re-enter Lords, with EXETER and train.*

*Fr. King.* From our brother England ?<sup>(22)</sup>

*Exe.* From him ; and thus he greets your majesty.

He wills you, in the name of God Almighty,  
 That you divest yourself, and lay apart  
 The borrow'd glories, that, by gift of heaven,  
 By law of nature and of nations, 'long  
 To him and to his heirs ; namely, the crown,  
 And all wide-stretchèd honours that pertain,  
 By custom and the ordinance of times,  
 Unto the crown of France. That you may know

'Tis no sinister nor no awkward claim,  
 Pick'd from the worm-holes of long-vanish'd days,  
 Nor from the dust of old oblivion rak'd,  
 He sends you this most memorable line, [Gives a paper.  
 In every branch truly demonstrative ;  
 Willing you overlook this pedigree :  
 And when you find him evenly deriv'd  
 From his most fam'd of famous ancestors,  
 Edward the third, he bids you then resign  
 Your crown and kingdom, indirectly held  
 From him the native and true challenger.

*Fr. King.* Or else what follows ?

*Exe.* Bloody constraint ; for if you hide the crown  
 Even in your hearts, there will he rake for it :  
 Therefore<sup>(23)</sup> in fierce tempest is he coming,  
 In thunder and in earthquake, like a Jove  
 (That, if requiring fail, he will compel) ;  
 And bids you, in the bowels of the Lord,  
 Deliver up the crown ; and to take mercy  
 On the poor souls for whom this hungry war  
 Opens his vasty jaws : and on your head  
 Turning the widows' tears, the orphans' cries,  
 The dead men's blood, the pining maidens' groans,  
 For husbands, fathers, and betrothèd lovers,  
 That shall be swallow'd in this controversy.  
 This is his claim, his threatening, and my message ;  
 Unless the Dauphin be in presence here,  
 To whom expressly I bring greeting too.<sup>(24)</sup>

*Fr. King.* For us, we will consider of this further :  
 To-morrow shall you bear our full intent  
 Back to our brother England.

*Dau.* For the Dauphin,  
 I stand here for him : what to him from England ?

*Exe.* Scorn and defiance ; slight regard, contempt,  
 And any thing that may not misbecome  
 The mighty sender, doth he prize you at.  
 Thus says my king : an if your father's highness  
 Do not, in grant of all demands at large,  
 Sweeten the bitter mock you sent his majesty,

He'll call you to so hot an answer of it,  
That caves and womby vaultages of France  
Shall chide your trespass, and return your mock  
In second accent of his ordnance.

*Dau.* Say, if my father render fair return,  
It is against my will ; for I desire  
Nothing but odds with England : to that end,  
As matching to his youth and vanity,  
I did present him with the Paris balls.

*Exe.* He'll make your Paris Louvre shake for it,  
Were it the mistress-court of mighty Europe :  
And, be assur'd, you'll find a difference  
(As we, his subjects, have in wonder found)  
Between the promise of his greener days  
And these he masters now : now he weighs time,  
Even to the utmost grain :—that you shall read  
In your own losses, if he stay in France.

*Fr. King.* To-morrow shall you know our mind at full.

*Exe.* Dispatch us with all speed, lest that our king  
Come here himself to question our delay ;  
For he is footed in this land already.

*Fr. King.* You shall be soon dispatch'd with fair condi-  
tions :

A night is but small breath and little pause  
To answer matters of this consequence. [*Flourish.* *Exeunt.*]

---

*Enter Chorus.*

*Chor.* Thus with imagin'd wing our swift scene flies,  
In motion of no less celerity  
Than that of thought. Suppose that you have seen  
The well-appointed king at Hamptoh<sup>(26)</sup> pier  
Embark his royalty ; and his brave fleet  
With silken streamers the young Phœbus fanning :  
Play with your fancies ; and in them behold  
Upon the hempen tackle ship-boys climbing ;  
Hear the shrill whistle which doth order give  
To sounds confus'd ; behold the threaden sails,

Borne with the invisible and creeping wind,  
 Draw the huge bottoms through the furrow'd sea,  
 Breasting the lofty surge: O, do but think  
 You stand upon the rivage, and behold  
 A city on the inconstant billows dancing;  
 For so appears this fleet majestical,  
 Holding due course to Harfleur. Follow, follow!  
 Grapple your minds to sternage of this navy;  
 And leave your England, as dead midnight still,  
 Guarded with grandsires, babies, and old women,  
 Either past, or not arriv'd to, pith and puissance;  
 For who is he, whose chin is but enrich'd  
 With one appearing hair, that will not follow  
 These cull'd and choice-drawn cavaliers to France?  
 Work, work your thoughts, and therein see a siege;  
 Behold the ordnance on their carriages,  
 With fatal mouths gaping on girded Harfleur.  
 Suppose the ambassador from the French comes back;  
 Tells Harry that the king doth offer him  
 Katharine his daughter; and with her, to dowry,  
 Some petty and unprofitable dukedoms.  
 The offer likes not: and the nimble gunner  
 With linstock now the devilish cannon touches,  
 [*Alarum, and chambers go off, within.*  
 And down goes all before them. Still be kind,  
 And eke out our performance with your mind. [*Exit.*

---

### ACT III.

#### SCENE I. *France. Before Harfleur.*

*Alarums. Enter King HENRY, EXETER, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, and Soldiers, with scaling-ladders.*

*K. Hen.* Once more unto the breach, dear friends, once  
 more;  
 Or close the wall up with our English dead!  
 In peace there's nothing so becomes a man



As modest stillness and humility :  
 But when the blast of war blows in our ears,  
 Then imitate the action of the tiger ;  
 Stiffen the sinews, summon<sup>(26)</sup> up the blood,  
 Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage ;  
 Then lend the eye a terrible aspect ;  
 Let it pry through the portage of the head  
 Like the brass cannon ; let the brow o'erwhelm it  
 As fearfully as doth a gallèd rock  
 O'erhang and jutty his confounded base,  
 Swill'd with the wild and wasteful ocean.  
 Now set the teeth, and stretch the nostril wide ;  
 Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit  
 To his full height !—On, on, you noble<sup>(27)</sup> English,  
 Whose blood is fet from fathers of war-proof !—  
 Fathers that, like so many Alexanders,  
 Have in these parts from morn till even fought,  
 And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument :—  
 Dishonour not your mothers ; now attest  
 That those whom you call'd fathers did beget you !  
 Be copy now to men of grosser blood,  
 And teach them how to war !—And you, good yeomen,  
 Whose limbs were made in England, show us here  
 The mettle of your pasture ; let us swear  
 That you are worth your breeding : which I doubt not ;  
 For there is none of you so mean and base,  
 That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.  
 I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips,  
 Straining upon the start. The game's afoot :  
 Follow your spirit ; and, upon this charge,  
 Cry—God for Harry ! England ! and Saint George !

[*Exeunt. Alarum, and chambers go off, within.*

*Enter* NYM, BARDOLPH, PISTOL, and Boy.

*Bard.* On, on, on, on, on ! to the breach, to the breach !

*Nym.* Pray thee, corporal,<sup>(28)</sup> stay : the knocks are too hot ; and, for mine own part, I have not a case of lives : the humour of it is too hot, that is the very plain-song of it.

*Pist.* The plain-song is most just; for humours do  
abound:

*Knocks*(<sup>29</sup>) go and come; God's vassals drop and die;  
And sword and shield,  
In bloody field,  
Doth win immortal fame.

*Boy.* Would I were in an alehouse in London! I would  
give all my fame for a pot of ale and safety.

*Pist.* And I:

If wishes would prevail with me,  
My purpose should not fail with me,  
But thither would I hie.

*Boy.* As duly, but not as truly,  
As bird doth sing on bough.

*Enter FLUELLEN.*

*Flu.* Up to the preach,<sup>(30)</sup> you dogs! avaunt, you cul-  
lions! [*Driving them forward.*]

*Pist.* Be merciful, great duke, to men of mould!  
Abate thy rage, abate thy manly rage!  
Abate thy rage, great duke!  
Good bawcock, bate thy rage! use lenity, sweet chuck!

*Nym.* These be good humours!—your honour wins bad  
humours.

[*Exeunt Nym, Pistol, and Bardolph, followed  
by Fluellen.*]

*Boy.* As young as I am, I have observed these three  
swashers. I am boy to them all three: but all they three,  
though they would serve me, could not be man to me; for,  
indeed, three such antics do not amount to a man. For  
Bardolph,—he is white-livered and red-faced; by the means  
whereof 'a faces it out, but fights not. For Pistol,—he hath  
a killing tongue and a quiet sword; by the means whereof  
'a breaks words, and keeps whole weapons. For Nym,—he  
hath heard that men of few words are the best men; and  
therefore he scorns to say his prayers, lest 'a should be  
thought a coward: but his few bad words are matched with  
as few good deeds; for 'a never broke any man's head but his  
own, and that was against a post when he was drunk. They

will steal any thing, and call it purchase. Bardolph stole a lute-case, bore it twelve leagues, and sold it for three-half-pence. Nym and Bardolph are sworn brothers in filching; and in Calais they stole a fire-shovel: I knew by that piece of service the men would carry coals. They would have me as familiar with men's pockets as their gloves or their handkerchers: which makes much against my manhood, if I should take from another's pocket to put into mine; for it is plain pocketing-up of wrongs. I must leave them, and seek some better service: their villany goes against my weak stomach, and therefore I must cast it up. [*Exit.*]

*Re-enter FLUELLEN, GOWER following.*

*Gow.* Captain Fluellen, you must come presently to the mines; the Duke of Gloster would speak with you.

*Flu.* To the mines! tell you the duke, it is not so goot to come to the mines; for, look you, the mines is not according to the disciplines of the war: the concavities of it is not sufficient; for, look you, th' athversary (you may discuss unto the duke, look you) is digt himself four yard under the countermines: by Cheshu, I think 'a will plow up all, if there is not better directions.

*Gow.* The Duke of Gloster, to whom the order of the siege is given, is altogether directed by an Irishman,—a very valiant gentleman, i' faith.

*Flu.* It is Captain Macmorris, is it not?

*Gow.* I think it be.

*Flu.* By Cheshu, he is an ass, as in the 'orld: I will verify as much in his peard: he has no more directions in the true disciplines of the wars, look you, of the Roman disciplines, than is a puppy-dog.

*Gow.* Here 'a comes; and the Scots captain, Captain Jamy, with him.

*Flu.* Captain Jamy is a marvellous falorous gentleman, that is certain; and of great expedition and knowledge in the auncient wars, upon my particular knowledge of his directions: by Cheshu, he will maintain his argument as well as any military man in the 'orld, in the disciplines of the pristine wars of the Romans.

*Enter MACMORRIS and JAMY.*

*Jamy.* I say gud-day, Captain Fluellen.

*Flu.* God-den to your worship, goot Captain Jamy.

*Gow.* How now, Captain Macmorris! have you quit the mines? have the pioners given o'er?

*Mac.* By Chrish la, tish ill done: the work ish give over, the trumpet sound the retreat. By my hand, I swear, and my father's soul, the work ish ill done; it ish give over: I would have blowed up the town, so Chrish save me, la, in an hour: O, tish ill done, tish ill done; by my hand, tish ill done!

*Flu.* Captain Macmorris, I peseech you now, will you voutsafe me, look you, a few disputations with you, as partly touching or concerning the disciplines of the war, the Roman wars, in the way of argument, look you, and friendly communication; partly to satisfy my opinion, and partly for the satisfaction, look you, of my mind, as touching the direction of the military discipline; that is the point.

*Jamy.* It sall be vary gud, gud feith, gud captains bath: and I sall quit you with gud leve, as I may pick occasion; that sall I, mary.

*Mac.* It is no time to discourse, so Chrish save me: the day is hot, and the weather, and the wars, and the king, and the dukes: it is no time to discourse. The town is beseeched, and the trumpet call us to the breach; and we talk, and, by Chrish, do nothing: 'tis shame for us all: so God sa' me, 'tis shame to stand still; it is shame, by my hand: and there is throats to be cut, and works to be done; and there ish nothing done, so Chrish sa' me, la.

*Jamy.* By the mess, ere theise eyes of mine take themselves to slumber, aile do gud service, or aile lig i' the grund for it; ay, or go to death; and aile pay 't as valorously as I may, that sall I suerly do, that is the breff and the long. Mary, I wad full fain heard some question 'tween you 'tway.

*Flu.* Captain Macmorris, I think, look you, under your correction, there is not many of your nation,—

*Mac.* Of my nation! What ish my nation? what ish my

nation? Who talks of my nation ish a villain, and a basterd, and a knave, and a rascal.<sup>(31)</sup>

*Flu.* Look you, if you take the matter otherwise than is meant, Captain Macmorris, peradventure I shall think you do not use me with that affability as in discretion you ought to use me, look you; being as goot a man as yourself, both in the disciplines of war, and in the derivation of my birth, and in other particularities.

*Mac.* I do not know you so good a man as myself: so Chrish save me, I will cut off your head.

*Gow.* Gentlemen both, you will mistake each other.

*Jamy.* Au! that's a foul fault.

[*A parley sounded.*

*Gow.* The town sounds a parley.

*Flu.* Captain Macmorris, when there is more petter opportunity to be required, look you, I will be so pold as to tell you I know the disciplines of war; and there is an end.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The same. Before the gates of Harfleur.*

*The Governor and some Citizens on the walls; the English forces below. Enter King HENRY and his train.*

*K. Hen.* How yet resolves the governor of the town?  
 This is the latest parle we will admit:  
 Therefore, to our best mercy give yourselves;  
 Or, like to men proud of destruction,  
 Defy us to our worst: for, as I am a soldier  
 (A name that, in my thoughts, becomes me best),  
 If I begin the battery once again,  
 I will not leave the half-achievèd Harfleur  
 Till in her ashes she lie burièd.  
 The gates of mercy shall be all shut up;  
 And the flesh'd soldier,—rough and hard of heart,—  
 In liberty of bloody hand shall range  
 With conscience wide as hell; mowing like grass  
 Your fresh-fair virgins and your flowering infants.  
 What is it then to me, if impious war,—

Array'd in flames, like to the prince of fiends,—  
 Do, with his smirch'd complexion, all fell feats  
 Enlink'd to waste and desolation?  
 What is't to me, when you yourselves are cause,  
 If your pure maidens fall into the hand  
 Of hot and forcing violation?  
 What rein can hold licentious wickedness  
 When down the hill he holds his fierce career?  
 We may as bootless spend our vain command  
 Upon the enraged soldiers in their spoil,  
 As send præcepts to the Leviathan  
 To come ashore. Therefore, you men of Harfleur,  
 Take pity of your town and of your people,  
 Whiles yet my soldiers are in my command;  
 Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace  
 O'erblows the filthy and contagious clouds  
 Of heady<sup>(32)</sup> murder, spoil, and villany.  
 If not, why, in a moment, look to see  
 The blind and bloody soldier with foul hand  
 Defile the locks of your shrill-shrieking daughters;  
 Your fathers taken by the silver beards,  
 And their most reverend heads dash'd to the walls;  
 Your naked infants spitted upon pikes,  
 Whiles the mad mothers with their howls confus'd  
 Do break the clouds, as did the wives of Jewry  
 At Herod's bloody-hunting slaughtermen.  
 What say you? will you yield, and this avoid?  
 Or, guilty in defence, be thus destroy'd?

*Gov.* Our expectation hath this day an end:  
 The Dauphin, whom of succour we entreated,  
 Returns us, that his powers are yet not ready  
 To raise so great a siege. Therefore, great<sup>(33)</sup> king,  
 We yield our town and lives to thy soft mercy.  
 Enter our gates; dispose of us and ours;  
 For we no longer are defensible.

*K. Hen.* Open your gates.—Come, uncle Exeter,  
 Go you and enter Harfleur; there remain,  
 And fortify it strongly 'gainst the French:  
 Use mercy to them all. For us, dear uncle,—

The winter coming on, and sickness growing  
 Upon our soldiers,—we will retire to Calais.  
 To-night in Harfleur will we be your guest;  
 To-morrow for the march are we address.

[*Flourish. The King, &c. enter the town.*]

SCENE III. Rouen. A room in the palace.

*Enter KATHARINE and ALICE.*

*Kath. Alice, tu as été en Angleterre, et tu parles bien le langage.*

*Alice. Un peu, madame.*

*Kath. Je te prie m'enseignes; il faut que j'apprenne à parler. Comment appelez-vous la main en Anglais?*

*Alice. La main? elle est appelée de hand.*

*Kath. De hand. Et les doigts?*

*Alice. Les doigts? ma foi, j'oublie les doigts; mais je me souviendrai. Les doigts? je pense qu'ils sont appelés de fingres; oui, de fingres.*

*Kath. La main, de hand; les doigts, de fingres. Je pense que je suis le bon écolier; j'ai gagné deux mots d'Anglais vite. Comment appelez-vous les ongles?*

*Alice. Les ongles? les appelons de nails.*

*Kath. De nails. Ecoutez; dites-moi, si je parle bien: de hand, de fingres, et de nails.*

*Alice. C'est bien dit, madame; il est fort bon Anglais.*

*Kath. Dites-moi l'Anglais pour le bras.*

*Alice. De arm, madame.*

*Kath. Et le coude?*

*Alice. De elbow.*

*Kath. De elbow. Je m'en fais la répétition de tous les mots que vous m'avez appris dès à présent.*

*Alice. Il est trop difficile, madame, comme je pense.*

*Kath. Excusez-moi, Alice; écoutez: de hand, de fingres, de nails, de arm, de bilbow.*

*Alice. De elbow, madame.*

*Kath. O Seigneur Dieu, je m'en oublie! de elbow. Comment appelez-vous le col?*

*Alice.* De neck,<sup>(34)</sup> madame.

*Kath.* De nick. *Et le menton?*

*Alice.* De chin.

*Kath.* De sin. *Le col, de nick; le menton, de sin.*

*Alice.* *Oui. Sauf votre honneur, en vérité, vous prononcez les mots aussi droit que les natifs d'Angleterre.*

*Kath.* *Je ne doute point d'apprendre, par la grace de Dieu, et en peu de temps.*

*Alice.* *N'avez-vous pas déjà oublié ce que je vous ai enseigné?*

*Kath.* *Non, je reciterai à vous promptement : de hand, de fingres, de mails,—*

*Alice.* De nails, madame.

*Kath.* De nails, de arm, de ilbow.

*Alice.* *Sauf votre honneur, de elbow.*

*Kath.* *Ainsi dis-je; de elbow, de nick, et de sin. Comment appelez-vous le pied et la robe?*

*Alice.* De foot, madame; et de coun.

*Kath.* De foot et de coun! *O Seigneur Dieu! ce sont mots de son mauvais, corruptible, gros, et impudique, et non pour les dames d'honneur d'user : je ne voudrais prononcer ces mots devant les seigneurs de France pour tout le monde. Il faut de foot et de coun néanmoins. Je reciterai une autre fois ma leçon ensemble : de hand, de fingres, de nails, de arm, de elbow, de nick, de sin, de foot, de coun.*

*Alice.* *Excellent, madame!*

*Kath.* *C'est assez pour une fois : allons-nous à dîner.*

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV. *The same. Another room in the same.*

*Enter the French King, the Dauphin, Duke of BOURBON, the Constable of France, and others.*

*Fr. King.* 'Tis certain he hath pass'd the river Somme.

*Con.* And if he be not fought withal, my lord,  
Let us not live in France; let us quit all,  
And give our vineyards to a barbarous people.

*Dau.* *O Dieu vivant!* shall a few sprays of us,



The emptying of our fathers' luxury,  
 Our scions, put in wild and savage stock,  
 Spirt up so suddenly into the clouds,  
 And overlook their grafters?

*Bour.* Normans, but bastard Normans, Norman bastards!  
*Mort de ma vie!* if they march along  
 Unfought withal, but I will sell my dukedom,  
 To buy a slobbery and a dirty farm  
 In that nook-shotten isle of Albion.

*Con. Dieu de batailles!* where have they this mettle?  
 Is not their climate foggy, raw, and dull;  
 On whom, as in despite, the sun looks pale,  
 Killing their fruit with frowns? Can sodden water,  
 A drench for sur-rein'd jades, their barley-broth,  
 Decoct their cold blood to such valiant heat?  
 And shall our quick blood, spirited with wine,  
 Seem frosty? O, for honour of our land,  
 Let us not hang like roping icicles  
 Upon our houses' thatch, whiles a more frosty people  
 Sweat drops of gallant youth in our rich fields,—  
 Poor we may call them in their native lords!

*Dau.* By faith and honour,  
 Our madams mock at us, and plainly say  
 Our mettle is bred out, and they will give  
 Their bodies to the lust of English youth  
 To new-store France with bastard warriors.

*Bour.* They bid us to the English dancing-schools,  
 And teach lavoltas high and swift corantos;  
 Saying our grace is only in our heels,  
 And that we are most lofty runaways.

*Fr. King.* Where is Montjoy the herald? speed him  
 hence:

Let him greet England with our sharp defiance.—  
 Up, princes! and, with spirit of honour edg'd  
 More sharper than your swords, hie to the field:  
 Charles De-la-bret,<sup>(36)</sup> high-constable of France;  
 You Dukes of Orleans, Bourbon, and of Berri,  
 Alençon, Brabant, Bar, and Burgundy;  
 Jaques Chatillon, Rambures, Vaudemont,

Beaumont, Grandpré, Roussi, and Fauconberg,  
 Foix, Lestrale, Bouciqualt, and Charolois;  
 High dukes, great princes, barons, lords, and knights,<sup>(36)</sup>  
 For your great seats, now quit you of great shames.  
 Bar Harry England, that sweeps through our land  
 With pennons painted in the blood of Harfleur:  
 Rush on his host, as doth the melted snow  
 Upon the valleys, whose low vassal seat  
 The Alps doth spit and void his rheum upon:  
 Go down upon him,—you have power enough,—  
 And in a captive chariot into Rouen  
 Bring him our prisoner.

*Con.* This becomes the great.

Sorry am I his numbers are so few,  
 His soldiers sick, and famish'd in their march;  
 For I am sure, when he shall see our army,  
 He'll drop his heart into the sink of fear,  
 And for achievement offer us his ransom.

*Fr. King.* Therefore, lord constable, haste on Montjoy;  
 And let him say to England, that we send  
 To know what willing ransom he will give.—  
 Prince Dauphin, you shall stay with us in Rouen.

*Dau.* Not so, I do beseech your majesty.

*Fr. King.* Be patient; for you shall remain with us.—  
 Now forth, lord constable, and princes all,  
 And quickly bring us word of England's fall. [Exeunt.]

SCENE V. *The English camp in Picardy.*

*Enter, severally, GOWER and FLUELLEN.*

*Gow.* How now, Captain Fluellen! come you from the bridge?

*Flu.* I assure you, there is very excellent services committed at the pridge.

*Gow.* Is the Duke of Exeter safe?

*Flu.* The Duke of Exeter is as magnanimous as Agamemnon; and a man that I love and honour with my soul, and my heart, and my duty, and my life, and my living,

and my uttermost power: he is not (Got be praised and plessed!) any hurt in the 'orld; but keeps the pridge most valiantly, with excellent discipline. There is an auncient<sup>(37)</sup> there at the pridge,—I think in my very conscience he is as valiant a man as Mark Antony; and he is a man of no estimation in the 'orld; but I did see him do as gallant service.

*Gow.* What do you call him?

*Flu.* He is called Auncient Pistol.

*Gow.* I know him not.

*Flu.* Here is the man.

*Enter* PISTOL.

*Pist.* Captain, I thee beseech to do me favours:  
The Duke of Exeter doth love thee well.

*Flu.* Ay, I praise Got; and I have merited some love at his hands.

*Pist.* Bardolph, a soldier, firm and sound of heart,  
And of buxom valour, hath, by cruel fate,  
And giddy Fortune's furious fickle wheel,—  
That goddess blind,  
That stands upon the rolling restless stone,—

*Flu.* By your patience, Auncient Pistol. Fortune is painted plind, with a muffler afore her eyes, to signify to you that Fortune is plind; and she is painted also with a wheel, to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning, and inconstant, and mutability, and variation: and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls, and rolls, and rolls:—in good truth, the poet makes a most excellent description of it: Fortune is an excellent moral.

*Pist.* Fortune is Bardolph's foe, and frowns on him;  
For he hath stoln a pax, and hangèd must 'a be,—  
A damnèd death!  
Let gallows gape for dog; let man go free,  
And let not hemp his wind-pipe suffocate:  
But Exeter hath given the doom of death,  
For pax of little price.  
Therefore, go speak,—the duke will hear thy voice;  
And let not Bardolph's vital thread be cut

With edge of penny cord and vile reproach :  
 Speak, captain, for his life, and I will thee requite.

*Flu.* Auncient Pistol, I do partly understand your meaning.

*Pist.* Why, then, rejoice therefore.

*Flu.* Certainly, Auncient, it is not a thing to rejoice at : for if, look you, he were my prother, I would desire the duke to use his goot pleasure, and put him to execution ; for discipline ought to be used.

*Pist.* Die and be damn'd ! and fico<sup>(38)</sup> for thy friendship !

*Flu.* It is well.

*Pist.* The fig of Spain !

[*Exit.*

*Flu.* Very goot.

*Gow.* Why, this is an arrant counterfeit rascal ; I remember him now ; a bawd, a cutpurse.

*Flu.* I'll assure you, 'a uttered as prave 'ords at the pridge as you shall see in a summer's day. But it is very well ; what he has spoke to me, that is well, I warrant you, when time is serve.

*Gow.* Why, 'tis a gull, a fool, a rogue, that now and then goes to the wars, to grace himself, at his return into London, under the form of a soldier. And such fellows are perfect in the great commanders' names : and they will learn you by rote where services were done ;—at such and such a sponce, at such a breach, at such a convoy ; who came off bravely, who was shot, who disgraced, what terms the enemy stood on ; and this they con perfectly in the phrase of war, which they trick up with new-tuned<sup>(39)</sup> oaths : and what a beard of the general's cut, and a horrid suit of the camp, will do among foaming bottles and ale-washed wits, is wonderful to be thought on. But you must learn to know such slanders of the age, or else you may be marvellously mistook.

*Flu.* I tell you what, Captain Gower ;—I do perceive he is not the man that he would gladly make show to the 'orld he is : if I find a hole in his coat, I will tell him my mind. [*Drum within.*] Hark you, the king is coming ; and I must speak with him from the pridge.

*Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, and Soldiers.*

Got pless your majesty!

*K. Hen.* How now, Fluellen! cam'st thou from the bridge?

*Flu.* Ay, so please your majesty. The Duke of Exeter has very gallantly maintained the pridge: the French is gone off, look you; and there is gallant and most prave passages: marry, th'athversary was have possession of the pridge; but he is enforced to retire, and the Duke of Exeter is master of the pridge: I can tell your majesty, the duke is a prave man.

*K. Hen.* What men have you lost, Fluellen?

*Flu.* The perdition of th'athversary hath been very great, reasonable great: marry, for my part, I think the duke hath lost never a man, but one that is like to be executed for robbing a church,—one Bardolph, if your majesty know the man: his face is all bubukles, and whelks, and knobs, and flames o' fire: and his lips plows at his nose, and it is like a coal of fire, sometimes plue and sometimes red; but his nose is executed, and his fire's out.

*K. Hen.* We would have all such offenders so cut off:—and we give express charge, that in our marches through the country, there be nothing compelled from the villages, nothing taken but paid for, none of the French upbraided or abused in disdainful language; for when lenity and cruelty play for a kingdom, the gentler gamester is the soonest winner.

*Tucket sounds. Enter MONTJOY.*

*Mont.* You know me by my habit.

*K. Hen.* Well, then, I know thee: what shall I know of thee?

*Mont.* My master's mind.

*K. Hen.* Unfold it.

*Mont.* Thus says my king:—Say thou to Harry of England: Though we seemed dead, we did but sleep; advantage is a better soldier than rashness. Tell him, we could have rebuked him at Harfleur, but that we thought not good to bruise an injury till it were full ripe:—now we speak upon our cue, and our voice is imperial: England shall repent his

folly, see his weakness, and admire our sufferance. Bid him, therefore, consider of his ransom; which must proportion the losses we have borne; the subjects we have lost, the disgrace we have digested; which, in weight to re-answer, his pettiness would bow under. For our losses, his exchequer is too poor; for the effusion of our blood, the muster of his kingdom too faint a number; and for our disgrace, his own person, kneeling at our feet, but a weak and worthless satisfaction. To this add defiance: and tell him, for conclusion, he hath betrayed his followers, whose condemnation is pronounced. So far my king and master; so much my office.

*K. Hen.* What is thy name? I know thy quality.

*Mont.* Montjoy.

*K. Hen.* Thou dost thy office fairly. Turn thee back, And tell thy king,—I do not seek him now; But could be willing to march on to Calais Without impeachment: for, to say the sooth (Though 'tis no wisdom to confess so much Unto an enemy of craft and vantage), My people are with sickness much enfeebled; My numbers lessen'd; and those few I have, Almost no better than so many French; Who when they were in health, I tell thee, herald, I thought upon one pair of English legs Did march three Frenchmen.—Yet, forgive me, God, That I do brag thus!—this your air of France Hath blown that vice in me; I must repent. Go, therefore, tell thy master here I am; My ransom is this frail and worthless trunk; My army but a weak and sickly guard: Yet, God before, tell him we will come on, Though France himself, and such another neighbour, Stand in our way. There's for thy labour, Montjoy. Go, bid thy master well advise himself: If we may pass, we will; if we be hinder'd, We shall your tawny ground with your red blood Discolour: and so, Montjoy, fare you well. The sum of all our answer is but this:

We would not seek a battle, as we are ;  
 Nor, as we are, we say, we will not shun it :  
 So tell your master.

*Mont.* I shall deliver so. Thanks to your highness.

[*Exit.*]

*Glo.* I hope they will not come upon us now.

*K. Hen.* We are in God's hand, brother, not in theirs.

March to the bridge ; it now draws toward night :—

Beyond the river we'll encamp ourselves ;

And on to-morrow bid them march away.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

SCENE VI. *The French camp, near Agincourt.*

*Enter the Constable of France, the Lord RAMBURES, the Duke of ORLEANS, the Dauphin, and others.*

*Con.* Tut ! I have the best armour of the world.—  
 Would it were day !

*Orl.* You have an excellent armour ; but let my horse  
 have his due.

*Con.* It is the best horse of Europe.

*Orl.* Will it never be morning ?

*Dau.* My Lord of Orleans, and my lord high-constable,  
 you talk of horse and armour,—

*Orl.* You are as well provided of both as any prince in  
 the world.

*Dau.* What a long night is this !—I will not change my  
 horse with any that treads but on four pasterns. *Ça, ha !* he  
 bounds from the earth, as if his entrails were hairs ; *le cheval  
 volant*, the Pegasus, *qui a les narines de feu !* When I bestride  
 him, I soar, I am a hawk : he trots the air ; the earth sings  
 when he touches it ; the basest horn of his hoof is more  
 musical than the pipe of Hermes.

*Orl.* He's of the colour of the nutmeg.

*Dau.* And of the heat of the ginger. It is a beast for  
 Perseus : he is pure air and fire ; and the dull elements of  
 earth and water never appear in him, but only in patient still-  
 ness while his rider mounts him : he is, indeed, a horse ; and  
 all other jades you may call beasts.

*Con.* Indeed, my lord, it is a most absolute and excellent horse.

*Dau.* It is the prince of palfreys; his neigh is like the bidding of a monarch, and his countenance enforces homage.

*Orl.* No more, cousin.

*Dau.* Nay, the man hath no wit that cannot, from the rising of the lark to the lodging of the lamb, vary deserved praise on my palfrey: it is a theme as fluent as the sea; turn the sands into eloquent tongues, and my horse is argument for them all: 'tis a subject for a sovereign to reason on, and for a sovereign's sovereign to ride on; and for the world (familiar to us and unknown) to lay apart their particular functions, and wonder at him. I once writ a sonnet in his praise, and began thus: "Wonder of nature,"—

*Orl.* I have heard a sonnet begin so to one's mistress.

*Dau.* Then did they imitate that which I composed to my courser; for my horse is my mistress.

*Orl.* Your mistress bears well.

*Dau.* Me well; which is the prescript praise and perfection of a good and particular mistress.

*Con.* Nay, for methought yesterday your mistress shrewdly shook your back.

*Dau.* So, perhaps, did yours.

*Con.* Mine was not bridled.

*Dau.* O, then, belike she was old and gentle; and you rode, like a kern of Ireland, your French hose off, and in your strait strossers.

*Con.* You have good judgment in horsemanship.

*Dau.* Be warned by me, then: they that ride so, and ride not warily, fall into foul bogs. I had rather have my horse to my mistress.

*Con.* I had as lief have my mistress a jade.

*Dau.* I tell thee, constable, my mistress wears his own hair.

*Con.* I could make as true a boast as that, if I had a sow to my mistress.

*Dau.* *Le chien est retourné à son propre vomissement, et la truie lavée au bourbier:* thou makest use of any thing.



*Con.* Yet do I not use my horse for my mistress; or any such proverb, so little kin to the purpose.

*Ram.* My lord constable, the armour that I saw in your tent to-night,—are those stars or suns upon it?

*Con.* Stars, my lord.

*Dau.* Some of them will fall to-morrow, I hope.

*Con.* And yet my sky shall not want.

*Dau.* That may be, for you bear a many superfluously, and 'twere more honour some were away.

*Con.* Even as your horse bears your praises; who would trot as well, were some of your brags dismounted.

*Dau.* Would I were able to load him with his desert!—Will it never be day?—I will trot to-morrow a mile, and my way shall be paved with English faces.

*Con.* I will not say so, for fear I should be faced out of my way: but I would it were morning; for I would fain be about the ears of the English.

*Ram.* Who will go to hazard with me for twenty prisoners?

*Con.* You must first go yourself to hazard, ere you have them.

*Dau.* 'Tis midnight; I'll go arm myself. [Exit.

*Orl.* The Dauphin longs for morning.

*Ram.* He longs to eat the English.

*Con.* I think he will eat all he kills.

*Orl.* By the white hand of my lady, he's a gallant prince.

*Con.* Swear by her foot, that she may tread out the oath.

*Orl.* He is, simply, the most active gentleman of France.

*Con.* Doing is activity; and he will still be doing.

*Orl.* He never did harm, that I heard of.

*Con.* Nor will do none to-morrow: he will keep that good name still.

*Orl.* I know him to be valiant.

*Con.* I was told that by one that knows him better than you.

*Orl.* What's he?

*Con.* Marry, he told me so himself; and he said he cared not who knew it.

*Orl.* He needs not; it is no hidden virtue in him.

*Con.* By my faith, sir, but it is; never any body saw it but his lackey: 'tis a hooded valour; and when it appears, it will bate.

*Orl.* Ill-will never said well.

*Con.* I will cap that proverb with—There is flattery in friendship.

*Orl.* And I will take up that with—Give the devil his due.

*Con.* Well placed: there stands your friend for the devil: have at the very eye of that proverb, with—A pox of the devil.

*Orl.* You are the better at proverbs, by how much—A fool's bolt is soon shot.

*Con.* You have shot over.

*Orl.* 'Tis not the first time you were overshot.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord high-constable, the English lie within fifteen hundred paces of your tents.

*Con.* Who hath measured the ground?

*Mess.* The Lord Grandpré.

*Con.* A valiant and most expert gentleman.—Would it were day!—Alas, poor Harry of England! he longs not for the dawning, as we do.

*Orl.* What a wretched and peevish fellow is this King of England, to mope with his fat-brained followers so far out of his knowledge!

*Con.* If the English had any apprehension, they would run away.

*Orl.* That they lack; for if their heads had any intellectual armour, they could never wear such heavy head-pieces.

*Ram.* That island of England breeds very valiant creatures; their mastiffs are of unmatchable courage.

*Orl.* Foolish curs, that run winking into the mouth of a Russian bear, and have their heads crushed like rotten apples! You may as well say, that's a valiant flea that dare eat his breakfast on the lip of a lion.

*Con.* Just, just; and the men do sympathize with the mastiffs in robustious and rough coming-on, leaving their wits

with their wives : and then give them great meals of beef, and iron and steel, they will eat like wolves, and fight like devils.

*Orl.* Ay, but these English are shrewdly out of beef.

*Con.* Then shall we find to-morrow they have only stomachs to eat, and none to fight. Now is it time to arm : come, shall we about it ?

*Orl.* It is now two o'clock : but, let me see,—by ten We shall have each a hundred Englishmen. [*Exeunt.*]

*Enter* Chorus.

*Chor.* Now entertain conjecture of a time  
 When creeping murmur and the poring dark  
 Fills the wide vessel of the universe.  
 From camp to camp, through the foul womb of night  
 The hum of either army stilly sounds,  
 That the fix'd sentinels almost receive  
 The secret whispers of each other's watch :  
 Fire answers fire ; and through their paly flames  
 Each battle sees the other's umber'd face :  
 Steed threatens steed, in high and boastful neighs  
 Piercing the night's dull ear ; and from the tents,  
 The armorers, accomplishing the knights,  
 With busy hammers closing rivets up,  
 Give dreadful note of preparation :  
 The country cocks do crow, the clocks do toll,  
 And the third hour of drowsy morning's nam'd.<sup>(40)</sup>  
 Proud of their numbers, and secure in soul,  
 The confident and over-lusty French  
 Do the low-rated English play at dice ;  
 And chide the cripple tardy-gaited night,  
 Who, like a foul and ugly witch, doth limp  
 So tediously away. The poor condemn'd English,  
 Like sacrifices, by their watchful fires  
 Sit patiently, and inly ruminatè  
 The morning's danger ; and their gesture sad  
 Investing lank-lean cheeks, and war-worn coats,  
 Presenteth them unto the gazing moon

So many horrid ghosts. O, now, who will behold  
 The royal captain of this ruin'd band  
 Walking from watch to watch, from tent to tent,  
 Let him cry, Praise and glory on his head!  
 For forth he goes and visits all his host;  
 Bids them good morrow with a modest smile,  
 And calls them brothers, friends, and countrymen.  
 Upon his royal face there is no note  
 How dread an army hath enrounded him;  
 Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour  
 Unto the weary and all-watchèd night;  
 But freshly looks, and over-bears attain  
 With cheerful semblance and sweet majesty;  
 That every wretch, pining and pale before,  
 Beholding him, plucks comfort from his looks:  
 A largess universal, like the sun,  
 His liberal eye doth give to every one,  
 Thawing cold fear. Then,<sup>(41)</sup> mean and gentle all,  
 Behold, as may unworthiness define,  
 A little touch of Harry in the night:  
 And so our scene must to the battle fly;  
 Where (O for pity!) we shall much disgrace  
 With four or five most vile and ragged foils,  
 Right ill-dispos'd, in brawl ridiculous,  
 The name of Agincourt. Yet, sit and see;  
 Minding true things by what their mockeries be. [Exit.]

## ACT IV.

SCENE I. *France. The English camp at Agincourt.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, BEDFORD, and GLOSTER.

*K. Hen.* Gloster, 'tis true that we are in great danger;  
 The greater therefore should our courage be.—  
 Good morrow, brother Bedford.—God Almighty!  
 There is some soul of goodness in things evil,  
 Would men observingly distil it out;

For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers,  
Which is both healthful and good husbandry :  
Besides, they are our outward consciences,  
And preachers to us all ; admonishing  
That we should dress us fairly for our end.  
Thus may we gather honey from the weed,  
And make a moral of the devil himself.

*Enter ERPINGHAM.*

Good morrow, old Sir Thomas Erpingham :  
A good soft pillow for that good white head  
Were better than a churlish turf of France.

*Erp.* Not so, my liege : this lodging likes me better,  
Since I may say, Now lie I like a king.

*K. Hen.* 'Tis good for men to love their present pains  
Upon example ; so the spirit is eas'd :  
And when the mind is quicken'd, out of doubt  
The organs, though defunct and dead before,  
Break up their drowsy grave, and newly move  
With casted slough and fresh legerity.  
Lend me thy cloak, Sir Thomas.—Brothers both,  
Commend me to the princes in our camp ;  
Do my good morrow to them ; and anon  
Desire them all to my pavilion.

*Glo.* We shall, my liege. [*Exeunt Gloster and Bedford.*

*Erp.* Shall I attend your grace ?

*K. Hen.* No, my good knight ;  
Go with my brothers to my lords of England :  
I and my bosom must debate awhile,  
And then I would no other company.

*Erp.* The Lord in heaven bless thee, noble Harry !

[*Exit.*

*K. Hen.* God-a-mercy, old heart ! thou speak'st cheer-  
fully.

*Enter PISTOL.*

*Pist.* *Qui va là ?*

*K. Hen.* A friend.

*Pist.* Discuss unto me ; art thou officer ?  
Or art thou base, common, and popular ?

*K. Hen.* I am a gentleman of a company.

*Pist.* Trail'st thou the puissant pike?

*K. Hen.* Even so. What are you?

*Pist.* As good a gentleman as the emperor.

*K. Hen.* Then you are a better than the king.

*Pist.* The king's a bawcock, and a heart of gold,  
A lad of life, an imp of fame;  
Of parents good, of fist most valiant:  
I kiss his dirty shoe, and from my heart-strings  
I love the lovely bully.—What is thy name?

*K. Hen.* Harry *le Roi*.

*Pist.* *Le Roy!* a Cornish name: art thou of Cornish crew?

*K. Hen.* No, I am a Welshman.

*Pist.* Know'st thou *Fluellen*?

*K. Hen.* Yes.

*Pist.* Tell him, I'll knock his leek about his pate  
Upon Saint Davy's day.

*K. Hen.* Do not you wear your dagger in your cap that  
day, lest he knock that about yours.

*Pist.* Art thou his friend?

*K. Hen.* And his kinsman too.

*Pist.* The fico for thee, then!

*K. Hen.* I thank you: God be with you!

*Pist.* My name is *Pistol* call'd.

[*Exit.*]

*K. Hen.* It sorts well with your fierceness.

*Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER, severally.*

*Gow.* Captain *Fluellen!*

*Flu.* So! in the name of Cheshu Christ, speak fewer. It is the greatest admiration in the universal 'orld, when the true and auncient prerogatifs and laws of the wars is not kept: if you would take the pains but to examine the wars of Pompey the Great, you shall find, I warrant you, that there is no tiddle-taddle nor pibble-pabble in Pompey's camp; I warrant you, you shall find the ceremonies of the wars, and the cares of it, and the forms of it, and the sobriety of it, and the modesty of it, to be otherwise.

*Gow.* Why, the enemy is loud; you hear him all night.

*Flu.* If the enemy is an ass, and a fool, and a prating cox-

comb, is it meet, think you, that we should also, look you, be an ass, and a fool, and a prating coxcomb,—in your own conscience, now?

*Gow.* I will speak lower.

*Flu.* I pray you, and peseech you, that you will.

[*Exeunt Gower and Fluellen.*]

*K. Hen.* Though it appear a little out of fashion,  
There is much care and valour in this Welshman.

*Enter BATES, COURT, and WILLIAMS.*

*Court.* Brother John Bates, is not that the morning which breaks yonder?

*Bates.* I think it be: but we have no great cause to desire the approach of day.

*Will.* We see yonder the beginning of the day, but I think we shall never see the end of it.—Who goes there?

*K. Hen.* A friend.

*Will.* Under what captain serve you?

*K. Hen.* Under Sir Thomas Erpingham.

*Will.* A good old commander and a most kind gentleman: I pray you, what thinks he of our estate?

*K. Hen.* Even as men wrecked upon a sand, that look to be washed off the next tide.

*Bates.* He hath not told his thought to the king?

*K. Hen.* No; nor it is not meet he should. For, though I speak it to you, I think the king is but a man, as I am: the violet smells to him as it doth to me; the element shows to him a it doth to me; all his senses have but human conditions: his ceremonies laid by, in his nakedness he appears but a man; and though his affections are higher mounted than ours, yet, when they stoop, they stoop with the like wing. Therefore when he sees reason of fears, as we do, his fears, out of doubt, be of the same relish as ours are: yet, in reason, no man should possess him with any appearance of fear, lest he, by showing it, should dishearten his army.

*Bates.* He may show what outward courage he will; but I believe, as cold a night as 'tis, he could wish himself in Thames up to the neck;—and so I would he were, and I by him, at all adventures, so we were quit here.

*K. Hen.* By my troth, I will speak my conscience of the king: I think he would not wish himself any where but where he is.

*Bates.* Then I would he were here alone; so should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved.

*K. Hen.* I dare say you love him not so ill, to wish him here alone, howsoever you speak this, to feel other men's minds: methinks I could not die any where so contented as in the king's company,—his cause being just, and his quarrel honourable.

*Will.* That's more than we know.

*Bates.* Ay, or more than we should seek after; for we know enough, if we know we are the king's subjects: if his cause be wrong, our obedience to the king wipes the crime of it out of us.

*Will.* But if the cause be not good, the king himself hath a heavy reckoning to make, when all those legs and arms and heads, chopped off in a battle, shall join together at the latter day, and cry all, We died at such a place; some swearing; some crying for a surgeon; some, upon their wives left poor behind them; some, upon the debts they owe; some, upon their children rawly left. I am afraid there are few die well that die in a battle; for how can they charitably dispose of any thing, when blood is their argument? Now, if these men do not die well, it will be a black matter for the king that led them to it; who to disobey were against all proportion of subjection.

*K. Hen.* So, if a son, that is by his father sent about merchandise, do sinfully miscarry upon the sea, the imputation of his wickedness, by your rule, should be imposed upon his father that sent him: or if a servant, under his master's command transporting a sum of money, be assailed by robbers, and die in many irreconciled iniquities, you may call the business of the master the author of the servant's damnation:—but this is not so: the king is not bound to answer the particular endings of his soldiers, the father of his son, nor the master of his servant; for they purpose not their death, when they purpose their services. Besides, there is no king, be his cause never so spotless, if it come to the arbitrement of swords,



can try it out with all unspotted soldiers: some peradventure have on them the guilt of premeditated and contrived murder; some, of beguiling virgins with the broken seals of perjury; some, making the wars their bulwark, that have before gored the gentle bosom of peace with pillage and robbery. Now, if these men have defeated the law and outrun native punishment, though they can outstrip men, they have no wings to fly from God: war is his beadle, war is his vengeance; so that here men are punished for before-breach of the king's laws in now the king's quarrel: where they feared the death, they have borne life away; and where they would be safe, they perish: then if they die unprovided, no more is the king guilty of their damnation, than he was before guilty of those impieties for the which they are now visited. Every subject's duty is the king's; but every subject's soul is his own. Therefore should every soldier in the wars do as every sick man in his bed,—wash every mote out of his conscience: and dying so, death is to him advantage; or not dying, the time was blessedly lost wherein such preparation was gained: and in him that escapes, it were not sin to think that, making God so free an offer, he let him outlive that day to see his greatness, and to teach others how they should prepare.

*Will.* 'Tis certain, every man that dies ill, the ill upon his own head,—the king is not to answer it.

*Bates.* I do not desire he should answer for me; and yet I determine to fight lustily for him.

*K. Hen.* I myself heard the king say he would not be ransomed.

*Will.* Ay, he said so, to make us fight cheerfully: but when our throats are cut, he may be ransomed, and we ne'er the wiser.

*K. Hen.* If I live to see it, I will never trust his word after.

*Will.* You pay him then! That's a perilous shot out of an elder-gun, that a poor and a private displeasure can do against a monarch! you may as well go about to turn the sun to ice with fanning in his face with a peacock's feather. You'll never trust his word after! come, 'tis a foolish saying.

*K. Hen.* Your reproof is something too round: I should be angry with you, if the time were convenient.

*Will.* Let it be a quarrel between us, if you live.

*K. Hen.* I embrace it.

*Will.* How shall I know thee again?

*K. Hen.* Give me any gage of thine, and I will wear it in my bonnet: then, if ever thou darest acknowledge it, I will make it my quarrel.

*Will.* Here's my glove: give me another of thine.

*K. Hen.* There.

*Will.* This will I also wear in my cap: if ever thou come to me and say, after to-morrow, "This is my glove," by this hand, I will take thee a box on the ear.

*K. Hen.* If ever I live to see it, I will challenge it.

*Will.* Thou darest as well be hanged.

*K. Hen.* Well, I will do it, though I take thee in the king's company.

*Will.* Keep thy word: fare thee well.

*Bates.* Be friends, you English fools, be friends: we have French quarrels enow, if you could tell how to reckon.

*K. Hen.* Indeed, the French may lay twenty French crowns to one, they will beat us; for they bear them on their shoulders: but it is no English treason to cut French crowns; and to-morrow the king himself will be a clipper.

[*Exeunt Soldiers.*]

Upon the king!—let us our lives, our souls,  
 Our debts, our careful wives,  
 Our children, and our sins, lay on the king!  
 We must bear all. O hard condition,  
 Twin-born with greatness, subject to the breath  
 Of every fool, whose sense no more can feel  
 But his own wringing!  
 What infinite heart's-ease must kings neglect,  
 That private men enjoy!  
 And what have kings, that privates have not too,  
 Save ceremony,—save general ceremony?  
 And what art thou, thou idol ceremony?  
 What kind of god art thou, that suffer'st more

Of mortal griefs than do thy worshippers?  
What are thy rents? what are thy comings-in?  
O ceremony, show me but thy worth!  
What is thy soul of adoration?  
Art thou aught else but place, degree, and form,  
Creating awe and fear in other men?  
Wherein thou art less happy being fear'd  
Than they in fearing.  
What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,  
But poison'd flattery? O, be sick, great greatness,  
And bid thy ceremony give thee cure!  
Think'st thou the fiery fever will go out  
With titles blown from adulation?  
Will it give place to flexure and low bending?  
Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's knee,  
Command the health of it? No, thou proud dream,  
That play'st so subtly with a king's repose:  
I am a king that find thee; and I know  
'Tis not the balm, the sceptre, and the ball,  
The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,  
The intertissu'd robe of gold and pearl,  
The farcèd title running 'fore the king,  
The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp  
That beats upon the high shore of this world,—  
No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony,  
Not all these, laid in bed majestical,  
Can sleep so soundly as the wretched slave,  
Who, with a body fill'd and vacant mind,  
Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread;  
Never sees horrid night, the child of hell;  
But, like a lackey, from the rise to set,  
Sweats in the eye of Phoebus, and all night  
Sleeps in Elysium; next day, after dawn,  
Doth rise, and help Hyperion to his horse;  
And follows so the ever-running year,  
With profitable labour, to his grave:  
And but for ceremony, such a wretch,  
Winding up days with toil and nights with sleep,  
Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king.

The slave, a member of the country's peace,  
 Enjoys it; but in gross brain little wots  
 What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,  
 Whose hours the peasant best advantages.

*Enter ERPINGHAM.*

*Erp.* My lord, your nobles, jealous of your absence,  
 Seek through your camp to find you.

*K. Hen.* Good old knight,  
 Collect them all together at my tent:  
 I'll be before thee.

*Erp.* I shall do't, my lord. [*Exit.*

*K. Hen.* O God of battles! steel my soldiers' hearts;  
 Possess them not with fear; take from them now  
 The sense of reckoning, if <sup>(42)</sup> the opposèd numbers  
 Pluck their hearts from them!—Not to-day, O Lord,  
 O, not to-day, think not upon the fault  
 My father made in compassing the crown!  
 I Richard's body have interrèd new;  
 And on it have bestow'd more contrite tears  
 Than from it issu'd forcèd drops of blood:  
 Five hundred poor I have in yearly pay,  
 Who twice a-day their wither'd hands hold up  
 Toward heaven, to pardon blood; and I have built  
 Two chantries, where the sad and solemn priests  
 Sing still for Richard's soul. More will I do;  
 Though all that I can do is nothing worth,  
 Since that my penitence comes after all,  
 Imploring pardon.

*Enter GLOSTER.*

*Glo.* My liege!

*K. Hen.* My brother Gloster's voice?—Ay;  
 I know thy errand, I will go with thee:—  
 The day, my friends, and all things stay for me.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The French camp.*  
[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Enter Dauphin, ORLEANS, RAMBURES, and others.*

*Orl.* The sun doth gild our armour ; up, my lords !

*Dau.* *Montez à cheval!*—My horse ! *varlet,*<sup>(43)</sup> *laquais!* ha !

*Orl.* O brave spirit !

*Dau.* *Via!*—*les eaux et la terre,*—

*Orl.* *Rien puis? l'air et le feu,*—

*Dau.* *Ciel!* cousin Orleans.

*Enter Constable.*

Now, my lord constable !

*Con.* Hark, how our steeds for present service neigh !

*Dau.* Mount them, and make incision in their hides,  
 That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,  
 And dout<sup>(44)</sup> them with superfluous courage, ha !

*Ram.* What, will you have them weep our horses' blood?  
 How shall we, then, behold their natural tears ?

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* The English are embattled, you French peers.

*Con.* To horse, you gallant princes ! straight to horse !  
 Do but behold yond poor and starvèd band,  
 And your fair show shall suck away their souls,  
 Leaving them but the shales and husks of men.  
 There is not work enough for all our hands ;  
 Scarce blood enough in all their sickly veins  
 To give each naked curtle-axe a stain,  
 That our French gallants shall to-day draw out,  
 And sheathe for lack of sport : let us but blow on them,  
 The vapour of our valour will o'erturn them.  
 'Tis positive 'gainst all exceptions, lords,  
 That our superfluous lackeys and our peasants,—  
 Who in unnecessary action swarm  
 About our squares of battle,—were enow  
 To purge this field of such a hilding foe ;  
 Though we upon this mountain's basis by  
 Took stand for idle speculation,—

But that our honours must not. What's to say?  
 A very little little let us do,  
 And all is done. Then let the trumpets sound  
 The tucket-sonance<sup>(45)</sup> and the note to mount:  
 For our approach shall so much dare the field,  
 That England shall couch down in fear, and yield.

*Enter GRANDPRÉ.*

*Grand.* Why do you stay so long, my lords of France?  
 Yond island carrions, desperate of their bones,  
 Ill-favouredly become the morning field:  
 Their raggèd curtains poorly are let loose,  
 And our air shakes them passing scornfully:  
 Big Mars seems bankrupt in their beggar'd host,  
 And faintly through a rusty beaver peeps:  
 The horsemen sit like fixèd candlesticks,  
 With torch-staves in their hand; and their poor jades  
 Lob down their heads, dropping the hides and hips,  
 The gum down-roping from their pale-dead eyes,  
 And in their pale dull mouths the gimmel-bit  
 Lies foul with chew'd grass, still and motionless;  
 And their exécutors, the knavish crows,  
 Fly o'er them, all impatient for their hour.  
 Description cannot suit itself in words  
 To démonstrate the life of such a battle  
 In life so lifeless as it shows itself.

*Con.* They have said their prayers, and they stay for  
 death.

*Dau.* Shall we go send them dinners and fresh suits,  
 And give their fasting horses provender,  
 And after fight with them?

*Con.* I stay but for my guidon:<sup>(46)</sup>—to the field!—  
 I will the banner from a trumpet take,  
 And use it for my haste. Come, come, away!  
 The sun is high, and we outwear the day.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III. *The English camp.*

*Enter the English host; GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER, SALISBURY,  
and WESTMORELAND.*

*Glo.* Where is the king?

*Bed.* The king himself is rode to view their battle.

*West.* Of fighting-men they have full three-score thousand.

*Exe.* There's five to one; besides, they all are fresh.

*Sal.* God's arm strike with us! 'tis a fearful odds.

God b' wi' you, princes all; I'll to my charge:

If we no more meet till we meet in heaven,

Then, joyfully,—my noble Lord of Bedford,—

My dear Lord Gloster,—and my good Lord Exeter,—

And my kind kinsman,—warriors all, adieu!

*Bed.* Farewell, good Salisbury; and good luck go with thee!

*Exe.* Farewell, kind lord; fight valiantly to-day:

And yet I do thee wrong to mind thee of it,

For thou art fram'd of the firm truth of valour.<sup>(47)</sup>

[*Exit Salisbury.*]

*Bed.* He is as full of valour as of kindness;

Princely in both.

*West.* O that we now had here

*Enter King HENRY.*

But one ten thousand of those men in England

That do no work to-day!

*K. Hen.* What's he that wishes so?

My cousin Westmoreland?—No, my fair cousin:

If we are mark'd to die, we are enow

To do our country loss; and if to live,

The fewer men, the greater share of honour.

God's will! I pray thee, wish not one man more.

By Jove, I am not covetous for gold;

Nor care I who doth feed upon my cost;

It yearns me not if men my garments wear;

Such outward things dwell not in my desires:

But if it be a sin to covet honour,

I am the most offending soul alive.  
 No, faith, my coz, wish not a man from England :  
 God's peace ! I would not lose so great an honour,  
 As one man more, methinks, would share from me,  
 For the best hope I have. O, do not wish one more !  
 Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,  
 That he which hath no stomach to this fight,  
 Let him depart ; his passport shall be made,  
 And crowns for convoy put into his purse :  
 We would not die in that man's company  
 That fears his fellowship to die with us.  
 This day is call'd the feast of Crispian :  
 He that outlives this day, and comes safe home,  
 Will stand a tip-toe when this day is nam'd,  
 And rouse him at the name of Crispian.  
 He that shall live this day, and see old age,<sup>(48)</sup>  
 Will yearly on the vigil feast his neighbours,  
 And say, To-morrow is Saint Crispian :  
 Then will he strip his sleeve and show his scars,  
 And say, These wounds I had on Crispin's day.<sup>(49)</sup>  
 Old men forget ; yet all shall be forgot,  
 But he'll remember with advantages  
 What feats he did that day : then shall our names,  
 Familiar in their mouths<sup>(50)</sup> as household words,—  
 Harry the king, Bedford and Exeter,  
 Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloster,—  
 Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd.  
 This story shall the good man teach his son ;  
 And Crispin Crispian shall ne'er go by,  
 From this day to the ending of the world,  
 But we in it shall be rememberèd,—  
 We few, we happy few, we band of brothers ;  
 For he to-day that sheds his blood with me  
 Shall be my brother ; be he ne'er so vile,  
 This day shall gentle his condition :  
 And gentlemen in England now a-bed  
 Shall think themselves accurs'd they were not here ;  
 And hold their manhoods cheap whiles any speaks  
 That fought with us upon Saint Crispin's day.



*Re-enter SALISBURY.*

*Sal.* My sovereign lord, bestow yourself with speed :  
The French are bravely in their battles set,  
And will with all expedience charge on us.

*K. Hen.* All things are ready, if our minds be so.

*West.* Perish the man whose mind is backward now !

*K. Hen.* Thou dost not wish more help from England,  
coz ?

*West.* God's will ! my liege, would you and I alone,  
Without more help, could fight this royal battle !

*K. Hen.* Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand  
men ;

Which likes me better than to wish us one.—  
You know your places : God be with you all !

*Tucket. Enter MONTJOY.*

*Mont.* Once more I come to know of thee, King Harry,  
If for thy ransom thou wilt now compound,  
Before thy most assurèd overthrow :  
For certainly thou art so near the gulf,  
Thou needs must be englutted. Besides, in mercy,  
The constable desires thee thou wilt mind  
Thy followers of repentance ; that their souls  
May make a peaceful and a sweet retire  
From off these fields, where, wretches, their poor bodies  
Must lie and fester.

*K. Hen.* Who hath sent thee now ?

*Mont.* The constable of France.

*K. Hen.* I pray thee, bear my former answer back :  
Bid them achieve me, and then sell my bones.  
Good God ! why should they mock poor fellows thus ?  
The man that once did sell the lion's skin  
While the beast liv'd, was kill'd with hunting him.  
A many of our bodies shall no doubt  
Find native graves ; upon the which, I trust,  
Shall witness live in brass of this day's work :  
And those that leave their valiant bones in France,  
Dying like men, though buried in your dunghills,

They shall be fam'd ; for there the sun shall greet them,  
 And draw their honours reeking up to heaven ;  
 Leaving their earthly parts to choke your clime,  
 The smell whereof shall breed a plague in France.  
 Mark, then, abounding valour in our English ;  
 That, being dead, like to the bullet's grazing,  
 Break out into a second course of mischief,  
 Killing in rélapse of mortality.  
 Let me speak proudly :—tell the constable  
 We are but warriors for the working-day ;  
 Our gayness and our gilt are all besmirch'd  
 With rainy marching in the painful field ;  
 There's not a piece of feather in our host  
 (Good argument, I hope, we will not fly),  
 And time hath worn us into slovenry :  
 But, by the mass, our hearts are in 'the trim ;  
 And my poor soldiers tell me, yet ere night  
 They'll be in fresher robes ; or they will pluck  
 The gay new coats o'er the French soldiers' heads,  
 And turn them out of service. If they do this,—  
 As, if God please, they shall,—my ransom then  
 Will soon be levied. Herald, save thou thy labour ;  
 Come thou no more for ransom, gentle herald :  
 They shall have none, I swear, but these my joints,—  
 Which if they have as I will leave 'em them,  
 Shall yield them little, tell the constable.

*Mont.* I shall, King Harry. And so, fare thee well :  
 Thou never shalt hear herald any more. [Exit.]

*K. Hen.* I fear thou wilt once more come again for ransom.<sup>(51)</sup>

*Enter the Duke of York.*

*York.* My lord, most humbly on my knee I beg  
 The leading of the vaward.

*K. Hen.* Take it, brave York.—Now, soldiers, march  
 away :—  
 And how thou pleasest, God, dispose the day ! [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV. *The field of battle.*  
[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*Alarums : excursions. Enter French Soldier, PISTOL, and Boy.*

*Pist.* Yield, cur!

*Fr. Sol.* *Je pense que vous êtes le gentilhomme de bonne qualité.*

*Pist.* Quality! Callino, castore me! art thou a gentleman? what is thy name? discuss.

*Fr. Sol.* *O Seigneur Dieu!*

*Pist.* O, Signieur Dew should be a gentleman:—  
 Perpend my words, O Signieur Dew, and mark;—  
 O Signieur Dew, thou diest on point of fox,  
 Except, O signieur, thou do give to me  
 Egregious ransom.

*Fr. Sol.* *O, prenez miséricorde! ayez pitié de moi!*

*Pist.* Moy shall not serve; I will have forty moys;  
 Or<sup>(<sup>sc</sup>)</sup> I will fetch thy rim out at thy throat  
 In drops of crimson blood.

*Fr. Sol.* *Est-il impossible d'échapper la force de ton bras?*

*Pist.* Brass, cur!  
 Thou damnèd and luxurious mountain-goat,  
 Offer'st me brass?

*Fr. Sol.* *O pardonnez-moi!*

*Pist.* Say'st thou me so? is that a ton of moys?—  
 Come hither, boy: ask me this slave in French  
 What is his name.

*Boy.* *Ecoutez: comment êtes-vous appelé?*

*Fr. Sol.* *Monsieur le Fer.*

*Boy.* He says his name is Master Fer.

*Pist.* Master Fer! I'll fer him, and firke him, and ferret him:—discuss the same in French unto him.

*Boy.* I do not know the French for fer, and ferret, and firke.

*Pist.* Bid him prepare; for I will cut his throat.

*Fr. Sol.* *Que dit-il, monsieur?*

*Boy.* *Il me commande de vous dire que vous faites vous prêt; car ce soldat ici est disposé tout à cette heure de couper votre gorge.*

*Pist.* *Oui, coupe la gorge, par ma foi, pesant,*  
Unless thou give me crowns, brave crowns;  
Or mangled shalt thou be by this my sword.

*Fr. Sol.* *O, je vous supplie, pour l'amour de Dieu, me pardonner! Je suis gentilhomme de bonne maison: gardez ma vie, et je vous donnerai deux cents écus.*

*Pist.* What are his words?

*Boy.* He prays you to save his life: he is a gentleman of a good house; and for his ransom he will give you two hundred crowns.

*Pist.* Tell him my fury shall abate, and I  
The crowns will take.

*Fr. Sol.* *Petit monsieur, que dit-il?*

*Boy.* *Encore qu'il est contre son jurement de pardonner aucun prisonnier, néanmoins, pour les écus que vous l'avez promis, il est content de vous donner la liberté, le franchise-ment.*

*Fr. Sol.* *Sur mes genoux je vous donne mille remerciemens; et je m'estime heureux que je suis tombé entre les mains d'un chevalier, je pense, le plus brave, vaillant, et très distingué seigneur d'Angleterre.*

*Pist.* Expound unto me, boy.

*Boy.* He gives you, upon his knees, a thousand thanks; and he esteems himself happy that he hath fallen into the hands of one, (as he thinks,) the most brave, valorous, and thrice-worthy signieur of England.

*Pist.* As I suck blood, I will some mercy show.—  
Follow me!

[*Exit.*

*Boy.* *Suivez-vous le grand capitaine.* [*Exit French Soldier.*] I did never know so full a voice issue from so empty a heart: but the saying is true,—the empty vessel makes the greatest sound. Bardolph and Nym had ten times more valour than this roaring devil i' the old play, that every one may pare his nails with a wooden dagger; and they are both hanged; and so would this be, if he durst steal any thing adventurously. I must stay with the lackeys, with the luggage of our camp: the French might have a good prey of us, if he knew of it; for there is none to guard it but boys. [*Exit.*

SCENE V. *Another part of the field of battle.*

*Alarums.* *Enter* Constable, ORLEANS, BOURBON, Dauphin,  
RAMBURES, and others.

*Con.* *O diable!*

*Orl.* *O seigneur! le jour est perdu, tout est perdu!*

*Dau.* *Mort de ma vie!* all is confounded, all!

Reproach and everlasting shame

Sits mocking in our plumes.—*O méchante fortune!*—

Do not run away. [*A short alarum.*]

*Con.* Why, all our ranks are broke.

*Dau.* *O perdurable shame!*—let's stab ourselves.

Be these the wretches that we play'd at dice for?

*Orl.* Is this the king we sent to for his ransom?

*Bour.* Shame, and eternal shame, nothing but shame!

Let us die in honour: <sup>(53)</sup> once more back again;

And he that will not follow Bourbon now,

Let him go hence, and with his cap in hand,

Like a base pander, hold the chamber-door

Whilst by a slave, no gentler than my dog,

His fairest daughter is contaminated.

*Con.* Disorder, that hath spoil'd us, friend us now!

Let us on heaps go offer up our lives.

*Orl.* We are enow, yet living in the field,

To smother up the English in our throngs,

If any order might be thought upon.

*Bour.* The devil take order now! I'll to the throng:

Let life be short; else shame will be too long. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VI. *Another part of the field.*

*Alarums.* *Enter* King HENRY and forces, EXETER, and others.

*K. Hen.* Well have we done, thrice-valiant countrymen:  
But all's not done; yet keep the French the field.

*Exe.* The Duke of York commends him to your majesty.

*K. Hen.* Lives he, good uncle? thrice within this hour

I saw him down; thrice up again, and fighting;  
From helmet to the spur all blood he was.

*Exe.* In which array, brave soldier, doth he lie,  
Larding<sup>(54)</sup> the plain; and by his bloody side  
(Yoke-fellow to his honour-owing wounds)  
The noble Earl of Suffolk also lies.

Suffolk first died: and York, all haggled over,  
Comes to him, where in gore he lay insteep'd,  
And takes him by the beard; kisses the gashes  
That bloodily did yawn upon his face;  
And cries aloud, "Tarry, dear cousin Suffolk!  
My soul shall thine keep company to heaven;  
Tarry, sweet soul, for mine, then fly a-breast;  
As, in this glorious and well-foughten field,  
We kept together in our chivalry!"

Upon these words I came, and cheer'd him up:  
He smil'd me in the face, raught me his hand,  
And, with a feeble gripe, says, "Dear my lord,  
Commend my service to my sovereign."

So did he turn, and over Suffolk's neck  
He threw his wounded arm, and kiss'd his lips;  
And so, espous'd to death, with blood he seal'd  
A testament of noble-ending love.

The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd  
Those waters from me which I would have stopp'd;  
But I had not so much of man in me,  
And all my mother came into mine eyes,  
And gave me up to tears.

*K. Hen.* I blame you not;  
For, hearing this, I must perforce compound  
With mistful eyes, or they will issue too.—  
But, hark! what new alarum is this same?—  
The French have reinforc'd their scatter'd men:—  
Then every soldier kill his prisoners;  
Give the word through.

[*Alarum.*

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VII. *Another part of the field.*[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)*Alarums. Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.*

*Flu.* Kill the poys and the luggage! 'tis expressly against the law of arms: 'tis as arrant a piece of knavery, mark you now, as can be offered; in your conscience, now, is it not?

*Gow.* 'Tis certain there's not a boy left alive; and the cowardly rascals that ran from the battle have done this slaughter: besides, they have burned and carried away all that was in the king's tent; wherefore the king, most worthily, hath caused every soldier to cut his prisoner's throat. O, 'tis a gallant king!

*Flu.* Ay, he was porn at Monmouth, Captain Gower. What call you the town's name where Alexander the Pig was porn?

*Gow.* Alexander the Great.

*Flu.* Why, I pray you, is not pig great? the pig, or the great, or the mighty, or the huge, or the magnanimous, are all one reckonings, save the phrase is a little variations.

*Gow.* I think Alexander the Great was born in Macedon: his father was called Philip of Macedon, as I take it.

*Flu.* I think it is in Macedon where Alexander is porn. I tell you, captain, if you look in the maps of the 'orld, I warrant you shall find, in the comparisons between Macedon and Monmouth, that the situations, look you, is both alike. There is a river in Macedon; and there is also moreover a river at Monmouth: it is called Wye at Monmouth; but it is out of my prains what is the name of the other river; but 'tis all one, 'tis alike as my fingers is to my fingers, and there is salmons in both. If you mark Alexander's life well, Harry of Monmouth's life is come after it indifferent well; for there is figures in all things. Alexander (Got knows, and you know), in his rages, and his furies, and his wraths, and his cholers, and his moods, and his displeasures, and his indignations, and also being a little intoxicates in his prains, did, in his ales and his angers, look you, kill his pest friend, Clytus.

*Gow.* Our king is not like him in that: he never killed any of his friends.

*Flu.* It is not well done, mark you now, to take the tales out of my mouth, ere it is made and finished. I speak but in the figures and comparisons of it: as Alexander killed his friend Clytus, being in his ales and his cups; so also Harry Monmouth, being in his right wits and his goot judgments, turned away the fat knight with the great pelly-doublet: he was full of jests, and gipes, and knaveries, and mocks; I have forgot his name.

*Gow.* Sir John Falstaff.

*Flu.* That is he:—I'll tell you there is goot men porn at Monmouth.

*Gow.* Here comes his majesty.

*Alarum.* *Enter* King HENRY *with a part of the English forces;*  
WARWICK, GLOSTER, EXETER, *and others.*

*K. Hen.* I was not angry since I came to France  
Until this instant.—Take a trumpet, herald;  
Ride thou unto the horsemen on yond hill:  
If they will fight with us, bid them come down,  
Or void the field; they do offend our sight:  
If they'll do neither, we will come to them,  
And make them skirr away, as swift as stones  
Enforcèd from the old Assyrian slings:  
Besides, we'll cut the throats of those we have;  
And not a man of them that we shall take  
Shall taste our mercy:—go, and tell them so.

*Exe.* Here comes the herald of the French, my liege.

*Glo.* His eyes are humbler than they us'd to be.

*Enter* MONTJOY.

*K. Hen.* How now! what means this, herald? know'st  
thou not

That I have fin'd these bones of mine for ransom?  
Com'st thou again for ransom?

*Mont.* No, great king:

I come to thee for charitable license,  
That we may wander o'er this bloody field



To book<sup>(55)</sup> our dead, and then to bury them ;  
 To sort our nobles from our common men,—  
 For many of our princes (woe the while!)  
 Lie drown'd and soak'd in mercenary blood ;  
 (So do our vulgar drench their peasant limbs  
 In blood of princes ;) and their wounded steeds  
 Fret fetlock deep in gore, and with wild rage  
 Yerk out their armèd heels at their dead masters,  
 Killing them twice. O, give us leave, great king,  
 To view the field in safety, and dispose  
 Of their dead bodies!

*K. Hen.* I tell thee truly, herald,  
 I know not if the day be ours or no ;  
 For yet a many of your horsemen peer  
 And gallop o'er the field.

*Mont.* The day is yours.

*K. Hen.* Praisèd be God, and not our strength, for it!—  
 What is this castle call'd that stands hard by ?

*Mont.* They call it Agincourt.

*K. Hen.* Then call we this the field of Agincourt,  
 Fought on the day of Crispin Crispianus.

*Flu.* Your grandfather of famous memory, an't please  
 your majesty, and your great-uncle Edward the Plack Prince  
 of Wales, as I have read in the chronicles, fought a most  
 prave pattle here in France.

*K. Hen.* They did, Fluellen.

*Flu.* Your majesty says very true: if your majesties is  
 remembered of it, the Welshmen did goot service in a garden  
 where leeks did grow, wearing leeks in their Monmouth  
 caps ; which, your majesty know, to this hour is an honour-  
 able padge of the service ; and I do pelieve your majesty  
 takes no scorn to wear the leek upon Saint Tavy's day.

*K. Hen.* I wear it for a memorable honour ;  
 For I am Welsh, you know, good countryman.

*Flu.* All the water in Wye cannot wash your majesty's  
 Welsh plood out of your pody, I can tell you that : Got  
 pless it, and preserve it, as long as it pleases his grace, and  
 his majesty too!

*K. Hen.* Thanks, good my countryman.

*Flu.* By Cheshu, I am your majesty's countryman, I care not who know it; I will confess it to all the 'orld: I need not to be ashamed of your majesty, praised be Got, so long as your majesty is an honest man.

*K. Hen.* God keep me so!—Our heralds go with him: Bring me just notice of the numbers dead On both our parts.—Call yonder fellow hither.

[*Points to Williams. Exeunt Montjoy and others.*]

*Exe.* Soldier, you must come to the king.

*K. Hen.* Soldier, why wearest thou that glove in thy cap?

*Will.* An't please your majesty, 'tis the gage of one that I should fight withal, if he be alive.

*K. Hen.* An Englishman?

*Will.* An't please your majesty, a rascal that swaggered with me last night; who, if alive,<sup>(56)</sup> and ever dare to challenge this glove, I have sworn to take him a box o' the ear: or if I can see my glove in his cap (which he swore, as he was a soldier, he would wear if alive), I will strike it out soundly.

*K. Hen.* What think you, Captain Fluellen? is it fit this soldier keep his oath?

*Flu.* He is a craven and a villain else, an't please your majesty, in my conscience.

*K. Hen.* It may be his enemy is a gentleman of great sort, quite from the answer of his degree.

*Flu.* Though he be as goot a gentleman as the tevil is, as Lucifer and Belzebub himself, it is necessary, look your grace, that he keep his vow and his oath: if he be perjured, see you now, his reputation is as arrant a villain and a Jack-sauce, as ever his plack shoe trod upon Got's ground and his earth, in my conscience, la.

*K. Hen.* Then keep thy vow, sirrah, when thou meetest the fellow.

*Will.* So I will, my liege, as I live.

*K. Hen.* Who servest thou under?

*Will.* Under Captain Gower, my liege.

*Flu.* Gower is a goot captain, and is goot knowledge and literated in the wars.

*K. Hen.* Call him hither to me, soldier.

*Will.* I will, my liege.

[*Exit.*]

*K. Hen.* Here, Fluellen; wear thou this favour for me, and stick it in thy cap: when Alençon and myself were down together, I plucked this glove from his helm: if any man challenge this, he is a friend to Alençon, and an enemy to our person; if thou encounter any such, apprehend him, an thou dost me love.

*Flu.* Your grace does me as great honours as can be desired in the hearts of his subjects: I would fain see the man, that has but two legs, that shall find himself aggrieved at this glove, that is all; but<sup>(57)</sup> I would fain see it once, an please Got of his grace that I might see.

*K. Hen.* Knowest thou Gower?

*Flu.* He is my dear friend, an please you.

*K. Hen.* Pray thee, go seek him, and bring him to my tent.

*Flu.* I will fetch him. [*Exit.*

*K. Hen.* My Lord of Warwick, and my brother Gloster, Follow Fluellen closely at the heels:  
The glove which I have given him for a favour  
May haply purchase him a box o' the ear;  
It is the soldier's; I, by bargain, should  
Wear it myself. Follow, good cousin Warwick:  
If that the soldier strike him (as I judge,  
By his blunt bearing, he will keep his word),  
Some sudden mischief may arise of it;  
For I do know Fluellen valiant,  
And, touch'd with choler, hot as gunpowder,  
And quickly will return an injury:  
Follow, and see there be no harm between them.—  
Go you with me, uncle of Exeter. [*Exeunt.*

---

SCENE VIII. *Before King HENRY'S pavilion.*

*Enter GOWER and WILLIAMS.*

*Will.* I warrant it is to knight you, captain.

*Enter FLUELLEN.*

*Flu.* Got's will and his pleasure, captain, I peseech you

now, come apace to the king: there is more goot toward you peradventure than is in your knowledge to dream of.

*Will.* Sir, know you this glove?

*Flu.* Know the glove! I know the glove is a glove.

*Will.* I know this; and thus I challenge it. [*Strikes him.*]

*Flu.* 'Splood, an arrant traitor as any's in the universal 'orld, or in France, or in England!

*Gow.* How now, sir! you villain!

*Will.* Do you think I'll be forsworn?

*Flu.* Stand away, Captain Gower; I will give treason his payment into plows, I warrant you.

*Will.* I am no traitor.

*Flu.* That's a lie in thy throat.—I charge you in his majesty's name, apprehend him: he's a friend of the Duke Alençon's.

*Enter WARWICK and GLOSTER.*

*War.* How now, how now! what's the matter?

*Flu.* My Lord of Warwick, here is (praised be Got for it!) a most contagious treason come to light, look you, as you shall desire in a summer's day.—Here is his majesty.

*Enter King HENRY and EXETER.*

*K. Hen.* How now! what's the matter?

*Flu.* My liege, here is a villain and a traitor, that, look your grace, has struck the glove which your majesty is take out of the helmet of Alençon.

*Will.* My liege, this was my glove; here is the fellow of it; and he that I gave it to in change promised to wear it in his cap: I promised to strike him, if he did: I met this man with my glove in his cap, and I have been as good as my word.

*Flu.* Your majesty hear now (saving your majesty's manhood) what an arrant, rascally, beggarly, lousy knave it is: I hope your majesty is pear me testimony, and witness, and will vouchment, that this is the glove of Alençon, that your majesty is give me, in your conscience, now.

*K. Hen.* Give me thy glove, soldier: look, here is the fellow of it.

'Twas I, indeed, thou promised'st to strike;  
And thou hast given me most bitter terms.

*Flu.* An please your majesty, let his neck answer for it, if there is any martial law in the 'orld.

*K. Hen.* How canst thou make me satisfaction?

*Will.* All offences, my liege, come from the heart: never came any from mine that might offend your majesty.

*K. Hen.* It was ourself thou didst abuse.

*Will.* Your majesty came not like yourself: you appeared to me but as a common man; witness the night, your garments, your lowliness; and what your highness suffered under that shape, I beseech you take it for your own fault, and not mine: for had you been as I took you for, I made no offence; therefore, I beseech your highness, pardon me.

*K. Hen.* Here, uncle Exeter, fill this glove with crowns, And give it to this fellow.—Keep it, fellow; And wear it for an honour in thy cap Till I do challenge it.—Give him the crowns:— And, captain, you must needs be friends with him.

*Flu.* By this day and this light, the fellow has mettle enough in his pelly.—Hold, there is twelve pence for you; and I pray you to serve Got, and keep you out of prawls, and prabbles, and quarrels, and dissensions, and, I warrant you, it is the petter for you.

*Will.* I will none of your money.

*Flu.* It is with a goot will; I can tell you, it will serve you to mend your shoes: come, wherefore should you be so pashful? your shoes is not so goot: 'tis a goot silling, I warrant you, or I will change it.

*Enter an English Herald.*

*K. Hen.* Now, herald,—are the dead number'd?

*Her.* Here is the number of the slaughter'd French.

*[Delivers a paper.]*

*K. Hen.* What prisoners of good sort are taken, uncle?

*Exe.* Charles Duke of Orleans, nephew to the king; John Duke of Bourbon, and Lord Bouciqualt: Of other lords and barons, knights and squires, Full fifteen hundred, besides common men.

*K. Hen.* This note doth tell me of ten thousand French That in the field lie slain: of princes, in this number,

And nobles bearing banners, there lie dead  
 One hundred twenty-six : added to these,  
 Of knights, esquires, and gallant gentlemen,  
 Eight thousand and four hundred ; of the which,  
 Five hundred were but yesterday dubb'd knights :  
 So that, in these ten thousand they have lost,  
 There are but sixteen hundred mercenaries ;  
 The rest are princes, barons, lords, knights, squires,  
 And gentlemen of blood and quality.  
 The names of those their nobles that lie dead,—  
 Charles De-la-bret, high-constable of France ;  
 Jaques of Chatillon, admiral of France ;  
 The master of the cross-bows, Lord Rambures ;  
 Great-master of France, the brave Sir Guischar'd Dauphin ;  
 John Duke of Alençon ; Antony Duke of Brabant,  
 The brother to the Duke of Burgundy ;  
 And Edward Duke of Bar : of lusty earls,  
 Grandpré and Roussi, Fauconberg and Foix,  
 Beaumont and Marle, Vaudemont and Lestrale.  
 Here was a royal fellowship of death !—  
 Where is the number of our English dead ?

[*Herald presents another paper.*]

Edward the Duke of York, the Earl of Suffolk,  
 Sir Richard Ketly, Davy Gam, esquire :  
 None else of name ; and of all other men  
 But five and twenty.—O God, thy arm was here ;  
 And not to us, but to thy arm alone,  
 Ascribe we all !—When, without stratagem,  
 But in plain shock and even play of battle,  
 Was ever known so great and little loss  
 On one part and on the other ?—Take it, God,  
 For it is none but thine !

*Exe.* 'Tis wonderful !

*K. Hen.* Come, go we in procession to the village :  
 And be it death proclaimèd through our host  
 To boast of this, or take that praise from God  
 Which is his only.

*Flu.* Is it not lawful, an please your majesty, to tell how  
 many is killed ?

*K. Hen.* Yes, captain; but with this acknowledgment,  
That God fought for us.

*Flu.* Yes, my conscience, he did us great goot.

*K. Hen.* Do we all holy rites:  
Let there be sung *Non nobis* and *Te Deum*;  
The dead with charity enclos'd in clay:  
And then to Calais; and to England then;  
Where ne'er from France arriv'd more happy men. [*Exeunt.*]

---

*Enter Chorus.*

*Chor.* Vouchsafe to those that have not read the story,  
That I may prompt them: and of<sup>(58)</sup> such as have,  
I humbly pray them to admit the excuse  
Of time, of numbers, and due course of things,  
Which cannot in their huge and proper life  
Be here presented. Now we bear the king  
Toward Calais: grant him there; there seen,  
Heave him away upon your wingèd thoughts  
Athwart the sea. Behold, the English beach  
Pales in the flood with men, with<sup>(59)</sup> wives, and boys,  
Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd sea,  
Which, like a mighty whiffler 'fore the king  
Seems to prepare his way: so let him land;  
And solemnly see him set on to London.  
So swift a pace hath thought, that even now  
You may imagine him upon Blackheath;  
Where that his lords desire him to have borne  
His bruisèd helmet and his bended sword  
Before him through the city: he forbids it,  
Being free from vainness and self-glorious pride;  
Giving full trophy, signal, and ostent,  
Quite from himself to God. But now behold,  
In the quick forge and working-house of thought,  
How London doth pour out her citizens!  
The mayor, and all his brethren, in best sort,—  
Like to the senators of the antique Rome,

With the plebeians swarming at their heels,—  
 Go forth, and fetch their conquering Cæsar in :  
 As, by a lower but by loving likelihood,  
 Were now the general of our gracious empress  
 (As in good time he may) from Ireland coming,  
 Bringing rebellion broachèd on his sword,  
 How many would the peaceful city quit,  
 To welcome him ! much more, and much more cause,  
 Did they this Harry. Now in London place him ;<sup>(60)</sup>  
 (As yet the lamentation of the French  
 Invites the King of England's stay at home ;  
 The emperor's coming in behalf of France,  
 To order peace between them ;) and omit  
 All the occurrences, whatever chanc'd,  
 Till Harry's back-return again to France :  
 There must we bring him ; and myself have play'd  
 The interim, by remembering you 'tis past.  
 Then brook abridgment ; and your eyes advance,  
 After your thoughts, straight back again to France. [*Exit.*

ACT V.

SCENE I. *France. An English court of guard.*

*Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.*

*Gow.* Nay, that's right ; but why wear you your leek to-day ? Saint Davy's day is past.

*Flu.* There is occasions and causes why and wherefore in all things : I will tell you, as my friend, Captain Gower :—the rascally, scald, peggarly, lousy, pragging knave, Pistol, —which you and yourself, and all the 'orld, know to be no petter than a fellow, look you now, of no merits,—he is come to me, and prings me pread and salt yesterday, look you, 'and pid me eat my leek : it was in a place where I could not preed no contention with him ; but I will be so pold as to wear it in my cap till I see him once again, and then I will tell him a little piece of my desires.



*Gow.* Why, here he comes, swelling like a turkey-cock.

*Flu.* 'Tis no matter for his swellings nor his turkey-cocks.

*Enter PISTOL.*

Got pless you, Auncient Pistol! you scurvy, lousy knave,  
Got pless you!

*Pist.* Ha! art thou bedlam? dost thou thirst, base Trojan,  
jan,

To have me fold up Parca's fatal web?

Hence! I am qualmish at the smell of leek.

*Flu.* I peseech you heartily, scurvy, lousy knave, at my desires, and my requests, and my petitions, to eat, look you, this leek: because, look you, you do not love it, nor your affections, and your appetites, and your digestions, does not agree with it, I would desire you to eat it.

*Pist.* Not for Cadwallader and all his goats.

*Flu.* There is one goat for you. [*Strikes him.*] Will you be so goot, scald knave, as eat it?

*Pist.* Base Trojan, thou shalt die.

*Flu.* You say very true, scald knave,—when Got's will is: I will desire you to live in the mean time, and eat your victuals: come, there is sauce for it. [*Strikes him again.*] You called me yesterday mountain-squire; but I will make you to-day a squire of low degree. I pray you, fall to: if you can mock a leek, you can eat a leek.

*Gow.* Enough, captain: you have astonished him.

*Flu.* I say, I will make him eat some part of my leek, or I will peat his pate four days.—Pite, I pray you; it is goot for your green wound and your bloody coxcomb.

*Pist.* Must I bite?

*Flu.* Yes, certainly, and out of doubt, and out of question too, and ambiguities.

*Pist.* By this leek, I will most horribly revenge: I eat and eat,<sup>(61)</sup>—I swear—

*Flu.* Eat, I pray you: will you have some more sauce to your leek? there is not enough leek to swear by.

*Pist.* Quiet thy cudgel; thou dost see I eat.

*Flu.* Much goot do you, scald knave, heartily. Nay, pray you, throw none away; the skin is goot for your

proken coxcomb. When you take occasions to see leeks hereafter, I pray you, mock at 'em; that is all.

*Pist.* Good.

*Flu.* Ay, leeks is goot:—hold you, there is a groat to heal your pate.

*Pist.* Me a groat!

*Flu.* Yes, verily and in truth, you shall take it; or I have another leek in my pocket, which you shall eat.

*Pist.* I take thy groat in earnest of revenge.

*Flu.* If I owe you any thing, I will pay you in cudgels: you shall be a woodmonger, and buy nothing of me but cudgels. God b' wi' you, and keep you, and heal your pate.

[*Exit.*]

*Pist.* All hell shall stir for this.

*Gow.* Go, go; you are a counterfeit cowardly knave. Will you mock at an ancient tradition,—begun upon an honourable respect, and worn as a memorable trophy of predeceased valour,—and dare not avouch in your deeds any of your words? I have seen you gleeking and galling at this gentleman twice or thrice. You thought, because he could not speak English in the native garb, he could not therefore handle an English cudgel: you find it otherwise; and henceforth let a Welsh correction teach you a good English condition. Fare ye well.

[*Exit.*]

*Pist.* Doth Fortune play the huswife with me now?  
 News have I, that my Nell<sup>(62)</sup> is dead i' the spital  
 Of malady of France;  
 And there my rendezvous is quite cut off.  
 Old I do wax; and from my weary limbs  
 Honour is cudgell'd. Well, bawd will I turn,  
 And something lean to cutpurse of quick hand.  
 To England will I steal, and there I'll steal:  
 And patches will I get unto these scars,<sup>(63)</sup>  
 And swear I got them in the Gallia wars.

[*Exit.*]

SCENE II. *Troyes in Champagne. An apartment in the French King's palace.*

*Enter, from one side, King HENRY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and other Lords; from the other side, the French King, Queen ISABEL, the Princess KATHARINE, Lords, Ladies, &c., the Duke of BURGUNDY, and his train.*

*K. Hen.* Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met!

Unto our brother France, and to our sister,  
Health and fair time of day;—joy and good wishes  
To our most fair and princely cousin Katharine;—  
And (as a branch and member of this royalty,  
By whom this great assembly is contriv'd),  
We do salute you, Duke of Burgundy;—  
And, princes French, and peers, health to you all!

*Fr. King.* Right joyous are we to behold your face,  
Most worthy brother England; fairly met:—  
So are you, princes English, every one.

*Q. Isa.* So happy be the issue, brother England,  
Of this good day and of this gracious meeting,  
As we are now glad to behold your eyes;  
Your eyes, which hitherto have borne in them  
Against the French, that met them in their bent,  
The fatal balls of murdering basilisks:  
The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,  
Have <sup>(64)</sup> lost their quality; and that this day  
Shall change all griefs and quarrels into love.

*K. Hen.* To cry amen to that, thus we appear.

*Q. Isa.* You English princes all, I do salute you.

*Bur.* My duty to you both, on equal love,  
Great Kings of France and England! That I have labour'd,  
With all my wits, my pains, and strong endeavours,  
To bring your most imperial majesties  
Unto this bar and royal interview,  
Your mightiness on both parts best can witness.  
Since, then, my office hath so far prevail'd,  
That, face to face and royal eye to eye,

You have congreeted, let it not disgrace me,  
 If I demand, before this royal view,  
 What rub or what impediment there is,  
 Why that the naked, poor, and mangled Peace,  
 Dear nurse of arts, plenties, and joyful births,  
 Should not, in this best garden of the world,  
 Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage?  
 Alas, she hath from France too long been chas'd!  
 And all her husbandry doth lie on heaps,  
 Corrupting in its own fertility.  
 Her vine, the merry cheerer of the heart,  
 Unpruned dies; her hedges even-pleach'd,  
 Like prisoners wildly overgrown with hair,  
 Put forth disorder'd twigs; her fallow leas  
 The darnel, hemlock, and rank fumitory,  
 Doth root upon, while that the coulter rusts,  
 That should deracinate such savagery;  
 The even mead, that erst brought sweetly forth  
 The freckled cowslip, burnet, and green clover,  
 Wanting the scythe, all<sup>(65)</sup> uncorrected, rank,  
 Conceives by idleness, and nothing teems  
 But hateful docks, rough thistles, kecksies, burs,  
 Losing both beauty and utility.  
 And as<sup>(66)</sup> our vineyards, fallows, meads, and hedges,  
 Defective in their natures, grow to wildness,  
 Even so our houses, and ourselves and children,  
 Have lost, or do not learn for want of time,  
 The sciences that should become our country;  
 But grow, like savages,—as soldiers will,  
 That nothing do but meditate on blood,—  
 To swearing, and stern looks, diffus'd attire,  
 And every thing that seems unnatural.  
 Which to reduce into our former favour,  
 You are assembled: and my speech entreats  
 That I may know the let, why gentle Peace  
 Should not expel these inconveniences,  
 And bless us with her former qualities.

*K. Hen.* If, Duke of Burgundy, you would the peace,

Whose want gives growth to the imperfections  
 Which you have cited, you must buy that peace  
 With full accord to all our just demands ;  
 Whose tenours and particular effects  
 You have, enschedul'd briefly, in your hands.

*Bur.* The king hath heard them ; to the which as yet  
 There is no answer made.

*K. Hen.* Well, then, the peace,  
 Which you before so urg'd, lies in his answer.

*Fr. King.* I have but with a cursory eye  
 O'erglanc'd the articles : pleaseth your grace  
 To appoint some of your council presently  
 To sit with us once more, with better heed  
 To re-survey them, we will suddenly  
 Pass our accept and peremptory answer.

*K. Hen.* Brother, we shall.—Go, uncle Exeter,—  
 And brother Clarence,—and you, brother Gloster,—  
 Warwick,—and Huntington,—go with the king ;  
 And take with you free power to ratify,  
 Augment, or alter, as your wisdoms best  
 Shall see advantageable for our dignity,  
 Any thing in or out of our demands ;  
 And we'll consign thereto.—Will you, fair sister,  
 Go with the princes, or stay here with us ?

*Q. Isa.* Our gracious brother, I will go with them :  
 Haply a woman's voice may do some good,  
 When articles too nicely urg'd be stood on.

*K. Hen.* Yet leave our cousin Katharine here with us :  
 She is our capital demand, compris'd  
 Within the fore-rank of our articles.

*Q. Isa.* She hath good leave.

[*Exeunt all except Henry, Katharine, and Alice.*]

*K. Hen.* Fair Katharine, and most fair !  
 Will you vouchsafe to teach a soldier terms  
 Such as will enter at a lady's ear,  
 And plead his love-suit to her gentle heart ?

*Kath.* Your majesty shall mock at me ; I cannot speak  
 your England.

*K. Hen.* O fair Katharine, if you will love me soundly

with your French heart, I will be glad to hear you confess it brokenly with your English tongue. Do you like me, Kate?

*Kath.* *Pardonnez-moi*, I cannot tell vat is like me.

*K. Hen.* An angel is like you, Kate, and you are like an angel,

*Kath.* *Que dit-il? que je suis semblable à les anges?*

*Alice.* *Oui, vraiment, sauf votre grace, ainsi dit-il.*

*K. Hen.* I said so, dear Katharine; and I must not blush to affirm it.

*Kath.* *O bon Dieu! les langues des hommes sont pleines de tromperies.*

*K. Hen.* What says she, fair one? that the tongues of men are full of deceits?

*Alice.* *Oui*, dat de tongues of de mans is be full of deceits,—dat is de princess.

*K. Hen.* The princess is the better Englishwoman. I' faith, Kate, my wooing is fit for thy understanding: I am glad thou canst speak no better English; for, if thou couldst, thou wouldst find me such a plain king, that thou wouldst think I had sold my farm to buy my crown. I know no ways to mince it in love, but directly to say, I love you: then, if you urge me further than to say, Do you in faith? I wear out my suit. Give me your answer; i' faith, do; and so clap hands and a bargain: how say you, lady?

*Kath.* *Sauf votre honneur*, me understand vell.

*K. Hen.* Marry, if you would put me to verses or to dance for your sake, Kate, why you undid me: for the one, I have neither words nor measure; and for the other, I have no strength in measure, yet a reasonable measure in strength. If I could win a lady at leap-frog, or by vaulting into my saddle with my armour on my back, under the correction of bragging be it spoken, I should quickly leap into a wife. Or if I might buffet for my love, or bound my horse for her favours, I could lay on like a butcher, and sit like a jack-an-apes, never off. But, before God, Kate, I cannot look greenly, nor gasp out my eloquence, nor I have no cunning in protestation; only downright oaths, which I never use till urged, nor never break for urging. If thou canst love a fellow of this temper, Kate, whose face is not worth sun-burning, that never

looks in his glass for love of any thing he sees there,—let thine eye be thy cook. I speak to thee plain soldier: if thou canst love me for this, take me; if not, to say to thee that I shall die, is true,—but for thy love, by the Lord, no; yet I love thee too. And while thou livest, dear Kate, take a fellow of plain and uncoined constancy; for he perforce must do thee right, because he hath not the gift to woo in other places:<sup>(67)</sup> for these fellows of infinite tongue, that can rhyme themselves into ladies' favours, they do always reason themselves out again. What! a speaker is but a prater; a rhyme is but a ballad. A good leg will fall; a straight back will stoop; a black beard will turn white; a curled pate will grow bald; a fair face will wither; a full eye will wax hollow: but a good heart, Kate, is the sun and the moon; or, rather, the sun, and not the moon,—for it shines bright, and never changes, but keeps his course truly. If thou would have such a one, take me: and take me, take a soldier; take a soldier, take a king: and what sayest thou, then, to my love? speak, my fair, and fairly, I pray thee.

*Kath.* Is it possible dat I sould love de enemy of France?

*K. Hen.* No; it is not possible you should love the enemy of France, Kate: but, in loving me, you should love the friend of France; for I love France so well, that I will not part with a village of it; I will have it all mine: and, Kate, when France is mine and I am yours, then yours is France and you are mine.

*Kath.* I cannot tell vat is dat.

*K. Hen.* No, Kate? I will tell thee in French; which I am sure will hang upon my tongue like a new-married wife about her husband's neck, hardly to be shook off. *Quand j'ai la possession de France, et quand vous avez la possession de moi,*—let me see, what then? Saint Denis be my speed!—*donc votre est France et vous êtes mienne.* It is as easy for me, Kate, to conquer the kingdom, as to speak so much more French: I shall never move thee in French, unless it be to laugh at me.

*Kath.* *Sauf votre honneur, le Français que vous parlez est meilleur que l'Anglais lequel je parle.*

*K. Hen.* No, faith, is't not, Kate: but thy speaking of my tongue, and I thine, most truly falsely, must needs be granted to be much at one. But, Kate, dost thou understand thus much English,—Canst thou love me?

*Kath.* I cannot tell.

*K. Hen.* Can any of your neighbours tell, Kate? I'll ask them. Come, I know thou lovest me: and at night, when you come into your closet, you'll question this gentlewoman about me; and I know, Kate, you will to her dispraise those parts in me that you love with your heart: but, good Kate, mock me mercifully; the rather, gentle princess, because I love thee cruelly. If ever thou beest mine, Kate,—as I have a saving faith within me tells me thou shalt,—I get thee with scrambling, and thou must therefore needs prove a good soldier-breeder: shall not thou and I, between Saint Denis and Saint George, compound a boy, half French, half English, that shall go to Constantinople and take the Turk by the beard? shall we not? what sayest thou, my fair flower-de-luce?

*Kath.* I do not know dat.

*K. Hen.* No; 'tis hereafter to know, but now to promise: do but now promise, Kate, you will endeavour for your French part of such a boy; and for my English moiety take the word of a king and a bachelor. How answer you, *la plus belle Katharine du monde, mon très chère et divine déesse?*

*Kath.* Your *majesté ave fausse* French enough to deceive de most *sage demoiselle* dat is en *France*.

*K. Hen.* Now, fie upon my false French! By mine honour, in true English, I love thee, Kate: by which honour I dare not swear thou lovest me; yet my blood begins to flatter me that thou dost, notwithstanding the poor and untempering effect of my visage. Now, beshrew my father's ambition! he was thinking of civil wars when he got me: therefore was I created with a stubborn outside, with an aspect of iron, that, when I come to woo ladies, I fright them. But, in faith, Kate, the elder I wax, the better I shall appear: my comfort is, that old age, that ill layer-up of beauty, can do no more spoil upon my face: thou hast me, if thou hast me, at the worst; and thou shalt wear me, if thou wear me,



better and better:—and therefore tell me, most fair Katharine, will you have me? Put off your maiden blushes; avouch the thoughts of your heart with the looks of an empress; take me by the hand, and say,—Harry of England, I am thine: which word thou shalt no sooner bless mine ear withal, but I will tell thee aloud,—England is thine, Ireland is thine, France is thine, and Henry Plantagenet is thine; who, though I speak it before his face, if he be not fellow with the best king, thou shalt find the best king of good fellows. Come, your answer in broken music,—for thy voice is music, and thy English broken; therefore, queen of all, Katharine, break thy mind to me in broken English,—wilt thou have me?

*Kath.* Dat is as it sall please de *roi mon père*.

*K. Hen.* Nay, it will please him well, Kate,—it shall please him, Kate.

*Kath.* Den it sall also content me.

*K. Hen.* Upon that I kiss your hand, and I call you my queen.

*Kath.* *Laissez, mon seigneur, laissez, laissez: ma foi, je ne veux point que vous abaissez votre grandeur en baisant la main d'une votre indigne serviteur; excusez-moi, je vous supplie, mon très puissant seigneur.*

*K. Hen.* Then I will kiss your lips, Kate.

*Kath.* *Les dames et demoiselles pour être baisées devant leur noces, il n'est pas la coutume de France.*

*K. Hen.* Madam my interpreter, what says she?

*Alice.* Dat it is not be de fashion *pour les ladies* of France,—I cannot tell vat is *baiser en* English.

*K. Hen.* To kiss.

*Alice.* Your majesty *entendre* better *que moi*.

*K. Hen.* It is not a fashion for the maids in France to kiss before they are married, would she say?

*Alice.* *Oui, vraiment.*

*K. Hen.* O Kate, nice customs court'sy to great kings. Dear Kate, you and I cannot be confined within the weak list of a country's fashion: we are the makers of manners, Kate; and the liberty that follows our places stops the mouth of all find-faults,—as I will do yours for upholding the nice fashion of your country in denying me a kiss: there-

fore, patiently and yielding. [*Kissing her.*] You have witchcraft in your lips, Kate: there is more eloquence in a sugar-touch of ~~them~~ than in the tongues of the French council; and they should sooner persuade Harry of England than a general petition of monarchs.—Here comes your father.

*Re-enter the French King and Queen, BURGUNDY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, &c.*

*Bur.* God save your majesty! my royal cousin, Teach you our princess English?

*K. Hen.* I would have her learn, my fair cousin, how perfectly I love her; and that is good English.

*Bur.* Is she not apt?

*K. Hen.* Our tongue is rough, coz, and my condition is not smooth; so that, having neither the voice nor the heart of flattery about me, I cannot so conjure up the spirit of love in her, that he will appear in his true likeness.

*Bur.* Pardon the frankness of my mirth, if I answer you for that. If you would conjure in her, you must make a circle; if conjure up love in her in his true likeness, he must appear naked and blind. Can you blame her, then, being a maid yet rosed-over with the virgin crimson of modesty, if she deny the appearance of a naked blind boy in her naked seeing self? It were, my lord, a hard condition for a maid to consign to.

*K. Hen.* Yet they do wink and yield,—as love is blind and enforces.

*Bur.* They are then excused, my lord, when they see not what they do.

*K. Hen.* Then, good my lord, teach your cousin to consent winking.

*Bur.* I will wink on her to consent, my lord, if you will teach her to know my meaning: for maids, well summered and warm kept, are like flies at Bartholomew-tide, blind, though they have their eyes; and then they will endure handling, which before would not abide looking on.

*K. Hen.* This moral ties me over to time and a hot summer; and so I shall catch the fly, your cousin, in the latter end, and she must be blind too.

*Bur.* As love is, my lord, before it loves.

*K. Hen.* It is so; and you may, some of you, thank love for my blindness, who cannot see many a fair French city for one fair French maid that stands in my way.

*Fr. King.* Yes, my lord, you see them perspectively, the cities turned into a maid; for they are all girdled with maiden walls that war hath never<sup>(68)</sup> entered.

*K. Hen.* Shall Kate be my wife?

*Fr. King.* So please you.

*K. Hen.* I am content; so the maiden cities you talk of may wait on her: so the maid that stood in the way for my wish shall show me the way to my will.

*Fr. King.* We have consented to all terms of reason.

*K. Hen.* Is't so, my lords of England?

*West.* The king hath granted every article:—  
His daughter first; and,<sup>(69)</sup> in sequel, all,  
According to their firm proposèd natures.

*Exe.* Only, he hath not yet subscribèd this:—

Where your majesty demands, that the King of France, having any occasion to write for matter of grant, shall name your highness in this form and with this addition, in French, *Notre très cher fils Henry, roi d'Angleterre, héritier de France*; and thus in Latin, *Præclarissimus*<sup>(70)</sup> *filius noster Henricus, rex Angliæ, et hæres Franciæ*.

*Fr. King.* Nor this I have not, brother, so denied,  
But your request shall make me let it pass.

*K. Hen.* I pray you, then, in love and dear alliance,  
Let that one article rank with the rest;  
And thereupon give me your daughter.

*Fr. King.* Take her, fair son; and from her blood raise up  
Issue to me; that the contending kingdoms  
Of France and England, whose very shores look pale  
With envy of each other's happiness,  
May cease their hatred; and this dear conjunction  
Plant neighbourhood and Christian-like accord  
In their sweet bosoms, that never war advance  
His bleeding sword 'twixt England and fair France.

*All.* Amen!

*K. Hen.* Now, welcome, Kate:—and bear me witness all,  
That here I kiss her as my sovereign queen. [Flourish.

*Q. Isa.* God, the best maker of all marriages,  
Combine your hearts in one, your realms in one!  
As man and wife, being two, are one in love,  
So be there 'twixt your kingdoms such a spousal,  
That never may ill office, or fell jealousy,  
Which troubles oft the bed of blessèd marriage,  
Thrust in between the paction of these kingdoms,  
To make divorce of their incorporate league;  
That English may as French, French Englishmen,  
Receive each other!—God speak this Amen!

*All.* Amen!

*K. Hen.* Prepare we for our marriage:—on which day,  
My Lord of Burgundy, we'll take your oath,  
And all the peers', for surety of our leagues.—  
Then shall I swear to Kate, and you to me;  
And may our oaths well kept and prosperous be!

[Sennet. *Exeunt.*

*Enter* Chorus.

*Chor.* Thus far, with rough and all-unable pen,  
Our bending author hath pursu'd the story;  
In little room confining mighty men,  
Mangling by starts the full course of their glory.  
Small time, but, in that small, most greatly liv'd  
This star of England: Fortune made his sword;  
By which the world's best garden he achiev'd,  
And of it left his son imperial lord.  
Henry the Sixth, in infant bands crown'd king  
Of France and England, did this king succeed;  
Whose state so many had the managing,  
That they lost France, and made his England bleed:  
Which oft our stage hath shown; and, for their sake,  
In your fair minds let this acceptance take. [Exit.

P. 563. (1) "And rather choose to hide them in a net  
~~Than amply to imbar their crooked tiles,"~~ &c.

So the folio.—The 4tos have "Then amply to imbrace," &c., and "Then amply to embrace," &c.—Rowe, in his first ed., printed "Than amply to make bare," &c., but in his sec. ed. restored the reading of the folio; and Theobald, at Warburton's suggestion, gave "Than amply to imbare [i. e. lay bare]," &c.,—a word of which, I believe, no example has been adduced.—I may add that Dr. Richardson in his valuable *Dictionary*, sub "Im-bar," has cited these lines with the reading of the folio, "imbarre."

P. 563. (2) "For in the Book of Numbers is it writ,—  
 When the man dies, let the inheritance  
 Descend unto the daughter."

By the second line we are to understand,—When the man dies, and has no son, let the inheritance, &c. The usual modern reading is that of the 4tos, "When the sonne dies," &c.: but whatever had been the authority of the 4tos (and they present only a skeleton of the play, though their assistance on some occasions is by no means to be slighted), I should have adopted, with Mr. Knight and Mr. Collier, the reading of the folio. The passage in *Numbers* as cited by Holinshed, is, "When a man dieth without a sonne, let the inheritance descend to his daughter" (*Chron.* vol. iii. 66, ed. 1808); and, as given in our common version, "If a man die, and have no son, then ye shall cause his inheritance to pass unto his daughter." Chap. xxvii. 8. There is not a word in Scripture about the contingency of the son dying; and the law was declared in consequence of a claim put in by the daughters of Zelophehad, "who had no sons."

P. 565. (3) "whom she did send to France  
 To fill King Edward's fame with prisoner kings,  
 And make her chronicle as rich with praise," &c.

The folio has "To make their chronicle," &c.,—"their" being evidently a transcriber's or printer's error for "her," which alone suits the context ("her," i. e. England's).—The 4tos have "To make your chronicles," &c.

P. 565. (4) "To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot  
 Comes sneaking, and so sucks her princely eggs;  
 Playing the mouse in absence of the cat,  
 To tear and havoc more than she can eat."

The folio has "To tame and hawock," &c.—I adopt the reading of Rowe in his sec. ed., and of Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector,—"tame" being, in all probability, a corruption of "teare."—The 4tos have "To spoyle and hawocke," &c. (which Rowe gave in his first ed.).—Theobald printed "To taint and havock," &c., observing (too subtly, as any one must perceive who considers the whole of the present passage) "'tis not much the quality of the mouse to tear the food it comes at, but to run over and defile it."

P. 566. (4) "Yet that is but a crush'd necessity," &c.

So the folio,—a reading with which I must confess myself far from satisfied, though Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, &c. p. 122) thinks that it ought not to be questioned.—The 4tos have "— a curst necessity."—For the conjectural emendations of this line, see the *Var. Shakespeare*.

P. 566. (6) "The act of order," &c.

Against the alteration which had been made here, "*The art of order*," &c., Malone cites the reading of the 4tos,—

"creatures that by awe  
Ordaine an act of order to a peopled kingdom."

P. 566. (7) "*As many arrows, loosed several ways,  
Come to one mark; as many ways meet in one town;  
As many fresh streams meet in one salt sea*," &c.

In the second line Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector makes a slashing emendation: "but," says Mr. Collier, "it may still be a question, whether Shakespeare might not wish here to vary the regularity of his lines by interposing one of twelve syllables." On which Mr. Singer remarks; "Unquestionably. The poet has frequently thus varied his metre." *Shakespeare Vindicated*, &c., p. 123. To me, however, the passage appears more than suspicious.—I print it as it stands in the folio. It is usually given with a text partly made up from the 4tos.

P. 568. (8)

"*Be like a king, and show my sail of greatness*," &c.

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes "— *my soul of greatness*," &c.,—to which Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, &c. p. 123) says "there is little objection:" but may not the metaphorical use of "*sail*" in the present line be defended by the following passage concerning another royal personage in *Henry VI. Part Third*, act iii. sc. 3?—

"now Margaret  
Must strike her sail, and learn awhile to serve,  
Where kings command."

P. 569. (9) "*That may with reasonable swiftness add  
More feathers to our wings*."

Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector reads "— *with seasonable swiftness*," &c.,—a change which, though mentioned by Mr. Singer with a sort of approbation (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, &c. p. 123), is undoubtedly wrong: compare *Troilus and Cressida*, act ii. sc. 2;

"Who marvels then, when Helenus beholds  
A Grecian and his sword, if he do set  
The very wings of reason to his heels," &c.

P. 570. (10) "Linger your patience on; and well digest  
The abuse of distance, while we force a play."

The folio has,—

www.libtool.com.cn  
"and wee'l digest  
Th' abuse of distance; force a play."

I give Pope's reading; which is at least as good as that of Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, "— distance, and so force a play."—These two lines seem strangely out of place; and perhaps Mr. Knight is right in supposing that they "were intended to be erased from the author's copy."—The Chorus is not in the 4tos.

P. 571. (11) "there shall be smiles."

Farmer would alter "smiles" to "smites;" and so Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector.

P. 571. (12) "Hostess."

Here the old copies have "Quickly;" but throughout the scene they prefix "Host." and "Hostesse" to her speeches,—as they do in act ii. sc. 3, where also they describe her, on her entrance, as "Hostesse."—The latter appellation is, of course, the proper one,—“the quondam Quickly” having now become Pistol's spouse.

P. 572. (13) "O well-a-day, Lady, if he be not drawn! now we shall see  
wifull adultery," &c.

The folio has "— if he be not hewne."—When, in my *Remarks on Mr. Collier's and Mr. Knight's eds. of Shakespeare*, p. 117, I substituted "drawn" for "hewne," I was not aware that Theobald had anticipated me.—Compare *Romeo and Juliet*, act i. sc. 1,—

"What! art thou drawn among these heartless hinds?"

and Beaumont and Fletcher's *Valentinian*, act iv. sc. 4,—

"He's drawn;  
By heaven, I dare not do it."—

The 4tos have, "O Lord, heere's corporall Nim, now shall we haue wifull  
adultery," &c.

P. 572. (14)

"Bard. Good lieutenant,—good corporal,—offer nothing here."

Malone very hastily made this a portion of the preceding speech, printing, "Good Lieutenant *Bardolph*,—good corporal, offer nothing:"—and I have now to regret that in my *Remarks on Mr. Collier's and Mr. Knight's eds. of Shakespeare*, p. 117, I found fault with Mr. Collier for adhering to the old text,—the inconsistency of which may perhaps, after all, be attributed to the author himself, for he has other passages which exhibit the like

inconsistency. Here, of course, the difficulty lies in the word "*lieutenant*,"—for which Steevens proposed to read, and Capell printed, "*ancient*:" but it seems to have escaped the notice of all the editors that a similar impropriety occurs in the *Sec. Part of Henry IV.*, towards the close of which (p. 544) Falstaff says, "Come, *Lieutenant Pistol*," though earlier in that play Pistol is his "*ancient*." Again, in the present play Bardolph's military title is unaccountably varied: at the commencement of this scene Nym calls him "*Lieutenant*," but in act iii. sc. 1 (p. 587), addresses him as "*corporal*" (which "*corporal*" is certainly not to be explained away on the supposition of Mr. Knight, or rather, of Zachary Jackson, that "Nym, in his fright, forgets his own rank and Bardolph's also"). Since, therefore, there is a probability that these inconsistencies may have arisen from some inattention on the part of Shakespeare himself, I doubt if an editor be justified in doing more than pointing them out to the reader.

P. 573. (16) "Boy. *Mine host Pistol, you must come to my master,—and you, hostess.*"

The folio has "— and your *Hostesse*."—The 4tos have "*Boy. Hostes, you must come straight to my maister, and you host Pistol*."

P. 574. (16)

"Host. *As ever you came of women, come in quickly,*" &c.

The folio has "— come of women," &c.—The 4tos have "*Hostes. As euer you came of men, come in,*" &c.—I should not have noticed this, had not Mr. Knight and Mr. Collier replaced in the text the reading of the folio.

P. 576. (17) "Cam. *I one, my lord :*

*Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.*

Scroop. *So did you me, my liege.*

Grey. *And me, my royal sovereign.*"

The last of these speeches stands in the folio—"Grey. *And I my Royall Soueraigne;*" in the 4tos "*Grey. And me my lord.*" The reading of the folio (which Mr. Knight and Mr. Collier have restored) is a very improbable one, and hardly to be defended either on the plea that there is an ellipsis, "*And I am one, my royal sovereign,*" or that "*I*" was formerly sometimes used inaccurately for "*me*." When Shakespeare had once made Scroop say, "*So did you me,*" &c., it was altogether unlikely that he should fail to write in the next speech, "*And me,*" &c.

P. 578. (18) "*Garnish'd and deck'd in modest compliment.*"

See note (\*) on *Love's Labour's lost*, vol. ii. p. 161.

P. 578. (19) "*To mark the full-fraught man,*" &c.

The folio has "*To make thee full fraught man,*" &c. Theobald substituted "*mark*" for make.—This is not in the 4tos.



P. 580. (20)

"for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and 'a babbled of green fields."

The folio has "~~was a Pen, and a Table of greene fields~~" (the corresponding passage in the 4tos is merely "*His nose was as sharpe as a pen*").—I adopt as a matter of course, Theobald's celebrated emendation, which has now become a portion of the established text of Shakespeare; and since there is no probability that its place will ever be usurped by the reading of Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, "*— as a pen on a table of green frieze*," I refrain from stating the objections to which I conceive the latter variation is liable. Let me only observe, that, while Theobald does no more than change "table" to "babled," the Ms. Corrector, with comparative license, substitutes "on" for "and," and "frieze" for "fields."

P. 583. (21)

"Whiles that his mountain sire,—on mountain standing," &c.

"The repetition of the word *mountain*," says Malone, "is much in our author's manner, and therefore I believe the old copy is right." For examples of similar repetitions by various early writers, see my *Few Notes*, &c. p. 129.

P. 583. (22) "As self-neglecting.

Re-enter *Lords*, with *Exeter* and train.

Fr. King. *From our brother England?*"

Here the folio has "*From our Brother of England?*"—as it has again in the next page,—

"Back to our Brother of England.

*Dolph.*

For the Dolphin," &c.

In both passages I have omitted "of" with the 4to 1600;—and I have done so, because the folio afterwards, act v. sc. 2 (p. 637), has,—

"Vnto our brother France, and to our Sister," &c.

"Most worthy brother England."

"So happy be the Issue, brother Ireland (sic)," &c.

P. 584. (23) "Therefore in fierce tempest is he coming," &amp;c.

This line is usually given as amended by Rowe, "And therefore in fierce tempest," &c.—The Rev. J. Mitford (*Gent. Magazine* for Nov. 1844, p. 456) would read "Therefore in fiercest tempest," &c.

P. 584. (24) "To whom expressly I bring greeting too."

The folio has "*To whom — greeting to*,"—which, if the line be taken without consideration of the context, is right enough according to a phraseology not unfrequent in Shakespeare's time. But Exeter has already delivered

Henry's greeting to the King—"thus he greets your majesty," p. 583; and he now inquires for the Dauphin, to whom he brings "*greeting too*" (so the 4tos) [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

P. 585. (28) "at *Hampton pier*," &c.

The folio has "*at Douer Peer*," &c.—The Chorus is not in the 4tos.

P. 587. (36) "*summon up the blood*," &c.

Rowe's correction.—The folio has "*commune up*," &c.—This is not in the 4tos.

P. 587. (37) "*On, on, you noble English*," &c.

The folio has "— *Noblish English*," &c.—a mistake occasioned by the termination of the second word having caught the compositor's eye.—The editor of the second folio substituted "— *noblest English*," &c.—Mr. Knight prints, most preposterously, "*On, on, you nobless English*," &c.—The expression "*noble English*" is quite strong enough as opposed to "*good yeomen*."—(In *King John*, act v. sc. 4, Melun says to the revolted *lords of England*, "*Fly, noble English, you are bought and sold*.")—This is not in the 4tos.

P. 587. (38) "*Nym. Pray thee, corporal*," &c.

See note (14).

P. 588. (39) "*Knocks go and come*," &c.

Of the fragments of ballads quoted here by Pistol and the Boy, Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector has given, as might be expected, a complete rifacimento,—which I do not think it necessary to transcribe.—One of the editors talks of "*Pistol's song*:" but, though Pistol quotes the words of a ballad, he is too dignified to *sing* them.

P. 588. (40) "*Flu. Up to the preach*," &c.

This being the first appearance of Fluellen, I may observe that the old copies are quite inconsistent in marking his Welsh pronunciation; that the modern editors could not with any propriety allow him to say "*bridge*" and "*pridge*" almost in the same breath,—"*world*" in one scene and "*orld*" in another; and,—not to mention other changes of letters,—that their substituting throughout his speeches "*Got*" and "*goot*" for "*God*" and "*good*" is warranted by the dialect of Sir Hugh Evans in *The Merry Wives of Windsor*.

P. 591. (51) "*Mac. Of my nation! What ish my nation? what ish my nation? Who talks of my nation ish a villain, and a basterd, and a knave, and a rascal.*"

The folio has,—

"*Irish. Of my Nation? What ish my Nation? Ish a Villaine, and a Basterd, and a knaue, and a Rascall. What ish my Nation? Who talkes of my Nation?*"

Here I follow Mr. Knight in the transposition which he made at the suggestion of a friend. "This," he observes, "is evidently one of the mistakes that often occur in printing. The second and third lines changed places, and the 'Ish a' of the first line should have been at the end of what is printed as the third, whilst 'What' of the second line should have gone at the end of the first."—There is nothing of this in the 4tos.

P. 592. (23) "*Of heady murder, spoil, and villany.*"

So the second folio.—The first folio has "*Of headly murder,*" &c.—Malone prefers reading "*Of deadly murder,*" &c.—This is not in the 4tos.

P. 592. (23)

"*To raise so great a siege. Therefore, great king,*" &c.

Here most of the editors, disliking the repetition of the word "*great,*" give, with the 4tos, "*— dread king,*" &c. But in act iv. sc. 7 (pp. 626, 627), Henry is twice addressed as "*great king;*" and in act v. sc. 2 (p. 637), we find "*Great Kings of France and England.*"—That our early writers are far from averse to the repetition of a word, I have already observed more than once.

P. 594. (24) "*Alice. De neck,*" &c.

It is hardly worth mentioning that here the old copy (the folio) has "*Alice. De Nick,*" &c.: but Alice evidently was not intended to blunder in the word: she says "*neck*" and "*chin,*"—the Princess "*nick*" and "*sin.*"

P. 595. (25) "*Charles De-la-bret,*" &c.

Ought properly to be "*Charles D'Albret:*" but, as Malone observes, "Shakespeare followed Holinshed's Chronicle, in which the Constable is called *Dela-breth*, as he is here in the folio."—This is not in the 4tos.

P. 596. (26) "*lords, and knights,*" &c.

Theobald's correction.—The folio has "*Lords, and Kings,*" &c. This is not in the 4tos.

P. 597. (27) "*There is an auncient there at the pridge,*" &c.

The folio has "*There is an aunchient Lieutenant there,*" &c.: but both titles cannot stand. See note (14).—The 4tos have "*There is an ensigne there,*" &c.

P. 598. (28) "*and fico for thy friendship!*"

Here the folio has "*and Figo for,*" &c.; while the 4tos have "*and Figa for,*" &c., "*and a fig for,*" &c. But compare *The Merry Wives of Windsor*, act i. sc. 3, where Pistol exclaims, "*a fico for the phrase!*"

P. 598. (20) "new-tuned oaths."

Though the more recent editors, Malone, &c., testify no dislike to this reading, I think it a very doubtful one.—Pope printed "*new-turned oaths*."—Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes "*new-coined oaths*." (In *The Two Gentlemen of Verona*, act iv. sc. 4, we have "*new-found oaths*.")

P. 603. (46)

"*And the third hour of drowsy morning's nam'd,*" &c.

The folio has "— Morning *nam'd*."—I have adopted Hanmer's correction.—That of Tyrwhitt, "*morning name*," is usually preferred.—The Chorus is not in the 4tos.

P. 606. (4)

"*Thawing cold fear. Then, mean and gentle all,*" &c.

So Theobald, who, it is probable, has restored the right reading and punctuation, and who most assuredly was warranted in applying the terms "*perplexed and nonsensical*" to the reading of the folio,—

"*Thawing cold feare, that meane and gentle all,*" &c.:

yet Mr. Knight and Mr. Collier reject Theobald's emendation, and suppose that "*mean and gentle all*" refers to the army,—not, as it evidently does, to the audience (whom the Chorus has before addressed as "*gentles all*," p. 557).

P. 614. (4)

"*O God of battles! steel my soldiers' hearts;  
Possess them not with fear; take from them now  
The sense of reckoning, if the opposèd numbers  
Pluck their hearts from them!*"

In the third line I adopt the slight alteration proposed by Tyrwhitt: for, point the passage as we will, how can the reading of the folio,—

"The SENCE OF RECKNING of th' opposèd numbers,"—

be otherwise than wrong? (The 4tos have;

"O God of battels steele my souldiers harts,  
Take from them now the sence of reckoning,  
That the apposed multitudes which stand before them,  
May not appall their courage.")

Mason objected to Tyrwhitt's alteration, that "if the opposèd numbers did actually pluck their hearts from them, it was of no consequence whether they had or had not the sense of reckoning." But, as Steevens observes, Mason forgot that "if the sense of reckoning, in consequence of the king's petition, was taken from them, the numbers opposèd to them would be no longer formidable: when they could no more count their enemies, they could no longer fear them."

P. 615. (43)

"*valet*."

The modern editors substitute "*valet*," forgetting that "*varlet*" is "*nom synonyme de celui de page, dans les temps de notre ancienne chevalerie*."

P. 615. (44)

*"Mount them, and make incision in their hides,  
That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,  
And dout them with superfluous courage, ha!"*

Here the folio has the spelling "doubt *them*," &c.:—"which," says Mr. Collier, *ad l.*, "taken in the sense of making them doubt, or alarming them for the issue, is quite as intelligible as *dout* or *do out*, *extinguish*," &c. But "*English eyes*" would hardly be "alarmed for the issue:" and that by "*them*" we are to understand "*English eyes*," the context shows as distinctly as language can show.—Mr. Knight, too, in the present passage retains "doubt"—"equivalent to *awe*:" yet in *Hamlet*, act iv. sc. 7, *where again the folio has the same spelling*, "doubts," he inconsistently prints,—

"I have a speech of fire that fain would blaze,  
But that this folly *douts* it."—

This is not in the 4tos.

P. 616. (45)

*"The tucket-sonance," &c.*

The folio has "*The Tucket Sonuance*," &c.,—a misprint, it would seem, either for "*— Sonauance*," or for "*— Sonnance*" (so, earlier in this play, p. 599, the folio has "for when *Leuitie* and *Crueltie* play for a *Kingdome*," &c.). We find "*sonance*" and "*sonizance*" in our old writers, but never, I believe, "*sonuance*."—This is not in the 4tos.

P. 616. (46)

*"Con. I stay but for my guidon :—to the field !—  
I will the banner from a trumpet take,  
And use it for my haste."*

The folio has,—

*"Const. I stay but for my Guard: on  
To the field, I will," &c.*

This passage is not in the 4tos.—The reading now adopted was, I believe, originally suggested by the late Dr. Thackeray, Provost of King's College, Cambridge: it was first introduced into the text by Mr. Knight; and (as Mr. W. N. Lettsom informs me) it had the full approbation of the late Mr. Sydney Walker.—The word "*guidon*" (which Cotgrave explains "a standard, ensigne, or banner, . . . also, he that beares it") is frequently used by our old writers: and the passage of Holinshed, which Shakespeare certainly had in his thoughts, runs thus; "They thought themselves so sure of victorie, that diuerse of the noble men made such hast towards the battell, that they left manie of their seruants and men of warre behind them, and some of them would not once *staie for their standards*; as amongst other the duke of Brabant, when his *standard* was not come, caused a *baner to be taken from a trumpet* and fastened to a speare, the which he commanded to be borne before him in steed of his standard." *Chron.* vol. iii. 80, ed. 1808. The old reading,

therefore, is only to be defended,—and, I think, very weakly,—on the supposition that “guard” may mean, “the guard that attended with the Constable’s standard.”

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

P. 617. (47)

“*Bed. Farewell, good Salisbury; and good luck go with thee!*

*Exe. Farewell, kind lord; fight valiantly to-day:*

*And yet I do thee wrong to mind thee of it,*

*For thou art fram’d of the firm truth of valour.”*

The folio has,—

“*Bedf. Farwell good Salisbury, & good luck go with thee:*

*And yet I doe thee wrong, to mind thee of it,*

*For thou art fram’d of the firme truth of valour.*

*Exe. Farwell kind Lord: fight valiantly to day.”*

The transposition was made by Thirlby; and the corresponding passage of the 4tos confirms it.

P. 618. (48)

“*He that outlives this day, and comes safe home,*

*He that shall live this day, and see old age,”* &c.

The second of these lines stands in the folio thus,—

“*He that shall see this day, and liue old age,”* &c.

Pope made the transposition.—The 4tos have “He that outliues this day, and sees olde age,” &c.

P. 618. (49)

“*Then will he strip his sleeve and show his scars,*

*And say, These wounds I had on Crispin’s day,”* &c.

The second line is not in the folio.—Mr. Collier thinks “It is quite unnecessary to the completeness of the sense, the defectiveness of which could form the only excuse for such an insertion.” But the passage is so abrupt without it, that, in all probability, it was omitted in the folio by mistake.—Mr. Knight’s statement that “the line is found in the quarto entirely in a different place, AFTER ‘shall gentle his condition,’” is incorrect. In the 4tos it immediately follows “Then shall he strip his sleeves, and shew his skars;” and, what is more, in the quartos these two lines are accidentally shuffled out of their proper place;—

“*We few, we happie fewe, we bond of brothers,*

*For he to day that sheads his blood by mine,*

*Shall be my brother: be he nere so base,*

*This day shall gentle his condition.*

*Then shall he strip his sleeues, and shew his skars,*

*And say, these wounds I had on Crispines day:*

*And Gentlemen in England now a bed,*

*Shall thinke themselues accurst,”* &c.

P. 618. (50)

*"Old men forget; yet all shall be forgot,  
But he'll remember with advantages  
What feats he did that day: then shall our names,  
Familiar in their mouths as household words,—  
Harry the king, Bedford and Exeter,  
Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloster,—  
Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd."*

In the third line the folio has "*Familiar in his mouth as,*" &c.—I adopt, with Malone, Mr. Collier, &c., the far more natural reading of the 4tos. Mr. Knight prefers that of the folio: Shakespeare, he says, "altered '*their mouths*' of the quarto to '*his mouth.*' How beautifully he preserves the continuity of the picture of *the one old man* remembering his feats, and his great companions in arms, by this slight change! *His mouth* names 'Harry the king' as a *household word*; though in *their cups* the name shall be freshly remembered." For my own part, I believe that *Shakespeare* did *not* make the alteration; but that it must be attributed to the transcriber or printer,—the text of this play in the folio being by no means immaculate. Nor can I regard Mr. Knight's criticism on the passage as any thing else than mere sophistry: the *NAMES* at least of the chief warriors who fought at Agincourt must have been quite as familiar to the veteran's "neighbours" as to himself.

Since the preceding note was written, Mr. John Forster has remarked to me "that *the familiar utterance and the fresh remembrance* of the names constitute one and the same act, and that it is manifestly wrong to assign the former to a single person and the latter to many."

P. 620. (51)

*"Hen. I fear thou wilt once more come again for ransom."*

The folio has "*— for a Ransome;*"—which is given by Mr. Collier and Mr. Knight: but compare the words of Henry a little above, "*Come thou no more for ransom,*" &c.; and at p. 526, "*Com'st thou again for ransom?*"—This is not in the 4tos. (Here, as frequently elsewhere, "*thou wilt*" is to be read as "*thou'lt.*")

P. 621. (52)

*"I will have forty moys;  
Or I will fetch thy rim out at thy throat," &c.*

The folio has "*For I will fetch,*" &c.—The second of these lines is not in the 4tos.

P. 623. (53)

*"Let us die in honour: once more back again," &c.*

The folio has "*Let vs dye in once more backe againe,*" &c.—I adopt the reading of Mr. Knight, which is probably the true one, since the words "*Lets die with honour*" occur in the corresponding scene of the quartos.

P. 624. (44) "In which array, brave soldier, doth he lie,  
Larding the plain."

Need I observe that the alteration made here by Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector, "Loading the plain," is utterly wrong, and that "Larding" means, as Mr. Singer explains it (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, &c. p. 132), "enriching, manuring the plain with his blood?"—(In *The Tempest*, act i. sc. 2, the Ms. Corrector, with equal impropriety, changes "He being thus lorded," &c. to "He being thus loaded," &c.)

P. 627. (45) "That we may wander o'er this bloody field  
To look our dead, and then to bury them."

Here Mr. Collier's Ms. Corrector substitutes "To look our dead;" and, without meaning to advocate the insertion of that reading in the text, I must say that it is a very plausible one,—the more so, as the Herald subjoins,

"O, give us leave, great king,  
To view the field in safety," &c.

(Mr. Singer (*Shakespeare Vindicated*, &c. p. 133) remarks that, "unless Shakespeare meant to make Montjoy here speak broken English, to look our dead would be indeed a strange phrase." But so far from being strange, the phrase was common enough. In *The Merry Wives of Windsor*, act iv. sc. 2, we have; "Mistress Page and I will look some linen for your head." And compare Beaumont and Fletcher;

"— why dost thou peep so?  
Short. I am looking birds' nests."

*Wit without Money*, act ii. sc. 4.

"Where is the body of my girl?

*Wildb.* I know not;

I am no conjuror; you may look the body."

*The Night-Walker*, act iii. sc. 1.)

P. 628. (46)

"who, if alive, and ever dare . . . he would wear if alive," &c.

i. e. who, if alive and he ever, &c. The more recent editors alter the first "alive" to "'a live,"—how improperly, the repetition of the word might have shown them.

P. 629. (47) "I would fain see the man, . . . that is all; but I would fain see it once, an please Got of his grace that I might see."

It is not safe to meddle with the language of Fluellen: but qy. "— that is all; I would fain but see it once," &c.? The corresponding passage in the 4tos is,—

"I would see that man now that wold challenge this gloue  
And it please God of his grace I would but see him,  
That is all."



P. 633. (50) "and of such as have," &c.

The "of" has been altered to "to" and to "for."

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

P. 633. (60) "with wives," &c.

The "with" was added in the second folio.

P. 634. (60) "Now in London place him;  
(As yet the lamentation of the French  
Invites the King of England's stay at home;  
The emperor's coming," &c.

A passage evidently corrupt,—probably mutilated.

P. 635. (61) "I eat and eat,—I swear—"

This can hardly be right, though Mr. Collier passes it over without a note, and Mr. Knight is at no loss for an explanation.—It has been altered to "I eat and swear ——" and (not unhappily) to "I eat, and eke I swear ——"

P. 636. (62) "Nell," &c.

The old copies have "Doll,"—an odd mistake; nor is Mr. Collier's defence of it less odd. See my *Remarks on Mr. Collier's and Mr. Knight's eds. of Shakespeare*, p. 120.

P. 636. (63) "and from my weary limbs  
Honour is cudgell'd . . . .  
And patches will I get unto these scars,  
And swear I got them in the Gallia wars."

So the couplet stands in the 4tos.—The folio has,

"And patches will I get vnto these cudgeld scarres," &c.,—

a reading which had been long discarded when Mr. Knight and Mr. Collier brought it back. "The editors," says Mr. Knight, "leave *cudgell'd* out, without any apology for deviating from the text. True, the word is not in the quarto: but the whole scene has been remodelled." Now, if *Henry the Fifth* had come down to us only in the folio, I should not have thought myself at liberty to reject the word "cudgell'd,"—I should have been content with stating in a note that I believed it to be an interpolation: but since that word is omitted in the quartos,—and since the quartos, imperfect as they are, enable us elsewhere in this play to correct some decided errors of the folio,—I have no hesitation in being indebted to them here. (Earlier in the present speech, the folio has "*Of a malady of France*;" yet Mr. Knight and Mr. Collier *silently* omit "a" with the quartos.)

P. 637. (61) "*The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,  
Have lost their quality.*"

See note on *Love's Labour's lost*, vol. ii. p. 169.

P. 638. (62) "*all uncorrected,*" &c.

The folio has "*withall uncorrected,*" &c.—This is not in the 4tos.

P. 638. (63) "*And as our vineyards,*" &c.

The folio has "*And all our Vineyards,*" &c.—This is not in the 4tos.

P. 641. (64)

"*because he hath not the gift to woo in other places.*"

It has been suggested to me that the right reading is "*— in other paces:*" but the old text is quite right.

P. 645. (65) "*that war hath never entered.*"

Here the word "*never,*" which is necessary for the sense, was inserted by Rowe. ("Modern editors," says Mr. Collier, "have *invariably* inserted '*never;*' but the true word was probably *not,* because the old [Ms.] Corrector places it in the margin:"—if Mr. Collier had looked into Capell's edition, he would have found "*not.*")

P. 645. (66) "*His daughter first; and, in sequel, all,*" &c.

The second folio gives "*— and then, in sequel, all,*" &c.

P. 645. (67) "*Præclarissimus filius,*" &c.

Should, of course, be "*Præcarissimus filius,*" &c.: but Shakespeare copied the mistake from Holinshed.

END OF VOL. III.

LONDON:  
PRINTED BY ROBSON, LEVEY, AND FRANKLYN,  
Great New Street and Fetter Lane.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)



3 2044 009 766 973

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

WIDENER  
 MAR 09 2004  
 WIDENER BOOK DIS  
 APR 09 2003  
 WIDENER BOOK DIS

WIDENER  
 MAR 09 2003  
 WIDENER BOOK DIS  
 WIDENER BOOK DIS

WIDENER  
 WIDENER  
 MAY 12 2004  
 MAR 09 2004  
 CANCELLED  
 WIDENER BOOK DIS

